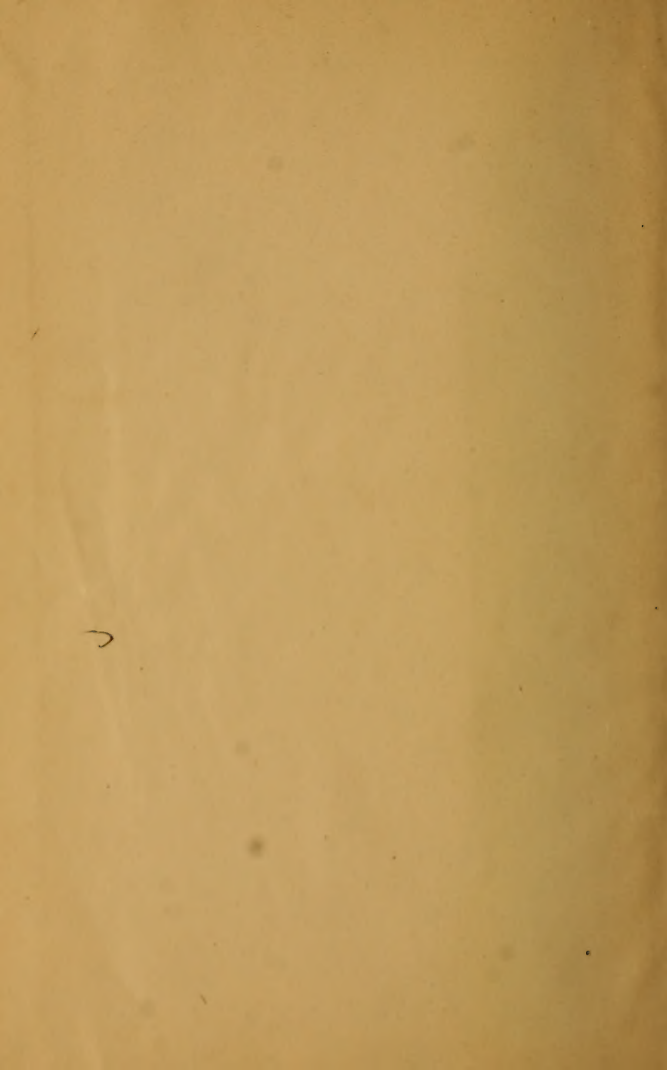


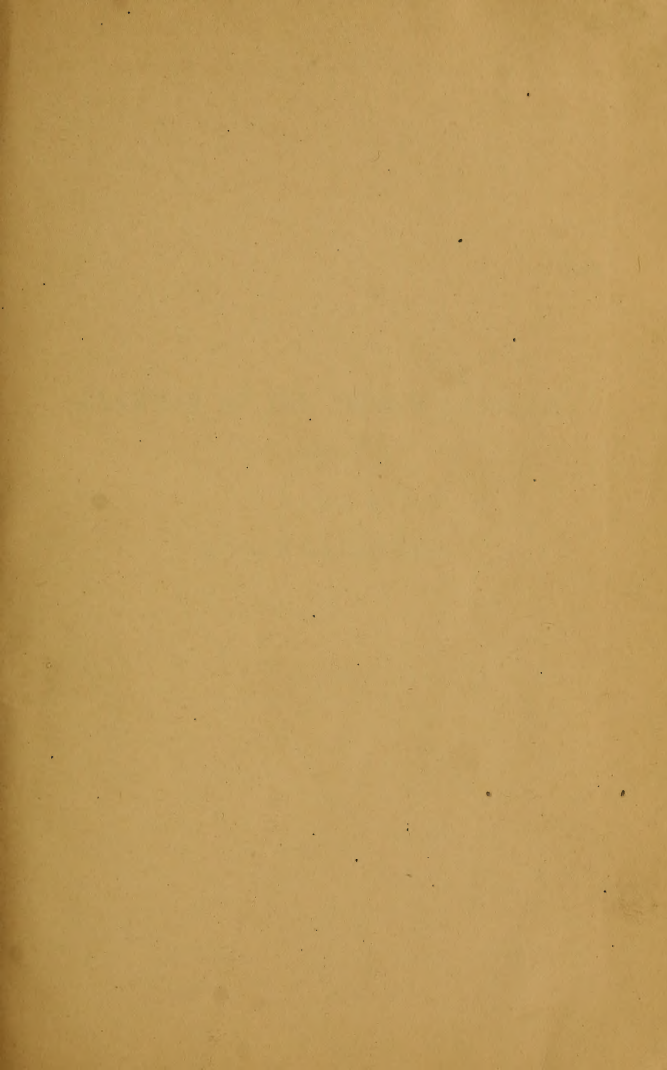


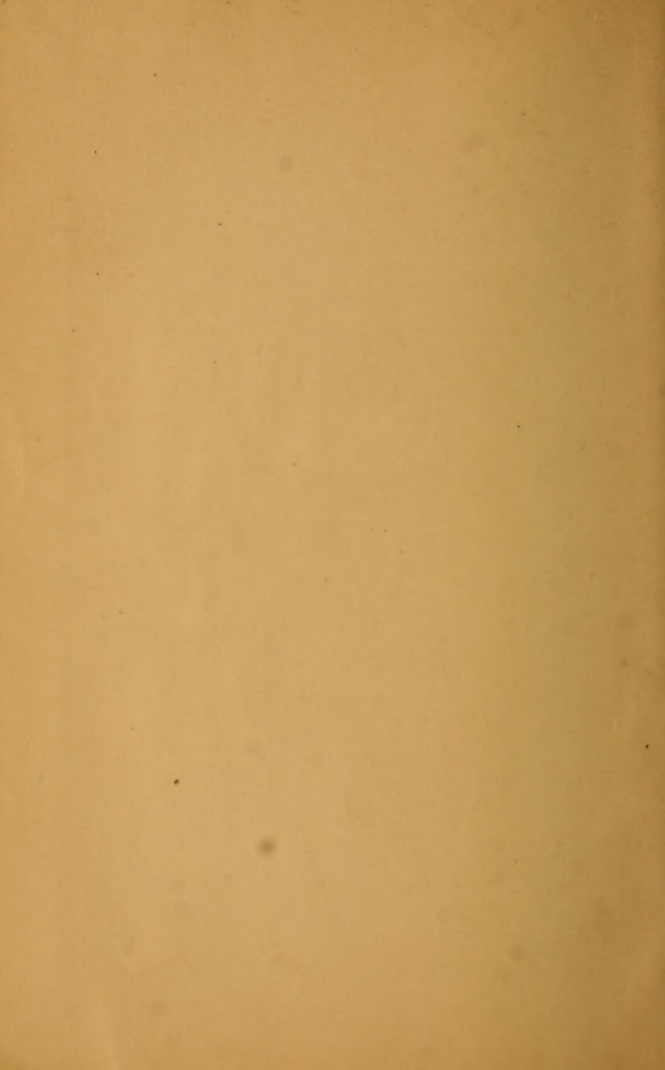
Class PC2109

Book .S4

1870







355
—
911

GRAMMAR OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE.

PART I.

FOR BEGINNERS.

GRAMMAR
OF THE
FRENCH LANGUAGE.

BY
✓
M. SCHELE DE VERE, LL.D.,
OF THE UNIVERSITY OF VIRGINIA.

NEW YORK:
UNIVERSITY PUBLISHING COMPANY,
4 BOND STREET,

1870.

F.A.W.



O. T. MASON,

PC 2109
S4
1870

74887

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1867,

By RICHARDSON & COMPANY,

In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the
Southern District of New York.



Rec'd Oct 11, 1894

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

ON LETTERS AND SYLLABLES.

	PAGE
I.—PRONUNCIATION.....	9
The Alphabet	9
Vowels.....	10
Sounds of the Vowels.....	10
<i>Accents</i>	10
Form of Accents.....	10
Purposes of Accents.....	11
Effect of Accents.....	11
<i>Nasal Sounds</i>	12
<i>Diphthongs</i>	14
Compound Sounds.....	14
Three Vowels.....	16
Four Vowels.....	17
Y	17
<i>Consonants</i>	18
Final Consonants.....	18
Sounds of the Consonants.....	18
<i>Pronunciation in Reading and Speaking</i>	29
Changes of Sounds.....	29
II.—ELISION.....	32
III.—SYLLABICATION.....	34
IV.—QUANTITY.....	35
Words with double meaning.....	36
V.—PUNCTUATION.....	37
VI.—LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS.....	38

CHAPTER I.

ON THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

NOUNS.

	PAGE
<i>Division of Nouns</i>	39
Proper Names.....	39
Common Nouns.....	39
Collective Nouns.....	40
<i>Gender of Nouns</i>	40
Determined by Signification.....	40
Determined by Termination.....	42
List of Masculine Nouns in mute <i>e</i>	43
<i>Number of Nouns</i>	52
Rules on Formation of the Plural.....	52
Irregular Plurals.....	53
Exercise.....	54

CHAPTER II.

ARTICLES.

<i>The Three Articles</i>	54
1. Definite Article.....	54
Declension of Definite Article.....	55
2. Indefinite Article.....	56
Declension of Indefinite Article.....	56
Exercise.....	56
Declension of Proper Names.....	57
Possessive Case.....	57
Exercise.....	57
3. Partitive Article.....	58
Exercise.....	59
Changes of Partitive Article.....	59
Exercise.....	59

CHAPTER III.

ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives agree with their Nouns.....	60
Participles.....	60
Formation of the Feminine.....	60
Exercise.....	62

	PAGE
Adjectives in <i>eur</i>	62
Irregular Feminines.....	63
Double forms for Masculine.....	63
Exercise.....	64
Formation of the Plural.....	64
Exercise.....	64
Formation of the Comparative Degrees.....	65
Comparative of Superiority.....	65
" Inferiority.....	65
" Equality.....	65
Irregular Comparative forms.....	66
Exercise.....	66
Relative Superlative.....	66
Absolute " 	67
Exercise.....	67
Place of Adjectives.....	67
Exercise.....	68
Numeral Adjectives.....	69
Cardinal Numbers.....	69
Rules on use of Cardinal Numbers.....	70
Exercise.....	71
Ordinal Numbers.....	72
Rules on the use of Ordinal Numbers.....	73
Exercise.....	73

CHAPTER IV.

PRONOUNS.

Classes of Pronouns.....	74
Personal Pronouns.....	74
Conjunctive Personal Pronouns.....	74
Relation to Verbs.....	75
Rules of ascertaining it.....	76
Elision of Pronouns.....	77
Place of Conjunctive Personal Pronouns.....	78
Exercise.....	78
Absolute Personal Pronouns.....	79
Exercise.....	80
Possessive Pronouns.....	80

	PAGE
Conjunctive Possessive Pronouns.....	80
Agreement with Noun.....	81
Declension.....	81
Exercise.....	82
Absolute Possessive Pronouns.....	82
Exercise.....	83
Demonstrative Pronouns.....	83
Conjunctive Demonstrative Pronouns.....	83
Agreement with Noun.....	84
Exercise.....	84
Absolute Demonstrative Pronouns.....	84
Exercise.....	85
Relative Pronouns.....	85
<i>Qui</i>	86
<i>Lequel</i>	87
Exercise.....	87
Interrogative Pronouns.....	88
Prepositions belonging to them.....	88
Exercise.....	89
Indefinite Pronouns.....	89
<i>On</i>	89
How translated.....	89
Exercise.....	90

CHAPTER V.

VERBS.

Purposes of the Verb.....	90
Auxiliary Verbs.....	91
<i>Avoir</i> , to have.....	91
Exercise.....	94
<i>Avoir</i> , negatively.....	94
<i>Avoir</i> , interrogatively.....	98
<i>Avoir</i> , interrogatively and negatively.....	100
<i>Y avoir</i>	102
<i>Y avoir</i> , negatively.....	103
<i>Y avoir</i> , interrogatively.....	105
<i>Y avoir</i> , interrogatively and negatively.....	106
Exercise.....	106
Exercise.....	107

	PAGE
<i>Être</i> , to be.....	107
<i>Être</i> , negatively.....	110
<i>Être</i> , interrogatively.....	114
<i>Être</i> , interrogatively and negatively.....	116
Exercise.....	118
Exercise.....	118
Exercise.....	119
Rules on use of Verbs.....	119
Four Conjugations.....	120
Formation of Tenses and Persons, that are uniform.....	120
Modes of Verbs.....	121
Tenses of Verbs.....	122
Simple Tenses.....	122
Compound Tenses.....	123
Table of Terminations of Verbs.....	124
First Conjugation, <i>parler</i>	128
Remarks on Verbs of First Conjugation.....	139
Second Conjugation, <i>finir</i>	144
Third Conjugation, <i>recevoir</i>	156
Remarks on the Verbs of Third Conjugation.....	167
Fourth Conjugation, <i>vendre</i>	169
Different kinds of Verbs.....	180
Active Verbs.....	180
Neuter Verbs.....	180
List of Neuter Verbs, conjugated with <i>être</i>	181
Passive Verbs.....	182
Pronominal Verbs.....	183
Reflexive.....	183
Reciprocal.....	183
Pronominal Proper.....	184
Impersonal Verbs.....	184
Reflexive Verb <i>se lever</i>	184
<i>S'en aller</i>	196
Irregular Verbs.....	203
Of First Conjugation.....	204
Of Second Conjugation.....	205
Of Third Conjugation.....	220
Of Fourth Conjugation.....	230
Exercises on Verbs, [13].....	258

	PAGE
Participles.....	264
Use of Participles.....	264
Exercise.....	265

CHAPTER VI.

ADVERBS.

Formation of Adverbs.....	266
Simple Adverbs.....	266
Derivative Adverbs.....	266
Exercise.....	266
Compound Adverbs.....	267
Adverbs of Quantity.....	267
Exercise.....	267
Negative Adverbs.....	267
Exercise.....	267
Comparative Degrees of Adverbs.....	268
Exercise.....	268

CHAPTER VII.

PREPOSITIONS.

Form of Prepositions.....	269
Simple Prepositions.....	269
Compound Prepositions.....	269
<i>De, à, and par</i>	269
Use of Prepositions.....	270
Exercise.....	270

CHAPTER VIII.

CONJUNCTIONS.

Use of Conjunctions.....	271
Exercise.....	272

CHAPTER IX.

I. INTERJECTIONS.

Use of Interjections.....	272
---------------------------	-----

FRENCH GRAMMAR.

ON LETTERS AND SYLLABLES.

I.—PRONUNCIATION.

THE pronunciation of a foreign language cannot be satisfactorily learned by comparing it with that of our own. Such comparisons lead invariably to incorrectness. The teacher ought, therefore, in all cases to begin by pronouncing himself, clearly and distinctly, the sound of each letter and combination of letters, and then make his pupils repeat them one by one. The latter cannot be expected to be able to pronounce well, until their ear has, by practice, been accustomed to the sound; only when they are perfectly familiar with it, will they succeed in repeating it correctly by themselves. When the sound is once acquired, then the teacher may suggest the resemblance to some similar sound in the pupils' native tongue, in order to assist their memory.

The French Alphabet contains the following letters :

A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L, M, N, O, P, Q, R, S,
T, U, V, X, Y, Z.

The majority of these letters are taken from the Roman Alphabet. *K* is only found in foreign words. *Q* is always accompanied by *u*, and has the same sound as hard *c* and *k*. *W* is not used in French except in writing foreign words, like *whig*, and then pronounced like *v*. *X* is a compound letter, consisting of *c* and *s*, or *g* and *s*. *Y* is called *i grec*, because it was taken from the Greek.

VOWELS.

Five of these letters are called *Vowels*, from a word which originally suggested that they were produced by a simple utterance of the voice, without the aid of other letters; whilst *Consonants* were so called, because they cannot be sounded without the assistance of another sound (con-sono).

A has but one sound, which resembles that of *a* in *father*.

Ex. *la*, the; *ma*, my; *ta*, thy; *sa*, her; *annales*, annals; *carte*, card.

E has the sound of *e* in *ell*, but accents change it slightly, as will be explained under the head of Accents.

Ex. *mortelle*, mortal; *bref*, brief; *sept*, seven.

I has the sound of *ee* in *eel*.

Ex. *file*, file; *minime*, smallest; *ciel*, heaven; *vie*, life.

O has the two sounds which we give to *o* in the word post-office, the former close, the latter open.

Ex. (close) *apôtre*, apostle; *repos*, repose; *sitôt*, so soon.

(open) *choc*, shock; *social*; *soldat*, soldier.

U has no corresponding sound in English. It is pronounced by pointing the lips as if preparing for a whistle. It must be heard to be imitated, and then requires, like all the sounds, practice to become perfectly correct.

Ex. *vu*, seen; *flûte*, flute; *minute*, minute; *uni*, plain.

These Vowels, however, suffer certain changes under the influence of three causes: the addition of Accents, their combination with *m* and *n*, and their combination with other vowels. *Y*, as a vowel, will be mentioned hereafter.

1. When they are accented :

The French has three accents, viz.: the three signs ('), (`) and (^), which are placed over the vowels for different purposes :

The Acute Accent, ' , (*accent aigu*) is placed over the letter *e* only, and gives it an acute or sharp sound.

Ex. *café*, coffee; *célébré*, celebrated; *nécessité*.

The Grave Accent, ` , (*accent grave*) is placed over the vowels *a* and *e* and the diphthong *ou*, and gives them not different sounds but makes them long or broad.

Ex. *là*, there; *père*, father; *où*, where.

The Circumflex Accent, ^ , (*accent circonflexe*) is placed over all five vowels and gives them a very long or broad sound. It generally indicates the loss of a letter next to the accented vowel.

Ex. *hâte*, haste; *hôte*, host; *même*, self; *sûr*, sure.

The purposes for which the accents are used, are:

To mark certain inflections, as e.g., the participles past of verbs:

Ex. *élevé*, elevated; *fermé*, closed.

To distinguish two similar words of different meanings:

Ex. *la*, the, and *là*, there; *ou*, or, and *où*, where; *des*, of the, and *dès*, since; *a*, has, and *à*, to; *notre*, our, and *le nôtre*, ours; *sur*, upon, and *sûr*, sure; *du*, of the, and *dû*, due.

To indicate the loss of a letter:

Ex. *mère*, from *mater*; *pâtre*, from *pastor*; *hôte*, from *hostis*; *sûr*, from *securus*; *épître*, from *epistola*.

The effect of the accents on the vowel *e* is shown in five different ways. The Acute Accent gives it a sharp sound:

Ex. *célébré*, celebrated; *sévérité*, severity.

The vowel *e* has the same sound as if it were thus accented, when, in final syllables, it is followed by a silent consonant:

Ex. *nez*, nose; *placet*, petition; *parler*, to speak.
except in *tu es*, thou art, and *il est*, he is, where it has a grave or broad sound.

The Grave Accent gives it a broad sound:

Ex. *frère*, brother; *procès*, process; *dès*, since.

The Circumflex Accent gives it a very broad sound.

Ex. *tête*, head; *même*, same.

The absence of any accent produces in monosyllables the so-called indefinite sound of *e*.

Ex. *me*, me; *te*, thee; *se*, one's self; *que*, that; *le*, it; *ne*, not.

The absence of any accent on final *e* in other words, not monosyllables, leaves it perfectly silent.

Ex. *vie*, life; *terre*, earth; *lune*, moon.

It retains its silent character even, when in the plural an *s* is added.

Ex. *vie*, *vies*, lives; *lunes*, moons; *armes*, arms.

The letters *es* and *ent*, in the final syllables of verbs, are always silent.

Ex. *vous dites*, you say; *il disent*, they said.

E is also mute in *dessus*, above; *dessous*, below; *ressort*, spring, and all words beginning with *ress*; in *degré*, degree; *denier*, farthing; *dangeroux*, dangerous; *aboïement*, barking; *paiement*, payment; *tutoïement*, calling others thou, and *reniement*, abjuration.

A mute *e* can never begin a word; but it can be found in the first syllable, in the middle and at the end of a word.

Ex. *tenir*, to hold; *Samedi*, Saturday; *table*, table.

In the very rare cases, when two or three syllables, each having a mute *e*, follow each other, the first one, when there are two such *e*'s, and the first two, when there are three, are given the so-called indefinite sound as in monosyllables.

Ex. *retenir*, to detain; *recevoir*, to receive; *redevenir*, to become again.

In all other words the rule prevails that no two mute *e*'s can follow each other in succession at the end of a word; and when this should happen as the effect of inflection, e. g., in conjugating verbs, certain orthographical remedies are prescribed, which will be mentioned in their appropriate place.

Vowels suffer certain changes of pronunciation,

2. *When they are followed by n or m*, in which case they have a nasal sound, inherited by the French from the Latin.

It is well-known that the Romans gave to the final syllables *um*, *am*, *em* and others, a nasal sound, which led to their frequent sup-

pression, as was the case always in poetry, where these syllables remained altogether silent, when they were followed by a vowel.

This nasal sound is the same before *n* and *m*, so that *am* is pronounced like *an*, and is produced in the following combinations :

am : *ambre*, amber.

an : *roman*, novel.

im : *impoli*, impolite.

in : *enfin*, at last.

em : *empire*, empire.

en : *encre*, ink.

om : *ombre*, shade.

on ; *salon*, parlor.

um : *parfum*, perfume.

un : *brun*, brown.

The nasal sound is not given to these syllables :

a. When they are followed by a vowel or a second *m* or *n*.

Ex. *imiter*, to imitate ; *inutile*, useless ; *amener*, to bring ; *omettre*, to omit ; *uni*, united ; *flamme*, flame ; *dilemme*, dilemma ; *ennemi*, enemy ; *immobile*, immovable ; *inné*, innate ; *dommage*, damage ; *bonne*, good.

Except when *emm* and *enn* begin a word.

Ex. *emmener*, to carry off (pronounced as if spelt *an-mener*) ; *ennui*, weariness ; *ennobler*, to ennoble.

b. When they are found in words taken from foreign languages.

Ex. *Ammon*, *Emmanuel*, *commotidi*, *Jérusalem*, *amen*, *Amsterdam*.

Except in the words *Adam*, *Joachim*, *Quidam*, *Cherubin* and *Seraphin*, which have the nasal sound, being thoroughly naturalized.

c. When *in* precedes the letter *h*, which is always silent.

Ex. *inhumain*, inhuman.

The syllable *en*, on the contrary, remains nasal before *h*, because it only occurs before an aspirate *h*.

Ex. *enhardir*, to embolden.

d. When *ent* forms the last syllable of the third person plural of the verb, when it is altogether silent.

Ex. *ils parlent*, they speak ; *ils viennent*, they come.

The following words are irregular in their pronunciation :

<i>enivrer</i> , to intoxicate,	pronounced	an-ivrer.
<i>enorgueillir</i> , to make proud,	pronounced	an-orgueillir.
<i>ennemi</i> , enemy,	"	en-nemi (not nasal).
<i>nenni</i> , nay,	"	nan-ni.
<i>hennir</i> , to neigh,	"	an-nir.
<i>solennel</i> , solemn,	"	solanel.
<i>femme</i> , woman,	"	fam (not nasal).
<i>faon</i> , fawn,	"	fan (nasal).
<i>paon</i> , peacock,	"	pan (nasal).
<i>Laon</i> (city of),	"	Lan (nasal).
<i>Cuen</i> (city of),	"	Can (nasal).
<i>Stône</i> (river of),	"	Sone.
<i>monsieur</i> , sir, or Mr.	"	mosieur.

Vowels suffer certain changes of pronunciation.

3. When they are joined to other vowels.

In French, when two vowels are combined, they may either produce together a simple sound, different from that which they produce separately, or they may form one syllable, in which, however, each vowel preserves its proper sound. The latter combination alone produces diphthongs.

a. The following vowels, when joined, produce compound sounds :

ai }
ei } have the sound of French *e*, sharp or broad, like *é* or *è*.

Ex. *j'ai*, I have ; *affaire*, affair ; *paire*, pair ; *peine*, pain ;
Seine (river) ; *reine*, vein.

Ai and *ei*, followed by *m* or *n*, have the sound of *in*. Hence *pain*, bread, and *pin*, pine-tree, sound alike ; so do *faim*, hunger, and *fin*, end ; *dessin*, design, and *dessin*, drawing.

Ai is pronounced like *a* (*i* being silent) in *Montaigne*, a proper name.

Au has the sound of *o*.

Ex. *mauve*, mallow ; *pauvre*, poor ; *audace*, boldness.

Ou has the sound of *oo*.

Ex. *clou*, nail; *sou*, cent; *outil*, tool; *boule*, bowl.

Eu has a sound resembling that of *u* in spur, but it is always long.

Ex. *peu*, little; *seul*, alone; *meunier*, miller.

It has the sound of *u* (*e* being silent) in certain forms of the verb *avoir*.

Ex. *eu*, had; *j'eus*, I had; *que j'eusse*, that I might have.

The same is the case in *à jeun*, fasting.

Œu has the same sound as *eu*.

Ex. *œuf*, egg; *vœu*, vow.

Oi, has the sound of French *oua*.

Ex. *moi*, me; *roi*, king; *gloire*, glory; *oie*, goose.

Oi before *n* is sounded as if it were spelt *ouin*.

Ex. *foin*, hay; *loin*, far; *soin*, care.

Oi is somewhat like *o* (*i* being silent) in *oignon*, onion; *encoignure*, corner angle; *poignard*, poniard; *poignée*, handful, and a few others.

If these combinations of vowels have a circumflex accent over the second vowel, the sound is lengthened considerably.

Ex. *maître*, master; *voûte*, vault; *croître*, to grow.

If it is desirable, for etymological purposes, to preserve the original sound of each vowel separately, a diæresis (·) is placed over the second vowel.

Ex. *Saül*, Saul; *naïf*, artless; *Moïse*, Moses; *baïonnette*, bayonet.

The same effect is produced when the first vowel of *ei* and *eu* is accented.

Ex. *obéir*, to obey; *réussir*, to succeed.

N. B.—*Oi* was formerly used in many nouns, and always in the imperfect and conditional tenses of verbs, instead of the modern form *ai*, introduced by Voltaire. It had the same sound as *ai*, which requires attention, as many works still retain the former spelling.

b. All other combinations of vowels produce diphthongs, forming either one or two syllables.

If *e* should be the first of two such vowels and unaccented, it is silent.

Ex. *Jean*, John; *flageolet*, flageolet; *geôlier*, jailer.

If *u* be the first, it is also silent, when it follows *g* and *q* merely for the purposes of pronunciation, and does not form part of the substance of the word.

Ex. *bague*, ring; *guérir*, to cure; *guide*, guide; *qui*, who; *quand*, when.

The pronunciation of diphthongs and the division into syllables may be practised in the following words:

<i>aérien</i> , a-é-ri-en, ethereal.	<i>miel</i> , mi-el, honey.
<i>Ismâil</i> , Is-ma-ël, Ishmael.	<i>client</i> , cli-ent, client.
<i>chaos</i> , cha-os, chaos.	<i>orient</i> , o-ri-ent, orient.
<i>Pharaon</i> , Pha-ra-on, Pharaoh.	<i>union</i> , u-ni-on, union.
<i>boréal</i> , bo-ré-al, northern.	<i>violon</i> , vi-o-lon, violin.
<i>béatitude</i> , bé-a-ti-tu-de, beatitude.	<i>relier</i> , re-li-er, bind.
<i>éolien</i> , é-o-li-en, eolian.	<i>sciure</i> , sci-ure, sawdust.
<i>météore</i> , mé-té-ore, meteor.	<i>tuant</i> , tu-ant, killing.
<i>fiancée</i> , fian-cée, betrothed.	<i>saluer</i> , sa-lu-er, salute.
<i>poète</i> , po-ète, poet.	<i>bruit</i> , bru-it, noise.
<i>ruade</i> , ru-ade, kick.	<i>sinuosité</i> , si-nu-o-si-té, sinuosity.
<i>puis</i> , pu-is, then.	<i>confiance</i> , con-fi-an-ce, confidence.
<i>impétuosité</i> , im-pé-tu-o-si-té, impet- uosity.	<i>sérieux</i> , sé-ri-eux, serious.

When *three vowels* are combined, two of these will always form a compound vowel, such as *ai*, *ei*, *ou*, *eu*, and *on*; the third vowel, which either precedes or follows this combination, is then pronounced by itself. If all three form but one syllable, the combination is again called a diphthong.

If *e* be the first of three vowels, or the last, and unaccented, it remains silent.

Ex. *beau*, handsome; *geai*, jackdaw; *raie*, stripe; *soie*, silk.

The pronunciation of three vowels, thus combined, and the division in syllables may be practised in the following words:

<i>linéaire</i> , li-né-aire, linear.	<i>noué</i> , nou-é, knotted.
<i>biais</i> , bi-ais, slope.	<i>babouin</i> , ba-bou-in, baboon.

<i>Dieu</i> , Di-eu, God.	<i>Cornouaille</i> , Cor-nou-aille, Corn-
<i>lueur</i> , lu-eur, light.	wallis.
<i>miauler</i> , mi-au-ler, mew.	<i>fouetter</i> , fou-et-ter, to whip.
<i>rouage</i> , rou-age, carriage.	

The following words containing respectively two and three vowels, are pronounced anomalously :

<i>août</i> , pronounced <i>oû</i> , August.	
<i>lingual</i> , “ lin-gou-al, lingual.	
<i>joaillier</i> , “ jou-a-lier, jeweller.	
<i>œil</i> , (with liquid <i>l</i>) pronounced <i>euil</i> , eye.	
<i>aillet</i> , “ euil-let, pink.	
<i>écueil</i> , “ é-ceuil, shoal.	
<i>accueil</i> , “ ac-ceuil, reception.	
<i>cercueil</i> , “ cer-ceuil, coffin.	
<i>cueillir</i> , “ ceuil-lir, gather.	
<i>orgueil</i> , “ or-geuil, pride.	

When *four vowels* are combined, two form one compound vowel, and two, another, which two succeed each other; they are pronounced separately in two syllables.

Ex. *je jouai*, jou-ai, I played.

nouveaux, nou-eux, knotty.

joueur, jou-eur, gambler.

bouée, bou-é, buoy.

The letter *y*, which in English serves sometimes as a vowel, as in *paymaster*, and at other times as a consonant, as in *yes*, is in French always a vowel, but its pronunciation changes somewhat, according to its position in a word.

When it begins a word, or when it is placed between two consonants, it has the sound of *i*.

Ex. *yeux*, eyes; *système*, system; *sybarite*, sybarite.

It becomes nasal, like *i*, before *m* and *n*.

Ex. *symbole*, symbol; *syntaxe*, syntax.

When it succeeds another vowel, it is pronounced like two successive *i*'s, the former combining with the vowel that precedes it, and the second pronounced by itself, unless it also

should combine with a following vowel, to form a compound vowel.

Ex. *pays*, pai-i, country.
moyen, moi-ien, means.
royal, roi-ial, royal.
joyeux, joi-ieux, joyeux.

In the following proper names, *y* is pronounced like *i* :

Bayard, *Bayonne*, *Cayenne*, *Mayence* and *Mayenne*.

CONSONANTS.

Final consonants are silent, except *c*, *f*, *l* and *r*, which are sometimes sounded ; and *n* and *m* are nasal, as has been fully explained.

Ex. *chez*, at ; *brevet*, brevet ; *toit*, roof ; *fois*, time ; *avocat*, advocat ; *mais*, but ; *avec*, with ; *chef*, chief ; *canal*, canal ; *servir*, to serve.

Of *two final consonants*, the first is sounded, but the second is silent.

Ex. *canard*, duck ; *sort*, fate ; *saint*, saint.

Of *three final consonants*, the first is sounded, and the last two are silent.

Ex. *remords*, remorse ; *prompt*, prompt ; *temps*, time.

B has the same sound as in English.

Ex. *Babylone*, Babylon ; *boule*, ball ; *cabale*, cabal.

Final *b* is pronounced in the proper names *Moab*, *Joab*, *Job*, *Jacob*, and in *club* ; *rumb*, point of the compass, and *radoub*, refitting.

Double *b* is pronounced like a single *b*.

Ex. *sabbat*, sabbath ; *rabbin* rabbi ; *abbé*, abbot.

C has two sounds, according to the letter that immediately follows.

It is *hard*, like the English *k*, before the vowels *a*, *o* and *u*, and before consonants.

Ex. *cabane*, cabin ; *Cologne*, Cologne ; *curé*, pastor ; *climat*, climate ; *actif*, active ; *cravate*, cravat.

When it is desirable, for etymological purposes, to give to *c* a soft sound (that of *s* in English) before *a*, *o* and *u*, a cedilla (ç) is added.

Ex. *face*, *façade*; house-front; *leçon*, lesson; *recevoir*; *reçu*, received.

It is *soft*, like the English *s*, before the vowels *e*, *i* and *y*.

Ex. *cèdre*, cedar; *Cécile*, Cæcilia; *cyprès*, cypress.

When it is desirable, for etymological purposes, to give the hard sound of *k* to *c* before these vowels, *c* is changed into *qu*, but *u* remains silent.

Ex. *vaincre*: *vous vainquez*, you conquer; *public*, *publique*, public.

C, before *a*, *o* and *u*, and before *qu* has the sound of *k*.

Ex. *accabler*, to overwhelm; *accomplir*, to accomplish; *accuser*, to accuse; *acquérir*, to acquire.

Both *c*'s are heard in *peccavi*, repentance, and the derivatives of the Latin verb *peccare*.

C, before *e*, *i* and *y*, is pronounced as in English.

Ex. *succès*, success; *occident*, west; *accès*, attack.

C is commonly pronounced at the end of words.

Ex. *bec*, beak; *aqueduc*, aqueduct; *Turc*, Turk.

C is silent, however, although final, in these words: *estomac*, stomach; *échecs*, chess; *jonc*, reed; *banc*, bench; *tronc*, trunk; *accroc*, rent; *pore*, pork; *tabac*, tobacco, and a few others. *C* has the sound of *g* in *second*, second, and its derivatives. *C* has the sound of *ch* in the Italian words *violoncelle*, *vermicelle*.

Ch has the sound of English *sh*.

Ex. *chat*, cat; *cher*, dear; *chose*, thing; *chute*, fall.

It is sounded like *k*, however, in words of Greek or Oriental origin.

Ex. *archange*, archangel; *écho*, echo; *chaos*, chaos; *chœur*, chorus; *orchestre*, orchestra; *patriarchat*.

When these words have become perfectly naturalized, the sound of *sh* is substituted for that of *k*.

Ex. *patriarche*; *archevêque*, archbishop; *bacchique*, bacchic.

Hence the difference between *archéologique* (*k* sound) and *chirurgien*

(*sh* sound); *Chaldée* (*k* sound) and *Achille* (*sh* sound). Machiavelli is pronounced soft, as *Machiavel*, but Michele Angelo hard, as *Michel-Ange*.

It is sounded like *k* also, wherever it precedes a consonant :

Ex. *Chrétien*, Christian ; *technique*, technical ; *Utrecht*.

It is silent in *almanack*.

In words ending in *ct*, both consonants are commonly sounded.

Ex. *exact*, *correct*, *direct*.

C only is sounded in *aspect*, *respect*, and *circspect* ; and *c* and *t* are both silent in *instinct* and *amict*, amice.

D has the same sound as in English.

Ex. *David* ; *Adam* ; *redoubler*, to redouble ; *admirable*.

Final *d* is silent, except in some proper names, as *David*, *Joad*, *Talmud*, and in *sud*, south.

It takes the sound of *t*, when it ends a word connected in meaning with the next word, and this begins with a vowel.

Ex. *grand homme*, great man ; *profond abîme*, deep abyss ; *entend-il*, does he hear ?

Dd is sounded like single *d*, except in *addition* and its derivatives, and in *reddition*, where both *d*'s are heard.

F has the same sound as in English.

Ex. *fini*, finished ; *afin*, in order ; *bref*, in short.

Final *f* is generally pronounced.

Ex. *chef*, chief ; *vil*, lively ; *bœuf*, beef.

But it is silent in *clef*, key ; in *neuf*, nine ; *œuf*, egg ; *bœuf*, beef (when followed by a consonant), and in the three plurals, *nerfs*, nerves ; *œufs* and *bœufs*, and in the compounds of *cerf*, as *cerf-volant*, kite. In *nerf-de-bœuf*, cowskin, the last *f* only is heard.

G, like *c*, has two sounds, according to the letter that immediately follows it.

It is *hard*, like the English *g* in good, before the vowels *a*, *o*, and *u*, and before consonants.

Ex. *garde*, guard ; *gonfler*, to swell ; *guttural* ; *gloire*, glory ; *agréable*, agreeable.

When it is desirable, for etymological purposes, to give to *g* a soft sound before *a*, *o* and *u*, a silent *e* is inserted between *g* and the next vowel.

Ex. *obligeant*, obliging; *geôle*, jail; *gageure*, bet.

It is soft, like the English *s* in pleasure, before the vowels *e*, *i* and *y*.

Ex. *général*; *gingembre*, ginger; *gymnaste*.

When it is desirable, for etymological purposes, to give the hard sound to *g* before the vowels *e* and *i*, a silent *u* is inserted between *g* and the vowel.

Ex. *guerre*, war; *guide*, guide; *vague*, wave; *gueux*, beggarly.

In the following words, however, *u* and *i* are pronounced separately. as a genuine diphthong: *aiguille*, needle; *aiguiser*, to sharpen; *aiguillon*, sting; *linguiste*, linguist; *inextinguible*, inextinguishable, and the proper names, *Guise*, *le Guide* (*Guido Reni*), and *Guizot*.

When it is desirable to pronounce this *u*, on account of its importance as part of the word, the following *e* is written with a diæresis.

Ex. *ciguë*, ci-gue, hemlock; *aiguë*, ai-gue, acute.

In the words *ambiguïté*, *arguer*, *u* is pronounced distinctly.

Final *g* is silent, except in *joug*, yoke, *zig-zag*, and in a few foreign names, as *Agag*. It has a hard sound in *bourg*, borough, and in *bourgmestre*, burgomaster.

Gl is pronounced like the *ll* in brilliant, by pronouncing the *l* first, and giving to *g* the sound of English *y* in yes.

Ex. *imbroglio*, im-brol-yee-o; *Broglie*, Brol-yee.

Gg is pronounced like a single *g*, except before *e*, when the first *g* is hard and the second soft.

Ex. *suggérer*, to suggest; *suggestion*.

Gn, like *gl*, is pronounced as if *n* was written first and followed by a *y*, with the sound of the English *y* in yes.

Ex. *ignorant*, in-yo-ran; *signal*, sin-yal; *digne*, worthy; *agneau*, lamb; *gagner*, to gain; *compagnie*, company.

In the beginning of words, and when the syllables divide between *g* and *n*, *gn* has the same sound as in English.

Ex. *gnome*; *gnostique*, gnostic; *agnation*, et *ignation*, etc.

Gs and *gl* are silent in *legs*, legacy; *doigt*, and *vingt*, twenty.

G itself is silent in *signet*, tassel, and the proper names *Clugny*, *Regnaud*, *Regnard*, whilst the first *g* in *gangrène* has the sound of *k*.

H is either aspirate or silent.

When it is aspirate, it has not the sound of an English *h*, but produces simply the effect of a slight pause, or a hiatus. As it cannot be seen when *h* is aspirate and when mute, the former is always marked by some sign in dictionaries. The rules, however, by which to distinguish the two, are easy to those who are familiar with other languages. It is this: (a). Words, beginning with *h*, which are derived from Latin, have a silent *h*, it being preserved only for etymological purposes.

Ex. *honneur*, honor; *homme*, homo; *histoire*, historia.

The words *héros*, hero; *harpie*, harpy; *hennir*, to neigh, and *hanter*, to haunt, are exceptions to this rule, having an aspirated *h*.

b. In all other words *h* is aspirated, viz.:

In words derived from the German.

Ex. *hache*, axe; *héraut*, herald; *hibou*, owl; *houx*, holly; *hurler*, to howl.

In words where *h* is placed between two vowels.

Ex. *cohue*, crowd; *ahan*.

In the names of countries and cities.

Ex. *la Hongrie*, Hungary; *la Hollande*, *Hambourg*.

Frequent use has, however, removed the aspiration in some of these names, where they are used as adjectives.

Ex. *Toile d'Hollande*, Dutch linen; *fromage d'Hollande*, Dutch cheese; *eau de la reine d'Hongrie*, Hungary water.

It will be seen, hereafter, that the effect of the aspirated *h* is to prevent elision: hence, *le homard*, the lobster; *la houille*, the coal.

J has the sound of *s* in pleasure, corresponding to the soft sound of *g*.

Ex. *jamais*, ever; *Jésus*; *joujou*, plaything; *jurer*, to swear.

K, which occurs only in words of foreign origin, has the sound of the English *k*.

Ex. *kermesse*, a festival ; *kiosque*, kiosk ; *kilomètre*, a measure.

L simple is pronounced as in English.

Ex. *laurier*, laurel ; *livre*, book ; *loge*, box ; *lune*, moon.

Final *l* is ordinarily pronounced.

Ex. *mal*, ill ; *ciel*, heaven ; *fol*, mad.

But it is silent in *baril*, barrel ; *chenil*, kennel ; *coutil*, ticking ; *cul*, seat ; *fournil*, bakehouse ; *fusil*, gun ; *gril*, gridiron ; *gentil*, gentle ; *nombril* ; *outil*, tool ; *persil*, parsley ; *saoul*, drunk ; *sourcil*, eyebrow.

In *pouls*, pulse, both final consonants are silent, as also in *aulx*, garlic. *Fils*, son, is pronounced without the *l*, but the *s* is heard, to distinguish it from *fil*, thread, in which the *l* is heard.

L preceded by *i* has a liquid sound, which has to be learned from the teacher's lips ; it approaches that of the English word brilliant.

Ex. *travail*, labor ; *orgueil*, pride ; *sommeil*, sleep.

From this rule are excepted *il*, he or it ; *fil*, thread ; *mil*, thousand ; all adjectives in *il*, and those words above mentioned, in which *i* is silent.

Ll, preceded by *i*, has generally the same liquid sound.

Ex. *fille*, daughter ; *oreille*, ear ; *feuille*, sheet ; *tailleur*, tailor.

From this rule are excepted *ville*, town ; *mille*, thousand and its derivatives, and all words beginning with *ill*, as *illustre*, illustrious, *illégitime*, illegitimate ; *illusion*, etc. Excepted are also the cities of *Lille* and *Séville*, the name of *Achille* and few others.

Both *l*'s in *ll* are heard in *alléger*, to allege ; *allégorie*, allusion, *belligérant*, collaborateur ; *colloque*, colloquy ; *constellation*, *ellébore*, gallican, *gallicanisme*, *hellénisme*, *intelligent* ; *libeller*, to libel ; *rébellion*, *solliciter*, *velléité*, and some of their derivatives.

Ll is pronounced like single *l* in *collège* and *collation*.

Lh is pronounced like single *l*, except in proper names, as *Milhaud* and *Sardailhac*, where it is liquid.

M has the same sound as in English, except when final, in which case it has a nasal sound, as mentioned above, and does not differ from *n*.

It has also the sound of *n*, when it precedes *m*, *b* or *p*.

Ex. *emmener*, to carry off; *combler*, to overwhelm; *comparer*.

Mm is generally pronounced like single *m*.

Ex. *grammaire*; *commis*, clerk; *dilemme*, dilemma.

N has the same sound as in English, except when final, in which case it has a nasal sound, as mentioned above.

After both *m* and *n*, final consonants become silent.

Ex. *temps*, time; *prompt*.

Except in the following words, in which all consonants are sounded: *cens*, census; *sens*, sense (when not followed by *commun*); *distinct*, *succinct*, *larynx*, *lynx*, *sphynx*; and *zinc*, zinc. *n* is silent in the proper name of *Béarns*.

P has the same sound as in English.

Ex. *péril*, danger; *pigeon*; *pommade*, pomatum.

It is silent in *baptême*, baptism, and several of its derivatives; *domp-ter*, to subdue; *compte*, account; *sculpter*, to carve; *sept*, seven, and its derivatives.

It is pronounced in *baptismal*, *septembre*, *septenaire* and *exemption*, and generally in the middle of a word.

Final *p* is silent, except in *cap*, cape; *jalap*, jalap; *julep*, julap; *salep*, and in proper names. Both of the final consonants are heard in *laps*, interval; *relaps*, relapse, and *rap*, rape.

Ph is pronounced like *f*.

Ex. *phare*, lighthouse; *phosphore*, phosphorus; *philosophe*.

Pp is sounded like single *p*.

Ex. *appeler*, a-pe-ler, to call; *frapper*, fra-per, to strike.

Q is always followed by *u* and pronounced like *k*.

Ex. *quart*, fourth; *qui*, who; *quotidien*, daily; *queue*, tail.

It has no *u* after it in *coq*, cock; *cing*, five; nor in *piqûre*, pricking, to avoid two *u*'s succeeding each other.

It is pronounced like *kou* before *a* in the following words: *aquatile, aquarelle, aquatique; équateur, equator; liquation, loquacité, quadruple*, and words of the same root, except *quadrille*, where it has the sound of *k*, *quartz*; and *quacre, quaker*.

Both letters *q* and *u* are heard distinctly, like *qu* in *équestre*, equestrian; *équilatéral* and all mathematical words beginning with *équi*; *liquéfaction; questeur, questor; quiet*, and its derivatives; *quiproquo, quolibet, quinconce* and all words in which *quin* stands for five, except *quincailler*, ironmonger, and its derivatives.

It has the sound of *k* in *Quinte-Curce, Quintus-Curtius, and Quintilien*.

Both sounds of *k* and of *kou* are heard in succession in words like *quinquagésime* and *quinquagénnaire*, a man of fifty.

R has the same sound as in English, but it is more strongly marked and "rolled," as it is commonly called.

Ex. *ragoût; règle, rule; rivage, bank; rouge, red; ordre, order; trace; vendre, to sell*.

Final *r* is silent after *e*, which is pronounced like *é*.

Ex. *dernier, last; parler, to speak; officier, officer*.

Except in *cher, dear; mer, sea; amer, bitter; hier, yesterday; avant-hier, before yesterday; cuiller, spoon; éther, ether; fer, iron; enfer, hell; hiver, winter; lucifer, magister; outremer, ultramarine; pater, Lord's prayer; ver, worm*, and some proper names, as *Jupiter, Esther, Niger*.

Final *r* is pronounced after the vowels *a, i, o* and *u*.

Ex. *char, car; or, gold; servir, to serve; erreur, error*.

Except in *monsieur, sir*, where it is always silent.

R is silent in *notre, our*, and *votre, your*, before a consonant.

Ex. *notre maison not' maison; votre sœur (vot' sœur), your sister*.

Rr is pronounced like a single *r*.

Ex. *parrain, godfather; carrosse, carriage; guerre, war*.

Except in *aberration* ; *concurrence* ; *abhorrer*, to abhor ; *errata* ; *errer*, to err, and its derivatives ; *horreur*, horror ; *horrible* ; *inter-règne*, interregnum ; *narration* ; *terreur*, terror ; *torrent* ; *terrifier* ; in most words beginning with *ir*, as *irrégulier*, and in the future and conditional of verbs, like *acquérir*, to acquire ; *mourir*, to die, and *courir*, to run, as will be seen in the chapter of verbs.

Rh is pronounced like *r* alone.

Ex. *rhume*, cold ; *rythme*, rhythmus

All final consonants are silent after *r*.

Ex. *mort*, death ; *sort*, fate ; *regard*, glance.

Except *mars*, March ; *ours*, bear ; *parc*, park, where both are heard.

S has a sharp sound like *ss* in English and a soft sound like English *z*.

It is *hard* at the beginning of words, when followed by a vowel or a consonant.

Ex. *sage*, wise ; *séjour*, stay ; *son*, sound ; *sucré*, sugar ; *scandale* ; *scorpion* ; *estomac*, stomach ; *squelette*, skeleton.

When in the middle of a word it is preceded or followed by a consonant.

Ex. *absolu*, absolute ; *converser*, to converse ; *lorsque*, when.

And when it is double.

Ex. *coussin*, cushion ; *basse*, base ; *rosse*, jade ; *Russe*, Russian ; *poisson*, fish.

These words must be carefully distinguished from *cousin*, cousin ; *base*, base ; *rose*, rose ; *poison*, poison, and *ruse*, cunning, where the *s* is soft.

It is *soft*, when single and standing between two vowels or followed by *h* mute.

Ex. *maison*, house ; *raser*, to shave ; *déshonneur*, dishonor.

Except that it is *hard* in compound words, where *s* was originally initial, as in *parasol*, sunshade ; *vraisemblable*, likely ; in a few words of foreign origin, as in *désuétude* and *réorption*, and in the tenses of the verb *gésir*, to lie.

It is soft in *Jersey, Alsace; balsamine, balsam; presbytère*, and like derivatives, when followed by *b*, and in the syllable *trans*, as in *transaction*; but not in *transir*, to chill.

It is silent in the proper name *Duguesclin*.

Sce and *sci* are pronounced like *ce* and *ci*.

Ex. *scène*, stage; *science*; *scélérat*, rascal.

St is sounded in *est*, east; *ouest*, west; *lest*, ballast; *Chris* (except in *Jésus-Christ*, when it is silent); in *antichrist*, *test*, and the name of the city of *Brest*.

Final *s* is generally silent, as in the plural of nouns and the verbs; but is pronounced in *fil*s, son; *aloès*; *as*, ace; *atlas*; *blocus*, blockade; *cens*, census; *dervis*, dervish; *en sus*, beside; *iris*; *jadis*, formerly; *lis*, lily; *maïs*, maize; *mars*, March; *métis*, mongrel; *mœurs*, manners; *tous*, all (when a pronoun); *ours*, bear; *plus*, more (when final); *vis*, screw; in foreign words, as *gratis*, *tétanos*, etc., and in some proper names, as in *Rheims*, *Brutus*, *Gil Blas*, etc., although it is silent in *Mathias*, *Judas*, *Thomas*.

T has two sounds: one like the English *t* in *to*; the other like the French sound of *c* before *i*.

It is *hard* at the beginning and in the middle of words.

Ex. *tabac*, tobacco; *ténèbres*, darkness; *torrent*, *tumulte*, *anatomie*; *entamer*, to touch; *bâton*, stick.

It is *soft* in the final syllable *tion*.

Ex. *satisfaction*; *pétition*, pé-ti-ci-on; *patience*, pa-ci-ence.

And in the following words: *argutie*, cavil; *initier*, to initiate; *balbutier*, to stammer; *calvitie*, baldness; *facétie*, jest; *inertie*, inertness; *impéritie*, want of experience; *patient* and *patience*; *minutie*, trifle; *péripétie*, change of fortune; *prophétie*; *satiété*, satiety; *aristocratie*, and all words ending in *atie* and their derivations, and in some proper names, as *Dio-clétien*, and *Vénitien*.

It retains its hard sound in all combinations of *tie*.

Ex. *tien*, thine; *tiers*, third; *amitié*, friendship; *entier*, entire.

Tt is somewhat like a single *t*, except in *attique*, attic; *atticisme*, guttural and *pittoresque*, picturesque, where both are heard.

Final *t* is generally silent.

Ex. *mot*, word; *rat*, rat; *est* (pronounced *è*), is.

Except in *aconit*, aconite; *brut*, rough; *chut*, hush; *cobalt*, comput, *accessit*; *dot*, dowry; *déficit*; *fat*, coxcomb; *fret*, freight; *granit*; in *sept*, seven, and *huit*, eight (when they are not followed by a consonant); in *indult*; *lut*, lute; *malt*; *mat*, impolished; *net*, neat; *opiat*; *occiput*; *pat*, stale mate; *prétérît*; *ropt*, rape; *rit*, rite, and in all Latin words.

It is always silent in *et*, and in *eut*, the termination of the third person plural of verbs, which is altogether silent.

Th is pronounced like a single *t*, it being a mere etymological sign of Greek, Hebrew, and foreign words generally.

Ex. *thé*, tea; *théâtre*; *absinthe*; *thon*, tunnyfish.

It is altogether silent in *asthme*, pronounced *asme*.

V has the same sound as in English.

Ex. *valeur*, valor; *vide*, empty; *voleur*, thief; *veuve*, widow.

W, which occurs only in foreign words, with the educated retains the sound it has at home.

Ex. *Newton*, *whist*, *Washington*, *Westphalie*.

With the mass of the people, it is apt to be sounded like *s*, and the name of the Scotchman Law is pronounced *Lasse*.

X, which also occurs principally in foreign words only, has different sounds.

It is pronounced like *ks* in the middle of words.

Ex. *sere*, *paradoxe*; *lux*, luxury; *Alexandre*, *flaxion*.

It is pronounced like *gs* at the beginning of proper names.

Ex. *Xavier*, *Xantippe*, *Xerxès*, *Xénophon*.

And in the words beginning with *ex*, followed by a vowel.

Ex. *eril*, *examen*; *exaucer*, to hear favorably.

It is pronounced like *ss* in *six*, six; *dix*, ten; *soixante*, sixty, and in the proper names *Aix*, *Auxerre*, *Auxonne*, and *Bruxelles*.

It is pronounced like *z* in the derivatives of *deux*, two; as *deuxième*, second; of *six*, as *sixième*, sixth; of *dix*, as *dixième*, tenth; and their compounds, as *dix-sept*, seventeen.

Final *x* is silent, except in proper names, where it is sounded like *ks*.

Ex. *Ajax*, *Phénix*.

In *cocatrix*, cochatrice; *préfix*, and *Aix-la-Chapelle*, and in words derived from Latin or Greek, as in *lynx*, *sphynx*, *index* etc.

Z is pronounced as the English *z* in *zest*.

Ex. *zône*, *Zacharie*, *zéphyr*.

Final *z* is sounded only in foreign names, as *Suez*, *Cortez*, and in *Metz*.

PRONUNCIATION IN READING AND SPEAKING.

The consonants have besides the sound which is given to them in the word to which they belong, often another or an additional sound, when they occur in connected sentences, which are read or spoken. The two principal rules on this sujet are:

1. Final consonants, preceding a word that begins with a vowel or *h* mute, are generally pronounced as if they were the initial letter of the second word, provided the two words, thus to be connected in sound, are also connected in meaning, as adjectives before nouns or pronouns before verbs.

Ex. *mon ami*, mo-nami; *petit enfant*, peti-tenfant; *nous avons*, nou-zavons; *ils ont*, il-zont.

2. When a word ending in *e* mute is followed by one beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, the last consonant of the first is in the same manner pronounced as if it formed the initial of the second word.

Ex. *la France entière*, la Fran-cen-ti-ère; *l'honnête homme*, l'honné-tomme.

The following words are excepted from this rule, and treated

as if they began with a consonant, so that no connection takes place between them and the preceding word :

Et, and ; *oui*, yes ; *onze*, eleven, with its derivatives ; *unième*, first ; *yacht*, *yatagan* ; *yole*, yawl ; *ouest*, west, and the interjections beginning with a vowel, as *ah ! oh ! ouf !* etc.

Final consonants, when thus transferred, as it were, to the next word, change their sounds slightly. This is done in the following manner :

C becomes *k*.

Ex. *franc-arbitre*, free will ; *porc-épic*, porcupine.

D becomes *t*.

Ex. *un grand-homme*, a great man ; *pied-à-terre*, a place to alight ; *une grande-âme*, a great heart.

The following words ending in *d*, do not unite with the next word : *chaud*, warm ; *froid*, cold ; *bord*, edge ; *gland*, a corn ; *gond*, hinge ; *nid*, nest ; *nœud*, knot ; *pied*, foot, except in compounds.

F becomes *v*.

Ex. *neuf ans*, *neu-vans*, nine years ; *vif amour*, *vi-vamour*, warm love.

G becomes *k*.

Ex. *de rang en rang*, from rank to rank ; *un long accès*, a long attack.

L is never connected with the next word, except when it is sounded already in a single word. Otherwise, it retains its sound.

Ex. *il est*, he his ; *il y eut*, there was.

The word *gentil* changes the *l* into a liquid sound before vowels, as in *un gentil enfant*, a pretty child. This does not apply, however, to the plural.

N, when nasal, changes into the sound of *nn*, of which the first is nasal and the second united with the next word.

Ex. *mon ami*, my friend ; *son honneur*, his honor.

If nasal *n* should end a noun, it retains its original sound and is not connected with the next word.

Ex. *une passion aveugle*, a blind passion.

If *n* should be followed by a final consonant, the latter alone is transferred to the next word, unless it be *c* or *p*, which remain silent.

Ex. *un savant artiste*, a learned artist. But *un champ ensemencé*, a sowed field.

The letter *t* of the syllable *ent* in verbs, which is silent, is nevertheless connected with the next word.

Ex. *Ils parlaient ensemble*, they spoke together; *ils sont ici*, they are here.

P is connected with the next word only in the words *coup*, blow; *trop*, too much, and *beaucoup*, much.

Ex. *Il a trop aimé*, he has loved too much; *un coup atroce*, a fearful blow.

Q becomes *k*.

Ex. *cinq ans*, five years; *coq-à-l'âne*, cock and bull story.

R remains silent in the infinitives in *er*, except in poetry, and in *monsieur*. In other cases, it is connected with the next word.

When *r* is followed by a final consonant, the latter remains silent, and *r* alone is connected with the next word; *c*, however, is always sounded.

Ex. *un sort agréable*, a pleasant fate; *un tort énorme*, grievous wrong; *arc-en-ciel*, rainbow.

S becomes *z*.

Ex. *vous avez*, you have; *elles avaient*, they had.

Final *s* in the inflections of the verb is carried only in poetry.

T at the end of nouns is not carried to the next word, except in *but*, end, unless it was already previously pronounced, as in *fat*, coxcomb. All final *t*'s, however, are sounded in poetry, except in *et*, and.

T is carried in *fort*, when it means *very*, but *r* only, when it means *strong*.

Ex. *Il est fort aimable*, he is very good. But

Il est fort et grand, he is strong and tall.

T is always carried in *est*, is, but never sounded in *et*, and.

Ex. *Il est excellent*, he is excellent; *elle est heureuse*, she is happy.

X becomes *z*.

Ex. *aux enfants*, to the children; *six hommes*, six men.

Z is carried only in dignified style and poetry; ordinarily it is heard only in the second person plural of verbs.

Ex. *vous avez eu*, you have had; *vous aviez été*, you had been.

II.—ELISION.

The three vowels *a*, *e* and *i* are, under certain circumstances, suppressed or elided, and this process is called Elision. It is always indicated by a sign ('), called an Apostrophe, which takes the place of the elided vowel. The effect of elision is that the two words, that which has lost its final vowel and the next word, which begins with a vowel or *h* mute, are pronounced as one word.

Ex. *l'homme*, lom, the man; *l'honneur*, lonneur, the honor.

The vowel *i* is elided only in the word *si*, if, when it precedes the two pronouns *il*, he, and *ils*, they.

Ex. (*si il*) *s'il vient*, if he comes; (*si ils*) *s'ils veulent*, if they will.

The vowel *a* is elided only in the feminine of the article *la*, the, and the feminine of the personal pronoun *la*, her, but before all vowels and before *h* mute.

Ex. (*la amie*), *l'amie*, the friend; (*la habitude*), *l'habitude*, the habit; *je (la aime) l'aime*, I love her; *il (la usurpe) l'usurpe*, he usurps it (fem.); *il (la honore) l'honore*, he honors her.

The vowel *e* is elided, when it is unaccented, at the end of a monosyllabic word or of some compounds with *que*, that, before all vowels and *h* mute.

Ex. (*je aspire*) *j'aspire*, I aspire; *elle* (*me adore*) *m'adore*, she worships me; *ils* (*le honorent*) *l'honorent*, they honor him; *on* (*se habille*) *s'habille*, they are dressing; *j'y cours*, I run there; (*ce est*) *c'est bon*, that is right; *quoiqu'il vienne*, although he come; *parce qu'elle lit*, because she reads.

Entre elides its final *e* before reciprocal verbs, with which it forms a compound.

Ex. *s'entr'aider* (*se entre aider*), to help each other; *s'entr'ouvrir* (*se entre ouvrir*), to commune with each other; *s'entr'accuser*, to accuse each other.

Jusque elides its *e* before *a*, *au*, *aux* and *ici*.

Ex. *jusqu'à Rome*, as far as Rome; *jusqu'au ciel*, up to heaven; *jusqu'aux nues*, to the clouds; *jusqu'ici*, until now.

Puisque and *quoique* elide their *e* only when followed by *il*, *ils*, *elle*, *elles*, *on*, *un* and *une*, or a word with which they are indissolubly connected.

Ex. *puisque ainsi est*, since it is so; *puisque elle le veut*, since she wills it so; *quoiqu'on soit*, although they be.

But we must write: *quoique étranger*, although a stranger; *puisque invisible*, since invisible.

Quelque elides its *e* only before *un*, *une*, *quelqu'un*, *quelqu'une*, and in *quel qu'il soit* and *quelle qu'elle soit*. Hence we must say *quelque île*, some island, and *quelque espoir*, some hope. *Quelqu'autre* is used by some authors.

Presque elides its *e* only in *presqu'île*, peninsula.

No elision takes place when there is no mental connection between the two words, which would otherwise be subject to these rules. Hence, *e. g.*, when *le*, *la* and other pronouns are placed after their verbs, they are not elided, although they may be followed by a vowel, because they belong to the verb and not to the next word.

Ex. *Menez-le à Paris*, take him to Paris; *prenez-la avec vous*, take it with you.

Nor will any elision take place before those exceptional words, which, although beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, are treated as if their initial letter were a consonant.

Ex. *le huitième*, the eighth; *le onzième*, the eleventh; *les oui et non*, the ayes and noes.

An anomalous elision takes place in the word *grande*, which loses its final *e* before certain nouns beginning with a consonant, with which it forms a kind of compound noun.

Ex. *grand'mère*, grandmother; *grand'messe*, high mass; *grand'voile*, mainmast, etc.

It must not be forgotten that no elision takes place before aspirated *h*.

Ex. *le hameau*, the hamlet; *le héros*, the hero.

III.—SYLLABICATION.

French words are, like English words, divided into syllables, but the manner of dividing them differs in the two languages. The following rules have to be observed in French :

1. A consonant between two vowels goes with the second, and not, as in English, with the first vowel.

Ex. *ma-ri*, husband; *phi-la-sophe*, philosopher.

This rule is all the more important as it affects, of course, the pronunciation also. The English pronounce *med-icine*, the French *mé-de-cine*; they say *pol-ities*, the French say *poli-tique*.

2. Two consonants between two vowels divide so that one goes with the preceding, the other with the following vowel.

Ex. *par-ti*, party; *frap-per*, to strike; *er-reur*, error, unless the two consonants can be produced by one utterance, such as *br*, *cl*, *cr*, and others. These combinations are the same in French as in English, and here the two consonants go both with the second vowel.

Ex. *a-bri*, shelter; *ré-clame*, puff; *su-crier*, sugar-dish.

3. With three consonants, the syllables divide between the second and third.

Ex. *obs-cur*, obscure ; *arc-tique*, arctic, unless the three consonants also can be pronounced in one impulse of the voice, when the division is made after the first consonant.

Ex. *at-tri-but*, attribute ; *ac-trice*, actress.

4. With four consonants, two go with the first and two with the second syllable.

Ex. *obs-tractif*, obstructive ; *abs-trait*, abstruse.

5. When two or more vowels meet, the manner of dividing them depends on the rules given before, which state when they form one or more syllables, and examples have been given there as to the proper division.

IV.—QUANTITY.

Quantity means in French simply the longer or shorter time which is given to the pronunciation of a syllable. It has nothing to do with the accent of the voice, which raises or lowers the latter, but does not lengthen or shorten the word. The French has very minute and strict rules on this part of pronunciation, of which the following are the most important :

1. Every syllable ending in a consonant (except *s* and *z*) is short.

Ex. *săc*, sack ; *nectăr* ; *fîl*, thread ; *pôt*, pot ; *bût*, end.

2. Every masculine syllable becomes long in the plural.

Ex. *săcs* ; *sêls*, salts ; *pôts*.

3. Every masculine singular, ending in *s*, *x* or *z*, is long.

Ex. *tēmps*, time ; *nēz*, nose ; *voîx*, voice.

4. Nasal vowels followed by consonants (except *m* and *n*) are long.

Ex. *jāmbe*, leg ; *crăinte*, fear ; *hūmble* ; *tōmber*, to fall ; but followed by *m* and *n*, they are short.

Ex. *épigrămme* ; *persōnne*, somebody ; *prēnne*, take.

5. Every syllable ending in *r* and not followed by *r*, is short.

Ex. *bārbe*, beard; *bērceau*, cradle; *infirme*, *ordre*,

but if followed by *r*, it is long.

Ex. *arrēt*, sentence; *bizārre*, odd; *tonnērre*, thunder.

6. Placed between two vowels, of which the second is mute, *s* and *z* lengthen the first.

Ex. *bāse*, basis; *bētise*, blunder; *époūse*, wife.

7. *S* preceding another consonant shortens the syllable before it.

Ex. *māsque*, mask; *āstre*, star; *burlēsque*.

8. A final mute *e* lengthens the vowel preceding it.

Ex. *pensēe*, thought; *jōie*, joy; *il joūe*, he plays, *rūe*, street.

9. Every other vowel following another vowel renders it short.

Ex. *crēe*, created; *actiōn*; *hāir*, to hate; *tūcr*, to kill.

In the following words which are sounded alike, quantity alone determines the meaning, but only the more important words and such as occur ordinarily have been given.

LONG.	SHORT.
<i>ācre</i> , sharp.	<i>ācre</i> , acre (of land).
<i>alēac</i> , shoemaker's tool.	<i>halīac</i> , breath.
<i>arīant</i> , before.	<i>arīant</i> , advent.
<i>bāiller</i> , to gape.	<i>bāiller</i> , to rent.
<i>bāt</i> , padded saddle.	<i>bāt</i> (il), he beats.
<i>bēte</i> , beast.	<i>bētte</i> , root.
<i>bōite</i> , box.	<i>bōite</i> (il), he limps.
<i>bōnd</i> , leap.	<i>bōn</i> , good.
<i>chāir</i> , flesh.	<i>chēr</i> , dear.
<i>clāir</i> , clear.	<i>clēre</i> , clerk.
<i>cōrps</i> , body.	<i>cōr</i> , horn.
<i>cōte</i> , rib.	<i>cōte</i> , numerical mark.
<i>cours</i> , course or corpse.	<i>cōūr</i> , yard.
<i>crāint</i> (il), he fears.	<i>crēn</i> , hair.
<i>cūire</i> , to cook.	<i>cūir</i> , leather.
<i>dōnt</i> , whose.	<i>dōn</i> , gift.
<i>fāite</i> , summit.	<i>fāite</i> , done (part. past).
<i>fēte</i> feast.	

fāix, burden. }
fāis (tu), thou doest. }
forēt, forest.
fūmes (nous), we were.
grāve, grave.
hāle, burning air.
jāis, jet.
jeūne, fasting.

lēgs, legacy.

lāisse (je), I let
mātin, dog.
mōis, month.
mōnt, mountain.
mūr, ripe.
māsse, end of cue.
pēcher, to sin.
pēne, part of lock.
plēine, plain.
saūt, leap.

saīnt, saint.

scēne, scene.
cēne, Lord's supper.
sāine, sound.
tūche, task.
trēs, very.
vāine, vain.
vīvres, victuals.
vōix, voice.
vōler, to steal.

faīt (il), he does.

forēt, borer.
fūme (je), I smoke.
grāve (il), he engraves.
hālle, hall.
jēt, throw.
jeūne, young.

{ *laī*, layman.
 { *laīd*, ugly.
 { *laīt*, milk.

lāisse, leash.
mātin, morning.
moī, me.
mōn, my.
mūr, wall.
māsse, mass.
pēcher, to fish.
pēine, pain.
plēine, full.
sōt, fool.

{ *seīn*, bosom.
 { *ceīnt*, girt.
 { *seīng*, signature.
Seīne, (river).

tāche, spot.
trait, feature.
veīne, vein.
vīvre, to live.
vōīt, (il), he sees.
vōler, to fly.

V.—PUNCTUATION.

The marks of Punctuation are the same in French as in English, with the addition of a few peculiar to French. They are the following :

Comma,	(,)	called in French	<i>Virgule.</i>
Semicolon,	(;)	"	" <i>Point et virgule.</i>
Colon,	(:)	"	" <i>Deux points.</i>
Period,	(.)	"	" <i>Point.</i>
Note of exclamation,	(!)	"	" <i>Point d'exclamation.</i>
Note of interrogation,	(?)	"	" <i>Point d'interrogation</i>
Parenthesis,	()	"	" <i>Parenthèse.</i>
Dash,	(—)	"	" <i>Tiret.</i>
Quotation mark,	(")	"	" <i>Guillemets.</i>
Cedilla,	(¸)	"	" <i>Cédille.</i>
Dieresis,	(¨)	"	" <i>Tréma.</i>
Hyphen,	(-)	"	" <i>Trait d'union.</i>
Apostrophe,	(')	"	" <i>Apostrophe.</i>

A LIST OF THE MOST COMMON ABBREVIATIONS IN FRENCH.

A. P. <i>à protester</i> , to be protested.	M ^{de} <i>marchande</i> .
A. S. P. <i>accepté sans protêt</i> , accepted without protest.	M ^{le} <i>mademoiselle</i> , miss.
A. S. P. A. <i>accepté sans protêt pour à compte</i> .	M ^{gr} . <i>Monsieur</i> .
B ^m <i>baron</i> , baron.	M ^s <i>marquis</i> , marquis.
B ^{onne} <i>baronne</i> , baroness.	M ^{ise} <i>marquise</i> , marchioness.
Ch ^{er} <i>chevalier</i> , knight.	MM. <i>messieurs</i> , Messrs.
C ^{te} <i>comte</i> , count.	M ^{me} <i>madame</i> , Mrs.
C ^{esse} <i>comtesse</i> , countess.	Mst. <i>manuscrit</i> , MS.
D. O. M. <i>Deo Optimo Maximo</i> .	N. B. <i>Nota bene</i> .
D ^r <i>docteur</i> , doctor.	N. D. <i>Notre-Dame</i> , Our Lady.
D ^r M ^d or D. M. doctor of Medicine.	Négt. <i>négociant</i> , wholesale merchant.
J. C. <i>Jésus-Christ</i> .	N ^o <i>numéro</i> , number, No.
LL. AA. II. <i>Leurs Altesses Impériales</i> , Their Imperial Highnesses.	N. S. <i>Notre-Seigneur</i> , Our Lord.
LL. AA. RR. <i>Leurs Altesses Royales</i> , Their Royal Highnesses.	N. S. J. C. <i>N. S. Jésus-Christ</i> .
LL. Em. <i>Leurs Eminences</i> , Their Eminences.	% <i>pour cent</i> , per cent.
LL. Ex. <i>Leurs Excellences</i> , Their Excellencies.	P. S. <i>post scriptum</i> , P. S.
	R. P. <i>Révérénd Père</i> , Revd Father.
	S. A. I. <i>Son Altesse Impériale</i> , His Imperial Highness.
	S. A. R. <i>S. A. Royale</i> , His Royal Highness.
	S. A. S. <i>S. A. Sérénissime</i> , His Serene Highness.

LL. HH. <i>Leurs Hautessees</i> , Their Highnesses.	S. E. <i>Son Eminence</i> .
LL. MM. <i>Leurs Majestés</i> , Their Majesties.	S. M. <i>Sa Majesté</i> , His or Her Majesty.
LL. MM. II. LL. MM. <i>Imp'riales</i> , Their Imperial Majesties.	S. M. B. <i>S. M. Britannique</i> , His Britannic Majesty.
LL. MM. RR. LL. MM. <i>Royales</i> , Their Royal Majesties.	S. M. C. <i>S. M. Catholique</i> , His Catholic Majesty.
M. or Mr <i>monsieur</i> , Mr.	S. M. I. <i>S. M. Impériale</i> , His Imperial Majesty.
M. A. <i>maison assurée</i> , insured.	S. M. T. C. <i>S. M. Très Chrétienne</i> , His Most Christian Majesty.
M. A. C. I. <i>M. A. contre l'incendie</i> , insured against fire.	S. P. <i>Saint-Père</i> , Holy Father.
M ^d <i>marchand</i> , merchant.	S. S. <i>Sa Sainteté</i> , His Holiness.

ON THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

According to established usage, the words of the French language are divided into nine classes. These are: 1. Nouns, 2. Articles; 3. Adjectives; 4. Pronouns; 5. Verbs; 6. Adverbs; 7. Prepositions; 8. Conjunctions; 9. Interjections.

CHAPTER I.

NOUNS.

Nouns are simply the names of persons or things.

Ex. *Pierre*, Peter; *Londres*, London; *Autriche*, Austria; *terre*, earth; *soleil*, sun; *vertu*, virtue.

Proper Nouns belong to one man or one object only, and hence their name.

Ex. *César*, Cæsar; *Louis*, Lewis; *Russie*, Russia; *Vésuve*, Vesuvius.

Common Nouns are the names which are common to a whole class of objects.

Ex. *homme*, man; *arbre*, tree; *oiseau*, bird.

Collective Nouns are the names which are common to a certain number, a collection of persons or things, and hence under a singular form represent a plural meaning.

Ex. *armée*, army ; *foule*, crowd ; *quantité*, quantity ; *moitié*, half.

There are two important points to be considered in connection with nouns : Gender and Number.

GENDER OF NOUNS.

French nouns have two genders, Masculine and Feminine. As there is no Neuter in French, all English nouns of that gender must be in French either masculine or feminine.

We ascertain the gender of a French word : 1. by its signification, and 2. by its termination.

GENDER OF NOUNS ACCORDING TO SIGNIFICATION.

1. *Masculine*, are the nouns which designate male beings, and such as we are accustomed to consider as male.

Ex. *homme*, man ; *lion*, lion ; *ange*, angel ; *génie*, genius.

2. *Feminine*, are the nouns which designate female beings, and such as we are accustomed to consider as female.

Ex. *femme*, wife ; *lionne*, lioness ; *furie*, fury.

3. Nouns which represent qualities belonging to men and to women, change their gender accordingly.

Ex. *l'étranger*, m., the foreigner ; *l'étrangère*, f., the foreign lady.

4. *Masculine*, are the names of days, months and seasons ; of trees, metals and elementary substances ; of languages, measures, numbers and fractions, weight.

Ex. *le mardi*, Tuesday ; *mars*, March ; *le printemps*, spring ; *le pin*, pine ; *le fer*, iron ; *le granit*, granite ; *le François*, French ; *le mètre*, the metre ; *le quart*, the fourth ; *le centième*, the hundredth.

One tree, *yeuse*, an oak, is feminine; and a few shrubs, as *épine*, thorn; *ronce*, brier, *vigne*, vine, etc.

Collective numbers also are feminine, as *la douzaine*, dozen; *la moitié*, half.

5. *Masculine*, are the names of mountains and winds, and those of countries and rivers which do not end in *e* mute.

Ex. *le Caucase*, Caucasus; *le Vésuve*, Vesuvius; *le Nord*, North wind; *le Piémont*, Piedmont; *le Danemarck*, Denmark; *le Tage*, Tagus.

Except the names of mountains used only in the plural, as *les Alpes* and *les Pyrénées*; and of winds the following: *la brise*, breeze; *la bise*, N. E. wind; *la tramontane*, N. wind.

The names of rivers ending in *e* mute are masculine or feminine, according to their derivation; hence *le Rhône*, from Rhodanus; and *la Seine*, from Sequana.

6. *Feminine*, are the names of virtues, qualities and festivals.

Ex. *la vertu*, virtue; *la bonté*, goodness; *la haine*, hatred; *la Saint-Jean*, St. John's day.

Except *Noël*, Christmas; and *Pâques*, when it means Easter Sunday; and *courage* and *mérite*, all of which are masculine.

7. The gender of *Compound Nouns* depends upon the nature of their composition, which will be explained hereafter. No general rule, applying to all cases, can here be given, though it may be learned that when they contain a noun and an adjective, the noun determines the gender.

Ex. *eau-forte*, aqua-fortis, fem. because *eau* is feminine; *esprit-fort*, great wit, masc. because *esprit* is masculine.

And when they consist of two nouns, the principal noun determines the gender.

Ex. *arc-en-ciel*, rainbow, masc.; *arrière-boutique*, back shop, fem.

GENDER OF NOUNS ACCORDING TO THEIR TERMINATIONS.

The rules which determine the Gender of Nouns by their form, depend mainly upon the fact that these nouns are generally derived from the Latin, and retain the gender which they had in that language. Hence we obtain the following rules, which are the most important :

1. *Feminine*, are nouns ending in*cion*, as *succion*.*sion*, as *lésion*.*tion*, as *attention*.*gion*, as *religion*.*xion*, as *crucifixion*.*nion*, as *union*.} *bastion* and *scion*.*té*, as *chrétienté*, christianity.

{ *aparté*, aside ; *arrêté*, resolution ;
comté, county ; *été*, summer ;
pâté, pie ; *précipité*, precipitate ;
comité, committee ; *côté*, side ;
traité, treaty ; *thé*, tea.

eur, as *fauteur*, favor.

{ *bonheur*, happiness ; *chœur*,
chorus ; *cœur*, heart ; *dénomina-
teur* ; *déshonneur*, dishonor ; *divi-
seur*, divisor ; *équateur*, equator ;
extérieur ; *honneur*, honor ; *inté-
rieur* ; *labeur*, labor ; *malheur*,
misfortune ; *multiplicateur* ; *nu-
mérateur* ; *pleurs*, tears ; *régula-
teur* ; *secteur* ; *ventilateur*.

son and *çon*, as *unison*, unity, and
façon, fashion.

{ *bison* ; *blason*, blason ; *buisson*,
buzzard ; *diapason* ; *gazon*, turf ;
horizon ; *peson*, steelyard ; *poison*,
poison ; *oisson*, gosling ; *tison*, fire-
brand ; *piçon*, saçon, etc.

2. *Masculine* are nouns ending in*an*, as *ouragan*, hurricane.*lon*, as *aquilon*, a wind.*ron*, as *baron*.*oul*, as *ragoût*, stew.

ment, as *jugement*, judgment.

au, as *tuyau*, pipe, (except *eau*, water, and *peau*, skin).

in, as *bassin*, basin, (except *fin*, end, and *main*, hand).

et, as *brevet*, (except *forêt*, forest).

ot, as *gigot*, leg, (except *dot*, dowry).

3. Nouns ending in mute *e* may be considered as feminine. Hence, the names of most countries and all cities are of this gender, when ending in mute *e*.

Ex. *la France*, France; *la Syrie*, Syria; *la Rochelle*.

Some names of countries ending in mute *e* are masculine: *le Bengale*, Bengal; *le Mexique*, Mexico; *le Péloponèse*.

But among the nouns ending in mute *e*, many classes are masculine, of which we mention here the most numerous and important only.

Masculine, are those ending in

except the *Feminines*:

age, as *esclavage*, slavery.

{ *cage*, cage; *image*; *nage*, swimming; *page*, page of a book; *plage*, beach; *rage*, rage.

me, as *baptême*.

{ *alarme*; *âme*, soul; *amertume*, bitterness; *arme*, weapon; *coutume*, custom; *crème*, cream; *écume*, foam; *énigme*, *épigramme*; *estime*, esteem; *ferme*, farm; *flamme*, flame; *forme*; *gomme*, gum; *lame*, blade; *larme*, tear; *lime*, file; *maxime*; *plume*, pen; *pomme*, apple; *rame*, oar; *réforme*; *rime*, rhyme; *somme*, sum; *victime*; *cime*, summit; *dime*, tithe; *enclume*, anvil; *escrime*, fencing; *gamme*, gamut; *prime*, premium; *trame*, web, and a few others rarely used.

tre, as *chapitre*, chapter.

{ *chartre*, constitution; *fenêtre*, window; *guêtre*, gaiter; *huître*, oyster; *lettre*, letter; *montre*,

<i>tre</i> , as <i>chapitre</i> , chapter.	{ watch ; <i>piastre</i> ; <i>poutre</i> , beam , <i>rencontre</i> , meeting ; <i>vâtre</i> , pane- <i>épître</i> , epistle ; <i>mitre</i> , and a few others.
<i>aire</i> , as <i>statuaire</i> , sculptor.	{ <i>affaire</i> ; <i>aire</i> , area ; <i>claire</i> , re- fined ashes ; <i>glair</i> , slime ; <i>gram- maire</i> ; <i>haire</i> , hair-cloth ; <i>jugu- laire</i> ; <i>paire</i> , pair, and all names of plants ending in <i>aire</i> .
<i>toire</i> , as <i>purgatoire</i> , purgatory.	{ <i>dérottoire</i> , shoe-brush ; <i>écritoire</i> , inkstand ; <i>histoire</i> , history ; <i>vic- toire</i> , victory.
<i>ice</i> , as <i>vice</i> , vice.	{ <i>avarice</i> ; <i>cicatrice</i> , scar ; <i>délices</i> , delight ; <i>épice</i> , spice ; <i>immondice</i> , filth ; <i>justice</i> , <i>injustice</i> ; <i>lice</i> , lists ; <i>malice</i> ; <i>milice</i> , militia ; <i>notice</i> ; <i>office</i> , pantry ; <i>police</i> ; <i>prémices</i> , firstlings ; <i>varice</i> , varix.
<i>etc</i> , as <i>artiste</i> , artiste.	{ <i>améthyste</i> ; <i>batiste</i> , cambric ; <i>caste</i> , tribe ; <i>liste</i> , list ; <i>poste</i> , post- office ; <i>peste</i> , plague ; <i>piste</i> , track ; <i>veste</i> , jacket.
<i>ile</i> , as <i>voile</i> , veil.	{ <i>aile</i> , wing ; <i>argile</i> , clay ; <i>bile</i> , bile ; <i>étoile</i> , star ; <i>file</i> , row ; <i>huile</i> , oil ; <i>île</i> , island ; <i>pile</i> , pile ; <i>toile</i> , linen ; <i>tuile</i> , tile ; <i>vigile</i> ; <i>voile</i> , sail.
<i>cle</i> , as <i>couvercle</i> , cover.	{ <i>boucle</i> , buckle ; <i>bernacl</i> , barn- acle ; <i>biscles</i> , glasses ; <i>débacle</i> , breaking of ice ; <i>escarboucle</i> , car- buncle ; <i>manicle</i> , manacles ; <i>racle</i> , scrape.
<i>ère</i> , as <i>caractère</i> .	<i>artère</i> , artery ; <i>panthère</i> .
<i>angle</i> , as <i>triangle</i> .	{ which are derived from Greek or Latin : together with the names of instruments of the same origin ending in <i>graphe</i> and <i>scope</i> .
<i>are</i> , as <i>phare</i> .	
<i>cide</i> , as <i>régicide</i> .	
<i>èdre</i> , as <i>cathèdre</i> .	
<i>gone</i> , as <i>polygone</i> .	
<i>lith</i> , as <i>monolithe</i> .	
<i>type</i> , as <i>prototype</i> .	

The following list of nouns ending in mute *e*, which are masculine for various reasons not mentioned above, is inserted here mainly for purposes of reference; other words which are purely technical or of rare occurrence, have been omitted.

abaque	<i>abacus</i>	are (and com-	{ <i>unity in the new</i> <i>system of measure</i>
accessoire	<i>accessory</i>	pounds)	
acide	<i>acid</i>	aromate	<i>aromatic</i>
acre	<i>acre</i>	ascaride	<i>ascarides</i>
acrostiche	<i>acrostic</i>	asphalte	<i>asphalt</i>
acte	<i>act</i>	aspre	<i>asper</i>
adminicule	<i>slight proof</i>	astérisque	<i>asterisk</i>
adverbe	<i>adverb</i>	astragale	<i>astragal</i>
aigle	<i>eagle</i>	astrolabe	<i>astrolabe</i>
aise	<i>ease</i>	athénée	<i>athenæum</i>
albâtre	<i>alabaster</i>	augure	<i>augury</i>
allége	<i>lighter</i>	automate	<i>automaton</i>
alvéole	{ <i>a cell in a honey-</i> <i>comb</i>	axe	<i>axis, axle-tree</i>
ambages pl.		babeurre	<i>buttermilk</i>
ambe	<i>ambages</i>	bagne	<i>bagnio</i>
amble	<i>(two together)</i>	barbe	<i>a Barbary horse</i>
ambre	<i>amble</i>	barde	<i>slice of bacon</i>
amante	<i>amber</i>	barége	<i>barege</i>
amulette	<i>amianthus</i>	basalte	<i>basalt</i>
analectes pl.	<i>amulet</i>	bécarre	{ <i>natural</i> <i>(in music)</i>
andante	<i>analects</i>	béjaune	
androgyné	<i>andante</i>	berce	<i>booby</i>
angle (and com-)	{ <i>angle</i>	berce	<i>robin redbreast</i>
pounds)		beurre	<i>butter</i>
animalcule	<i>animalcule</i>	bièvre	<i>beaver</i>
antidote	<i>antidote</i>	bogue	<i>boga</i>
antipode	<i>antidote</i>	Bosphore	<i>Bosphorus</i>
aphélie	<i>antipode</i>	bouge	<i>a small room</i>
apocalypse	<i>aphelion</i>	branle	<i>jogging</i>
apogée	<i>apocalypse</i>	cable	<i>cable</i>
apographe	<i>apogeon</i>	cadavre	<i>corpse</i>
apologue	<i>apographe</i>	cadre	<i>frame</i>
arbre	<i>apologue</i>	caducée	<i>mercury's wand</i>
	<i>tree</i>	calibre	<i>bore, size, sort</i>

calque	<i>counter drawing</i>	code	<i>code</i>
camée	<i>cameo</i>	codicille	<i>codicil</i>
camphre	<i>camphire</i>	coffre	<i>chest</i>
cancré	<i>crab-fish</i>	collège	<i>college</i>
candelabre	<i>chandelier</i>	colloque	<i>colloquy</i>
cantique	<i>canticle</i>	collyre	<i>collyrium</i>
capitole	<i>capitol</i>	colosse	<i>colossus</i>
capitule	<i>capitule</i>	colysée	<i>coliseum</i>
capre	<i>privateer</i>	comble	<i>top</i>
capricorne	<i>capricorn</i>	comestible	<i>eatables</i>
caroube	} <i>carob bean</i>	commerce	<i>commerce</i>
carouge		comminge	<i>coarse mortar</i>
carpe	<i>wrist</i>	compte	<i>bill, account</i>
carosse	<i>couch</i>	compulsoire	<i>warrant</i>
cartouche	<i>scroll</i>	conciliabule	<i>contenticle</i>
casque	<i>helmet</i>	conclave	<i>conclave</i>
catasfalque	<i>catasfalque</i>	concombre	<i>cucumber</i>
catalogue	<i>catalogue</i>	cône	<i>cone</i>
catarrhe	<i>catarrh</i>	congre	<i>conger</i>
caustique	<i>caustic</i>	conte	<i>tale</i>
cénotaphe	<i>cenotaph</i>	contrôle	<i>control</i>
cerne	<i>ring (circle)</i>	conventicule	<i>contenticle</i>
châle	<i>shawl</i>	corpuscule	<i>corpuscule</i>
chambrant	<i>jamb</i>	cortège	<i>retinue</i>
chancre	<i>cancer</i>	coryphée	<i>coryphaeus</i>
change	<i>change</i>	cothurne	<i>buskin</i>
chanvre	<i>hemp</i>	coude	<i>elbow</i>
chèvrefeuille	<i>honeysuckle</i>	couple	{ <i>pair, (male and</i>
chiffre	<i>cypher (figure)</i>		{ <i>female)</i>
ciboire	<i>pir</i>	crabe	<i>crab</i>
cidre	<i>cider</i>	crâne	<i>skull</i>
cierge	<i>wax taper</i>	cravate	<i>cravat</i>
cigare	<i>segar</i>	crêpe	<i>crape</i>
cimeterre	<i>scimitar</i>	crépuscule	<i>twilight</i>
cimetière	<i>cemetery</i>	crible	<i>sieve</i>
cinabre	<i>cinnabar</i>	cubo	<i>cube</i>
cippe	<i>cippus</i>	culte	<i>worship</i>
cirque	<i>circus</i>	cygne	<i>swan</i>
clonque	<i>sick</i>	cyindre	<i>cylinder</i>
coche	<i>stage, packet boat</i>	déboire	<i>mortification</i>

décalogue	<i>decatalogue</i>	escompte	<i>discount</i>
décombres pl.	<i>rubbish</i>	espace	<i>space</i>
décompte	<i>discount</i>	euphorbe	<i>euphorbium</i>
dédale	<i>labyrinth</i>	exemple	<i>example</i>
délice sing.	<i>delight</i>	exergue	<i>exergue</i>
délire	<i>delirium</i>	exode	<i>exodus</i>
déluge	<i>deluge</i>	exorde	<i>exordium</i>
démérite	<i>demerit</i>	fascicule	<i>fascicle</i>
denticule	<i>denticles</i>	faîte	<i>top</i>
derrière	<i>back</i>	feurre	<i>chaff</i>
désordre	<i>disorder</i>	fiacre	<i>hack</i>
dialecte	<i>dialect</i>	fifre	<i>fife</i>
diocèse	<i>diocese</i>	filigrane	<i>filigree</i>
disque	<i>disk</i>	finale (in music)	<i>finale</i>
dissyllabe	<i>dissyllable</i>	flasque (of a cannon)	} <i>flask</i>
distique	<i>distich</i>		
dithyrambe	<i>dithyrambus</i>	fleuve	<i>large river</i>
dividende	<i>dividend</i>	fluide	<i>fluid</i>
divorce	<i>divorce</i>	foie	<i>liver</i>
dogue	<i>bull-dog</i>	follicule (in an- atomy)	} <i>follicule</i>
domaine	<i>domain</i>		
double	<i>double</i>	fonticule	<i>fonticulus</i>
doute	<i>doubt</i>	foudre	<i>large tun</i>
échange	<i>exchange</i>	génie	<i>genius</i>
ellébore	<i>hellebore</i>	genièvre	<i>gin</i>
éloge	<i>encomium</i>	genre	<i>gender</i>
elysée	<i>elysium</i>	gingembre	<i>ginger</i>
émétique	<i>emetic</i>	girofle	<i>cloves</i>
empire	<i>empire</i>	gîte	<i>lodging</i>
empirée	<i>empyrean</i>	givre	<i>hoar-frost</i>
encombre	<i>encumbrance</i>	glaive	<i>sword</i>
ensemble	<i>whole</i>	globe	<i>globe</i>
éphémérides	<i>ephemerides</i>	globule	<i>globule</i>
épilogue	<i>epilogue</i>	goberge	<i>a sort of codfish</i>
épisode	<i>episode</i>	golfe	<i>gulf</i>
équilibre	<i>equilibrium</i>	gone	<i>a sort of worm</i>
équinoxe	<i>equinox</i>	gouffre	<i>abyss</i>
erysipèle	<i>erysipelas</i>	grabuge	<i>squabble</i>
esclandre	<i>uproar</i>	grade	<i>degree</i>
esclavage	<i>slavery</i>	greffe	<i>register's office</i>

grimoire	<i>conjurer's book</i>	lexique	<i>lexicon</i>
groupe	<i>group</i>	libelle	<i>libel</i>
guide	<i>guide, director</i>	liège	<i>cork</i>
gueule	<i>gules in heraldry</i>	lièvre	<i>hare</i>
gymnase	<i>gymnasium</i>	limbe	<i>limb (edge)</i>
gynécée	<i>gynæcium</i>	linge	<i>linen, clothes</i>
hâle	<i>sunburning</i>	liquide	<i>liquid</i>
havre	<i>haven</i>	litige	<i>litigation</i>
hécatombe	<i>hecatomb</i>	livre	<i>book</i>
héliotrope	<i>turnsol</i>	lobe	<i>lobe</i>
hémisphère	<i>hemisphere</i>	lobule	<i>lobule</i>
hémistiche	<i>hemistich</i>	logogryphe	<i>logography</i>
hiéroglyphe	<i>hieroglyphic</i>	lombes	<i>loins</i>
hombre	<i>omber</i>	Louvre	<i>palace</i>
horoscope	<i>horoscope</i>	lucro	<i>lucro</i>
hyménée	<i>wedlock</i>	luxe	<i>luxury</i>
hymne	<i>hymn, in general</i>	lycée	<i>lyceum</i>
hypocondre	<i>hypochondriac</i>	madrépore	<i>madrepore</i>
iambe	<i>iambus</i>	maigre	<i>lean</i>
immeuble	<i>real estate</i>	malaise	<i>uncasiness</i>
incendie	<i>conflagration</i>	manche	<i>handle</i>
indicule	<i>slight indication</i>	manège	<i>riding-school</i>
infusoires	<i>infusory forms</i>	mânes	<i>manes</i>
insecte	<i>insect</i>	manipule	<i>maniple</i>
insigne	<i>insignia</i>	manque	<i>want</i>
interligno	<i>interline</i>	marbre	<i>marble</i>
intermède	<i>interlude</i>	martyre	<i>martyrdom</i>
interrègne	<i>interreign</i>	martyrologe	<i>martyrology</i>
intervalle	<i>interval</i>	masque	<i>mask</i>
ivoire	<i>ivory</i>	massacre	<i>massacre</i>
jade	<i>jade</i>	mausolée	<i>mausoleum</i>
jaspe	<i>jasper</i>	méandre	<i>meander</i>
jeûne	<i>fast</i>	mécompte	<i>misreckoning</i>
kiosque	<i>kiosk</i>	mélange	<i>mixture</i>
labyrinthe	<i>labyrinth</i>	membre	<i>member, limb</i>
lange	<i>scauddling clothes</i>	mémoire	<i>bill</i>
laque	<i>China varnish</i>	ménisque	<i>meniscus</i>
lague	<i>offing</i>	mensonge	<i>lie (a story)</i>
leurre	<i>lure</i>	mercure	<i>mercury</i>
lévitique	<i>leviticus</i>	merle	<i>blackbird</i>

mérite	<i>merit</i>	opuscule	<i>small composition</i>
mésaise	<i>distress</i>	orbe	<i>orb</i>
métalloïde	<i>metalloïd</i>	ordre	<i>order</i>
météore	<i>meteor</i>	organ	<i>organ</i>
meuble	<i>piece of furniture</i>	orgue, when	} <i>organ, an instru-</i> <i>ment</i>
mille	<i>mile</i>	singular	
mode	<i>mood</i>	ovale	<i>oval</i>
modèle	<i>model</i>	ove	<i>ovolo</i>
module	<i>module</i>	oxyde	<i>oxyd</i>
môle	<i>pier</i>	pact	<i>pact</i>
monde	<i>world</i>	pampre	<i>leafy vine branch</i>
monocorde	<i>monochord</i>	panache	<i>bunch of feathers</i>
monologue	<i>monologue</i>	panégyrique	<i>panegyric</i>
monopole	<i>monopoly</i>	pantographe	<i>pantograph</i>
monosyllabe	<i>monosyllables</i>	pâque	<i>easter</i>
monticule	<i>hillock</i>	paradoxe	<i>paradox</i>
Morne	<i>hillock</i>	paragraphe	<i>paragraph</i>
moufle	<i>pulley</i>	parallèle	<i>comparison</i>
moule	<i>mould</i>	parafe or paraphe	<i>flourish in singing</i>
muffle	<i>muzzle</i>	parapluie	<i>umbrella</i>
murmure	<i>murmur</i>	parjure	<i>perjury</i>
musée	<i>museum</i>	parterre	{ <i>pit (in a theatre)</i> <i>flower garden</i>
myrthe	<i>myrtle</i>	participe	<i>participle</i>
naphte	<i>naphtha</i>	parachûte	<i>parachute</i>
narcisse	<i>daffodil</i>	patrimoine	<i>patrimony</i>
navire	<i>ship</i>	pavie	<i>nectarine</i>
nécrologe	{ <i>a register of the</i> <i>dead</i>	pécule	<i>peculium</i>
négoce	<i>trade</i>	pédicule	<i>pedicle</i>
nimbe	<i>glory, in painting</i>	pédoncule	<i>the principal stem</i>
nombre	<i>number, quantity</i>	peigne	<i>comb</i>
obélisque	<i>obelisk</i>	pénates	<i>penates</i>
œsophage	<i>œsophagus</i>	pendule	<i>pendulum</i>
œuvre	<i>musical work</i>	pène	<i>bolt of a lock</i>
olympé	<i>olympus</i>	pentacorde	<i>pentechord</i>
ombre	<i>a game of cards</i>	pentateuque	<i>pentateuch</i>
omoplate	<i>omoplate</i>	péricarde	<i>pericardium</i>
ongle	<i>nail</i>	péricarpe	<i>pericarpium</i>
opercule	<i>operculum</i>	péricrâne	<i>pericranium</i>
opprobre	<i>disgrace</i>	périgée	<i>perigee</i>

périhélie	<i>perihelium</i>	prélude	<i>prelude</i>
période	<i>the highest pitch</i>	prestige	<i>prestige</i>
péritoine	<i>peritonæum</i>	prétexte	<i>pretext</i>
perpendicule	<i>perpendicularum</i>	principe	<i>principle</i>
personne	<i>nobody</i>	privilege	<i>privilege</i>
pétale	<i>petal</i>	prodigue	<i>prodigy</i>
pétiole	<i>petiole</i>	prologue	<i>prologue</i>
pétrole	<i>petroleum</i>	prône	<i>short sermon</i>
peuple	<i>people</i>	propylée	<i>propylæum</i>
phalène	<i>phalena</i>	protocole	<i>protocol</i>
phare	<i>lighthouse</i>	proverbe	<i>proverb</i>
phénomène	<i>phenomenon</i>	prytanée	<i>prytaneum</i>
phoque	<i>phoca</i>	pygmée	<i>pygmy</i>
phosphore	<i>phosphorus</i>	pylore	<i>pylorus</i>
piège	<i>snares</i>	quadrige	<i>quadriga</i>
pique	<i>spade at cards</i>	quadrille	<i>game at cards</i>
pivoine	<i>giant-snapper</i>	quaterne	<i>quatern</i>
planisphère	<i>planisphere</i>	quinconce	<i>quincunx</i>
plébiscite	<i>plébiscitum</i>	râble	<i>saddle of venison</i>
pleige	<i>pledge</i>	râle	<i>rallus</i>
poêle	} <i>stove, canopy</i>	rechange	<i>change</i>
poile		refuge	<i>refuge</i>
poge	<i>starboard</i>	régale	<i>regal</i>
poivre	<i>pepper</i>	règne	<i>reign</i>
pôle	<i>pole</i>	régule	<i>regulus</i>
polype	<i>polypous</i>	relâche	<i>relaxation</i>
polypode	<i>polypodium</i>	remède	<i>remedy</i>
polysyllabe	<i>polysyllable</i>	remise	<i>livery-coach</i>
pouche	<i>pouch</i>	renne	<i>reindeer</i>
porche	<i>porch</i>	repère	<i>mark</i>
pore	<i>pore</i>	reproche	<i>reproach</i>
porphyre	<i>porphyry</i>	retable	<i>altar-piece</i>
portefeuille	<i>pocket-book</i>	réticule	<i>reticula</i>
portique	<i>portico</i>	rêve	<i>dream</i>
pouce	<i>thumb</i>	reverbère	<i>lantern</i>
pourpre	<i>purple</i>	rhombe	<i>rhom</i>
préambule	<i>preamble</i>	ridicule	<i>ridicule</i>
précepte	<i>precept</i>	rièble	<i>goose-grass</i>
prêche	} <i>protestant meet-</i>	risque	<i>risk</i>
		rite	<i>rite</i>

rôle	<i>roll</i>	stockfiche	<i>dried codfish</i>
rosace	<i>hollyhock</i>	store	<i>small blinds</i>
rosage	<i>rose-bay</i>	stygmate	<i>stigma</i>
rouable	<i>rake for an oven</i>	stylobate	<i>stylobatum</i>
rouble	<i>Russian coin</i>	subterfuge	<i>subterfuge</i>
sable	<i>sable</i>	subside	<i>subsidy</i>
sabre	<i>sabre</i>	sucre	<i>sugar</i>
sacerdoce	<i>sacerdoce</i>	symbole	<i>symbol</i>
sacre	<i>consecration</i>	synode	<i>synod</i>
sacrilège	<i>sacrilege</i>	tarse	<i>tarsus</i>
sarigue	<i>oposum</i>	temple	<i>temple</i>
scandale	<i>public offence</i>	tentacule	<i>tentacle</i>
scarabée	<i>scarabæus</i>	terne	<i>terne</i>
scolie	<i>scolium</i>	texte	<i>text</i>
scrupule	<i>scruple</i>	thyrse	<i>thyrsus</i>
seigle	<i>rye</i>	timbre	<i>stamp</i>
sépulcre	<i>sepulchre</i>	tintamarre	<i>great noise</i>
sexe	<i>sex</i>	tonnerre	<i>thunder</i>
sexe	<i>sextus</i>	topique	<i>topic</i>
signe	<i>sign</i>	torse	<i>trunk of a statue</i>
silence	<i>silence</i>	toxique	<i>poison</i>
sille	<i>sillus</i>	trapèze	<i>trapezium</i>
simple	<i>medicinal herb</i>	trèfle	<i>trefoil</i>
simulacre	<i>simulacre</i>	triomphe	<i>triumph</i>
singe	<i>ape</i>	trisyllabe	<i>trisyllable</i>
site	<i>site</i>	trochisque	<i>pill</i>
socque	<i>over-shoe, sandal</i>	trochée	<i>trochee</i>
solde	<i>balance of a bill</i>	troène	<i>privet</i>
soliloque	<i>soliloquy</i>	troglodite	<i>wren</i>
songe	<i>dream</i>	trombone	<i>trombone</i>
souffle	<i>breath</i>	trône	<i>throne</i>
soufre	<i>sulphur</i>	trope	<i>trope</i>
sourire	<i>smile</i>	trophée	<i>trophy</i>
spadille	<i>spadille</i>	tropique	<i>tropic</i>
spécifique	<i>specific</i>	trouble	<i>trouble</i>
spondée	<i>spondee</i>	tube	<i>tube</i>
squelette	<i>skeleton</i>	tubercule	<i>tubercle</i>
squirrel	<i>sciirrhus</i>	tumulte	<i>tumult</i>
stade	<i>stadium</i>	type (and comp.)	<i>type</i>
stalle	<i>stall</i>	ulcère	<i>ulcer</i>

vague	<i>vague</i>	vestige	<i>track</i>
vase	<i>vase, vessel</i>	viatique	<i>viaticum</i>
vaudeville	{ <i>ballad, a short</i> <i>comedy</i>	vide	<i>vacuum</i>
véhicule	<i>vehicle</i>	vignoble	<i>vineyard</i>
ventricule	<i>ventricle</i>	vinaigre	<i>vinegar</i>
vêpre	<i>dusk, evening</i>	violoncelle	<i>violoncello</i>
verbe	<i>verb</i>	viscère	<i>intestines</i>
vermicelle	<i>vermicelli</i>	vivres pl.	<i>victuals</i>
verre	<i>glass</i>	vote	<i>vote</i>
vertige	<i>dizziness</i>	zèle	<i>zeal</i>
vestibule	<i>entry</i>	zodiaque	<i>zodiac</i>

NUMBER OF NOUNS.

French nouns have two numbers, singular and plural, according as they designate one object only or a number of them. This applies only to common nouns, as proper names are the exclusive property of one person or one object, and cannot hence be applied to many, as long as they are used as genuine proper names.

The *singular* is given by the form of the noun itself.

The *plural* is invariably made by the addition of *s*, for even when plurals are found to end in *z* or *x*, it must be borne in mind, that *z* is but a combination of *d* and *s*, and *x* of *c* and *s*. The manner of forming the plural of nouns is subject to the following rules :

1. All nouns not ending in *s*, *z* or *x*, add a final *s*.

Ex. *s. table*, *p. tables* ; *s. roi*, *p. rois*, king ; *s. fusil*, *p. fusils*, gun ; *s. nid*, *p. nids*, nest.

2. Nouns ending in *s*, *z* or *x* remain unchanged, as they end already in *s*.

Ex. *s. fils*, *p. fils*, *s. son* ; *s. nez*, *p. nez*, nose ; *s. croire*, *p. croire*, cross ; *s. remords*, *p. remords*, remorse.

3. Nouns ending in *au* (*eau*), *eu* (*œu*), and some in *ou*, add a final *x*.

Ex. *s. étau*, *p. étaux*, vice ; *s. bateau*, *p. bateaux*, boat ;

s. *feu*, p. *feux*, fire ; s. *vœu*, p. *vœux*, vow ; s. *genou*, p. *genoux*, knee.

4. Nouns ending in *al*, and some in *ail*, change these syllables into *aux*.

Ex. s. *mal*, p. *maux*, evil ; s. *cheval*, p. *chevaux*, horse ; s. *corail*, p. *coraux*, coral ; s. *travail*, p. *travaux*, labor.

The following nouns ending in *al* make the plural by adding *s*, and not by changing *al* into *aux* :

Bal, ball ; *cal*, callosity ; *carnaval*, carnival ; *cérémonial* ; *chacal*, jackal ; *narval*, narwal ; *régat*, treat ; *sandal*, sandalwood, and a few names of animals of rare occurrence. Formerly it was the fashion to make the plural of nouns ending in *ant* or *ent* by omitting the letter *t*, so as to make them end in *ans* or *ens* ; this is not done now-a-days.

Ex. s. *enfant*, p. *enfants*, children ; s. *serpent*, p. *serpents*, serpents.

5. Some nouns have an irregular plural, the most important of which are the following :

Aïeul, grandfather, becomes *aïeux*, when it means ancestors ; but *aïeuls*, when it means grandfathers.

Ail, garlic, in botanical language, makes *aïls* ; in ordinary life, *aux*, though *gousses d'ail*, cloves of garlic, is generally substituted.

Bétail, cattle, becomes *bestiaux*.

Ciel, sky or heaven, becomes *cieux* ; but when it is used figuratively, it makes *ciels*.

Ex. *ciels-de-lit*, top of bedsteads ; *ciels de tableau*, skies in a painting.

Œil, eye, becomes *yeux* in its primary meaning ; but it makes *œils* when used figuratively.

Ex. *œils-de-bœuf*, bull's eyes (in architecture) ; *œils-de-chat*, cat's eyes (in mineralogy.)

Except in *yeux du pain*, *yeux du fromage*, the open spaces in bread and cheese ; and *yeux du bouillon*, the round spots of fat swimming on broth.

Universel, universal (in logic) becomes *universaux*.

EXERCISE.

Children. Parents. Friends. Animals. Enemies. Virtues. Vices. Years. Days. Evils. Misfortunes. Horses. Corals. Vicissitudes. Horrors. Kings. Queens. Crosses. Vases. Noses. Eyes. Months. Nephews. Nieces. Brothers. Sons. Daughters. Colonels. Narwals. Nails. Screws. Hammers. Arsenals. Capitals. Residences. Villages. Altars. Partridges. Avowals. Cabbages. Knees. Hands. Heads. Canals. Laws. Fires. Waters. Troubles. Voices. Cattle. Skies. Horns. Feet. Pebbles.

CHAPTER II.

ARTICLES.

Articles are words placed before nouns or other parts of speech used as nouns, for the purpose of defining their meaning in various ways.

The English language has two articles: the Definite *the* and the Indefinite *a* or *an*.

The French language has three articles.

The Definite *le*, etc., corresponding to *the*.

The Indefinite *un*, etc., corresponding to *a*.

The Partitive *du*, etc., which has no corresponding form in English.

1. The *Definite Article* has the following three forms:

Le, before masculine nouns beginning with a consonant or aspirated *h*.

Ex. *le mari*, the husband; *le héros*, the hero.

La, before feminine nouns beginning with a consonant or aspirated *h*.

Ex. *la femme*, the wife; *la haine*, the hatred.

L', before masculine or feminine nouns beginning with a vowel or mute *h*.

Ex. *l'amî*, the friend; *l'île*, the island; *l'homme*, the man; *l'histoire*, the history.

Its plural form is *les* before all nouns without distinction.

Ex. *les rois*, the kings; *les amis*, the friends; *les honneurs*, the honors; *les reines*, the queens; *les habitudes*, the habits.

It is declined, as all words are declined in French, by means of the preposition *de* (of), and *à* (to), but suffers certain contractions, which produce the following forms :

SINGULAR.			
	Masculine.	Feminine.	Before vowels or <i>h</i> mute.
Nominative.	<i>le</i>	<i>la</i>	<i>l'</i>
Genitive.	(<i>de le</i>) <i>du</i>	<i>de la</i>	<i>de l'</i>
Dative.	(<i>à le</i>) <i>au</i>	<i>à la</i>	<i>à l'</i>
Accusative.	<i>le</i>	<i>la</i>	<i>l'</i>

PLURAL.	
For all Nouns.	
Nom.	<i>les</i>
Gen.	(<i>de les</i>) <i>des</i>
Dat.	(<i>à les</i>) <i>aux</i>
Acc.	<i>les</i>

This gives, with a noun, the following forms :

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Masculine Noun.	
Nom. <i>le roi</i> , the king.	<i>les rois</i> , the kings.
Gen. <i>du roi</i> , of the king.	<i>des rois</i> , of the kings.
Dat. <i>au roi</i> , to the king.	<i>aux rois</i> , to the kings.
Acc. <i>le roi</i> , the king.	<i>les rois</i> , the kings.
Feminine Noun.	
Nom. <i>la reine</i> , the queen.	<i>les reines</i> , the queens.
Gen. <i>de la reine</i> , of the queen.	<i>des reines</i> , of the queens.
Dat. <i>à la reine</i> , to the queen.	<i>aux reines</i> , to the queens.
Acc. <i>la reine</i> , the queen.	<i>les reines</i> , the queens.

Masculine, beginning with a vowel.

Nom. <i>l'ami</i> , the friend.	<i>les amis</i> , the friends.
Gen. <i>de l'ami</i> , of the friend.	<i>des amis</i> , of the friends.
Dat. <i>à l'ami</i> , to the friend.	<i>aux amis</i> , to the friends.
Acc. <i>l'ami</i> , the friend.	<i>les amis</i> , the friends.

Feminine, beginning with a vowel.

Nom.	<i>l'âme</i> , the soul.	<i>les âmes</i> , the souls.
Gen.	<i>de l'âme</i> , of the soul.	<i>des âmes</i> , of the souls.
Dat.	<i>à l'âme</i> , to the soul.	<i>aux âmes</i> , to the souls.
Acc.	<i>l'âme</i> , the soul.	<i>les âmes</i> , the souls.

Masculine, beginning with mute *h*.

Nom.	<i>l'habit</i> , the coat.	<i>les habits</i> , the coats.
Gen.	<i>de l'habit</i> , of the coat.	<i>des habits</i> , of the coats.
Dat.	<i>à l'habit</i> , to the coat.	<i>aux habits</i> , to the coats.
Acc.	<i>l'habit</i> , the coat.	<i>les habits</i> , the coats.

Masculine, beginning with aspirated *h*.

Nom.	<i>le héros</i> , the hero.	<i>les héros</i> , the heroes.
Gen.	<i>du héros</i> , of the hero.	<i>des héros</i> , of the heroes.
Dat.	<i>au héros</i> , to the hero.	<i>aux héros</i> , to the heroes.
Acc.	<i>le héros</i> , the hero.	<i>les héros</i> , the heroes.

2. The *Indefinite Article* has the following forms :

Un before all masculine nouns.

Une before all feminine nouns.

It is declined by means of the same preposition, thus :

SINGULAR.

	Masculine.	Feminine.
Nom.	<i>un</i>	<i>une</i>
Gen.	(<i>de un</i>) <i>d'un</i>	(<i>de une</i>) <i>d'une</i>
Dat.	<i>à un</i>	<i>à une</i>
Acc.	<i>un</i>	<i>une</i>

It has no plural, *un* being the same as the numeral *un*, one.

EXERCISE.

(Learn the verb *Avoir*, to have.)

We have the flowers of the garden ; you have the fruits of the orchard. He has a daughter and a son. We had the doctor in the house. They will have the friend of the brother, and we will have the sons of the friend. The children of the uncle and the parents of

the enemy. To the king of the English, and to the emperor of the French. They had a book of the library. You shall have the pies and the cakes. She had a bouquet. To the lover of the chase. The end of the action and the causes of the retreat. The value of the gold and of the silver of the country. They have had a speech in the church, and they had the ministers of the church in the building. The epistles of the friends to the man in the mask. The gifts of the ambassador to the empress. I shall have the money or the goods. The surgeons in the hospital, and the doctors at the hotel. The horses of the men, and the swords of the officers. To an aunt of the boys, and to an uncle of the girls.

The declension of *Proper Names* is made by the prepositions only, without an article, in which case *de* elides its *e* before vowels and mute *h*.

Nom.	<i>César,</i>	<i>André,</i>	<i>Anne,</i>	<i>Londres,</i>
Gen.	<i>de César,</i>	<i>d'André,</i>	<i>d'Anne,</i>	<i>de Londres,</i>
Dat.	<i>à César,</i>	<i>à André,</i>	<i>à Anne,</i>	<i>à Londres,</i>
Acc.	<i>César.</i>	<i>André.</i>	<i>Anne.</i>	<i>Londres.</i>

Preposition and article must both be repeated before every noun which they qualify, and agree with it in gender and number.

Ex. *Le fils de Louis et d'Anne. L'histoire des Romains et des Grecs. Fidèle au roi et à la reine.*

There is no *Possessive Case* in French. The noun so used in English must be placed after the noun on which it depends, in the genitive case. Paul's book thus becomes the book of Paul; the brother's hat becomes the hat of the brother.

Ex. *le livre de Paul*, Paul's book; *le chapeau du frère*, the brother's hat; *le courage d'un héros*, a hero's courage.

EXERCISE.

I have the letters of Voltaire to Frederick the Great. He had the philosopher in the palace of Potsdam. The letters to the king had a success. She had a sister's love for the friend of the brother. They had not the measures of the depth of the well. We have an attorney's authority, and you have a lawyer's certificate. They would have had the President's Message, but they had not the time, nor the

space in the journal. We have not the partridges of Europe. We had a plan of the city of London and a drawing of the towns of the district. To the friends of the negroes. We had a storm during the night, and we shall have a rain in the day. The winds and the waves. You have the dedication to the wife of the author. The beginning of the history of the war of Independence. The queens of England and Scotland. To the master of workmen and apprentices. They had a horse and chaise. The address of the commander to the soldiers of the Empire.

3. The *Partitive Article* expresses that not the whole, but only a part or a certain quantity is spoken of. The English express this either by the omission of the article, as when we say: I have bread, or by the use of *some* in affirmative and *any* in the interrogative and negative sentences, *e. g.* He has some bread. Have you any apples? I have not any friends.

The partitive article in French consists:

a. Of the preposition *de* combined with the definite article, and thus making the following forms:

SINGULAR.

Masc.	Fem.	Before vowels and <i>h</i> mute.
<i>du</i>	<i>de la</i>	<i>de l'</i>

Ex. *du pain*, some bread; *de la crème*, some cream; *de l'avoine*, some oats; *de l'ironie*, some irony; *des lois*, some laws; *des histoires*, some histories.

PLURAL.

(For all Nouns.)

des.

Ex. *des amis*, some friends; *des pommes de terre*, some potatoes.

b. Of the preposition *de* alone, before adjectives and in negative sentences.

Ex. *de bon pain*, good bread; *de mauvais conseils*, bad advice; *de faux amis*, false friends; *de vrais ennemis*, true enemies.

It must be borne in mind that as the partitive article always represents a portion of a whole, it cannot be used with nouns,

the meaning of which precludes the idea of division. *Some tea*, means a portion of the whole quantity, and *some friends*, a fraction of the whole number; but when we say: I look for some house to suit me, we do not mean a portion of a house, and hence, here, *some* cannot be translated by the partitive article.

EXERCISE.

(Learn the verb *Avoir* interrogatively.)

I have bread and water, and you shall have wine and cakes. Has he any friends in the city? I had some pens and some ink, but I have not any paper. We shall have oil with the salad, and vinegar with the beets. Had you any ideas? Has she the end of the list, and some hope of the return of the printer? Meat and vegetables, coffee and tea, bread and butter. I have cream in the tea, and milk in the coffee. Have you no (not any) sugar? I have had sugar, and she has had molasses. Friends and enemies, soldiers and citizens. Would you have a friend's advice, or an enemy's warning? Have they any tragedies and comedies in the literature of the age? To the friends of the monarch. Have they had any apples? They had an apple and some apricots, but they had not any peaches. I have pencils and crayons, but I have not any colors.

When the verb is both interrogative and negative, the partitive article resumes its full form, *du, de la, de l'* and *des*.

Ex. *N'avez-vous pas des livres?* Have you not any books?

EXERCISE.

(Learn the verb *Avoir* interrogatively and negatively.)

We had some bread and cheese, but we had no wine and no meat. Had you any dinner or supper to-day? I have some hope. We shall have some friends and some relations at the feast of St. John. Will you not have some guests at the house? He shall have some pleasures and some games, but we shall not have any guests. We had some rye, but we had no oats, and now we shall have no baker's bread. The porter's lodge, and the cry for workmen. He had tears and sighs. You shall have some rewards. Have they not had some difficulties with some soldiers? They have not had any medicine, because they had no phial.

CHAPTER III.

ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives express permanent or accidental qualities as attributed to nouns. As they do not designate a person or a thing, but only something that belongs to them, they show dependence by always agreeing with the noun which they qualify, in gender and number. It matters not, whether they stand by this noun, as in : the good man, the handsome woman, or are separated from it by other parts of the sentence, as in : The man of the house is good ; the woman who was here is handsome. They still agree in the same way.

Participles present and past, when not used as parts of the verb, but employed to qualify nouns, are treated, in all respects, as adjectives, and agree also in gender and number with their nouns, but they are invariably placed after their nouns.

FORMATION OF THE FEMININE OF ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives make their *feminine* invariably by adding a mute *e* to the masculine.

Ex. m. *grand*, f. *grande*, great ; m. *charmant*, f. *charmante*, charming ; m. *estimé*, f. *estimée*, esteemed : m. *poli*, f. *polie*, polite, small ; m. *aigu*, f. *aiguë*, sharp.

There are, however, besides this general method, certain other changes taking place in the process of forming the feminine, which lead to the following rules :

1. Adjectives ending in mute *e* remain unchanged in the feminine, as it would be superfluous to add another mute *e*.

Ex. m. *fidèle*, f. *fidèle*, faithful ; m. *habile*, f. *habile*, skilful ; m. *riche*, f. *riche* ; m. *rouge*, f. *rouge*, red.

2. Adjectives ending in *el*, *et*, *eil*, *ien*, and *on*, besides adding mute *e*, also double the final consonant.

Ex. m. <i>éternel</i> ,	f. <i>éternelle</i> ,	eternal.
<i>muet</i> ,	<i>muette</i> ,	mute.
<i>pareil</i> ,	<i>pareille</i> ,	equal.
<i>ancien</i> ,	<i>ancienne</i> ,	ancient.
<i>bon</i> ,	<i>bonne</i> ,	good.

The following Adjectives, ending in *et*, also take mute *e*, but instead of doubling the final consonant, they place a grave accent over the *e* that precedes the *t*.

m. <i>complet</i> ,	f. <i>complète</i> .	m. <i>inquiet</i> ,	f. <i>inquiète</i> .
<i>concret</i> ,	<i>concrète</i> .	<i>incomplet</i> ,	<i>incomplète</i> .
<i>discret</i> ,	<i>discrète</i> .	<i>replet</i> ,	<i>replète</i> .
<i>indiscret</i> ,	<i>indiscrète</i> .	<i>secret</i> ,	<i>secrète</i> .

3. Adjectives ending in *er*, besides adding mute *e*, place a grave accent over the *e* preceding *r*.

Ex. m. <i>fier</i> ,	f. <i>fière</i> ,	proud.
<i>singulier</i> ,	<i>singulière</i> ,	singular.

4. Adjectives ending in *f* and *x*, besides adding mute *e*, change their final letters into *v* and *s*.

Ex. m. <i>neuf</i> ,	f. <i>neuve</i> ,	new.	m. <i>heureux</i> ,	f. <i>heureuse</i> ,	happy.
<i>bref</i> ,	<i>brève</i> ,	brief.	<i>jaloux</i> ,	<i>jalouse</i> ,	jealous.

The following Adjectives ending in *x*, change it differently in the feminine:

Ex. m. <i>doux</i> ,	f. <i>douce</i> ,	sweet.	m. <i>préfix</i> ,	f. <i>préfixe</i> ,	prefixed.
<i>faux</i> ,	<i>fausse</i> ,	false.	<i>roux</i> ,	<i>rousse</i> ,	reddish.

5. The following Adjectives, besides adding mute *e*, double the final consonant, without belonging to the class mentioned under 2:

m. <i>bas</i> ,	f. <i>basse</i> ,	low.	m. <i>sot</i> ,	f. <i>sotte</i> ,	foolish.
<i>belot</i> ,	<i>bellotte</i> ,	pretty.	<i>nul</i> ,	<i>nulle</i> ,	null.
<i>gras</i> ,	<i>grasse</i> ,	fat.	<i>gentil</i> ,	<i>gentille</i> ,	nice.
<i>las</i> ,	<i>lasse</i> ,	weary.	<i>paysan</i> ,	<i>paysanne</i> ,	peasant.
<i>épais</i> ,	<i>épaisse</i> ,	thick.	<i>profès</i> ,	<i>professe</i> ,	professed.
<i>exprès</i> ,	<i>expresse</i> ,	express.	<i>vieillot</i> ,	<i>vieillotte</i> ,	oldish
<i>gros</i> ,	<i>grosse</i> ,	big.			

EXERCISE.

(Learn the verb *Être*, to be.)

I am prudent and she is indiscreet. We shall be polite but cold to the gentleman of the house. She was angry and we were impatient. He will be respected, but she will be hated. Mary's friend has whims; she is pretty well dressed, but she is not amiable. They will be spoiled. We were content with the brother's account of the story. He had excellent recommendations and letters from the great men of the country. Peter's cravat and Mary's ribbons are silk. He is the minister of an Episcopal church in the pretty village of the valley. The mountains are high and the rivers are rapid, but the houses are low and dark and the men are not healthy. My cousin's children are young and pretty; she has a reddish face and her mouth is large. The sum is big and I have not any money. He has singular habits and she is not proud of the husband. Rome is an ancient city and has colossal and beautiful churches. The wounds of the officer were mortal, and the fever of the child is dangerous. She is jealous of the friend of the husband, and the sisters are ashamed. She has had a new robe, a short letter, and an active correspondence.

6. Adjectives ending in *eur* make their feminine by changing *r* into *s*, when they are derived from the participle present of verbs, by substituting *eur* for *ant*.

Ex. *parler*, to speak; *parlant*, *parleur*, talkative. Fem. *parlante*.
causer, to chat; *causant*, *causeur*, chatty. *causeuse*.
mentir, to lie; *mentant*, *menteur* false. *menteuse*.

Except the following:

m. <i>enchanteur</i> ,	f. <i>enchantresse</i> ,	enchanting.
<i>pêcheur</i> ,	<i>pêchresse</i> ,	sinful.
<i>chasseur</i> ,	<i>chasseresse</i> (poetical),	hunting.

They make the feminine by changing the last syllable into *trice*, when they are derived from Latin words ending in *tor*.

Ex. m. <i>protecteur</i> ,	f. <i>protectrice</i> ,	protecting.
<i>créateur</i> ,	<i>créatrice</i> ,	creative.
<i>exécuteur</i> ,	<i>exécutrice</i> ,	executing.

They make the feminine regularly, when they are derived from the Latin comparatives.

Ex. m. <i>majeur</i> ,	f. <i>majeure</i> ,	of age.
<i>mineur</i> ,	<i>mineure</i> ,	under age.
<i>meilleur</i> ,	<i>meilleure</i> ,	better.
<i>supérieur</i> ,	<i>supérieure</i> ,	superior.
<i>antérieur</i> ,	<i>antérieure</i> ,	anterior.
<i>inférieur</i> ,	<i>inférieure</i> ,	inferior.

7. The following Adjectives form their feminine irregularly :

m. <i>blanc</i> ,	f. <i>blanche</i> ,	white.	m. <i>long</i> ,	f. <i>longue</i> ,	long.
<i>franc</i> ,	<i>franche</i> ,	frank.	<i>oblong</i> ,	<i>oblongue</i> ,	oblong.
<i>sec</i> ,	<i>sèche</i> ,	dry.	<i>coi</i> ,	<i>coite</i> ,	quiet.
<i>frais</i> ,	<i>fraîche</i> ,	fresh.	<i>favori</i> ,	<i>favorite</i> ,	favorite.
<i>public</i> ,	<i>publique</i> ,	public.	<i>muscat</i> ,	<i>muscade</i> ,	muscat.
<i>caduc</i> ,	<i>caduque</i> ,	frail.	<i>jumeau</i> ,	<i>jumelle</i> ,	twin.
<i>turc</i> ,	<i>turque</i> ,	Turkish.	<i>tiers</i> ,	<i>tierce</i> ,	third.
<i>grec</i> ,	<i>grecque</i> ,	Greek.	<i>tors</i> ,	<i>torse</i> ,	twisted.
<i>benin</i> ,	<i>bénigne</i> ,	benign.	<i>traître</i> ,	<i>traîtresse</i> ,	treacherous.
<i>malin</i> ,	<i>maligne</i> ,	malignant.			

8. Adjectives ending in *u* place a diæresis over the mute *e*, which they add to preserve the sound of *u*.

Ex. m. <i>aigu</i> ,	f. <i>aiguë</i> ,	sharp.
<i>contigu</i> ,	<i>contiguë</i> ,	contiguous.

Several adjectives have no feminine.

Ex. *dispos*, nimble ; *fat*, foppish.

The following Adjectives have two forms for the masculine ; the first, ending in a vowel (except *vieux*) is used before nouns beginning with a consonant or aspirated *h* ; the second, ending in *l*, before nouns beginning with a vowel or mute *h*. The feminine is made from the latter, by adding mute *e* and doubling the final consonant.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.		
m. <i>beau</i> and <i>bel</i> ,	f. <i>belle</i> ,	m. <i>beaux</i> ,	f. <i>belles</i> ,	handsome.
<i>fou</i> and <i>fol</i> ,	<i>folle</i> ,	<i>fous</i> ,	<i>folles</i> ,	mad.
<i>mou</i> and <i>mol</i> ,	<i>molle</i> ,	<i>mous</i> ,	<i>molles</i> ,	soft.
<i>nouveau</i> and <i>nouvel</i> ,	<i>nouvelle</i> ,	<i>nouveaux</i> ,	<i>nouvelles</i> ,	new.
<i>vieux</i> and <i>vieil</i> ,	<i>vieille</i> ,	<i>vieux</i> ,	<i>vieilles</i> ,	old.

EXERCISE.

The sister is talkative, but the brothers are silent, and two cousins are mute. She has been an enchanting beauty, but now she is ugly. The pen is spoiled, and the ink is thick; the letter is unlucky. Have you any ink? I have some ink, and it is better. The old woman is industrious, but the sister is too talkative. She is of age, but the brothers are under age. The handsome man and the handsome woman were husband and wife; they have no children. A superior education and an inferior soul. The better history is in the library of the mad man. A new friend is better than an old enemy. The new and beautiful dresses of the young ladies are in the big box. She has white hands and fresh cheeks, with blue eyes and a benign expression. She is a malignant woman and very revengeful. A Turkish custom and a Greek custom are different things. The white robe is not dry. The English tongue is discreet, and the French tongue a favorite in the world.

FORMATION OF THE PLURAL OF ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives make their plural generally according to the same rules as nouns, viz. by adding *s* to the singular, *x* when they end in *au* or *eu*, and by changing *al* into *aux*.

Ex. *s. grand*, *p. grands*, great; *s. beau*, *p. beaux*, handsome; *s. riche*, *p. riches*, rich; *s. principal*, *p. principaux*, principal.

Bleu, however, makes its plural *bleus*, and *tout* changes into *tous*, fem. *toutes*.

The following Adjectives, ending in *al*, do not change it into *aux*, but add *s*:

bancal, bandy-legged; *doctoral*, *filial*, *fatal*, *final*, *frugal*, *glacial*, *initial*, *marital*; *matinal*, early rising; *nasal*, *naval*; *pascal*, paschal; *pénal*, *théâtral*, *sentimental*, *original*.

Another class of Adjectives, ending in *al*, from their signification, have no plural form for the masculine.

Ex. *dental*, *médial*, *mental*, *labial*, *lingual*, *palatal*, *zodiacal*; and *paroissial*, parochial.

EXERCISE.

(Learn the verb *Etre* interrogatively and negatively.)

The dress is green, the trimmings are reddish, and the belt is blue;

the gloves also are blue. The hands are small, but the feet are colossal. The true opinions of the members of the Senate were not the principal motives. The marital rights of the general are secured, and the final action will be seen. They had the special orders of the general, but we had the emperor's general orders. We had some pleasure from the amusements of the festival, but the special objects were not secured. The native land to the children of the soil. They have the accounts of the naval operations of Jean Bart and Ruyter. The four cardinal points are: North, South, East and West. Were they not the cardinals of the holy college? Ney was the commander of the army during the fatal days of the war of Russia. The Jesuits have a mental reservation. This was a grievous insult to the friend of the host; it will be an eternal disgrace. His immortal renown is superior to the fame of Cæsar.

FORMATION OF COMPARATIVE DEGREES.

The meaning of adjectives may be expressed in different ways, according to the result of a comparison between various persons or objects, to whom the same qualities are attributed.

1. If the result of the comparison is the superiority of one over others, this is called the *Comparative of Superiority*, which is formed by placing *plus* (more) before the adjective.

Ex. *fin*, comp. *plus fin*, finer; *magnifique*, comp. *plus magnifique*, more magnificent.

2. If the result is the inferiority of one to others, this is called the *Comparative of Inferiority*, which is formed by placing *moins* (less) before the adjective.

Ex. *beau*, comp. *moins beau*, less handsome.

3. If the result of the comparison is the equality of one to the other, this is called the *Comparative of Equality*, which is formed by placing *aussi* before the adjective in affirmative, and *si* in negative sentences.

Ex. *grand*, comp. *aussi grand*, as tall; *pas si grand que vous*, not as tall as you.

The English conjunctions *than* and *as*, which serve to connect the two terms of the comparison, are translated alike by *que*.

Ex. *plus petit que le frère*, smaller than the brother; *moins*

belle que la sœur, less handsome than the sister; *aussi savant que le père*, as learned as the father.

The following adjectives have irregular comparative forms :

Bon, good, makes *meilleur*, better; *mauvais*, bad, makes *pire*, worse; and *petit*, small, makes *moindre*, smaller.

EXERCISE.

She was richer than the sister, but the cousins are richer than all the members of the family. I am less familiar with the details of the history. She is a better friend than the brother, but he is more cautious than she. The apples are not as fresh as the pears, but the plums were smaller than the other fruits. The father is as kind as the son, but he is not as polite as Charles. Lucy is taller and more haughty, but Mary is handsomer and sweeter. Who is less imperious than the ruler of the country, and who is prouder than the son of the slave? Have you been in a more beautiful situation? The garden is wider than the house, and the house is taller than the garden. He is not as wise as his ancestors. The days will be longer and hotter in the summer, but in the winter they are shorter and colder. He is worse to-day, but he has been better than the other sick men.

If the result of the comparison is that one person or object surpasses all others, this is called the superlative. This degree is of twofold nature.

The *Relative Superlative* expresses the highest degree of the meaning of the adjective relatively to others, viz., to a number or a class of similar persons or objects. It is formed by prefixing the definite article or the possessive pronouns to the comparative degree.

Ex. comp. *plus grand*; super. *le plus grand*, the greatest: comp. *moins beau*; super. *le moins beau*, the least handsome: comp. *meilleur*; super. *le meilleur*, the best: comp. *pire*; super. *le pire*, the worst.

When the adjective, in this case, is placed after the noun, the definite article, which alone distinguishes the superlative from the comparative, must be repeated before the adjective, whether the noun have a pronoun or an article before it.

Ex. *la personne la plus aimable*, the most amiable person ; *mes vœux les plus sincères*, my most sincere wishes.

The *Absolute Superlative* expresses the highest degree of the meaning of the adjective absolutely, *i. e.*, without any comparison with others. It is formed by prefixing an adverb, expressive of the highest degree, to the adjective, such as *très*, *fort* and *bien*, very ; *extrêmement*, extremely ; *le plus*, the most ; *le moins*, the least ; *le mieux*, the best.

Ex. *Paris est bien beau*, Paris is handsome indeed ; *il est fort drôle*, he is very odd ; *elle est extrêmement savante*, she is extremely learned.

EXERCISE.

The uncle is the richest man of the country, but he is not well informed. A man is most discreet when he has not any secrets. The handsome sister is the most charming of the two, but she is too talkative ; the other is less beautiful but more attractive. O Father of all creatures, Thou art infinitely good and merciful ! Who is as good as he ? She was the best woman of all, and her daughters will be as charming as she was. I have a letter for the Right Reverend Archbishop ; he is the wisest man in the church, and most esteemed of all dignitaries. He has not been very strong, but he is the most skilful of the artisans of the city and does the best work. To the handsomest young lady. To the bravest defenders of the country. I have had the most interesting letter from my dearest friend. My brothers are the worst correspondents ; I have not had any letters since their departure. My brother's wife has the smallest child ; it is smaller than the little girl of my sister. The smartest children are not always the best, and the dullest children are not always the worst.

PLACE OF ADJECTIVES.

The place of adjectives varies in French, while in English it stands invariably before the noun they qualify.

The manner in which the place is determined, depends :

1. On *Emphasis* : An adjective which is strongly accented, is placed before its noun, all other rules notwithstanding.

Ex. *cet infortuné roi*, that unfortunate king ; *cette abominable chose*, that abominable thing.

2. On *Size*: Long adjectives are placed after short nouns and short adjectives before longer nouns.

Ex. *une affaire extraordinaire*, an extraordinary affair; *un long séjour*, a long residence.

3. On *Special Rules*, by which certain classes of adjectives are always placed before, and others after their nouns.

The principal rules on this subject are the following:

Before the noun are always placed:

a. Numeral adjectives, both cardinal and ordinal.

Ex. *vingt hommes*, twenty men; *la première chose*, the first thing.

b. The following adjectives, *autre*, other; *beau*, handsome; *bon*, good; *digne*, worthy (unless followed by a regime); *grand*, great; *gros*, big; *jeune*, young; *joli*, pretty; *mauvais*, bad; *méchant*, wicked; *meilleur*, better; *même*, same; *moindre*, less; *petit*, small; *sot*, foolish, and *vicieux*, old. *Long* is generally placed before the noun.

After the noun are placed by special rule:

a. All participles, like *suiuant*, following; *satisfait*, satisfied.

b. Adjectives conveying an impression made upon the senses, like those of color: *blanc*, white; *noir*, black; of taste: *doux*, sweet; of hearing: *haut*, loud; *bas*, low; of touch: *chaud*, warm; *froid*, cold; *ronde*, round, etc.

c. Adjectives expressive of nationality, like *Français*, French; *Américain*, American.

d. Adjectives ending in *al*, like *général*, *fatal*, etc.

The adjectives *droit*, right; *gauche*, left; *neuf*, new; *sec*, dry, are also placed after the noun; *dernier*, last; *prochain*, next, with days of the week.

Ex. *lundi dernier*, last Monday; *mardi prochain*, next Tuesday.

EXERCISE.

He has a good voice. We have a round table and a handsome room. She is a worthy old lady, and he is a wicked old man. I have a big sum, and you shall have a small sum. The pretty girl of the

uncle is a bad child. Twenty men on the first day, and forty men on the third day. She will have a white dress and a pink bonnet; you will have a black dress and a purple shawl. They have warm cloaks in these cold days. My French grammar, and my German dictionary. Where is the American fleet? It is in a Spanish harbor. This is a general law, but that is a special exception. Where is the blind woman? I have a new coat. They will be here next Sunday. I was there last Friday.

NUMERICAL ADJECTIVES.

The numerals are treated in French as adjectives, and must, therefore, as far as their forms permit it, agree with the noun they qualify, in gender and number.

Ex. *cinq cents hommes*, five hundred men; *la première histoire*, the first history.

The two principal classes, which alone will be explained here, are the *Cardinal Numbers*, which express numbers simply and absolutely, as *deux*, two; *trois*, three, etc.; and the *Ordinal Numbers*, which express them with regard to order, as *second*, second; *troisième*, third, etc.

● CARDINAL NUMBERS.

1 <i>un, une</i>	18 <i>dix-huit</i>
2 <i>deux</i>	19 <i>dix-neuf</i>
3 <i>trois</i>	20 <i>vingt</i>
4 <i>quatre</i>	21 <i>vingt-un</i>
5 <i>cinq</i>	22 <i>vingt-deux</i>
6 <i>six</i>	23 <i>vingt-trois</i>
7 <i>sept</i>	24 <i>vingt-quatre</i>
8 <i>huit</i>	25 <i>vingt-cinq</i>
9 <i>neuf</i>	26 <i>vingt-six</i>
10 <i>dix</i>	27 <i>vingt-sept</i>
11 <i>onze</i>	28 <i>vingt-huit</i>
12 <i>douze</i>	29 <i>vingt-neuf</i>
13 <i>treize</i>	30 <i>trente</i>
14 <i>quatorze</i>	31 <i>trente-un</i>
15 <i>quinze</i>	40 <i>quarante</i>
16 <i>seize</i>	41 <i>quarante-un</i>
17 <i>dix-sept</i>	50 <i>cinquante</i>

60 <i>soixante</i>	95 <i>quatre-vingt-quinze</i>
70 <i>soixante-dix</i>	96 <i>quatre-vingt-seize</i>
71 <i>soixante-onze</i>	97 <i>quatre-vingt-dix-sept</i>
72 <i>soixante-douze</i>	98 <i>quatre-vingt-dix-huit</i>
73 <i>soixante-treize</i>	99 <i>quatre-vingt-dix-neuf</i>
74 <i>soixante-quatorze</i>	100 <i>cent</i>
75 <i>soixante-quinze</i>	101 <i>cent-un, une</i>
76 <i>soixante-seize</i>	102 <i>cent-deux</i>
77 <i>soixante-dix-sept</i>	200 <i>deux cent</i>
78 <i>soixante-dix-huit</i>	300 <i>trois cent</i>
79 <i>soixante-dix-neuf</i>	1000 <i>mille</i>
80 <i>quatre-vingt</i>	1001 <i>mille un, une</i>
81 <i>quatre-vingt-un</i>	2000 <i>deux mille</i>
90 <i>quatre-vingt-dix</i>	3000 <i>trois mille</i>
91 <i>quatre-vingt-onze</i>	10000 <i>dix mille</i>
92 <i>quatre-vingt-douze</i>	100000 <i>cent mille</i>
93 <i>quatre-vingt-treize</i>	1000000 <i>un million</i>
94 <i>quatre-vingt-quatorze</i>	2000000 <i>deux millions</i>

The Cardinal Numerals are indeclinable, except the following :

Un, feminine, *une*, which is declined like the indefinite article.

Ex. *d'un homme*, of one man ; *à une femme*, to one woman.

Vingt, in the compound form *quatre-vingt*, (four scores) eighty, and *cent*, hundred, take the sign of the plural (*s*), when they stand immediately before a noun.

Ex. *quatre-vingts soldats*, eighty soldiers ; *trois cents dollars*, three hundred dollars.

But if *cent* is not in the plural, or if *vingt* and *cent* are separated from their noun by another numeral, they remain unchanged.

Ex. *J'ai cent piastres*, I have a hundred dollars ; *quatre-vingt-cinq lieues*, eighty-five leagues ; *cent cinquante livres*, hundred and fifty pounds.

Mille is never made a plural by adding *s*, and in giving the date of the year it is always written *mil*.

Ex. *deux mils habitants*, two thousand inhabitants ; *en mil cinq cent*, in the year 1500.

In stating numbers, the French omit both the word *a* or *one*, before hundred and thousand, and the conjunction *and*, in compound numbers, which are used in English.

Ex. a hundred men, *cent hommes*; one thousand years, *mille ans*; eighteen hundred and sixty-seven, *mil huit cent soixante-sept*.

The Cardinal Numbers cannot be inverted as in English, *i. e.* we cannot say in French five and twenty instead of twenty five; but the smaller number invariably follows the larger.

Ex. *vingt-cinq*, five and twenty.

The Cardinal Numbers from *dix-sept*, seventeen, upwards to *quatre-vingt-dix-neuf*, ninety-nine, are connected with each other by hyphens; in other combinations the hyphen is omitted.

Ex. *soixante-dix-huit*, seventy-eight; *cent vingt*, hundred and twenty.

Onze is treated as if its initial letter was a consonant.

Ex. *le onze Août*, the eleventh of August.

EXERCISE.

I have given one hundred dollars for the best book in the library; my books cost three dollars each. He paid to-day three hundred francs to the friends of his brother, and five hundred and ninety-three to his landlord. Have you been in the two stores? I was in the city of Paris in eighteen hundred and twenty-three, when it had more than six hundred thousand inhabitants. Eighty men fell in the battle, and two hundred and fifty were in the hospital. He left two millions of dollars, and each child had eight hundred thousand dollars for his share. I counted seventeen hundred volumes in the president's library, but the library of his son is larger. He had a thousand excuses. I have spoken of the adventure a hundred times, and he has related a better story a thousand times. The greatest merchant of the city has not seventy clerks in his store, and you think that he has a hundred and twenty. You counted seventy-seven, but you did not count the twenty horses in the stable. In the month of March one thousand seven hundred and sixty-three he had spent more than five hundred pounds at the game of whist.

ORDINAL NUMBERS.

1st <i>premier</i> or <i>unième</i>	25th <i>vingt-cinquième</i>
2d <i>second</i> or <i>deuxième</i>	30th <i>trentième</i>
3d <i>troisième</i>	31st <i>trente-unième</i>
4th <i>quatrième</i>	32d <i>trente-deuxième</i>
5th <i>cinquième</i>	40th <i>quarantième</i>
6th <i>sixième</i>	41st <i>quarante-unième</i>
7th <i>septième</i>	50th <i>cinquantième</i>
8th <i>huitième</i>	60th <i>soixantième</i>
9th <i>neuvième</i>	70th <i>soixante-dixième</i>
10th <i>dixième</i>	71st <i>soixante-onzième</i>
11th <i>onzième</i>	72d <i>soixante-douzième</i>
12th <i>douzième</i>	73d <i>soixante-troisième</i>
13th <i>treizième</i>	80th <i>quatre-vingtième</i>
14th <i>quatorzième</i>	81st <i>quatre-vingt-unième</i>
15th <i>quinzième</i>	90th <i>quatre-vingt-dixième</i>
16th <i>seizième</i>	91st <i>quatre-vingt-onzième</i>
17th <i>dix-septième</i>	100th <i>centième</i>
18th <i>dix-huitième</i>	101st <i>cent-unième</i>
19th <i>dix-neuvième</i>	200th <i>deux-centième</i>
20th <i>vingtième</i>	300th <i>trois-centième</i>
21st <i>vingt-unième</i>	1000th <i>millième</i>
22d <i>vingt-deuxième</i>	2000th <i>deux-millième</i>
23d <i>vingt-troisième</i>	10000th <i>dix-millième</i>
24th <i>vingt-quatrième</i>	1000000th <i>millionième</i>

The difference between *premier* and *unième* is this, that the former is used only for the first of a series, the latter in compound numbers.

Ex. *le premier volume*, the first volume; *le vingt-unième volume*, the twenty-first volume.

The difference between *second* (pronounced *sgon*) and *deuxième*, is that both can be used promiscuously for the second of a series, but *deuxième* alone can form compound numbers.

Ex. *la seconde* or *la deuxième fois*, the second time; *la trente-deuxième leçon*, the thirty-second lesson.

The Ordinal Numbers are all declined, but *premier* and *second*

alone add mute *e* in the feminine, as the others end already in mute *e*; all take *s* in the plural.

Ex. *la première année*, the first year; *la cinquième fois*, the fifth time; *les centièmes parties*, the hundredth parts.

The Ordinal Numbers are placed before their noun, except when chapters, articles, pages of a book and the like are quoted, in which case they may be placed after the noun, as in English.

Ex. *le dixième volume*, the tenth volume; *chapitre septième*, chapter the seventh; *article premier*, article the first.

EXERCISE.

My pretty sister is the first in my affections, and you are the last, for you are the least dear. I lent to the doctor the twenty-third volume of the edition of Voltaire's work. The third chapter is better than the second, but the best of all is the twenty-first. You will find the sentiments of the author in the first volume of the work, chapter seventh, page hundred and seventh. He arranged the men in three ranks, and he gave lances to the first, pistols to the second and muskets to the third. The thirteenth and the nineteenth are sound; the twelfth and the twenty-first are spoilt. He placed the governor in the first seat on the platform, the second was given to the secretary. The eighth company and the first were the best of the regiment, but the officer who commanded the second, was the bravest man of the army. (The) first in war, (the) first in peace, (the) first in the hearts of his countrymen.

CHAPTER IV.

PRONOUNS.

Pronouns are words which take the place of nouns, in order to avoid repetition. Instead of saying *John and John's friend*, we therefore say, *John and his friend*; and instead of *Peter came and Peter said*, simply *Peter came and he said*.

They are divided into the following classes:

1. Personal Pronouns, like *je*, I; *tu*, thou; *il*, he.
2. Possessive Pronouns, like *mon*, my; *ton*, thy; *son*, his.
3. Demonstrative Pronouns, like *ce*, this; *celui-ci*, this one.
4. Relative Pronouns, like *qui*, who; *lequel*, who.
5. Interrogative Pronouns, like *qui*, who? *lequel*, which?
- 6 Indefinite Pronouns, like *on*; *quiconque*, whoever; *tout*, all.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Personal Pronouns, like all classes of pronouns in French, are divided into two classes:

Conjunctive, such as are invariably used in immediate connection with the verb, and

Absolute, such as are never used with the verb, but only standing by themselves or with prepositions.

Conjunctive Personal Pronouns stand in various relations to the verb. They may be its *subject*, in which case they are said to be in the nominative.

Ex. *je parle*, I speak; *nous allons*, we go; *on dit*, they say.

Or they may be its *direct object*, in which case they are said to be in the accusative.

Ex. *L'homme me voit*, the man sees me; *le monde le hait*, the world hates him.

Or they may be its *indirect object*, in which case they are said to be in the dative or genitive.

Ex. *L'ami lui parle*, the friend speaks to him; *le vice leur nuit*, vice injures them; *le docteur me parle*, the doctor speaks to me.

Le père en parle, the father speaks of it; *la fille en était une*, the daughter was one of them.

For these various relations the French language has the following forms:

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

<i>Conjunctive.</i>				<i>Absolute</i>
Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	
1st person singular... <i>je</i> , I.	....	<i>me</i> , to me.	<i>me</i> , me.	<i>moi</i> , I.
2d person singular... <i>tu</i> , thou.	....	<i>te</i> , to thee.	<i>te</i> , thee.	<i>toi</i> , thou.
3d person singular. { <i>il</i> , he or it. } { <i>elle</i> , she or it. }	{ of him. } <i>en</i> { of her. } { of it. }	{ <i>lui</i> , { to him. } { to her. } { to it. }	{ <i>le</i> , him or it. } { <i>la</i> , her or it. }	{ <i>lui</i> , he. } { <i>elle</i> , she. }
1st person plural... <i>nous</i> , we.	....	<i>nous</i> , to us.	<i>nous</i> , us.	<i>nous</i> , we.
2d person plural... <i>vous</i> , you.	....	<i>vous</i> , to you.	<i>vous</i> , you.	<i>vous</i> , you.
3d person plural... { <i>ils</i> , they (m.) } { <i>elles</i> , they (f.) }	<i>en</i> { of them (m.) } { of them (f.) }	{ <i>leur</i> , { to them (m.) } { to them (f.) } { to them. }	<i>les</i> { them (m.) } { them (f.) }	{ <i>eux</i> , they, (m.) } { <i>elles</i> , they (f.) }
Reflexive Pronoun.....		{ to himself. } { to herself. } { to itself. } { to themselves. } { to one's self. }	{ himself. } { herself. } { itself. } { themselves. } { one's self. }	{ <i>soi</i> , one's self. }

In order to ascertain readily the nature of the relation of the pronoun to the verb, it is well to remember the manner in which the subject and object in a sentence are determined.

1. In order to ascertain the *subject*, we ask by the aid of the verb: Who or what does? The answer gives the subject, which is always in the nominative.

Ex. *Pierre est venu.* Who has come? Ans. Peter. *Peter* is the subject.

Elle fut ici. Who was here? Ans. She. *She* is the subject.

La guerre a commencé. What has begun? Ans. War. *War* is the subject.

2. In order to ascertain the *direct object*, we ask in the same manner: Whom or what does the subject? The answer gives the direct object, which is always the accusative.

Ex. *J'aime le frère.* Whom do I love? Ans. The brother. *Brother* is the direct object.

Elle m'aime. Whom does she love? Ans. Me. *Me* is the direct object.

Vous le voyez. What do you see? Ans. It. *It* is the direct object.

Ils se trompent. Whom do they deceive? Ans. Themselves. *Themselves* is the direct object.

3. In order to ascertain the *indirect object*, we ask in the same manner: To whom or to what does the subject? The answer gives the indirect object, which is always in the dative.

Ex. *Je parle à l'ami.* To whom do I speak? Ans. To the friend. *Friend* is the indirect object.

Cela lui appartient. To whom does it belong? Ans. To her. *To her* is the indirect object.

Il leur donne. To whom does he give? Ans. To them. *To them* is the indirect object.

On y ajoute. To what do they add? Ans. To it. *To it* is the indirect object.

All three may occur in the same sentence.

Ex. *Le mari donne le cadeau à sa femme.* Who gives? Ans. The husband. *Le mari* is the subject in the nominative. What does he give? Ans. The present. *Le cadeau* is the direct object in the accusative. To whom does he give? To the wife. *A sa femme* is the indirect object in the dative.

Elle les lui présente. Who presents? Ans. She. *Elle* is the subject in the nominative. What does she present? Ans. Them. *Les*

is the direct object in the accusative. To whom does she present them? Ans. To them. *Leur* is the indirect object in the dative.

This rule is all the more important as the difference between the direct and the indirect object, between the accusative and the dative, is not always perceptible in English. In the sentence: *He gives the book*, the book is the direct object, in the accusative. In the sentence: *He gives the book its due*, the book, without any change of form, is the indirect object in the dative. Thus, when we say, *I gave it my attention*, we ask:

Who gave? Ans. I. *I* is the subject, nominative.

What gave I? Ans. My attention. *Attention* is the direct object, accusative.

To what gave I? Ans. To it. *It*, therefore, is the indirect object, dative.

Consequently, if we have to translate:

I gave it to the friend—it is the accusative; and we will say: *Je le donnai à l'ami*.

But in: I gave it my attention—it is the dative, and must be translated: *Je lui donnai mon attention*, or *J'y donnai mon attention*.

If we have to translate:

You gave him back to his friends—*him* is the direct object, in the accusative, and we say: *Vous le rendîtes à ses amis*; but in: You gave him your friendship—*him* is the indirect object in the dative, and we say: *Vous lui donnâtes votre amitié*.

It will be seen from this, that the omission of the preposition *to*, before nouns and pronouns in English, must be carefully observed in translating into French.

Je, I, is not written with a capital initial as in English, except when it commences a sentence.

Je, I; *me*, me or to me; *te*, thee or to thee; *le*, him or it; *la*, her or it; *se*, one's self or to one's self, etc., elide their *e* or *a* when they are placed before a verb beginning with a vowel or mute *h*.

Ex. (*Je aime*) *j'aime*, I love; (*il me embrasse*) *il m'embrasse*, he kisses me; *elle l'adore*, she adores thee; *il l'amène*, he brings him; *il l'excuse*, they excuse her; *on s'habitué*, they accustom themselves.

These pronouns do not suffer elision when placed after their

verb even though they precede a word beginning with a vowel or mute *h*.

Ex. *Voyez-le ici*, see it here ; *prenez-la avec vous*, take it with you.

PLACE OF CONJUNCTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

The Conjunctive Personal Pronouns have their place rigorously assigned to them in their connection with the verb.

As *subject*, they stand, as in English, before the verb, except in questions, when they are placed after it and connected with it by a hyphen.

Ex. *Je veux*, I will ; *tu parles*, thou speakest ; *il aime*, he loves ; *voulez-vous ?* will you ? *vient-il ?* does he come ? *allons-nous ?* shall we go ?

As *objects*, they stand immediately before the verb, and in compound tenses, before the auxiliary verb (not before the participle).

Ex. *Il me voit*, he sees me ; *tu lui dis*, thou sayest to him ; *il lui parle*, he speaks to her ; *nous les aimons*, we love them ; *vous la connaissez*, you know her ; *ils nous virent*, they saw us ; *il m'a vu*, he has seen me ; *elle lui a plu*, she has pleased him.

Except in the affirmative imperative, when they are placed after the verb, and connected with it by a hyphen.

Ex. *Voyez-le*, see him ; *parlez-lui*, speak to her ; *dites-moi*, tell me ; *allez-y*, go to it ; *prenez-en*, take of it.

When the imperative is negative, the pronoun is placed again before the verb.

Ex. *Ne me parle pas*, don't speak to me ; *n'en prenez pas*, don't take of it ; *ne lui dis rien*, tell him nothing.

EXERCISE.

(Learn the Verbs of the Second Conjugation.)

Finish it and give it to your friend ; he will speak of it to your father. I gave my books to her, and she gave her gloves to me. She loves, you, and she will show you her sincerity, if you love her as

well. He has spoken to her, but she has not treated him with the same courtesy. Take two of them; I gave one of them to your friend. Why did you place her in that school? Because I love her dearly. They paid them two hundred dollars, and they have spent half of them. They deceive themselves if they think of it seriously. My son is in the country; I sent him to the farm, because he was sick. I sent him his books. We met them in the road; they saluted us and passed us. Do not thank me, I do not deserve it. You will oblige me, if you lend me a thousand dollars. I will give you so much, but I cannot give them as much. Speak to them and give them my compliments. Have you met them recently, or have you not carried them with you to the country? I have given him my watch, and he has given it to his sister.

(It must be remembered that the French has no neuter gender, and that, therefore, the English *it*, has to be translated by *le* or *la*, according to the gender of the noun which it represents).

ABSOLUTE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Absolute Personal Pronouns stand only by themselves, entirely unconnected with any verb, or they are joined to prepositions. They have, therefore, to be translated according to the use made of them in French.

1st person singular—*Moi*, I, or me.

Ex. <i>Moi, je le veux,</i>	I, will it.
<i>Il m'aime, moi,</i>	He loves me, <i>me</i> .
<i>Venez avec moi,</i>	Come with me.

2d person singular—*Toi*, thou, or thee.

Ex. <i>Toi, tu te trompes,</i>	<i>Thou</i> , art deceived.
<i>Il t'aime, toi,</i>	He loves <i>thee</i> .
<i>C'est à toi,</i>	It belongs to <i>thee</i> .

3d person singular—*Lui*, he, or him.

Ex. <i>Lui? Il est ici,</i>	He? He is here.
<i>Qui est là? Elle,</i>	Who is there? She.
<i>Vous irez sans elle,</i>	You will go without <i>her</i> .

1st person plural—*Nous*, we, or us.

Ex. <i>Nous l'avons, nous,</i>	We have it, we.
<i>Pour nous il a souffert,</i>	For us he has suffered.

2d person plural—*Vous*, you.

Ex. *Vous y êtes vous ?*

You are there, you.

Il est contre vous,

He is against you.

3d person plural { *Eux*, they or them (m.);
 elles, they or them (f.)

Ex. *Qui voyez-vous ? Eux ?*

Whom do you see ? Them ?

Il est parmi eux,

He is among them.

Une entre elles,

One among them.

Reflexive Pronoun—*Soi*, one's self.

Ex. *On pense trop à soi,* One thinks too much of one's self.

EXERCISE.

(Learn the Verbs of the Third Conjugation.)

Who was in the house ? He and she. Were they not also in the house ? Who are they ? I speak of the friends of the family. For me, I do not receive any guests, but you, who are young and healthy, you can do it for her. I will buy these books for them, if they can pay me. When I knocked, a voice said : " Who is there ? " I answered : " It is I." They did not hear me, and at last he came. He ? Do you speak of the owner ? Yes, it was he and not she, who opened the door for me. With whom was she ? She was with him and with her. Without them I cannot live. Speak to them, they are friends, but he, he is a fierce enemy. These ladies had among them a great beauty, who spoke to all our friends, but as to us, she did not notice us. Come with me and I will go with thee to the end of the world.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

Possessive Pronouns, which qualify nouns by means of reference to the possessor, are, like all pronouns, divided into Con-junctive and Absolute.

Con-junctive Possessive Pronouns are those which are in-variably used in immediate connection with a noun, which they precede. They correspond to those in English, which are also used only before a noun, like *my*, *thy*, *our*, and *your*. They have the following forms :

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
Masc.	Fem.	(For both Genders.)
1. <i>mon</i> , my.	<i>ma</i> .	<i>mes</i> .
2. <i>ton</i> , thy.	<i>ta</i> .	<i>tes</i> .
3. <i>son</i> , his, her, its.	<i>sa</i> .	<i>ses</i> .
1. <i>notre</i> , our.	<i>notre</i> .	<i>nos</i> .
2. <i>votre</i> , your.	<i>votre</i> .	<i>vos</i> .
3. <i>leur</i> , their.	<i>leur</i> .	<i>leurs</i> .

These Pronouns, which in English agree with the noun which they represent, agree in French in gender and number with the noun which they qualify.

Thus we say in English :

The man and his daughter—*his* agreeing with *man*, in English.

L'homme et sa fille—*sa* agreeing with *fille*, in French.

The mother and her son—*her* agreeing with *mother*, in English.

La mère et son fils—*son* agreeing with *fils*, in French.

The three feminine forms *ma*, *ta* and *sa*, when they come to stand before a noun beginning with a vowel or mute *h*, are exchanged for the masculine forms *mon*, *ton* and *son*, to avoid the hiatus.

Ex. (*ma amitié*), *mon amitié*, my friendship.

(*ta histoire*), *ton histoire*, thy history.

(*sa haleine*), *son haleine*, his breath.

These Possessive Pronouns are declined, like all other words in French, by means of the prepositions *de* (of), for the genitive, and *à* (to) for the dative. This gives the following forms :

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Nom.	<i>mon livre</i> , my book.	<i>mes livres</i> , my books.	
Gen.	<i>de mon livre</i> , of my book.	<i>de mes livres</i> , of my books.	
Dat.	<i>à mon livre</i> , to my book.	<i>à mes livres</i> , to my books.	
Acc.	<i>mon livre</i> , my book.	<i>mes livres</i> , my books.	
Nom.	<i>ma femme</i> , my wife.	<i>ses enfants</i> , his children.	
Gen.	<i>de ma femme</i> , of my wife.	<i>de ses enfants</i> , of his children.	
Dat.	<i>à ma femme</i> , to my wife.	<i>à ses enfants</i> , to his children.	
Acc.	<i>ma femme</i> , my wife.	<i>ses enfants</i> , his children.	

Notre and *votre* before nouns beginning with a consonant are pronounced as if they were written *not* and *not* only.

Ex. *notre maison*, our house; *votre père*, your father.

The Possessive Pronouns and their prepositions must be repeated before every noun which they qualify.

Ex. To my father and mother, *à mon père et à ma mère*; of your brothers and sisters, *de vos frères et de vos sœurs*.

EXERCISE.

(Learn the Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation.)

His friend and my friend were cousins. Your brother will speak to my uncle, when he sees him in the city. Tell your sister the secret, but do not tell it to your brother, for men are not as discreet as women. My wife will give it to her brothers and sisters, and perhaps they will be satisfied with (of) it. He had forgotten his hat, cane and cards; he is very absent-minded. Give me my letters and I will give you your papers. Are these your children? Where is his History of the Republic? This is my history. Your cousin is a beautiful lady, but she is less charming than her sister. My aunt and her two sons are with us; your aunt is still absent in Europe. They will be here in the summer with their children and their tutor. His hatred was the cause of his terrible vengeance; he will expiate his crimes on the scaffold. Our actions do not always have their effects in this world.

Absolute Possessive Pronouns are those which are used without a noun, as substitutes for a noun, like our English mine and thine, by the side of my and thy.

They are always accompanied by the article, and present the following forms:

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
1. <i>le mien</i> , mine.	<i>la mienne</i> .	<i>les miens</i> , <i>les miennes</i> .	
2. <i>le tien</i> , thine.	<i>la tienne</i> .	<i>les tiens</i> , <i>les tiennes</i> .	
3. <i>le sien</i> { his. hers. its.	<i>la sienne</i> .	<i>les siens</i> , <i>les siennes</i>	
1. <i>le nôtre</i> , ours.	<i>la nôtre</i> .	<i>les nôtres</i> , <i>les nôtres</i> .	
2. <i>le vôtre</i> , yours.	<i>la vôtre</i> .	<i>les vôtres</i> , <i>les vôtres</i> .	
3. <i>le leur</i> , theirs.	<i>la leur</i> .	<i>les leurs</i> , <i>les leurs</i> .	

It must be noticed that the conjunctive forms *notre* and *votre* have no accent, and are pronounced with a short *o*, whilst the absolute forms *le nôtre* and *le vôtre* have a circumflex accent, and are pronounced with a long *o*.

These pronouns agree in gender and number with the noun which they represent, thus :

Mon père et le vôtre, my father and yours.

Votre mère et la mienne, your mother and mine.

Tes enfants et les siens, thy children and his.

Ses filles et les leurs, her daughters and theirs.

EXERCISE.

I see my horses, where are yours? His sons and his daughters are older than mine, but they are younger than yours. I like his pictures and yours, but I prefer ours. My children and theirs play every day in the same garden. Where is your hat? this is mine. He gave me a ring, and said : "Is it yours or mine?" Show him these young horses, they are mine. My farm is small but productive; after my death it will be his, and he will make it still more fertile. Have you found your friends? No, but I have seen yours. My country and his have had a long war : his is exhausted, mine is as great as it was before. Bring me his exercises and hers, I will correct them together. Our friends are Protestants, hers are Catholics. I confided this secret to my friends and to theirs.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

Demonstrative Pronouns, which qualify nouns by designating their relation to time or place, are Conjunctive and Absolute.

Conjunctive Demonstrative Pronouns are those which are invariably used in immediate connection with a noun or the verb *être*, to be. They have the following forms :

Ce, this or that, before masculine nouns beginning with a consonant or aspirated *h*, and such forms of the verb *être* as begin with consonants.

Ex. *ce livre*, this book; *ce héros*, that hero; *ce fut lui*, this was he; *ce sera demain*, that will be to-morrow.

Cet, before nouns beginning with a vowel or mute *h*.

Ex. *cet ami*, this friend; *cet homme*, that man.

C', before such forms of the verb *être* as begin with a vowel.

Ex. *c'est moi*, this is I; *c'était hier*, that was yesterday.

Cette, before all feminine nouns.

Ex. *cette femme*, this woman; *cette affaire*, that affair; *cette habitude*, that habit.

Ces, these or those, before all plural nouns.

Ex. *ces rois*, these kings; *ces dames*, these ladies; *ces amis*, these friends; *ces âmes*, these souls; *ces habits*, these coats; *ces harengs*, those herrings.

These Demonstrative forms agree in gender and number with the noun which they qualify, and must be repeated before every noun to which they are applied.

Ex. This man and woman, *cet homme et cette femme*; these books and papers, *ces livres et ces papiers*.

EXERCISE.

This young man is my cousin, and that young lady is my friend. I have seen that great man and those excellent paintings of his hand. They are better than those works of art in the Museum. These grapes come from this garden and from our farm. Grant that favor to this man. These pens are better than those pencils. This woman is a poor widow, and with those children she suffers poverty. This intrepid sailor ventured on that adventure with these two men. That affair was painful to those men in that country. Give these flowers to that young lady, and tell her that if that man asks her, I will come to her aid. I would live in that house with your friends, if I had that garden.

Absolute Demonstrative Pronouns are those which are never used with a noun or a verb, but always stand by themselves as substitutes for a noun.

They are formed by a combination of the Conjunctive Pro-

noun *ce*, with the Absolute Personal Pronoun, and produce the following forms :

Masc. *ce* and *lui* make *celui*, this or that one.

Fem. *ce* " *elle* " *celle*, " "

Masc. *ce* " *eux* " *ceux*, these or those.

Fem. *ce* " *elles* " *celles*, " "

Besides which, there are the two compounds :

Ce and *ici* make *ceci*, this (for things.)

Ce " *là* " *cela*, that "

The first four, *celui*, *celle*, *ceux* and *celles*, are always made to agree in gender and number with the noun which they represent.

Ex. This general and that of the enemy, *ce général et celui de l'ennemi* ; my wife and that of my friend, *ma femme et celle de mon ami* ; these children and those of my uncle, *ces enfants et ceux de mon oncle* ; our ladies and those of the neighbor, *nos dames et celles du voisin*.

EXERCISE.

My children and those of my sister are the prettiest in the city. These soldiers with their chief were as proud as those of the younger general. These rivers are deep, those are shallow, but these have a short course and those are the longest in the world. Give me these drawings and send those to the bookseller ; I will keep this and give that to your friend. Examine these flowers ; which will you have, this or that ? I prefer these volumes, which are complete ; those, which are disfigured, are for him. Of those ladies, I like those who are modest ; these, which you see here, are too talkative. This house is handsome ; that, at the corner, is larger but less comfortable. I spoke to him of these amusements ; he said that he loved those which were more quiet. Where is that noise ? Is it this cock which makes it, or those hens in the yard ? When I was here before, I saw these, but those were not in the gallery.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Relative Pronouns are those which relate to a preceding noun, which is called *Antecedent*.

There are two Relative Pronouns in French, which have

precisely the same meaning, and differ only in the use which is made of them. They correspond both to our English *who*, *what*, *that*, *which*, etc.

The first of these is *qui*, which has the following forms.

Nom. *Qui*, *who*, *that* or *which*.

Ex. *L'homme qui est ici*, the man who is here; *le livre qui a paru*, the book which has appeared; *la maison qui est au coin*, the house that is at the corner.

Gen. *Dont* (for persons or things), }
De qui (for persons only), } whose, of whom, of which.

Ex. *Le soldat dont je parle*, the soldier of whom I speak; *ce dont il causait*, that of which he was speaking; *l'ami de qui je le tiens*, the friend from whom I have it; *celui de qui il fit mention*, he of whom he made mention.

Dat. *À qui*, to whom.

Ex. *Le voisin à qui j'écris*, the neighbor to whom I write; *celle à qui il est*, she to whom it belongs.

Acc. *Que*, whom, which or what.

Ex. *Le mendiant que je vis*, the beggar whom I saw; *la chose que j'oubliai*, the thing which I forgot; *les lettres qu'il écrivait*, the letters that he wrote.

Qui, whom, which (for persons), }
Quoi, what, which (for things), } with prepositions.

Ex. *Ceux pour qui je le fais*, those for whom I have done it, *ma femme à qui je le présentai*, my wife to whom I presented him; *ce à quoi il sert*, that for which it is good; *avec quoi il s'en alla*, with which (wherewith) he went away.

The pronoun *qui*, with its various forms, serves for both genders and for both numbers alike:

Ex. *L'homme*, } *qui est là*, } the man, } who is here.
la femme, }
le garçon, } *que vous voyez*. } the boy, } whom you see.
les filles, } the girls, }

The second Demonstrative Pronoun is *lequel*, which is declined in both of its parts, in *le* and *quel*, and thus produces the following forms :

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	Masc.	Fem.	Mas.	Fem.
Nom.	<i>lequel,</i>	<i>laquelle.</i>	<i>lesquels,</i>	<i>lesquelle.</i>
Gen.	<i>duquel,</i>	<i>de laquelle.</i>	<i>desquels,</i>	<i>desquelles.</i>
Dat.	<i>auquel,</i>	<i>à laquelle.</i>	<i>auxquels,</i>	<i>auxquelles.</i>
Acc.	<i>lequel,</i>	<i>laquelle.</i>	<i>lesquels,</i>	<i>lesquelle.</i>

It has the same meanings as the first, but as it shows so much more clearly gender and number by its various forms, it is frequently substituted for *qui* to avoid ambiguity, and it must always be used when the relative pronoun is dependent on a preposition. It must agree in gender and number with the noun to which it relates.

Ex. My friend, *without whom* I cannot live, *mon ami, sans lequel je ne saurais vivre* ; the books *for which* you paid, *les livres pour lesquels vous payâtes* ; the difficulties *through which* we have passed, *les difficultés par lesquelles nous avons passé.*

EXERCISE.

The person who spoke was not the lady whom you admired. This woman is the same of whom I received a letter, when I was in that city, in which you also have been recently. The pictures for which I paid this high price, are worse than those among which you found your Madonna. I like the man to whom she gave the flowers ; he was one of those for whom I feel sympathy. The friend whose advice was so good is my friend also ; he is a man of whom much has been said. The daughter of the soldier, with whom you came is very pretty, but her cousin, for whom I feel an admiration, is prettier. The thing to which you refer is a trifle, but the sums which you owe to that man are a serious affair. That of which I spoke and that of which I wrote are two different things ; the principal subject is that marriage, in which you are so much interested.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

Interrogative Pronouns are those which enable us to ask questions without a constant repetition of the noun. They are the same in French as the relative, with the exception of *dont*, which can never be used interrogatively.

The first, *qui*, presents the following forms:

Nom.	<i>qui</i> ,	who?
Gen.	{ <i>de qui</i> ,	of whom?
	{ <i>de quoi</i> ,	of what?
Dat.	{ <i>à qui</i> ,	to whom?
	{ <i>à quoi</i> ,	to what?
Acc.	{ <i>qui</i> ,	whom?
	{ <i>que</i> ,	what?
	{ <i>quoi</i> ,	what? (when standing alone.)

It must be noticed that the prepositions connected with the interrogative as well as with the relative pronoun are, in English, frequently separated from the pronoun and placed at the end of the sentence. In French the preposition must always retain its place before the pronoun.

Ex. Whom do you speak of?	<i>De qui parlez-vous?</i>
Whom } do you see?	Qui } voyez-vous?
What }	Que }
What did he treat of?	<i>De quoi traitait-il?</i>
Whom did she come with?	<i>Avec qui venait-elle?</i>

The second, *lequel*, has the same forms as the relative, but can only be used interrogatively when it has the meaning of which of several?

Ex. *Lequel de ces deux hommes connaissez-vous?* Which of these two men do you know? *Laquelle des sœurs est ici?* Which of the sisters is here?

A third Interrogative Pronoun is *quel*, which has the meaning of what kind of? and is declined like *lequel*, but can only be used in connection with a noun.

Ex. *Quel homme est-il?* What kind of man is he? *Quelles*

sortes de marchandises ? What kind of goods? *Quelle est cette femme ?* What kind of woman is she?

EXERCISE.

Who has written this book? The same author for whom you professed a great admiration. See the four pens: which one do you prefer? What did he speak of, when he made that great speech, with which he ended his career? Whom do you take me for? What do you want of me? I will tell you who he is and for whom he appears here. Which of the four seasons do you like best? I do not know for which I shall decide, I like them all. With whom did she go to Europe, and with what will she occupy her time at Rome? What did he devote himself to during that year, and what has he written? I know whom you speak of. What did he write about in his last letter? Which of these ladies is your sister, and to which must I speak? Who is this soldier, and what does he say? What kind of watch have you bought? I have heard what kind of statues he makes, but I have forgotten it.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

Indefinite Pronouns are those which refer, not to any one person or object definitely, but to some one vaguely or generally. They are generally the same as in English, *e. g.*, some, *quelque*; none, *personne*; all, *tout*; but there is one of them of very great importance, which alone will be mentioned here.

This is *on*, a Personal Indefinite Pronoun, inasmuch as it is a Pronoun, standing instead of a noun; Personal, because it can only represent persons, and Indefinite, because it never designates persons individually, but only generally. It has no equivalent in English, and is, therefore, translated in various ways. It can only be used as subject of a sentence, in the nominative case, with the third person singular of the verb, and referring to men, *i. e.*, neither to agencies above nor below him. We add the principal ways by which it is rendered into English.

On pense trop à soi-même.

People think too much of themselves.

Où peut-on être mieux qu'au sein de sa famille ?

Where can *one* be happier than in the bosom of one's family?

<i>On dit que la guerre est finie.</i>	<i>It is said the war is over.</i>
<i>On n'est pas toujours bons amis.</i>	<i>Men are not always good friends.</i>
<i>On travaille jour et nuit.</i>	<i>They work night and day.</i>
<i>On se trompe, madame.</i>	<i>You are mistaken, madame.</i>
<i>On l'a répété partout.</i>	<i>It has been repeated everywhere.</i>
<i>On acquiert l'expérience avec le temps.</i>	<i>We acquire experience with time.</i>

EXERCISE.

They say that he has left his family a large fortune. What did people do when the news was brought? People said that it was very sad, but they added, that the punishment was well deserved. Can one lodge in this hotel? One is not always young and pretty. One is not always happy, when one is very rich, for (the) happiness is in the heart. It is repeated to-day that the emperor has declared war, and it is believed in all circles. Was it said which of these persons was the husband of the lady who perished in the shipwreck? It was not known, when I left the ship, but it will be known when the journals of the day are brought.

CHAPTER V.

VERBS.

Verbs are that part of speech which serves to express action, and therefore is used to say something of a person or an object. They have a great variety of forms in order to express the

Person, who is the agent of the Verb: the first, second or third,

Number of persons, one or more: singular or plural,

Time of the action: present, past or future,

Mood or manner of the action: Indicative (positive), Subjunctive (contingent), Imperative and Conditional,

Nature of the Verb itself: Active, Passive, Neuter, Pronominal and Impersonal,

all of which varieties will be explained in their proper place.

AUXILIARY VERBS.

Auxiliary Verbs are called those which, besides being used by themselves, are also employed to form the so-called Compound Tenses of other verbs. There are two in French :

Avoir, to have, which serves to form the compound tenses of Active and some Neuter Verbs, and

Etre, to be, which serves to form the compound tenses of Neuter and Pronominal Verbs, and the passive of Active Verbs.

A VOIR.—TO HAVE.

INFINITIVE.

Avoir, to have.

avoir eu, to have had.

PARTICIPLE.

ayant, having.

ayant eu, having had.

eu, had.

Simple Tenses.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

J'ai

I have, I do have, I am having

tu as

thou hast

il or elle a

he or she has

nous avons

we have

vous avez

you have

ils or elles ont

they have

IMPERFECT.

J'avais

I had, I did have, I was having

tu avais

thou hadst

il or elle avait

he or she had

nous avions

we had

vous aviez

you had

ils or elles avaient

they had

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

J'eus

I had, I did have, I was having

tu eus

thou hadst

il or elle eut

he or she had

nous eûmes

we had

vous eûtes

you had

ils or elles eurent

they had

FUTURE.

<i>J'aurai</i>	I shall <i>or</i> will have
<i>tu auras</i>	thou shalt have
<i>il or elle aura</i>	he <i>or</i> she shall have
<i>nous aurons</i>	we shall have
<i>vous aurez</i>	you shall have
<i>ils or elles auront</i>	they shall have

CONDITIONAL.

<i>J'aurais</i>	I should <i>or</i> would have
<i>tu aurais</i>	thou shouldst have
<i>il or elle aurait</i>	he <i>or</i> she should have
<i>nous aurions</i>	we should have
<i>vous auriez</i>	you should have
<i>ils or elles auraient</i>	they should have

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

<i>Que j'aie</i>	That I may have
<i>que tu aies</i>	that thou mayest have
<i>qu'il or qu'elle ait</i>	that he <i>or</i> she may have
<i>que nous ayons</i>	that we may have
<i>que vous ayez</i>	that you may have
<i>qu'ils or qu'elles aient</i>	that they may have

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

<i>Que j'eusse</i>	That I might have
<i>que tu eusses</i>	that thou mightest have
<i>qu'il or qu'elle eût</i>	that he <i>or</i> she might have
<i>que nous eussions</i>	that we might have
<i>que vous eussiez</i>	that you might have
<i>qu'ils or qu'elles eussent</i>	that they might have

Compound Tenses.

INDICATIVE.

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

<i>J'ai eu</i>	I have had
<i>tu as eu</i>	thou hast had
<i>il or elle a eu</i>	he <i>or</i> she has had
<i>nous avons eu</i>	we have had
<i>vous avez eu</i>	you have had
<i>ils or elles ont eu</i>	they have had

PLUPERFECT.

<i>J'avais eu</i>	I had had
<i>tu avais eu</i>	thou hadst had
<i>il or elle avait eu</i>	he or she had had
<i>nous avions eu</i>	we had had
<i>vous aviez eu</i>	you had had
<i>ils or elles avaient eu</i>	they had had

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

<i>J'eus eu</i>	I had had
<i>tu eus eu</i>	thou hadst had
<i>il or elle eut eu</i>	he or she had had
<i>nous eûmes eu</i>	we had had
<i>vous eûtes eu</i>	you had had
<i>ils or elles eurent eu</i>	they had had

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

<i>J'aurai eu</i>	I shall or will have had
<i>tu auras eu</i>	thou shalt have had
<i>il or elle aura eu</i>	he or she shall have had
<i>nous aurons eu</i>	we shall have had
<i>vous aurez eu</i>	you shall have had
<i>ils or elles auront eu</i>	they shall have had

CONDITIONAL ANTERIOR.

<i>J'aurais eu</i>	I should or would have had
<i>tu aurais eu</i>	thou shouldst have had
<i>il or elle aurait eu</i>	he or she should have had
<i>nous aurions eu</i>	we should have had
<i>vous auriez eu</i>	you should have had
<i>ils or elles auraient eu</i>	they should have had

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

<i>Que j'aie eu</i>	that I may have had
<i>que tu aies eu</i>	that thou mayest have had
<i>qu'il or qu'elle ait eu</i>	that he or she may have had
<i>que nous ayons eu</i>	that we may have had
<i>que vous ayez eu</i>	that you may have had
<i>qu'ils or qu'elles aient eu</i>	that they may have had

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

<i>Que j'eusse eu</i>	that I might have had
<i>que tu eusses eu</i>	that thou mightest have had
<i>qu'il or qu'elle eût eu</i>	that he or she might have had
<i>que nous eussions eu</i>	that we might have had
<i>que vous eussiez eu</i>	that you might have had
<i>qu'ils or qu'elles eussent eu</i>	that they might have had

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Aie</i>	have [thou]
<i>qu'il or qu'elle ait</i>	let him or her have
<i>ayons</i>	let us have
<i>ayez</i>	have [you]
<i>qu'ils or qu'elles aient</i>	let them have

EXERCISE.

I have the same book that you have had. We desired that he might have a speedy end, for he has had a terrible disease. Let him have all the money that he desires; we have had our share. You should have had patience. I hope that he may have letters from his friends to-day; you had yours yesterday. You would have a large estate, and you will have a large fortune still. Thou hadst a better memory than I, but thou wilt have to learn more. He will have had two warnings. Let us have patience with them, and let them have a desire to do their duty. He hopes that she may have friends, and we hope that she may have a husband, but she has had enemies. They had had a meeting, and they will have had six in one month. She would have had a great surprise if he had been present.

AVOIR

To Have (Negatively.)

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

<i>Ne pas avoir</i>	not to have
---------------------	-------------

PAST.

(or compound of the present.)

<i>N'avoir pas eu</i>	not to have had
-----------------------	-----------------

PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

N'ayant pas not having

COMPOUND OF THE PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

N'ayant pas eu not having had

Simple Tenses.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

<i>Je n'ai pas</i>	I have not
<i>tu n'as pas</i>	thou hast no
<i>il n'a pas</i>	he has not
<i>nous n'avons pas</i>	we have not
<i>vous n'avez pas</i>	you have not
<i>ils n'ont pas</i>	they have not

IMPERFECT.

<i>Je n'avais pas</i>	I had not
<i>tu n'avois pas</i>	thou hadst not
<i>il n'avait pas</i>	he had not
<i>nous n'avions pas</i>	we had not
<i>vous n'aviez pas</i>	you had not
<i>ils n'avaient pas</i>	they had not

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

<i>Je n'eus pas</i>	I had not
<i>tu n'eus pas</i>	thou hadst not
<i>il n'eut pas</i>	he had not
<i>nous n'eûmes pas</i>	we had not
<i>vous n'eûtes pas</i>	you had not
<i>ils n'eurent pas</i>	they had not

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

<i>Je n'aurai pas</i>	I shall or will not have
<i>tu n'auras pas</i>	thou shalt not have
<i>il n'aura pas</i>	he shall not have
<i>nous n'aurons pas</i>	we shall not have
<i>vous n'aurez pas</i>	you shall not have
<i>ils n'auront pas</i>	they shall not have

CONDITIONAL.

<i>Je n'aurais pas</i>	I should or would not have
<i>tu n'aurais pas</i>	thou shouldst not have

<i>il n'aurait pas</i>	he should not have
<i>nous n'aurions pas</i>	we should not have
<i>vous n'auriez pas</i>	you should not have
<i>ils n'auraient pas</i>	they should not have

Compound Tenses.

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

<i>Je n'ai pas eu</i>	I have not had
<i>tu n'as pas eu</i>	thou hast not had
<i>il n'a pas eu</i>	he has not had
<i>nous n'avons pas eu</i>	we have not had
<i>vous n'avez pas eu</i>	you have not had
<i>ils n'ont pas eu.</i>	they have not had

PLUPERFECT.

<i>Je n'avais pas eu</i>	I had not had
<i>tu n'avais pas eu</i>	thou hadst not had
<i>il n'avait pas eu</i>	he had not had
<i>nous n'avions pas eu</i>	we had not had
<i>vous n'aviez pas eu</i>	you had not had
<i>ils n'avaient pas eu</i>	they had not had

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

<i>Je n'eus pas eu</i>	I had not had
<i>tu n'eus pas eu</i>	thou hadst not had
<i>il n'eut pas eu</i>	he had not had
<i>nous n'eûmes pas eu</i>	we had not had
<i>vous n'eûtes pas eu</i>	you had not had
<i>ils n'eurent pas eu</i>	they had not had

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

<i>Je n'aurai pas eu</i>	I shall or will not have had
<i>tu n'auras pas eu</i>	thou shalt not have had
<i>il n'aura pas eu</i>	he shall not have had
<i>nous n'aurons pas eu</i>	we shall not have had
<i>vous n'aurez pas eu</i>	you shall not have had
<i>ils n'auront pas eu</i>	they shall not have had

CONDITIONAL ANTERIOR.

<i>Je n'aurais pas eu</i>	I should or would not have had
<i>tu n'aurais pas eu</i>	thou shouldst not have had

<i>il n'aurait pas eu</i>	he should not have had
<i>nous n'aurions pas eu</i>	we should not have had
<i>vous n'auriez pas eu</i>	you should not have had
<i>ils n'auraient pas eu</i>	they should not have had

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

<i>Que je n'aie pas</i>	that I may not have
<i>que tu n'aies pas</i>	that thou mayest not have
<i>qu'il n'ait pas</i>	that he may not have
<i>que nous n'ayons pas</i>	that we may not have
<i>que vous n'ayez pas</i>	that you may not have
<i>qu'ils n'aient pas</i>	that they may not have

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

<i>Que je n'aie pas eu</i>	that I may not have had
<i>que tu n'aies pas eu</i>	that thou mayest not have had
<i>qu'il n'ait pas eu</i>	that he may not have had
<i>que nous n'ayons pas eu</i>	that we may not have had
<i>que vous n'ayez pas eu</i>	that you may not have had
<i>qu'ils n'aient pas eu</i>	that they may not have had

IMPERFECT.

<i>Que je n'eusse pas</i>	that I might not have
<i>que tu n'eusses pas</i>	that thou mightest not have
<i>qu'il n'eût pas</i>	that he might not have
<i>que nous n'eussions pas</i>	that we might not have
<i>que vous n'eussiez pas</i>	that you might not have
<i>qu'ils n'eussent pas</i>	that they might not have

PLUPERFECT.

<i>Que je n'eusse pas eu</i>	that I might not have had
<i>que tu n'eusses pas eu</i>	that thou mightest not have had
<i>qu'il n'eût pas eu</i>	that he might not have had
<i>que nous n'eussions pas eu</i>	that we might not have had
<i>que vous n'eussiez pas eu</i>	that you might not have had
<i>qu'ils n'eussent pas eu</i>	that they might not have had

IMPERATIVE.

<i>N'aie pas</i>	have not [thou]
<i>qu'il n'ait pas</i>	let him not have

n'ayons pas
n'avez pas
qu'ils n'aient pas

let us not have
 have not [you]
 let them not have

AVOIR

To Have

(Interrogatively.)

Simple Tenses.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

<i>Ai-je</i>	have I
<i>as-tu</i>	hast thou
<i>a-t-il</i>	has he
<i>avons-nous</i>	have we
<i>avez-vous</i>	have you
<i>ont-ils</i>	have they

IMPERFECT.

<i>Avais-je</i>	had I
<i>avais-tu</i>	hadst thou
<i>avait-il</i>	had he
<i>avions-nous</i>	had we
<i>aviez-vous</i>	had you
<i>avaient-ils</i>	had they

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

<i>Eus-je</i>	had I
<i>eus-tu</i>	hadst thou
<i>eut-il</i>	had he
<i>eûmes-nous</i>	had we
<i>eûtes-vous</i>	had you
<i>eurent-ils</i>	had they

FUTURE.

<i>Aurai-je</i>	shall or will I have
<i>auras-tu</i>	shalt thou have
<i>aura-t-il</i>	shall he have
<i>aurons-nous</i>	shall we have
<i>aurez-vous</i>	shall you have
<i>auront-ils</i>	shall they have

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

<i>Aurais-je</i>	should <i>or</i> would I have
<i>aurais-tu</i>	shouldst thou have
<i>aurait-il</i>	should he have
<i>aurions-nous</i>	should we have
<i>auriez-vous</i>	should you have
<i>auraient-ils</i>	should they have

Compound Tenses.

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

<i>Ai-je eu</i>	have I had
<i>as-tu eu</i>	hast thou had
<i>a-t-il eu</i>	has he had
<i>avons-nous eu</i>	have we had
<i>avez-vous eu</i>	have you had
<i>ont-ils eu</i>	have they had

PLUPERFECT.

<i>Avais-je eu</i>	had I had
<i>avais-tu eu</i>	hadst thou had
<i>avait-il eu</i>	had he had
<i>avions-nous eu</i>	had we had
<i>aviez-vous eu</i>	had you had
<i>avaient-ils eu</i>	had they had

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

<i>Eus-je eu</i>	had I had
<i>eus-tu eu</i>	hadst thou had
<i>eut-il eu</i>	had he had
<i>eûmes-nous eu</i>	had we had
<i>eûtes-vous eu</i>	had you had
<i>eurent-ils eu</i>	had they had

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

<i>Aurai-je eu</i>	shall <i>or</i> will I have had
<i>auras-tu eu</i>	shalt thou have had
<i>aura-t-il eu</i>	shall he have had
<i>aurons-nous eu</i>	shall we have had
<i>aurez-vous eu</i>	shall you have had
<i>auront-ils eu</i>	shall they have had

CONDITIONAL ANTERIOR.

<i>Aurais-je eu</i>	{ should <i>or</i> would, could, <i>or</i> might I
<i>aurais-tu eu</i>	{ have had
<i>aurait-il eu</i>	shouldst thou have had
<i>aurions-nous eu</i>	should he have had
<i>auriez-vous eu</i>	should we have had
<i>auraient-ils eu</i>	should you have had
	should they have had

AVOIR

To Have (Negatively and Interrogatively.)

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

<i>N'ai-je pas</i>	have I not
<i>n'as-tu pas</i>	hast thou not
<i>n'a-t-il pas</i>	has he not
<i>n'avons-nous pas</i>	have we not
<i>n'avez-vous pas</i>	have you not
<i>n'ont-ils pas</i>	have they not

IMPERFECT.

<i>N'avais-je pas</i>	had I not
<i>n'avais-tu pas</i>	hadst thou not
<i>n'avait-il pas</i>	had he not
<i>n'avions-nous pas</i>	had we not
<i>n'aviez-vous pas</i>	had you not
<i>n'avaient-ils pas</i>	had they not

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

<i>N'eus-je pas</i>	had I not
<i>n'eus-tu pas</i>	hadst thou not
<i>n'eut-il pas</i>	had he not
<i>n'eûmes-nous pas</i>	had we not
<i>n'eûtes-vous pas</i>	had you not
<i>n'eurent-ils pas</i>	had they not

FUTURE.

<i>N'aurai-je pas</i>	shall <i>or</i> will I not have
<i>n'auras-tu pas</i>	shalt thou not have

<i>n'aura-t-il pas</i>	shall he not have
<i>n'aurons-nous pas</i>	shall we not have
<i>n'aurez-vous pas</i>	shall you not have
<i>n'auront-ils pas</i>	shall they not hav

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

<i>N'aurais-je pas</i>	should <i>or</i> would I not have
<i>n'aurais-tu pas</i>	shouldst thou not have
<i>n'aurait-il pas</i>	should he not have
<i>n'aurions-nous pas</i>	should we not have
<i>n'auriez-vous pas</i>	should you not have
<i>n'auraient-ils pas</i>	should they not have

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

<i>N'ai-je pas eu</i>	have I not had
<i>n'as-tu pas eu</i>	hast thou not had
<i>n'a-t-il pas eu</i>	has he not had
<i>n'avons-nous pas eu</i>	have we not had
<i>n'avez-vous pas eu</i>	have you not had
<i>n'ont-ils pas eu</i>	have they not had

PLUPERFECT.

<i>N'avais-je pas eu</i>	had I not had
<i>n'avais-tu pas eu</i>	hadst thou not had
<i>n'avait-il pas eu</i>	had he not had
<i>n'avions-nous pas eu</i>	had we not had
<i>n'aviez-vous pas eu</i>	had you not had
<i>n'avaient-ils pas eu</i>	had they not had

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

<i>N'eus-je pas eu</i>	had I not had
<i>n'eus-tu pas eu</i>	hadst thou not had
<i>n'eut-il pas eu</i>	had he not had
<i>n'eûmes-nous pas eu</i>	had we not had
<i>n'eûtes-vous pas eu</i>	had you not had
<i>n'eurent-ils pas eu</i>	had they not had

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

<i>N'aurai-je pas eu</i>	shall <i>or</i> will I not have had
<i>n'auras-tu pas eu</i>	shalt thou not have had

<i>n'aura-t-il pas eu</i>	shall he not have had
<i>n'aurons-nous pas eu</i>	shall we not have had
<i>n'aurez-vous pas eu</i>	shall you not have had
<i>n'auront-ils pas eu</i>	shall they not have had

CONDITIONAL ANTERIOR.

<i>N'aurais-je pas eu</i>	should or would I not have had
<i>n'aurais-tu pas eu</i>	shouldst thou not have had
<i>n'aurait-il pas eu</i>	should he not have had
<i>n'aurions-nous pas eu</i>	should we not have had
<i>n'auriez-vous pas eu</i>	should you not have had
<i>n'auraient-ils pas eu</i>	should they not have had

Y AVOIR	<i>There To Be</i>	(<i>Affirmatively.</i>)
---------	--------------------	---------------------------

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

<i>Y avoir</i>	there to be
----------------	-------------

PAST.

<i>Y avoir eu</i>	there to have been
-------------------	--------------------

PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

<i>Y ayant</i>	there being
----------------	-------------

COMPOUND OF THE PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

<i>Y ayant eu</i>	there having been
-------------------	-------------------

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

<i>Il y a</i>	there is or there are
---------------	-----------------------

IMPERFECT.

<i>Il y avait</i>	there was or there were
-------------------	-------------------------

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

<i>Il y eut</i>	there was or there were
-----------------	-------------------------

FUTURE.

<i>Il y aura</i>	there will be
------------------	---------------

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

Il y aurait there would be

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

Il y a eu there has been *or* there have been

PLUPERFECT.

Il y avait eu there had been

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

Il y eut eu there had been

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Il y aura eu there will have been

CONDITIONAL ANTERIOR.

Il y aurait eu there would have been

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Qu'il y ait that there may be

IMPERFECT.

Qu'il y eût that there might be

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

Qu'il y ait eu that there may have been

PLUPERFECT.

Qu'il y eût eu that there might have been.

Y AVOIR *There To Be* (*Negatively.*)

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

Ne pas y avoir not there to be

PAST.

Ne pas y avoir eu not there to have been

PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

N'y ayant pas there not being

COMPOUND OF THE PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

N'y ayant pas eu there not having been

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

Il n'y a pas there is not *or* there are not

IMPERFECT.

Il n'y avait pas there was not *or* there were not

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Il n'y eut pas there was not *or* there were not

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Il n'y aura pas there will not be

CONDITIONAL.

Il n'y aurait pas there would not be

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

Il n'y a pas eu there has not been

PLUPERFECT.

Il n'y avait pas eu there had not been

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

Il n'y eut pas eu there had not been

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Il n'y aura pas eu there will not have been

CONDITIONAL ANTERIOR.

Il n'y aurait pas eu there would not have been

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Qu'il n'y ait pas that there may not be

IMPERFECT.

Qu'il n'y eût pas that there might not be

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

Qu'il n'y ait pas eu that there may not have been

PLUPERFECT.

Qu'il n'y eût pas eu that there might not have been

Y AVOIR *There To Be* (*Interrogatively.*)

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

Y a-t-il is there *or* are there

IMPERFECT.

Y avait-il was there *or* were there

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Y eut-il was there *or* were there

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Y aurait-il will there be

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

Y aurait-il would there be

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

Y a-t-il eu has there been *or* have there been

PLUPERFECT.

Y avait-il eu had there been

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

Y eut-il eu had there been

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Y aura-t-il eu will there have been

CONDITIONAL ANTERIOR.

Y aurait-il eu would there have been

Y AVOIR *There To Be (Negatively and Interrogatively.)*

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

N'y a-t-il pas is there not *or* are there not

IMPERFECT.

N'y avait-il pas was there not *or* were there not

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

N'y eut-il pas was there not *or* were there not

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

N'y aura-t-il pas will there not be

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

N'y aurait-il pas would there not be

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

N'y a-t-il pas eu has there not been

PLUPERFECT.

N'y avait-il pas eu had there not been

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

N'y eut-il pas eu had there not been

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

N'y aura-t-il pas eu will there not have been

CONDITIONAL ANTERIOR.

N'y aurait-il pas eu would there not have been

EXERCISE.

She has had beauty, and now she has wit and talents. He wished, when he left us, that he might have a sword and a pistol; he said that he had courage for ten. Having had the fever twice, I shall not have it this summer. What have you had for dinner? Should I not have had as much as he? I wish that you may have health and a long life. Had you two cousins or only one? When has she had her party? I hoped, that she might have had it, when I was there, but

she had had one a week before my arrival. To have had an accident like that! Who could have had an idea of this affair? Would not they have had more friends, if they had had more discretion?

Let them have their desire, and they might not have had it. Will he have money, when he shall have had a great success? Would we not have the same master, if we had had the same training? Should we have good wines, and should we have water for our meals? I thought that we had had the greatest misfortunes, but she has had even greater. Has she not much wit? She has had it, but she has it not now that she is old. When we shall have had all, we shall have had little after all. Has he many friends, and has she many relations in that city? Thou hast had thy will, now let them have theirs. You had riches and you have power now. Which would you have, if you had the choice?

ETRE

*To Be**(Affirmatively.)*

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

Etre

to be

PAST.

Avoir été

to have been

PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

Etant

being

COMPOUND OF THE PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

Ayant été

having been

PARTICIPLE PAST.

Été

been

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

Je suis

I am

tu es

thou art

il est

he is

nous sommes

we are

vous êtes

you are

ils sont

they are

IMPERFECT.

<i>J'étais</i>	I was
<i>tu étais</i>	thou wast
<i>il était</i>	he was
<i>nous étions</i>	we were
<i>vous étiez</i>	you were
<i>ils étaient</i>	they were

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

<i>Je fus</i>	I was
<i>tu fus</i>	thou wast
<i>il fut</i>	he was
<i>nous fûmes</i>	we were
<i>vous fûtes</i>	you were
<i>ils furent</i>	they were

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

<i>Je serai</i>	I shall or will be
<i>tu seras</i>	thou shalt be
<i>il sera</i>	he shall be
<i>nous serons</i>	we shall be
<i>vous serez</i>	you shall be
<i>ils seront</i>	they shall be

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

<i>Je serais</i>	I should or would be
<i>tu serais</i>	thou shouldst be
<i>il serait</i>	he should be
<i>nous serions</i>	we should be
<i>vous seriez</i>	you should be
<i>ils seraient</i>	they should be

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

<i>J'ai été</i>	I have been
<i>tu as été</i>	thou hast been
<i>il a été</i>	he has been
<i>nous avons été</i>	we have been
<i>vous avez été</i>	you have been
<i>ils ont été</i>	they have been

PLUPERFECT.

<i>J'avais été</i>	I had been
<i>tu avais été</i>	thou hadst been
<i>il avait été</i>	he had been
<i>nous avions été</i>	we had been
<i>vous aviez été</i>	you had been
<i>ils avaient été</i>	they had been

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

<i>J'eus été</i>	I had been
<i>tu eus été</i>	thou hadst been
<i>il eut été</i>	he had been
<i>nous eûmes été</i>	we had been
<i>vous eûtes été</i>	you had been
<i>ils eurent été</i>	they had been

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

<i>J'aurai été</i>	I shall <i>or</i> will have been
<i>tu auras été</i>	thou shalt have been
<i>il aura été</i>	he shall have been
<i>nous aurons été</i>	we shall have been
<i>vous aurez été</i>	you shall have been
<i>ils auront été</i>	they shall have been

CONDITIONAL ANTERIOR.

<i>J'aurais été</i>	I should <i>or</i> would have been
<i>tu aurais été</i>	thou shouldst have been
<i>il aurait été</i>	he should have been
<i>nous aurions été</i>	we should have been
<i>vous auriez été</i>	you should have been
<i>ils auraient été</i>	they should have been

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Sois</i>	be [thou]
<i>qu'il soit</i>	let him be
<i>soyons</i>	let us be
<i>soyez</i>	be [you]
<i>qu'ils soient</i>	let them be

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

<i>Que je sois</i>	that I may be
<i>que tu sois</i>	that thou mayest be

<i>qu'il soit</i>	that he may be
<i>que nous soyons</i>	that we may be
<i>que vous soyez</i>	that you may be
<i>qu'ils soient</i>	that they may be

PLUPERFECT.

<i>Que je fusse</i>	that I might be
<i>que tu fusses</i>	that thou mightest be
<i>qu'il fût</i>	that he might be
<i>que nous fussions</i>	that we might be
<i>que vous fussiez</i>	that you might be
<i>qu'ils fussent</i>	that they might be

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

<i>Que j'aie été</i>	that I may have been
<i>que tu aies été</i>	that thou mayest have been
<i>qu'il ait été</i>	that he may have been
<i>que nous ayons été</i>	that we may have been
<i>que vous ayez été</i>	that you may have been
<i>qu'ils aient été</i>	that they may have been

PLUPERFECT.

<i>Que j'eusse été</i>	that I might have been
<i>que tu eusses été</i>	that thou mightest have been
<i>qu'il eût été</i>	that he might have been
<i>que nous eussions été</i>	that we might have been
<i>que vous eussiez été</i>	that you might have been
<i>qu'ils eussent été</i>	that they might have been

ÊTRE

To Be

(Negativity.)

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

<i>Né pas être</i>	not to be
--------------------	-----------

PERFECT.

<i>Né pas avoir été</i>	not to have been
-------------------------	------------------

PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

<i>N'étant pas</i>	not being
--------------------	-----------

COMPOUND OF THE PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

N'ayant pas été not having been

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

<i>Je ne suis pas</i>	I am not
<i>tu n'es pas</i>	thou art not
<i>il n'est pas</i>	he is not
<i>nous ne sommes pas</i>	we are not
<i>vous n'êtes pas</i>	you are not
<i>ils ne sont pas</i>	they are not

IMPERFECT.

<i>Je n'étais pas</i>	I was not
<i>tu n'étais pas</i>	thou wast not
<i>il n'était pas</i>	he was not
<i>nous n'étions pas</i>	we were not
<i>vous n'étiez pas</i>	you were not
<i>ils n'étaient pas</i>	they were not

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

<i>Je ne fus pas</i>	I was not
<i>tu ne fus pas</i>	thou wast not
<i>il ne fut pas</i>	he was not
<i>nous ne fûmes pas</i>	we were not
<i>vous ne fûtes pas</i>	you were not
<i>ils ne furent pas</i>	they were not

FUTURE.

<i>Je ne serai pas</i>	I shall <i>or</i> will not be
<i>tu ne seras pas</i>	thou shalt not be
<i>il ne sera pas</i>	he shall not be
<i>nous ne serons pas</i>	we shall not be
<i>vous ne serez pas</i>	you shall not be
<i>ils ne seront pas</i>	they shall not be

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

<i>Je ne serais pas</i>	I should <i>or</i> would not be
<i>tu ne serais pas</i>	thou shouldst not be

il ne serait pas
nous ne serions pas
vous ne seriez pas
ils ne seraient pas

he should not be
 we should not be
 you should not be
 they should not be

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

Je n'ai pas été
tu n'as pas été
il n'a pas été
nous n'avons pas été
vous n'avez pas été
ils n'ont pas été

I have not been
 thou hast not been
 he has not been
 we have not been
 you have not been
 they have not been

PLUPERFECT.

Je n'avais pas été
tu n'avais pas été
il n'avait pas été
nous n'avions pas été
vous n'aviez pas été
ils n'avaient pas été

I had not been
 thou hadst not been
 he had not been
 we had not been
 you had not been
 they had not been

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

Je n'eus pas été
tu n'eus pas été
il n'eut pas été
nous n'eûmes pas été
vous n'eûtes pas été
ils n'eurent pas été

I had not been
 thou hadst not been
 he had not been
 we had not been
 you had not been
 they had not been

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Je n'aurai pas été
tu n'auras pas été
il n'aura pas été
nous n'aurons pas été
vous n'aurez pas été
ils n'auront pas été

I shall or will not have been
 thou shalt not have been
 he shall not have been
 we shall not have been
 you shall not have been
 they shall not have been

CONDITIONAL ANTERIOR.

Je n'aurais pas été
tu n'aurais pas été
il n'aurait pas été

I should or would not have been
 thou shouldst not have been
 he should not have been

nous n'aurions pas été
vous n'auriez pas été
il n'auraient pas été

we should not have been
 you should not have been
 they should not have been

IMPERATIVE.

Ne sois pas
qu'il ne soit pas
ne soyons pas
ne soyez pas
qu'ils ne soient pas

be not [thou]
 let him not be
 let us not be
 be not [you]
 let them not be

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Que je ne sois pas
que tu ne sois pas
qu'il ne soit pas
que nous ne soyons pas
que vous ne soyez pas
qu'ils ne soient pas

that I may not be
 that thou mayest not be
 that he may not be
 that we may not be
 that you may not be
 that they may not be

IMPERFECT.

Que je ne fusse pas
que tu ne fusses pas
qu'il ne fût pas
que nous ne fussions pas
que vous ne fussiez pas
qu'ils ne fussent pas

that I might not be
 that thou mightest not be
 that he might not be
 that we might not be
 that you might not be
 that they might not be

PRETERIT or PAST.

Que je n'aie pas été
que tu n'aies pas été
qu'il n'ait pas été
que nous n'ayons pas été
que vous n'ayez pas été
qu'ils n'aient pas été

that I may not have been
 that thou mayest not have been
 that he may not have been
 that we may not have been
 that you may not have been
 that they may not have been

PLUPERFECT.

Que je n'eusse pas été
que tu n'eusses pas été
qu'il n'eût pas été

that I might not have been
 that thou mightest not have been
 that he might not have been

<i>que nous n'eussions pas été</i>	that we might not have been
<i>que vous n'eussiez pas été</i>	that you might not have been
<i>qu'ils n'eussent pas été</i>	that they might not have been

ÊTRE

*To Be**(Interrogatively.)*

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

<i>Suis-je</i>	am I
<i>es-tu</i>	art thou
<i>est-il</i>	is he
<i>sommes-nous</i>	are we
<i>êtes-vous</i>	are you
<i>sont-ils</i>	are they

IMPERFECT.

<i>Étais-je</i>	was I
<i>étais-tu</i>	wast thou
<i>était-il</i>	was he
<i>étions-nous</i>	were we
<i>étiez-vous</i>	were you
<i>étaient-ils</i>	were they

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

<i>Fus-je</i>	was I
<i>fus-tu</i>	wast thou
<i>fut-il</i>	was he
<i>fûmes-nous</i>	were we
<i>fûtes-vous</i>	were you
<i>furent-ils</i>	were they

FUTURE.

<i>Serai-je</i>	shall or will I be
<i>seras-tu</i>	shalt thou be
<i>sera-t-il</i>	shall he be
<i>serons-nous</i>	shall we be
<i>serez-vous</i>	shall you be
<i>seront-ils</i>	shall they be

CONDITIONAL

PRESENT.

<i>Serais-je</i>	should <i>or</i> would I be
<i>serais-tu</i>	shouldst thou be
<i>serait-il</i>	should he be
<i>serions-nous</i>	should we be
<i>seriez-vous</i>	should you be
<i>seraient-ils</i>	should they be

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

<i>As-je été</i>	have I been
<i>as-tu été</i>	hast thou been
<i>a-t-il été</i>	has he been
<i>avons-nous été</i>	have we been
<i>avez-vous été</i>	have you been
<i>ont-ils été</i>	have they been

PLUPERFECT.

<i>Avais-je été</i>	had I been
<i>avais-tu été</i>	hadst thou been
<i>avait-il été</i>	had he been
<i>avions-nous été</i>	had we been
<i>aviez-vous été</i>	had you been
<i>avaient-ils été</i>	had they been

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

<i>Eus-je été</i>	had I been
<i>eus-tu été</i>	hadst thou been
<i>eut-il été</i>	had he been
<i>eûmes-nous été</i>	had we been
<i>eûtes-vous été</i>	had you been
<i>eurent-ils été</i>	had they been

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

<i>Aurai-je été</i>	shall <i>or</i> will I have been
<i>auras-tu été</i>	shalt thou have been
<i>aura-t-il été</i>	shall he have been
<i>aurons-nous été</i>	shall we have been
<i>aurez-vous été</i>	shall you have been
<i>auront-ils été</i>	shall they have been

CONDITIONAL ANTERIOR.

<i>Anrais-j été</i>	should or would I have been
<i>aurais-tu été</i>	shouldst thou have been
<i>aurait-il été</i>	should he have been
<i>aurions-nous été</i>	should we have been
<i>auriez-vous été</i>	should you have been
<i>auraient-ils été</i>	should they have been

ETRE To Be (*Negatively and Interrogatively.*)

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

<i>Ne suis-je pas</i>	am I not
<i>n'es-tu pas</i>	art thou not
<i>n'est-il pas</i>	is he not
<i>ne sommes-nous pas</i>	are we not
<i>n'êtes-vous pas</i>	are you not
<i>ne sont-ils pas</i>	are they not

IMPERFECT.

<i>N'étais-je pas</i>	was I not
<i>n'étais-tu pas</i>	wast thou not
<i>n'était-il pas</i>	was he not
<i>n'étions-nous pas</i>	were we not
<i>n'étiez-vous pas</i>	were you not
<i>n'étaient-ils pas</i>	were they not

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

<i>Ne fus-je pas</i>	was I not
<i>ne fus-tu pas</i>	wast thou not
<i>ne fut-il pas</i>	was he not
<i>ne fûmes-nous pas</i>	were we not
<i>ne fûtes-vous pas</i>	were you not
<i>ne furent-ils pas</i>	were they not

FUTURE.

<i>Ne serai-je pas</i>	shall or will I not be
<i>ne seras-tu pas</i>	shalt thou not be
<i>ne sera-t-il pas</i>	shall he not be

<i>ne serons-nous pas</i>	shall we not be
<i>ne serez-vous pas</i>	shall you not be
<i>ne seront-ils pas</i>	shall they not be

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

<i>Ne serais-je pas</i>	should <i>or</i> would I not be
<i>ne serais-tu pas</i>	shouldst thou not be
<i>ne serait-il pas</i>	should he not be
<i>ne serions-nous pas</i>	should we not be
<i>ne seriez-vous pas</i>	should you not be
<i>ne seraient-ils pas</i>	should they not be

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

<i>N'ai-je pas été</i>	have I not been
<i>n'as-tu pas été</i>	hast thou not been
<i>n'a-t-il pas été</i>	has he not been
<i>n'avons-nous pas été</i>	have we not been
<i>n'avez-vous pas été</i>	have you not been
<i>n'ont-ils pas été</i>	have they not been

PLUPERFECT.

<i>N'avais-je pas été</i>	had I not been
<i>n'avais-tu pas été</i>	hadst thou not been
<i>n'avait-il pas été</i>	had he not been
<i>n'avions-nous pas été</i>	had we not been
<i>n'aviez-vous pas été</i>	had you not been
<i>n'avaient-ils pas été</i>	had they not been

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

<i>N'eus-je pas été</i>	had I not been
<i>n'eus-tu pas été</i>	hadst thou not been
<i>n'eut-il pas été</i>	had he not been
<i>n'eûmes-nous pas été</i>	had we not been
<i>n'eûtes-vous pas été</i>	had you not been
<i>n'eurent-ils pas été</i>	had they not been

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

<i>N'aurai-je pas été</i>	shall <i>or</i> will I not have been
<i>n'auras-tu pas été</i>	shalt thou not have been

<i>n'aura-t-il pas été</i>	shall he not have been
<i>n'aurons-nous pas été</i>	shall we not have been
<i>n'aurez-vous pas été</i>	shall you not have been
<i>n'auront-ils pas été</i>	shall they not have been

CONDITIONAL PAST.

<i>N'aurais-je pas été</i>	{ should I not have been, <i>or</i> would
<i>n'aurais-tu pas été</i>	{ I, might I not have been
<i>n'aurait-il pas été</i>	shouldst thou not have been
<i>n'aurions-nous pas été</i>	should he not have been
<i>n'auriez-vous pas été</i>	should we not have been
<i>n'auraient-ils pas été</i>	should you not have been
	should they not have been

EXERCISE.

He is my friend and he was yours; why is he now your enemy? She has been in the house with me, whilst you have been in the garden. Where have they been? Were you content with your lot, or would you be happier elsewhere? I know that I would be most happy with you. He hoped that she might have been wiser, but she has been hasty, and that was her misfortune. Where were you, when I was in the church? We were all in the open square, where there was a great ceremony. Had they been in the country, when they were with you? We had not yet been sufficiently attentive. You would have been more fortunate if you had been less bold in your speculations. Has she been here? She would have been here before this, but she had been sick, and she is still very weak.

What a great man he would have been, if he had been as wise as he was brave! Shall I not have been too severe with my young friends? They would have been less surprised if they had had more experience. Was not she very beautiful in her youth? Shall we not have been too eager, and will he not have had amusement from our impatience? This man had not been long in this country, when he had the yellow fever. Who has had it yesterday? Will she not have been absent six months, when I shall have been absent one month? Let them not be angry: it was I, who did it, and I am sorry for it. Let her be beautiful and rich; if she is not amiable, she is not the person whom I love.

Note.—When the subject of a question is a noun, it is placed at the head of the sentence, and the verb in the interrogative form after it.

Ex. This man, has he courage? *Cet homme a-t-il du courage?*

EXERCISE.

Was this woman with you here, or were you alone? Would not the judge be very severe if he were president of the court? Were those girls idle or were they tired? They have been the one and the other. Will this week have been a happy (one) for you? It would have been better, if it had been shorter. Had these soldiers been absent from the army? They had been on furlough. Were the apples ripe? You have been very polite, but I wished that you might have been more circumspect. I hope that you may be happy. Was not your birthday yesterday? Where had these three men been during the night?

The verb *to do*, when used as an auxiliary verb in English, is not translated into French, but rendered by the simple form of the verb itself.

Ex. I do speak: I speak, *je parle*. Do I speak? *parlé-je?*
He did come: he came, *il venait*. Did he come? *venait-il?*
You did say: you said, *vous dites*. Did you say, *dites-vous?*

In like manner the verb *to be*, when used as an auxiliary in English with the Participle Present, is not translated into French, but rendered by the simple verb.

Ex. I was reading: I read, *je lisais*. She was walking: she walked, *elle se promenait*. You were snoring: you snored, *vous ronfliez*.

In the *Interrogative* form of all verbs the third person singular requires, when it ends in a vowel, the insertion of the letter *t*, preceded and followed by a hyphen, to prevent the hiatus with the initial vowels of *il, elle* and *on*.

Ex. *a-t-il*, has he? *a-t-elle*, has she? *a-t-on*, have they? *parle-t-il*, does he speak? *songe-t-elle*, does she dream?

In the *Negative* form of the verb, the negative invariably

consists of two parts, the Negative Adverb *pas*, *point*, etc., and the particle *ne*. The verb is placed between the two, so that *ne* stands before it; in compound tenses the auxiliary is the verb, not the participle.

Ex. *je parle*, I speak; *je ne parle pas*, I speak not; *elle est là*, *elle n'est pas là*, she is not there; *nous avons été*, *nous n'avons pas été*, we have not been; *elle eut eu*, *elle n'eut pas eu*, she had not had.

The Conjunctive Pronouns are, however, placed between the verb and *ne*, standing nearest to the verb.

Ex. *je vois*, *je ne vois pas*, *je ne le vois pas*, I see it not; *vous avez eu*, *vous n'avez pas eu*, *vous ne l'avez pas eu*, you have not had it; *j'ai été*, *je n'ai pas été*, *je n'y ai pas été*, I have not been there.

In the Infinitive both *ne* and *pas* may be placed before the verb.

Ex. *ne pas aller*, not to go.

The verbs are conjugated according to four conjugations, which are distinguished by the termination of the Infinitive.

The *First* Conjugation ends in *er*, like *parler*, to speak.

The *Second* Conjugation ends in *ir*, like *servir*, to serve.

The *Third* Conjugation ends in *oir*, like *recevoir*, to receive.

The *Fourth* Conjugation ends in *re*, like *vendre*, to sell.

After cutting off the Infinitive termination, there remains what is called the root of the verb, *e. g.* *parl—*, *serv—*, *recev—* and *vend—*. To this are added certain terminations, which constitute the conjugation of the verb. Some of these are uniform.

The *Participle Present* ends always in *ant*, added to the root of the verb, or in the second conjugation, to the first person present.

Ex. *parlant*, speaking, *finissant*, finishing; *recevant*, receiving; *vendant*, selling.

The *Imperfect* ends always in *ais*, added to the root of the verb, or in the second conjugation, to the first person present.

Ex. *je parlais*, I spoke; *je finissais*, I finished; *je recevais*, I received; *je vendais*, I sold.

The *Future* ends always in *rai*, and is made from the Infinitive.

Ex. *je parlerai*, I shall speak; *je servirai*, I shall serve; *je recevrai*, I shall receive; *je vendrai*, I shall sell.

The *Conditional* ends always in *rais*, and is made by adding *s* to the Future.

Ex. *je parlerais*, I should speak; *je servirais*, I shall serve; *je recevrais*, I should receive; *je vendrais*, I should sell.

The *First Person Plural* ends always in *ons*, except in the Preterit Definite, when it always ends in silent *mes*.

Ex. *nous parlons*, we speak; *nous parlions*, we spoke; *nous parlerons*, we shall speak; *nous parlerions*, we should speak; but *nous parlâmes*, we did speak.

The *Second Person Plural* ends always in *ez*, except in the Preterit Definite, where it always ends in silent *tes*.

Ex. *vous servez*, you serve; *vous serviez*, you served; *vous servirez*, you will serve; *vous serviriez*, you would serve; but *vous servîtes*, you did serve.

The *Third Person Plural* ends always in silent *ent*, except in the Future, where it always ends in *ont*.

Ex. *ils reçoivent* they receive; *ils recevaient*, they received; *ils reçurent*, they received; *ils recevraient*, they would receive; but *ils recevront*, they will receive.

The Moods of the French Verb are the following:

1. The *Infinitive* is simply the name of the verb, and has neither person nor number.

Ex. *chanter*, to sing; *perdre*, to lose.

2. The *Indicative* states the action of the verb positively, and may do so in the past, present, or future.

Ex. *je chante*, I sing; *je perdais*, I lost; *je reçus*, I received; *j'irai*, I shall go.

3. The *Subjunctive* states the action of the verb contingently, *i. e.* subject to some other verb. Hence it is always preceded by the conjunction *que*, which connects it with the verb on which it depends. This conjunction (that) may be omitted in English, but must always be added in French.

Ex. *Je désire qu'il vienne*, I wish that he come; *il voulait que je le fisse*, he wished (that) I should do it; *plût à Dieu qu'elle fût ici*, would to God that she were here.

4. The *Conditional* states the action of the verb as likely to happen under a condition, so that *si*, if, is always understood, if not expressed.

Ex. *J'irais si je pouvais*, I would go if I could; *seriez-vous content ?* would you be satisfied? (if. . .) *vous auriez des amis*, you would have friends.

5. The *Imperative* states the action of the verb in the tone of command, entreaty, wish or permission.

Ex. *qu'il vienne !* let him come! *allons !* let us go! *Qu'ils le fassent s'ils veulent*, let them do it if they wish.

It will be seen that the English Imperative requires, in most cases, the auxiliary verb *Let*, which is not translated in French, the Imperative mood already expressing the command or permission.

The *Tenses* of the Verb are either Simple, when they are made of the verb itself, or Compound, when they are formed by the aid of the auxiliary verbs *Avoir* and *Être*.

The SIMPLE TENSES are the following :

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. The *Present*, which always ends in *e*, *s*, or *x*.

2. The *Imperfect*, which always ends in *ais*, expresses a past action, continued or frequently repeated.

The English employs for the same purpose the auxiliary *I used to*, etc., which is not translated into French, as the Imperfect tense already gives this meaning.

Ex. I used to sleep : I slept, *je dormais*. He used to smoke : he smoked, *il fumait*.

3. The *Preterit Definite*, which ends in the first conjugation in *ai*, in the second in *is*, in the third in *us*, and in the fourth in *is*, expresses a past action which took place but once, and at a definite period. It is, therefore, the historical tense of the French.

Ex. *je parlai*, I spoke; *il servit alors*, he served then; *je reçus hier*, I received yesterday; *nous vendîmes lundi*, we sold out on Monday *le roi mourut sur l'échafaud*, the king died on the scaffold.

4. The *Future*, which always ends in *rai*.

Ex. *je parlerai*, I shall speak; *j'irai*, I shall go.

5. The *Conditional*, which always ends in *rais*.

Ex. *je verrais*, I would see; *je rirais*, I would laugh.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. The *Present*, which always ends in a silent *e*, and is made from the Present Indicative.

Ex. *j'ai: que j'aie*, that I have; *je reçois: que je reçoive*, that I receive.

2. The *Past*, which always ends in *sse*, and is made from the Preterit Definite, by changing *ai* of the first conjugation into *asse*, and by adding in the other three conjugations *se* to the Indicative.

Ex. *je parlai: que je parlasse*, that I might speak.

je servis: que je servisse, that I might serve.

je reçus: que je reçusse, that I might receive.

je vendis: que je vendisse, that I might sell.

The COMPOUND TENSES are the following:

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. The *Preterit Indefinite*, made from the Present of the auxiliary verbs *Avoir* or *Etre*, with the Participle Past.

Ex. *j'ai parlé*, I have spoken; *je suis allé*, I have gone.

2. The *Pluperfect*, made from the Imperfect of the auxiliary verbs with the Participle Past.

Ex. *j'avais parlé*, I had spoken; *j'étais allé*, I had gone.

3. The *Preterit Anterior*, made from the *Preterit Definite* of the auxiliary verbs with the *Participle Past*.

Ex. *j'eus parlé*, I had spoken; *je fus allé*, I had gone.

4. The *Future Anterior*, made from the *Future* of the auxiliary verbs with the *Participle Past*.

Ex. *j'aurai parlé*, I shall have spoken; *je serai allé*, I shall have gone.

5. The *Conditional Anterior*, made from the *Conditional* of the auxiliary verbs, with the *Participle Past*.

Ex. *j'aurais parlé*, I would have spoken; *je serais allé*, I would have gone.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. The *Preterit Indefinite*, made from the *Subjunctive* of the *Present* of the auxiliary verbs with the *Participle Past*.

Ex. *que j'aie parlé*, that I may have spoken; *que je sois allé*, that I may have gone.

2. The *Preterit Anterior*, made from the *Subjunctive* of the *Preterit Definite* of the auxiliary verbs with the *Participle Past*.

Ex. *que j'eusse parlé*, that I might have spoken; *que je fusse allé*, that I might have gone.

In the following tables of Verbs the termination is separated from the root, in order to show more clearly the manner of conjugating verbs; such a separation does not take place, of course, in ordinary writing, when verb and root are written in one word.

TABLE OF THE TERMINATION OF THE REGULAR VERBS.

Simple Tenses.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

1st Conj'n.	2d Conj.	3d Conj.	4th Conj.
<i>parl er</i>	<i>fin ir</i>	<i>rec evoir</i>	<i>vend re</i>

PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

<i>parl ant</i>	<i>fin issant</i>	<i>rec evant</i>	<i>vend ant</i>
-----------------	-------------------	------------------	-----------------

PARTICIPLE PAST.

<i>parl é</i>	<i>fin i</i>	<i>rec u</i>	<i>vend u</i>
---------------	--------------	--------------	---------------

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>Je</i>	<i>parl e</i>	<i>fin is</i>	<i>reç ois</i>	<i>vend s</i>
<i>tu</i>	<i>es</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>ois</i>	<i>s</i>
<i>il or elle</i>	<i>e</i>	<i>it</i>	<i>oit</i>	<i>vend</i>
<i>nous</i>	<i>ons</i>	<i>issons</i>	<i>evons</i>	<i>ons</i>
<i>vous</i>	<i>ez</i>	<i>issez</i>	<i>evez</i>	<i>ez</i>
<i>ils or elles</i>	<i>ent</i>	<i>issent</i>	<i>oivent</i>	<i>ent</i>

IMPERFECT.

<i>Je</i>	<i>parl ais</i>	<i>fin issais</i>	<i>rec evais</i>	<i>vend ais</i>
<i>tu</i>	<i>ais</i>	<i>issais</i>	<i>evais</i>	<i>ais</i>
<i>il or elle</i>	<i>ait</i>	<i>issait</i>	<i>evait</i>	<i>ait</i>
<i>nous</i>	<i>ions</i>	<i>issions</i>	<i>evions</i>	<i>ions</i>
<i>vous</i>	<i>iez</i>	<i>issiez</i>	<i>eviez</i>	<i>iez</i>
<i>ils or elles</i>	<i>aient</i>	<i>issaient</i>	<i>evaient</i>	<i>aient</i>

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

<i>Je</i>	<i>parl ai</i>	<i>fin is</i>	<i>reç us</i>	<i>vend is</i>
<i>tu</i>	<i>as</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>us</i>	<i>is</i>
<i>il or elle</i>	<i>a</i>	<i>it</i>	<i>ut</i>	<i>it</i>
<i>nous</i>	<i>âmes</i>	<i>îmes</i>	<i>ûmes</i>	<i>îmes</i>
<i>vous</i>	<i>âtes</i>	<i>îtes</i>	<i>ûtes</i>	<i>îtes</i>
<i>ils or elles</i>	<i>èrent</i>	<i>irent</i>	<i>urent</i>	<i>irent</i>

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

<i>Je</i>	<i>parl erai</i>	<i>fin irai</i>	<i>rec evrai</i>	<i>vend rai</i>
<i>tu</i>	<i>eras</i>	<i>iras</i>	<i>evras</i>	<i>ras</i>
<i>il or elle</i>	<i>era</i>	<i>ira</i>	<i>evra</i>	<i>ra</i>
<i>nous</i>	<i>erons</i>	<i>irons</i>	<i>evrons</i>	<i>rons</i>
<i>vous</i>	<i>erez</i>	<i>irez</i>	<i>evrez</i>	<i>rez</i>
<i>ils or elles</i>	<i>eront</i>	<i>iront</i>	<i>evront</i>	<i>ront</i>

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT

<i>Je</i>	<i>parl erais</i>	<i>fin irais</i>	<i>rec evrais</i>	<i>vend rais</i>
<i>tu</i>	<i>erais</i>	<i>irais</i>	<i>evrais</i>	<i>rais</i>
<i>il or elle</i>	<i>erait</i>	<i>irait</i>	<i>evrait</i>	<i>rait</i>
<i>nous</i>	<i>erions</i>	<i>irions</i>	<i>evrions</i>	<i>rions</i>
<i>vous</i>	<i>eriez</i>	<i>iriez</i>	<i>evriez</i>	<i>riez</i>
<i>ils or elles</i>	<i>eraient</i>	<i>iraient</i>	<i>evraient</i>	<i>raient</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

	<i>parl e</i>	<i>fin is</i>	<i>reç ois</i>	<i>vend s</i>
<i>qu'il or qu'elle</i>	<i>e</i>	<i>isse</i>	<i>oive</i>	<i>e</i>
	<i>ons</i>	<i>issons</i>	<i>evons</i>	<i>ons</i>
	<i>ez</i>	<i>issez</i>	<i>evez</i>	<i>ez</i>
<i>qu'ils or qu'elles</i>	<i>ent</i>	<i>issent</i>	<i>oivent</i>	<i>ent</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

	<i>parl e</i>	<i>fin isse</i>	<i>reç oive</i>	<i>vend e</i>
<i>Que je</i>				
<i>que tu</i>	<i>es</i>	<i>isses</i>	<i>oives</i>	<i>es</i>
<i>qu'il or qu'elle</i>	<i>e</i>	<i>isse</i>	<i>oive</i>	<i>e</i>
<i>que nous</i>	<i>ions</i>	<i>issions</i>	<i>evions</i>	<i>ions</i>
<i>que vous</i>	<i>iez</i>	<i>issiez</i>	<i>eviez</i>	<i>iez</i>
<i>qu'ils or qu'elles</i>	<i>ent</i>	<i>issent</i>	<i>oivent</i>	<i>ent</i>

IMPERFECT.

	<i>parl aisse</i>	<i>fin isse</i>	<i>reç usse</i>	<i>vend isse</i>
<i>Que je</i>				
<i>que tu</i>	<i>asses</i>	<i>isses</i>	<i>usses</i>	<i>isses</i>
<i>qu'il or qu'elle</i>	<i>ât</i>	<i>ît</i>	<i>ût</i>	<i>ît</i>
<i>que nous</i>	<i>assions</i>	<i>issions</i>	<i>ussions</i>	<i>issions</i>
<i>que vous</i>	<i>assiez</i>	<i>issiez</i>	<i>ussiez</i>	<i>issiez</i>
<i>qu'ils or qu'elles</i>	<i>assent</i>	<i>issent</i>	<i>ussent</i>	<i>issent</i>

Compound Tenses.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

	1st Conj.	2d Conj.	3d Conj.	4th Conj.
<i>Avoir</i>	<i>parl é</i>	<i>fin i</i>	<i>reç u</i>	<i>vend u</i>

COMPOUND OF THE PARTICIPLE.

<i>Ayant</i>	<i>parl é</i>	<i>fin i</i>	<i>reç u</i>	<i>vend u</i>
--------------	---------------	--------------	--------------	---------------

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

	<i>parl é</i>	<i>fin i</i>	<i>reç u</i>	<i>vend u</i>
<i>J'ai</i>				
<i>tu as</i>	<i>é</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>u</i>	<i>u</i>
<i>il or elle a</i>	<i>é</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>u</i>	<i>u</i>

<i>nous avons</i>	<i>parl é</i>	<i>fin i</i>	<i>reç u</i>	<i>vend u</i>
<i>vous avez</i>	é	i	u	u
<i>ils or elles ont</i>	é	i	u	u

PLUPERFECT.

<i>J'avais</i>	<i>parl é</i>	<i>fin i</i>	<i>reç u</i>	<i>vend u</i>
<i>tu avais</i>	é	i	u	u
<i>il or elle avait</i>	é	i	u	u
<i>nous avions</i>	é	i	u	u
<i>vous aviez</i>	é	i	u	u
<i>ils or elles avaient</i>	é	i	u	u

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

<i>J'eus</i>	<i>parl é</i>	<i>fin i</i>	<i>reç u</i>	<i>vend u</i>
<i>tu eus</i>	é	i	u	u
<i>il or elle eut</i>	é	i	u	u
<i>nous eûmes</i>	é	i	u	u
<i>vous eûtes</i>	é	i	u	u
<i>ils or elles eurent</i>	é	i	u	u

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

<i>J'aurai</i>	<i>parl é</i>	<i>fin i</i>	<i>reç u</i>	<i>vend u</i>
<i>tu auras</i>	é	i	u	u
<i>il or elle aura</i>	é	i	u	u
<i>nous aurons</i>	é	i	u	u
<i>vous aurez</i>	é	i	u	u
<i>ils or elles auront</i>	é	i	u	u

CONDITIONAL ANTERIOR.

<i>J'aurais</i>	<i>parl é</i>	<i>fin i</i>	<i>reç u</i>	<i>vend u</i>
<i>tu aurais</i>	é	i	u	u
<i>il or elle aurait</i>	é	i	u	u
<i>nous aurions</i>	é	i	u	u
<i>vous auriez</i>	é	i	u	u
<i>ils or elles auraient</i>	é	i	u	u

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRETERIT.

<i>Que j'aie</i>	<i>parl é</i>	<i>fin i</i>	<i>reç u</i>	<i>vend u</i>
<i>que tu aies</i>	é	i	u	u
<i>qu'il or qu'elle ait</i>	é	i	u	u

<i>que nous ayons</i>	<i>parl é</i>	<i>fin i</i>	<i>reç u</i>	<i>vend u</i>
<i>que vous ayez</i>	<i>é</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>u</i>	<i>u</i>
<i>qu'ils or qu'elles aient</i>	<i>é</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>u</i>	<i>u</i>

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

<i>Que j'eusse</i>	<i>parl é</i>	<i>fin i</i>	<i>reç u</i>	<i>vend u</i>
<i>que tu eusses</i>	<i>é</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>u</i>	<i>u</i>
<i>qu'il or qu'elle eût</i>	<i>é</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>u</i>	<i>u</i>
<i>que nous eussions</i>	<i>é</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>u</i>	<i>u</i>
<i>que vous eussiez</i>	<i>é</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>u</i>	<i>u</i>
<i>qu'ils or qu'elles eussent</i>	<i>é</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>u</i>	<i>u</i>

VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

PARLER *To Speak* (*Affirmatively.*)

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Parl er to speak

PAST.

Avoir parl é to have spoken

PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

Parl ant speaking

COMPOUND OF THE PARTICIPE PRESENT.

Ayant parl é having spoken

PARTICIPLE PAST.

Parl é spoken

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>Je parl e</i>	I speak, do speak, or am speaking
<i>tu parl es</i>	thou speakest
<i>il parl e</i>	he speaks
<i>nous parl ons</i>	we speak
<i>vous parl ez</i>	you speak
<i>ils parl ent</i>	they speak

IMPERFECT.

<i>Je parl aïs</i>	I spoke, did speak, <i>or</i> was speaking
<i>tu parl aïs</i>	thou spokest
<i>il parl ait</i>	he spoke
<i>nous parl ions</i>	we spoke
<i>vous parl iez</i>	you spoke
<i>ils parl aient</i>	they spoke

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

<i>Je parl ai</i>	I spoke <i>or</i> did speak
<i>tu parl as</i>	thou spokest
<i>il parl a</i>	he spoke
<i>nous parl âmes</i>	we spoke
<i>vous parl âtes</i>	you spoke
<i>il parl èrent</i>	they spoke

FUTURE.

<i>Je parl erai</i>	I shall <i>or</i> will speak
<i>tu parl eras</i>	thou shalt speak
<i>il parl èra</i>	he shall speak
<i>nous parl erons</i>	we shall speak
<i>vous parl erez</i>	you shall speak
<i>ils parl eront</i>	they shall speak

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>Je parl erais</i>	{ I should, would, could <i>or</i> might speak
<i>tu parl erais</i>	thou shouldst speak
<i>il parl erait</i>	he should speak
<i>nous parl erions</i>	we should speak
<i>vous parl eriez</i>	you should speak
<i>ils parl eraient</i>	they should speak

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

<i>J'ai parl é</i>	{ I have spoken, did speak <i>or</i> have been speaking
<i>tu as parl é</i>	thou hast spoken
<i>il a parl é</i>	he has spoken
<i>nous avons parl é</i>	we have spoken
<i>vous avez parl é</i>	you have spoken
<i>ils ont parl é</i>	they have spoken

PLUPERFECT.

<i>J'avais parl é</i>	I had spoken <i>or</i> had been speaking
<i>tu avais parl é</i>	thou hadst spoken
<i>il avait parl é</i>	he had spoken
<i>nous avions parl é</i>	we had spoken
<i>vous aviez parl é</i>	you had spoken
<i>ils avaient parl é</i>	they had spoken

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

<i>J'eus parl é</i>	I had spoken
<i>tu eus parl é</i>	thou hadst spoken
<i>il eut parl é</i>	he had spoken
<i>nous eûmes parl é</i>	we had spoken
<i>vous eûtes parl é</i>	you had spoken
<i>ils eurent parl é</i>	they had spoken

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

<i>J'aurai parl é</i>	I shall <i>or</i> will have spoken
<i>tu auras parl é</i>	thou shalt have spoken
<i>il aura parl é</i>	he shall have spoken
<i>nous aurons parl é</i>	we shall have spoken
<i>vous aurez parl é</i>	you shall have spoken
<i>ils auront parl é</i>	they shall have spoken

CONDITIONAL ANTERIOR.

<i>J'aurais parl é</i>	{ I should, would, could <i>or</i> might { have spoken
<i>tu aurais parl é</i>	thou shouldst have spoken
<i>il aurait parl é</i>	he should have spoken
<i>nous aurions parl é</i>	we should have spoken
<i>vous auriez parl é</i>	you should have spoken
<i>ils auraient parl é</i>	they should have spoken

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>Que je parl e</i>	that I may speak
<i>que tu parl es</i>	that thou mayest speak
<i>qu'il parl e</i>	that he may speak
<i>que nous parl ions</i>	that we may speak
<i>que vous parl iez</i>	that you may speak
<i>qu'ils parl ent</i>	that they may speak

IMPERFECT.

<i>Que je parl asse</i>	that I might speak
<i>que tu parl asses</i>	that thou mightest speak
<i>qu'il parl ât</i>	that he might speak
<i>que nous parl assions</i>	that we might speak
<i>que vous parl assiez</i>	that you might speak
<i>qu'ils parl assent</i>	that they might speak

PAST.

<i>Que j'aie parl é</i>	that I may have spoken
<i>que tu aies parl é</i>	that thou mayest have spoken
<i>qu'il ait parl é</i>	that he may have spoken
<i>que nous ayons parl é</i>	that we may have spoken
<i>que vous ayez parl é</i>	that you may have spoken
<i>qu'ils aient parl é</i>	that they may have spoken

PLUPERFECT.

<i>Que j'eusse parl é</i>	that I might have spoken
<i>que tu eusses parl é</i>	that thou mightest have spoken
<i>qu'il eût parl é</i>	that he might have spoken
<i>que nous eussions parl é</i>	that we might have spoken
<i>que vous eussiez parl é</i>	that you might have spoken
<i>qu'ils eussent parl é</i>	that they might have spoken

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Parl e</i>	speak <i>or</i> do speak [thou]
<i>qu'il parl e</i>	let him speak
<i>parl ons</i>	let us speak
<i>parl ez</i>	speak <i>or</i> do speak [you]
<i>qu'ils parl ent</i>	let them speak

PARLER

*To Speak.**(Negatively.)*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>Ne pas parl er</i>	not to speak
-----------------------	--------------

PAST.

<i>N'avoir pas parl é</i>	not to have spoken
---------------------------	--------------------

PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

<i>Ne parl ant pas</i>	not speaking
------------------------	--------------

COMPOUND OF THE PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

N'ayant pas parl é not having spoken

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>Je ne parl e pas</i>	{ I speak not, do not speak <i>or am</i> not speaking
<i>tu ne parl es pas</i>	thou speakest not
<i>il ne parl e pas</i>	he speaks not
<i>nous ne parl ons pas</i>	we speak not
<i>vous ne parl ez pas</i>	you speak not
<i>ils ne parl ent pas</i>	they speak not

IMPERFECT.

<i>Je ne parl ais pas</i>	{ I spoke not, did not speak <i>or was</i> not speaking
<i>tu ne parl ais pas</i>	thou spokest not
<i>il ne parl ait pas</i>	he spoke not
<i>nous ne parl ions pas</i>	we spoke not
<i>vous ne parl iez pas</i>	you spoke not
<i>ils ne parl aient pas</i>	they spoke not

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

<i>Je ne parl ai pas</i>	I spoke not <i>or did not speak</i>
<i>tu ne parl as pas</i>	thou spokest not
<i>il ne parl a pas</i>	he spoke not
<i>nous ne parl âmes pas</i>	we spoke not
<i>vous ne parl âtes pas</i>	you spoke not
<i>ils ne parl èrent pas</i>	they spoke not

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

<i>Je ne parl erai pas</i>	I shall <i>or will not speak</i>
<i>tu ne parl eras pas</i>	thou shalt not speak
<i>il ne parl era pas</i>	he shall not speak
<i>nous ne parl erons pas</i>	we shall not speak
<i>vous ne parl erez pas</i>	you shall not speak
<i>ils ne parl eront pas</i>	they shall not speak

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>Je ne parl erais pas</i>	{ I should, would, could <i>or might</i> (not speak
-----------------------------	---

tu ne parl erais pas
il ne parl erait pas
nous ne parl erions pas
vous ne parl eriez pas
ils ne parl eraient pas

thou shouldst not speak
 he should not speak
 we should not speak
 you should not speak
 they should not speak

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

Je n'ai pas parl é
tu n'as pas parl é
il n'a pas parl é
nous n'avons pas parl é
vous n'avez pas parl é
ils n'ont pas parl é

{ I have not spoken, did not speak,
 { or have not been speaking
 thou hast not spoken
 he has not spoken
 we have not spoken
 you have not spoken
 they have not spoken

PLUPERFECT.

Je n'avais pas parl é
tu n'avais pas parl é
il n'avait pas parl é
nous n'avions pas parl é
vous n'aviez pas parl é
ils n'avaient pas parl é

{ I had not spoken or had not been
 { speaking
 thou hadst not spoken
 he had not spoken
 we had not spoken
 you had not spoken
 they had not spoken

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

Je n'eus pas parl é
tu n'eus pas parl é
il n'eut pas parl é
nous n'eûmes pas parl é
vous n'eûtes pas parl é
ils n'eurent pas parl é

I had not spoken
 thou hadst not spoken
 he had not spoken
 we had not spoken
 you had not spoken
 they had not spoken

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Je n'aurai pas parl é
tu n'auras pas parl é
il n'aura pas parl é
nous n'aurons pas parl é
vous n'aurez pas parl é
ils n'auront pas parl é

I shall or will not have spoken
 thou shalt not have spoken
 he shall not have spoken
 we shall not have spoken
 you shall not have spoken
 they shall not have spoken

PAST.

<i>Je n'aurais pas parl é</i>	{ I should, would, could or might not have spoken
<i>tu n'aurais pas parl é</i>	thou shouldst not have spoken
<i>il n'aurait pas parl é</i>	he should not have spoken
<i>nous n'aurions pas parl é</i>	we should not have spoken
<i>vous n'auriez pas parl é</i>	you should not have spoken
<i>ils n'auraient pas parl é</i>	they should not have spoken

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

<i>Que je ne parl e pas</i>	that I may not speak
<i>que tu ne parl es pas</i>	that thou mayest not speak
<i>qu'il ne parl e pas</i>	that he may not speak
<i>que nous ne parl ions pas</i>	that we may not speak
<i>que vous ne parl iez pas</i>	that you may not speak
<i>qu'ils ne parl ent pas</i>	that they may not speak

IMPERFECT.

<i>Que je ne parl asse pas</i>	that I might not speak
<i>que tu ne parl asses pas</i>	that thou mightest not speak
<i>qu'il ne parl ât pas</i>	that he might not speak
<i>que nous ne parl assions pas</i>	that we might not speak
<i>que vous ne parl assiez pas</i>	that you might not speak
<i>qu'ils ne parl assent pas</i>	that they might not speak

PAST.

<i>Que je n'aie pas parl é</i>	that I may not have spoken
<i>que tu n'aies pas parl é</i>	that thou mayest not have spoken
<i>qu'il n'ait pas parl é</i>	that he may not have spoken
<i>que nous n'ayons pas parl é</i>	that we may not have spoken
<i>que vous n'ayez pas parl é</i>	that you may not have spoken
<i>qu'ils n'aient pas parl é</i>	that they may not have spoken

PLUPERFECT.

<i>Que je n'eusse pas parl é</i>	that I might not have spoken
<i>que tu n'eusses pas parl é</i>	that thou mightest not have spoken
<i>qu'il n'eût pas parl é</i>	that he might not have spoken
<i>que nous n'eussions pas parl é</i>	that we might not have spoken
<i>que vous n'eussiez pas parl é</i>	that you might not have spoken
<i>qu'ils n'eussent pas parl é</i>	that they might not have spoken

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Ne parl e pas</i>	.. speak not <i>or</i> do not speak [thou]
<i>qu'il ne parl e pas</i>	let him not speak
<i>ne parl ons pas</i>	let us not speak
<i>ne parl ez pas</i>	speak not <i>or</i> do not speak [you]
<i>qu'ils ne parl ent pas</i>	let them not speak

PARLER

To Speak (Interrogatively.)

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

<i>Parl é-je ?</i>	do I speak <i>or</i> am I speaking
<i>parl es-tu</i>	dost thou speak
<i>parl e-t-il</i>	does he speak
<i>parl ons-nous</i>	do we speak
<i>parl ez-vous</i>	do you speak
<i>parl ent-ils</i>	do they speak

IMPERFECT.

<i>Parl ais-je</i>	did I speak <i>or</i> was I speaking
<i>parl aistu</i>	didst thou speak
<i>parl ait-il</i>	did he speak
<i>parl ions-nous</i>	did we speak
<i>parl iez-vous</i>	did you speak
<i>parl aient-ils</i>	did they speak

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

<i>Parl ai-je</i>	did I speak
<i>parl as-tu</i>	didst thou speak
<i>parl a-t-il</i>	did he speak
<i>parl âmes-nous</i>	did we speak
<i>parl âtes-vous</i>	did you speak
<i>parl èrent-ils</i>	did they speak

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

<i>Parl erai-je</i>	shall <i>or</i> will I speak
<i>parl eras-tu</i>	shalt thou speak
<i>parl era-t-il</i>	shall he speak
<i>parl erons-nous</i>	shall we speak

parlerez-vous
parleront-ils

shall you speak
shall they speak

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

Parlerais-je

{ Should, would, could, or might I
{ speak

parlerais-tu

shouldst thou speak

parlerait-il

should he speak

parlerions-nous

should we speak

parleriez-vous

should you speak

parleraient-ils

should they speak

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

Ai-je parl  

have I spoken or did I speak

as-tu parl  

hast thou spoken

a-t-il parl  

has he spoken

avons-nous parl  

have we spoken

avez-vous parl  

have you spoken

ont-ils parl  

have they spoken

PLUPERFECT.

Avais-je parl  

{ had I spoken or had I been speak
{ ing

avais-tu parl  

hadst thou spoken

avait-il parl  

had he spoken

avions-nous parl  

had we spoken

aviez-vous parl  

had you spoken

avaient-ils parl  

had they spoken

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

Eus-je parl  

had I spoken

eus-tu parl  

hadst thou spoken

eut-il parl  

had he spoken

e  mes-nous parl  

had we spoken

e  tes-vous parl  

had you spoken

eurent-ils parl  

had they spoken

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Aurai-je parl  

shall or will I have spoken

auras-tu parl  

shalt thou have spoken

aura-t-il parl é
aurons-nous parl é
aurez-vous parl é
auront-ils parl é

shall he have spoken
 shall we have spoken
 shall you have spoken
 shall they have spoken

PAST.

Aurais-je parl é
aurais-tu parl é
aurait-il parl é
aurions-nous parl é
auriez-vous parl é
auraient-ils parl é

{ should, would, could, or might I
 { have spoken
 shouldst thou have spoken
 should he have spoken
 should we have spoken
 should you have spoken
 should they have spoken

PARLER *To Speak* (*Negatively and Interrogatively.*)

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

Ne parl é-je pas
ne parl es-tu pas
ne parl e-t-il pas
ne parl ons-nous pas
ne parl ez-vous pas
ne parl ent-ils pas

{ do I not speak or am I not speak.
 { ing
 dost thou not speak
 does he not speak
 do we not speak
 do you not speak
 do they not speak

IMPERFECT.

Ne parl ais-je pas
ne parl ais-tu pas
ne parl ait-il pas
ne parl ions-nous pas
ne parl iez-vous pas
ne parl aient-ils pas

{ did I not speak or was I not speak-
 { ing
 didst thou not speak
 did he not speak
 did we not speak
 did you not speak
 did they not speak

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Ne parl ai-je pas
ne parl as-tu pas
ne parl a-t-il pas

did I not speak
 didst thou not speak
 did he not speak

ne parl âmes-nous pas
ne parl âtes-vous pas
ne parl èrent-ils pas

did we not speak
 did you not speak
 did they not speak

FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Ne parl erai-je pas
ne parl eras-tu pas
ne parl era-t-il pas
ne parl erons-nous pas
ne parl erez-vous pas
ne parl eront-ils pas

shall or will I not speak
 shalt thou not speak
 shall he not speak
 shall we not speak
 shall you not speak
 shall they not speak

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

Ne parl erais-je pas
ne parl erais-tu pas
ne parl erait-il pas
ne parl erions-nous pas
ne parl eriez-vous pas
ne parl eraient-ils pas

{ should, would, could, or might I
 } not speak
 shouldst thou not speak
 should he not speak
 should we not speak
 should you not speak
 should they not speak

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

N'ai-je pas parl é
n'as-tu pas parl é
n'avait-il pas parl é
n'avons-nous pas parl é
n'avez-vous pas parl é
n'ont-ils pas parl é

{ have I not spoken, did I not speak,
 } or have I not been speaking
 hast thou not spoken
 has he not spoken
 have we not spoken
 have you not spoken
 have they not spoken

PLUPERFECT.

N'aurais-je pas parl é
n'aurais-tu pas parl é
n'aurait-il pas parl é
n'aurions-nous pas parl é
n'auriez-vous pas parl é
n'auraient-ils pas parl é

{ had I not spoken or had I not been
 } speaking
 hadst thou not spoken
 had he not spoken
 had we not spoken
 had you not spoken
 had they not spoken

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

<i>N'eus-je pas parl é</i>	had I not spoken
<i>n'eus-tu pas parl é</i>	hadst thou not spoken
<i>n'eut-il pas parl é</i>	had he not spoken
<i>n'eûmes-nous pas parl é</i>	had we not spoken
<i>n'eûtes-vous pas parl é</i>	had you not spoken
<i>n'eurent-ils pas parl é</i>	had they not spoken

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

<i>N'aurai-je pas parl é</i>	shall or will I not have spoken
<i>n'auras-tu pas parl é</i>	shalt thou not have spoken
<i>n'aura-t-il pas parl é</i>	shall he not have spoken
<i>n'aurons-nous pas parl é</i>	shall we not have spoken
<i>n'auriez-vous pas parl é</i>	shall you not have spoken
<i>n'auront-ils pas parl é</i>	shall they not have spoken

PAST.

<i>N'aurais-je pas parl é</i>	{ should, would, could, or might I
	{ not have spoken
<i>n'aurais-tu pas parl é</i>	shouldst thou not have spoken
<i>n'aurait-il pas parl é</i>	should he not have spoken
<i>n'aurions-nous pas parl é</i>	should we not have spoken
<i>n'auriez-vous pas parl é</i>	should you not have spoken
<i>n'auraient-ils pas parl é</i>	should they not have spoken

REMARKS ON VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

There are several general principles applied in French to all verbs, which seriously affect their orthography.

The FIRST is: *The pronunciation of the root of a verb in the Infinitive must be preserved throughout its conjugation.*

Consequently the verb, when conjugated, will have to be so spelt as to produce the sound of the Infinitive, whatever may be the termination that is added to the root. The verb *percer*, e. g. pronounces its root *perc* in the Infinitive with a soft *c*, because it is followed by *e*; in forming the Present Participle, the syllable *ant* has to be added to the root. Thus the vowel *a* would follow *c*, *perc-ant*, and as *c* before *a* has the sound of *k*,

the Participle would sound differently from the Infinitive. This is not admissible, and, to avoid it, the orthography of the verb must be so changed, as to produce before *ant* also the soft *c*, which, in this case, is done by adding a cedilla and writing the Participle *perçant*. Hence the following rules :

1. Verbs ending in *cer* in the Infinitive add a cedilla to *c*, whenever, in the course of the conjugation, it comes to stand before *a* or *o*.

Ex. *annoncer*

IMPERFECT.

J'annonçais
tu annonçais
il annonçait
nous annoncions (no cedilla needed before *i*.)
vous annonciez " " "
ils annonçaient

PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

Annonçant

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

J'annonçai
tu annonças
il annonça
nous annonçâmes
vous annonçâtes
ils annoncèrent (no cedilla needed before *e*.)

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Que j'annonçasse, etc.

2. Verbs ending in *ger* in the Infinitive, insert a mute *c* after *g*, whenever it comes to stand before *a* or *o*.

Ex. *négliger*.

PRESENT.

Je néglige
tu négliges
il néglige

nous négligeons (*e* inserted)
vous négligez
ils négligent

IMPERFECT.

Je négligeais
tu négligeais
il négligeait
nous négligions (no *e* needed before *i*)
vous négligiez (" ")
ils négligeaient

PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

Négligeant

A SECOND general principle of this kind, which finds its application here, and influences the orthography of the verb, is this :

Two mute e's cannot follow each other in successive syllables.
Hence the following rules :

Verbs which have a mute *e* in the penultimate syllable of the Infinitive, change their spelling whenever the termination contains also a mute *e*, in two ways :

1. Some verbs double the consonant between the two *e's*.

Ex. *jeter*.

PRESENT. *Je jette*
tu jettes
il jette
nous jetons } no double *t* is required, because no mute
vous jetez } *e* is added.
ils jettent

FUTURE.	<i>Je jetterai</i>	COND. <i>Je jetterais</i>
	<i>tu jetteras</i>	<i>tu jetterais</i>
	<i>il jettera</i>	<i>il jetterait</i>
	<i>nous jetterons</i>	<i>nous jetterions</i>
	<i>vous jetterez</i>	<i>vous jetteriez</i>
	<i>ils jetteront</i>	<i>ils jetteraient</i>

Ex. *appeler*.

PRESENT. *J'appelle*
tu appelles

*il appelle**nous appelons* (no double *l* required.)*vous appelez* (" ")*ils appellent*

FUTURE.	<i>J'appellerai</i>	COND.	<i>J'appellerais</i>
	<i>tu appelleras</i>		<i>tu appellerais</i>
	<i>il appellera</i>		<i>il appellerait</i>
	<i>nous appellerons</i>		<i>nous appellerions</i>
	<i>vous appellerez</i>		<i>vous appelleriez</i>
	<i>ils appelleront</i>		<i>ils appelleraient</i>

2. Other verbs of this class place a Grave Accent over the first mute *e*, whenever it is followed by a second mute *e*.

Ex. *acheter*.

PRESENT.	<i>J'achète</i>	
	<i>tu achètes</i>	
	<i>il achète</i>	
	<i>nous achetons</i>	(no accent required.)
	<i>vous achetez</i>	(" ")
	<i>ils achètent</i>	
FUTURE.	<i>J'achèterai</i>	SUBJ. PRES. <i>Que j'achète</i>
	<i>tu achèteras</i>	<i>que tu achètes</i>
	<i>il achètera</i>	<i>qu'il achète</i>
	<i>nous achèterons</i>	<i>que nous achetions</i> } no <i>se</i>
	<i>vous achèterez</i>	<i>que vous achetiez</i> } cent
	<i>ils achèteront</i>	<i>qu'ils achètent</i>

Ex. *semer*.

PRESENT.	<i>Je sème</i>	
	<i>tu sèmes</i>	
	<i>il sème</i>	
	<i>nous semons</i>	(no accent required.)
	<i>vous semez</i>	(" ")
	<i>ils sèment</i>	
FUTURE.	<i>Je semerai</i>	COND. <i>Je semerais</i>
		SUBJ. PRES. <i>Que je sème</i>

3. Verbs which have an Acute Accent on the *e* in the penultimate syllable of the Infinitive, change it into a Grave Accent whenever the termination contains a mute *e*.

Ex. *espérer.*

PRESENT.	<i>J'espère</i> <i>tu espères</i> <i>il espère</i> <i>nous espérons</i> (no change of accent.) <i>vous espérez</i> (" ") <i>ils espèrent</i>
FUTURE.	<i>J'espérerai</i>
COND.	<i>J'espèrerais</i>
SUBJ. PRES.	<i>Que j'espère</i>

Ex. *révéler.*

PRESENT.	<i>Je révèle</i>
FUTURE.	<i>Je révélerai</i>
COND.	<i>Je révélerais</i>
SUBJ. PRES.	<i>Que je révèle</i>

This same principle, that two mute *e*'s cannot follow each other in successive syllables, has also this effect, that when the first person of the Present ends in mute *e* and is followed in the Interrogative construction by *je*, which has also a mute *e*, the final *e* of the verb takes an accute accent.

Ex. *je parle: parlé-je? do I speak? j'espère: espéré-je? do I hope?*

A THIRD general principle of this kind, which influences the orthography of the verb, is this :

The letter y cannot be placed before mute e. Hence the following rule :

Verbs which end in *yer* (*ayer, éyer, oyer* and *uyer*) change *y* into *i*, whenever it comes to stand before a mute *e*.

Ex. *essayer.*

PRESENT.	<i>J'essaie</i> <i>tu essaies</i> <i>il essaie</i> <i>nous essayons</i> (no change needed.) <i>vous essayez</i> (" ") <i>ils essaient</i>	
FUTURE.	<i>J'essaierai</i> <i>tu essaieras</i> <i>il essaiera</i>	<i>nous essaierons</i> <i>vous essaierez</i> <i>ils essaieront</i>

COND.	<i>J'essaierais</i>	<i>nous essaierions</i>
	<i>tu essaierais</i>	<i>nous essaieriez</i>
	<i>il essaierait</i>	<i>ils essaieraient</i>

IMPERATIVE.	<i>Essaie</i>
	<i>qu'il essaie</i>
	<i>essayons</i>
	<i>essayez</i>
	<i>qu'ils essaient</i>

Ex. employer.

PRESENT.	<i>J'emploie</i>	
	<i>tu emploies</i>	
	<i>il emploie</i>	
	<i>nous employons</i>	(no change needed.)
	<i>vous employez</i>	(" ")
	<i>ils emploient</i>	

FUTURE.	<i>J'emploierai</i>	COND. <i>J'emploierais</i>
---------	---------------------	----------------------------

SUBJ. PRES. *Que j'emploie*

Finally, verbs ending in *uer* require a diæresis over the vowel *i*, which may be added to the conjugation, in order to preserve the separate sound of the two vowels.

Ex. *saluer*.

IMPERFECT.	<i>Nous saluions</i>	SUBJ. PRES. <i>Que nous saluions</i>
	<i>vous saluiez</i>	<i>que vous saluiez</i>

The *Irregular Verbs* of the First Conjugation are only two, viz.: *aller*, to go, and *envoyer*, to send, which will be given hereafter.

VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

FINIR To Finish (Affirmatively.)

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Finir to finish

PAST.

Avoir fini to have finished

PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

Fin issant finishing

COMPOUND OF THE PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

Ayant fin i having finished

PARTICIPLE PAST.

Fin i finished

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>Je fin</i> is	I finish, do finish <i>or</i> am finishing
<i>tu fin</i> is	thou finishest
<i>il fin</i> it	he finishes
<i>nous fin</i> issons	we finish
<i>vous fin</i> issez	you finish
<i>ils fin</i> issent	they finish

IMPERFECT.

<i>Je fin</i> issais	I finished, did finish, <i>or</i> was finishing
<i>tu fin</i> issais	thou finishedst
<i>il fin</i> issait	he finished
<i>nous fin</i> issions	we finished
<i>vous fin</i> issiez	you finished
<i>ils fin</i> issaient	they finished

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

<i>Je fin</i> is	I finished <i>or</i> did finish
<i>tu fin</i> is	thou finishedst
<i>il fin</i> it	he finished
<i>nous fin</i> îmes	we finished
<i>vous fin</i> îtes	you finished
<i>ils fin</i> irent	they finished

FUTURE.

<i>Je fin</i> irai	I shall <i>or</i> will finish
<i>tu fin</i> iras	thou shalt finish
<i>il fin</i> ira	he shall finish
<i>nous fin</i> irons	we shall finish
<i>vous fin</i> irez	you shall finish
<i>ils fin</i> iront	they shall finish

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

<i>Je fin</i> irais	{ I should, would, could, or might finish
<i>tu fin</i> irais	thou shouldst finish
<i>il fin</i> irait	he should finish
<i>nous fin</i> irions	we should finish
<i>vous fin</i> iriez	you should finish
<i>ils fin</i> iroient	they should finish

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

<i>J'ai fin</i> i	{ I have finished, did finish, or have been finishing
<i>tu as fin</i> i	thou hast finished
<i>il a fin</i> i	he has finished
<i>nous avons fin</i> i	we have finished
<i>vous avez fin</i> i	you have finished
<i>ils ont fin</i> i	they have finished

PLUPERFECT.

<i>J'avais fin</i> i	I had finished or had been finishing
<i>tu avais fin</i> i	thou hadst finished
<i>il avait fin</i> i	he had finished
<i>nous avions fin</i> i	we had finished
<i>vous aviez fin</i> i	you had finished
<i>ils avaient fin</i> i	they had finished

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

<i>J'eus fin</i> i	I had finished
<i>tu eus fin</i> i	thou hadst finished
<i>il eut fin</i> i	he had finished
<i>nous eûmes fin</i> i	we had finished
<i>vous eûtes fin</i> i	you had finished
<i>ils eurent fin</i> i	they had finished

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

<i>J'aurai fin</i> i	I shall or will have finished
<i>tu auras fin</i> i	thou shalt have finished
<i>il aura fin</i> i	he shall have finished
<i>nous aurons fin</i> i	we shall have finished

vous aurez fin i
ils auront fin i

you shall have finished
 they shall have finished

CONDITIONAL PAST.

J'aurais fin i

{ I should, would, could, or might
 { have finished

tu aurais fin i

thou shouldst have finished

il aurait fin i

he should have finished

nous aurions fin i

we should have finished

vous auriez fin i

you should have finished

ils auraient fin i

they should have finished

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Que je fin isse

that I may finish

que tu fin isses

that thou mayest finish

qu'il fin isse

that he may finish

que nous fin issions

that we may finish

que vous fin issiez

that you may finish

qu'ils fin issent

that they may finish

IMPERFECT.

Que je fin isse

that I might finish

que tu fin isses

that thou mightest finish

qu'il fin ît

that he might finish

que nous fin issions

that we might finish

que vous fin issiez

that you might finish

qu'ils fin issent

that they might finish

PAST.

Que j'aie fin i

that I may have finished

que tu aies fin i

that thou mayest have finished

qu'il ait fin i

that he may have finished

que nous ayons fin i

that we may have finished

que vous ayez fin i

that you may have finished

qu'ils aient fin i

that they may have finished

PLUPERFECT.

Que j'eusse fin i

that I might have finished

que tu eusses fin i

that thou mightest have finished

qu'il eût fin i

that he might have finished

que nous eussions fin i
que vous eussiez fin i
qu'ils eussent fin i

that we might have finished
 that you might have finished
 that they might have finished

IMPERATIVE.

Fin is
qu'il fin isse
fin issons
fin issez
qu'ils fin issent

finish [thou]
 let him finish
 let us finish
 finish [you]
 let them finish

FINIR

To Finish (Negatively.)

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

Ne pas fin ir

not to finish

PAST.

N'avoir pas fin i

not to have finished

PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

Ne fin issant pas

not finishing

COMPOUND OF THE PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

N'ayant pas fin i

not having finished

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

Je ne fin is pas

{ I finish not, do not finish, or am
 { not finishing

tu ne fin is pas

thou finishest not

il ne fin it pas

he finishes not

nous ne fin issons pas

we finish not

vous ne fin issez pas

you finish not

ils ne fin issent pas

they finish not

IMPERFECT.

Je ne fin issais pas

{ I finished not, did not finish, or
 { was not finishing

tu ne fin issais pas

thou finishedst not

il ne fin issait pas
nous ne fin issions pas
vous ne fin issiez pas
ils ne fin issaient pas

he finished not
 we finished not
 you finished not
 they finished not

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Je ne fin is pas
tu ne fin is pas
il ne fin it pas
nous ne fin îmes pas
vous ne fin îtes pas
ils ne fin irent pas

I finished not *or* did not finish
 thou finishedst not
 he finished not
 we finished not
 you finished not
 they finished not

FUTURE.

Je ne fin irai pas
tu ne fin iras pas
il ne fin ira pas
nous ne fin irons pas
vous ne fin irez pas
ils ne fin iront pas

I shall *or* will not finish
 thou shalt not finish
 he shall not finish
 we shall not finish
 you shall not finish
 they shall not finish

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

Je ne fin irais pas
tu ne fin irais pas
il ne fin irait pas
nous ne fin irions pas
vous ne fin iriez pas
ils ne fin iраient pas

{ I should, would, could, *or* might
 not finish
 thou shouldst not finish
 he should not finish
 we should not finish
 you should not finish
 they should not finish

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Je n'ai pas fin i
tu n'as pas fin i
il n'a pas fin i
nous n'avons pas fin i
vous n'avez pas fin i
ils n'ont pas fin i

{ I have not finished, did not finish.
 or have not been finishing
 thou hast not finished
 he has not finished
 we have not finished
 you have not finished
 they have not finished

PLUPERFECT

<i>Je n'avais pas fin i</i>	{ I had not finished, <i>or</i> had not been
<i>tu n'avais pas fin i</i>	{ finishing
<i>il n'avait pas fin i</i>	thou hadst not finished
<i>il n'avait pas fin i</i>	he had not finished
<i>vous n'avez pas fin i</i>	we had not finished
<i>vous n'avez pas fin i</i>	you had not finished
<i>ils n'avaient pas fin i</i>	they had not finished

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

<i>Je n'eus pas fin i</i>	I had not finished
<i>tu n'eus pas fin i</i>	thou hadst not finished
<i>il n'eut pas fin i</i>	he had not finished
<i>nous n'eûmes pas fin i</i>	we had not finished
<i>vous n'eûtes pas fin i</i>	you had not finished
<i>ils n'eurent pas fin i</i>	they had not finished

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

<i>Je n'aurai pas fin i</i>	I shall <i>or</i> will not have finished
<i>tu n'auras pas fin i</i>	thou shalt not have finished
<i>il n'aura pas fin i</i>	he shall not have finished
<i>nous n'aurons pas fin i</i>	we shall not have finished
<i>vous n'aurez pas fin i</i>	you shall not have finished
<i>ils n'auront pas fin i</i>	they shall not have finished

CONDITIONAL PAST.

<i>Je n'aurais pas fin i</i>	{ I should, would, could, <i>or</i> might
<i>tu n'aurais pas fin i</i>	{ not have finished
<i>il n'aurait pas fin i</i>	thou shouldst not have finished
<i>il n'aurait pas fin i</i>	he should not have finished
<i>nous n'aurions pas fin i</i>	we should not have finished
<i>vous n'auriez pas fin i</i>	you should not have finished
<i>ils n'auraient pas fin i</i>	they should not have finished

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

<i>Que je ne finisse pas</i>	that I may not finish
<i>que tu ne finisses pas</i>	that thou mayest not finish
<i>qu'il ne finisse pas</i>	that he may not finish
<i>que nous ne finissions pas</i>	that we may not finish

que vous ne fin issiez pas
qu'ils ne fin issent pas

that you may not finish
 that they may not finish

IMPERFECT.

Que je ne fin isse pas
que tu ne fin isses pas
qu'il ne fin ît pas
que nous ne fin issions pas
que vous ne fin issiez pas
qu'ils ne fin issent pas

that I might not finish
 that thou mightest not finish
 that he might not finish
 that we might not finish
 that you might not finish
 that they might not finish

PAST.

Que je n'aie pas fin i
que tu n'aies pas fin i
qu'il n'ait pas fin i
que nous n'ayons pas fin i
que vous n'ayez pas fin i
qu'ils n'aient pas fin i

that I may not have finished
 that thou mayest not have finished
 that he may not have finished
 that we may not have finished
 that you may not have finished
 that they may not have finished

PLUPERFECT.

Que je n'eusse pas fin i
que tu n'eusses pas fin i
qu'il n'eût pas fin i
que nous n'eussions pas fin i
que vous n'eussiez pas fin i
qu'ils n'eussent pas fin i

that I might not have finished
 { that thou mightest not have finish
 ed
 that he might not have finished
 that we might not have finished
 that you might not have finished
 that they might not have finished

IMPERATIVE.

Ne fin is pas
qu'il ne fin isse pas
ne fin issons pas
ne fin issez pas
qu'ils ne fin issent pas

finish not *or* do not finish [thou]
 let him not finish
 let us not finish
 finish not *or* do not finish [you]
 let them not finish

FINIR

To Finish (Interrogatively.)

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

Fin is-je
fin is-tu

do I finish *or* am I finishing
 dost thou finish

<i>fin</i> it- <i>il</i>	does he finish
<i>fin</i> issons- <i>nous</i>	do we finish
<i>fin</i> -issiez- <i>vous</i>	do you finish
<i>fin</i> issent- <i>ils</i>	do they finish

IMPERFECT.

<i>Fin</i> issais- <i>je</i>	did I finish <i>or</i> was I finishing
<i>fin</i> issais- <i>tu</i>	didst thou finish
<i>fin</i> issait- <i>il</i>	did he finish
<i>fin</i> issions- <i>nous</i>	did we finish
<i>fin</i> issiez- <i>vous</i>	did you finish
<i>fin</i> issaient- <i>ils</i>	did they finish

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

<i>Fin</i> is- <i>je</i>	did I finish
<i>fin</i> is- <i>tu</i>	didst thou finish
<i>fin</i> it- <i>il</i>	did he finish
<i>fin</i> ites- <i>nous</i>	did we finish
<i>fin</i> ites- <i>vous</i>	did you finish
<i>fin</i> irent- <i>ils</i>	did they finish

FUTURE.

<i>Fin</i> irai- <i>je</i>	shall <i>or</i> will I finish
<i>fin</i> iras- <i>tu</i>	shalt thou finish
<i>fin</i> ira- <i>il</i>	shall he finish
<i>fin</i> irons- <i>nous</i>	shall we finish
<i>fin</i> irez- <i>vous</i>	shall you finish
<i>fin</i> iront- <i>ils</i>	shall they finish

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

<i>Fin</i> irais- <i>je</i>	{ should, would, could, <i>or</i> might I { finish
<i>fin</i> irais- <i>tu</i>	shouldst thou finish
<i>fin</i> irait- <i>il</i>	should he finish
<i>fin</i> irions- <i>nous</i>	should we finish
<i>fin</i> iriez- <i>vous</i>	should you finish
<i>fin</i> iraient- <i>ils</i>	should they finish

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

<i>As</i> je <i>fin</i> i	have I finished <i>or</i> did I finish
<i>as</i> - <i>tu</i> <i>fin</i> i	hast thou finished

<i>a-t-il fin i</i>	has he finished
<i>avons-nous fin i</i>	have we finished
<i>avez-vous fin i</i>	have you finished
<i>ont-ils fin i</i>	have they finished

PLUPERFECT.

<i>Avais-je fin i</i>	{ had I finished <i>or</i> had I been finishing
<i>avais-tu fin i</i>	hadst thou finished
<i>avait-il fin i</i>	had he finished
<i>avions-nous fin i</i>	had we finished
<i>aviez-vous fin i</i>	had you finished
<i>avaient-ils fin i</i>	had they finished

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

<i>Eus-je fin i</i>	had I finished
<i>eus-tu fin i</i>	hadst thou finished
<i>eut-il fin i</i>	had he finished
<i>eûmes-nous fin i</i>	had we finished
<i>eûtes-vous fin i</i>	had you finished
<i>eurent-ils fin i</i>	had they finished

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

<i>Aurai-je fin i</i>	shall <i>or</i> will I have finished
<i>auras-tu fin i</i>	shalt thou have finished
<i>aura-t-il fin i</i>	shall he have finished
<i>aurons-nous fin i</i>	shall we have finished
<i>aurez-vous fin i</i>	shall you have finished
<i>auront-ils fin i</i>	shall they have finished

CONDITIONAL PAST.

<i>Aurais-je fin i</i>	{ should, would, could, <i>or</i> might I have finished
<i>aurais-tu fin i</i>	shouldst thou have finished
<i>aurait-il fin i</i>	should he have finished
<i>aurions-nous fin i</i>	should we have finished
<i>auriez-vous fin i</i>	should you have finished
<i>auraient-ils fin i</i>	should they have finished

FINIR *To Finish* (*Negatively and Interrogatively.*)

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

<i>Ne fin is-je pas</i>	do I not finish <i>or</i> am I not finishing
<i>ne fin is-tu pas</i>	dost thou not finish
<i>ne fin it-il pas</i>	does he not finish
<i>ne fin issons-nous pas</i>	do we not finish
<i>ne fin issez-vous pas</i>	do you not finish
<i>ne fin issent-ils pas</i>	do they not finish

IMPERFECT.

<i>Ne fin issais-je pas</i>	{ did I not finish <i>or</i> was I not finishing
<i>ne fin issais-tu pas</i>	didst thou not finish
<i>ne fin issait-il pas</i>	did he not finish
<i>ne fin issions-nous pas</i>	did we not finish
<i>ne fin issiez-vous pas</i>	did you not finish
<i>ne fin issaient-ils pas</i>	did they not finish

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

<i>Ne fin is-je pas</i>	did I not finish
<i>ne fin is-tu pas</i>	didst thou not finish
<i>ne fin it-il pas</i>	did he not finish
<i>ne fin imes-nous pas</i>	did we not finish
<i>ne fin ites-vous pas</i>	did you not finish
<i>ne fin irent-ils pas</i>	did they not finish

FUTURE.

<i>Ne fin irai-je pas</i>	shall <i>or</i> will I not finish
<i>ne fin iras-tu pas</i>	shalt thou not finish
<i>ne fin ira-t-il pas</i>	shall he not finish
<i>ne fin irons-nous pas</i>	shall we not finish
<i>ne fin irez-vous pas</i>	shall you not finish
<i>ne fin iront-ils pas</i>	shall they not finish

CONDITIONAL.

<i>Ne fin irais-je pas</i>	{ should, would, <i>or</i> might I not finish
<i>ne fin irais-tu pas</i>	shouldst thou not finish

<i>ne fin irait-il pas</i>	should he not finish
<i>ne fin irions-nous pas</i>	should we not finish
<i>ne fin iriez-vous pas</i>	should you not finish
<i>ne fin iraient-ils pas</i>	should they not finish

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

<i>N'ai-je pas fin i</i>	{ have I not finished, did I not finish, or have I not been finish- ing.
<i>n'as-tu pas fin i</i>	hast thou not finished
<i>n'a-t-il pas fin i</i>	has he not finished
<i>n'avons-nous pas fin i</i>	have we not finished
<i>n'avez-vous pas fin i</i>	have you not finished
<i>n'ont-ils pas fin i</i>	have they not finished

PLUPERFECT.

<i>N'avais-pas fin i</i>	{ had I not finished or had I not been finishing
<i>n'avais-tu pas fin i</i>	hadst thou not finished
<i>n'avait-il pas fin i</i>	had he not finished
<i>n'avions-nous pas fin i</i>	had we not finished
<i>n'aviez-vous pas fin i</i>	had you not finished
<i>n'avaient-ils pas fin i</i>	had they not finished

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

<i>N'eus-je pas fin i</i>	had I not finished
<i>n'eus-tu pas fin i</i>	hadst thou not finished
<i>n'eut-il pas fin i</i>	had he not finished
<i>n'eûmes-nous pas fin i</i>	had we not finished
<i>n'eûtes-vous pas fin i</i>	had you not finished
<i>n'eurent-ils pas fin i</i>	had they not finished

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

<i>N'aurai-je pas fin i</i>	shall or will I not have finished
<i>n'auras-tu pas fin i</i>	shalt thou not have finished
<i>n'aura-t-il pas fin i</i>	shall he not have finished
<i>n'aurons-nous pas fin i</i>	shall we not have finished
<i>n'aurez-vous pas fin i</i>	shall you not have finished
<i>n'aurent-ils pas fin i</i>	shall they not have finished

PAST.

<i>N'aurais-je pas fini</i>	{ should, would, could, or might I not have finished
<i>n'aurais-tu pas fini</i>	shouldst thou not have finished
<i>n'aurait-il pas fini</i>	should he not have finished
<i>n'aurions-nous pas fini</i>	should we not have finished
<i>n'auriez-vous pas fini</i>	should you not have finished
<i>n'auraient-ils pas fini</i>	should they not have finished.

REMARKS ON VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

The majority of these verbs are regular and follow the terminations of *finir*. The Irregular Verbs of this conjugation, which are very numerous, are given elsewhere.

III.—VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

RECEVOIR *To Receive* (*Affirmatively.*)

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Recevoir to receive

PAST.

Avoir reçu to have received

PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

Recevant receiving

COMPOUND OF THE PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

Ayant reçu having received

PARTICIPLE PAST.

Reçu received

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>Je reçois</i>	I receive, do receive, or am receiving
<i>tu reçois</i>	thou receivest
<i>il reçoit</i>	he receives

<i>nous rec evons</i>	we receive
<i>vous rec avez</i>	you receive
<i>ils reç oivent</i>	they receive

IMPERFECT.

<i>Je rec evais</i>	{ I received, did receive, or was re ceiving
<i>tu rec evais</i>	thou receivedst
<i>il rec avait</i>	he received
<i>nous rec evions</i>	we received
<i>vous rec eviez</i>	you received
<i>ils rec avaient</i>	they received

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

<i>Je reç us</i>	I received or did receive
<i>tu reç us</i>	thou receivedst
<i>il reç ut</i>	he received
<i>nous reç ûmes</i>	we received
<i>vous reç ûtes</i>	you received
<i>ils reç urent</i>	they received

FUTURE.

<i>Je rec evrai</i>	I shall or will receive
<i>tu rec evras</i>	thou shalt receive
<i>il rec evra</i>	he shall receive
<i>nous rec evrons</i>	we shall receive
<i>vous rec evrez</i>	you shall receive
<i>ils rec evront</i>	they shall receive

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>Je rec evrais</i>	{ I should, would, could, or might receive
<i>tu rec evrais</i>	thou shouldst receive
<i>il rec evrait</i>	he should receive
<i>nous rec evrions</i>	we should receive
<i>vous rec evriez</i>	you should receive
<i>ils rec evraient</i>	they should receive

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

<i>J'ai reç u</i>	{ I have received, did receive, <i>or</i> have been receiving
<i>tu as reç u</i>	thou hast received
<i>il a reç u</i>	he has received
<i>nous avons reç u</i>	we have received
<i>vous avez reç u</i>	you have received
<i>ils ont reç u</i>	they have received

PLUPERFECT.

<i>J'avais reç u</i>	I had received <i>or</i> had been receiving
<i>tu avais reç u</i>	thou hadst received
<i>il avait reç u</i>	he had received
<i>nous avions reç u</i>	we had received
<i>vous aviez reç u</i>	you had received
<i>ils avaient reç u</i>	they had received

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

<i>J'eus reç u</i>	I had received
<i>tu eus reç u</i>	thou hadst received
<i>il eut reç u</i>	he had received
<i>nous eûmes reç u</i>	we had received
<i>vous eûtes reç u</i>	you had received
<i>ils eurent reç u</i>	they had received

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

<i>J'aurai reç u</i>	I shall <i>or</i> will have received
<i>tu auras reç u</i>	thou shalt have received
<i>il aura reç u</i>	he shall have received
<i>nous aurons reç u</i>	we shall have received
<i>vous aurez reç u</i>	you shall have received
<i>ils auront reç u</i>	they shall have received

CONDITIONAL PAST.

<i>J'aurais reç u</i>	{ I should, would, could, <i>or</i> might have received
<i>tu aurais reç u</i>	thou shouldst have received
<i>il aurait reç u</i>	he should have received
<i>nous aurions reç u</i>	we should have received
<i>vous auriez reç u</i>	you should have received
<i>ils auraient reç u</i>	they should have received

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT

<i>Que je reç oive</i>	that I may receive
<i>que tu reç oives</i>	that thou mayest receive
<i>qu'il reç oive</i>	that he may receive
<i>que nous rec evions</i>	that we may receive
<i>que vous rec eviez</i>	that you may receive
<i>qu'ils reç oivent</i>	that they may receive

IMPERFECT.

<i>Que je reç usse</i>	that I might receive
<i>que tu reç usses</i>	that thou mightest receive
<i>qu'il reçût</i>	that he might receive
<i>que nous reç ussions</i>	that we might receive
<i>que vous reç ussiez</i>	that you might receive
<i>qu'ils reç ussent</i>	that they might receive

PAST.

<i>Que j'aie reç u</i>	that I may have received
<i>que tu aies reç u</i>	that thou mayest have received
<i>qu'il ait reç u</i>	that he may have received
<i>que nous ayons reç u</i>	that we may have received
<i>que vous ayez reç u</i>	that you may have received
<i>qu'ils aient reç u</i>	that they may have received

PLUPERFECT.

<i>Que j'eusse reç u</i>	that I might have received
<i>que tu eusses reç u</i>	that thou mightest have received
<i>qu'il eût reç u</i>	that he might have received
<i>que nous eussions reç u</i>	that we might have received
<i>que vous eussiez reç u</i>	that you might have received
<i>qu'ils eussent reç u</i>	that they might have received

IMPERATIVE MOOD..

<i>Reç ois</i>	receive [thou]
<i>qu'il reç oive</i>	let him receive
<i>rec evons</i>	let us receive
<i>rec avez</i>	receive [you]
<i>qu'ils reç oivent</i>	let them receive

RECEVOIR

To Receive

(Negatively.)

INFINITIVE.

Ne pas rec evoir

not to receive

PAST.

N'avoir pas reç u

not to have received

PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

Ne rec evant pas

not receiving

COMPOUND OF THE PARTICIPLE.

N'ayant pas reç u

not having received

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

Je ne reç ois pas{ I receive not, do not receive, or am
not receiving*tu ne reç ois pas*

thou receivest not

il ne reç oit pas

he receives not

nous ne rec evons pas

we receive not

vous ne rec evez pas

you receive not

ils ne reç oient pas

they receive not

IMPERFECT.

Je ne rec evais pas{ I received not, did not receive, or
was not receiving*tu ne rec evais pas*

thou receivedst not

il ne rec evait pas

he received not

nous ne rec evions pas

we received not

vous ne rec eviez pas

you received not

ils ne rec evaient pas

they received not

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Je ne reç us pas

I received not or did not receive

tu ne reç us pas

thou receivedst not

il ne reç ut pas

he received not

nous ne reç ûmes pas

we received not

vous ne reç ûtes pas

you received not

ils ne reç urent pas

they received not

FUTURE.

Je ne rec evrai pas

I shall or will not receive

tu ne rec evras pas

thou shalt not receive

il ne rec evra pas
nous ne rec evrons pas
vous ne rec evrez pas
ils ne rec evront pas

he shall not receive
 we shall not receive
 you shall not receive
 they shall not receive

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

Je ne rec evrais pas
tu ne rec evrais pas
il ne rec evrait pas
nous ne rec evrions pas
vous ne rec evriez pas
ils ne rec evraient pas

{ I should, would, could, or might
 { not receive
 thou shouldst not receive
 he should not receive
 we should not receive
 you should not receive
 they should not receive

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

Je n'ai pas reç u
tu n'as pas reç u
il n'a pas reç u
nous n'avons pas reç u
vous n'avez pas reç u
ils n'ont pas reç u

{ I have not received, did not receive,
 { or have not been receiving
 thou hast not received
 he has not received
 we have not received
 you have not received
 they have not received

PLUPERFECT.

Je n'avais pas reç u
tu n'avais pas reç u
il n'avait pas reç u
nous n'avions pas reç u
vous n'aviez pas reç u
ils n'avaient pas reç u

{ I had not received, or had not been
 { receiving
 thou hadst not received
 he had not received
 we had not received
 you had not received
 they had not received

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

Je n'eus pas reç u
tu n'eus pas reç u
il n'eut pas reç u
nous n'eûmes pas reç u
vous n'eûtes pas reç u
ils n'eurent pas reç u

I had not received
 thou hadst not received
 he had not received
 we had not received
 you had not received
 they had not received

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

<i>Je n'aurai pas reç u</i>	I shall or will not have received
<i>tu n'auras pas reç u</i>	thou shalt not have received
<i>il n'aura pas reç u</i>	he shall not have received
<i>nous n'aurons pas reç u</i>	we shall not have received
<i>vous n'aurez pas reç u</i>	you shall not have received
<i>ils n'auront pas reç u</i>	they shall not have received

CONDITIONAL PAST.

<i>Je n'aurais pas reç u</i>	{ I should, would, could, or might not have received
<i>tu n'aurais pas reç u</i>	thou shouldst not have received
<i>il n'aurait pas reç u</i>	he should not have received
<i>nous n'aurions pas reç u</i>	we should not have received
<i>vous n'auriez pas reç u</i>	you should not have received
<i>ils n'auraient pas reç u</i>	they should not have received

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>Que je ne reç oive pas</i>	that I may not receive
<i>que tu ne reç oies pas</i>	that thou mayest not receive
<i>qu'il ne reç oive pas</i>	that he may not receive
<i>que nous ne rec evions pas</i>	that we may not receive
<i>que vous ne rec eviez pas</i>	that you may not receive
<i>qu'ils ne reç oivent pas</i>	that they may not receive

IMPERFECT.

<i>Que je ne reç usse pas</i>	that I might not receive
<i>que tu ne reç usses pas</i>	that thou mightest not receive
<i>qu'il ne reçût pas</i>	that he might not receive
<i>que nous ne reç ussions pas</i>	that we might not receive
<i>que vous ne reç ussiez pas</i>	that you might not receive
<i>qu'ils ne reç ussent pas</i>	that they might not receive

PAST.

<i>Que je n'aie pas reç u</i>	that I may not have received
<i>que tu n'aies pas reç u</i>	that thou mayest not have received
<i>qu'il n'ait pas reç u</i>	that he may not have received
<i>que nous n'ayons pas reç u</i>	that we may not have received
<i>que vous n'ayez pas reç u</i>	that you may not have received
<i>qu'ils n'aient pas reç u</i>	that they may not have received

PLUPERFECT.

<i>Que je n'eusse pas reç u</i>	that I might not have received
<i>que tu n'eusses pas reç u</i>	{ that thou mightest not have re
<i>qu'il n'eût pas reç u</i>	{ ceived
<i>que nous n'eussions pas reç u</i>	that he might not have received
<i>que vous n'eussiez pas reç u</i>	that we might not have received
<i>qu'ils n'eussent pas reç u</i>	that you might not have received
	that they might not have received

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Ne reç ois pas</i>	receive not <i>or</i> do not receive [thou]
<i>qu'il ne reç oive pas</i>	let him not receive
<i>ne rec evons pas</i>	let us not receive
<i>ne rec evez pas</i>	receive not <i>or</i> do not receive [you]
<i>qu'ils ne reç oivent pas</i>	let them not receive

RECEVOIR

*To Receive**(Interrogatively.)*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>Reç ois-je</i>	do I receive <i>or</i> am I receiving
<i>reç ois-tu</i>	dost thou receive
<i>reç oit-il</i>	does he receive
<i>rec evons-nous</i>	do we receive
<i>rec evez-vous</i>	do you receive
<i>reç oivent-ils</i>	do they receive

IMPERFECT.

<i>Rec evais-je</i>	did I receive
<i>rec evais-tu</i>	didst thou receive
<i>rec evait-il</i>	did he receive
<i>rec evions-nous</i>	did we receive
<i>rec eviez-vous</i>	did you receive
<i>rec evaient-ils</i>	did they receive .

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

<i>Reç us-je</i>	did I receive
<i>reç us-tu</i>	didst thou receive
<i>reç ut-il</i>	did he receive

reçûmes-nous
reçûtes-vous
reçurent-ils

did we receive
 did you receive
 did they receive

FUTURE.

Rec evrai-je
rec evras-tu
rec evra-t-il
rec evrons-nous
rec evrez-vous
rec evront-ils

shall or will I receive
 shalt thou receive
 shall he receive
 shall we receive
 shall you receive
 shall they receive

CONDITIONAL.

PRESENT.

Rec evrais-je
rec evrais-tu
rec evrait-il
rec evrions-nous
rec evriez-vous
rec evraient-ils

{ should, would, could, or might I
 { receive
 shouldst thou receive
 should he receive
 should we receive
 should you receive
 should they receive

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

Ai-je reçû
as-tu reçû
a-t-il reçû
avons-nous reçû
avez-vous reçû
ont-ils reçû

have I received or did I receive
 hast thou received
 has he received
 have we received
 have you received
 have they received

PLUPERFECT.

Arais-je reçû
arais-tu reçû
avait-il reçû
arions-nous reçû
ariez-vous reçû
avaient-ils reçû

{ had I received or had I been re-
 { ceiving
 hadst thou received
 had he received
 had we received
 had you received
 had they received

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

Eus-je reçû
eus-tu reçû

had I received
 hadst thou received

<i>eut-il reç u</i>	had he received
<i>eûmes-nous reç u</i>	had we received
<i>eûtes-vous reç u</i>	had you received
<i>eurent-ils reç u</i>	had they received

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

<i>Aurai-je reç u</i>	shall <i>or</i> will I have received
<i>auras-tu reç u</i>	shalt thou have received
<i>aura-t-il reç u</i>	shall he have received
<i>aurons-nous reç u</i>	shall we have received
<i>aurez-vous reç u</i>	shall you have received
<i>auront-ils reç u</i>	shall they have received

CONDITIONAL PAST.

<i>Aurais-je reç u</i>	{ should, would, could <i>or</i> might I
	{ have received
<i>aurais-tu reç u</i>	shouldst thou have received
<i>aurait-il reç u</i>	should he have received
<i>aurions-nous reç u</i>	should we have received
<i>auriez-vous reç u</i>	should you have received
<i>auraient-ils reç u</i>	should they have received

REC :VOIR *To Receive* (*Negatively and Interrogatively.*)

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>Ne reç ois-je pas</i>	{ do I not receive <i>or</i> am I not re-
	{ ceiving
<i>ne reç ois-tu pas</i>	dost thou not receive
<i>ne reç oit-il pas</i>	does he not receive
<i>ne rec evons-nous pa</i>	do we not receive
<i>ne rec evez-vous pas</i>	do you not receive
<i>ne reç oient-ils pas</i>	do they not receive

IMPERFECT.

<i>Ne rec evais-je pas</i>	{ did I not receive <i>or</i> was I not re-
	{ ceiving
<i>ne rec evais-tu pas</i>	didst thou not receive
<i>ne rec evait-il pas</i>	did he not receive

ne rec evions-nous pas
ne rec eviez-vous pas
ne rec evaient-ils pas

did we not receive
 did you not receive
 did they not receive

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Ne reç us-je pas
ne reç us-tu pas
ne reç ut-il pas
ne reç ûmes-nous pas
ne reç ûtes-vous pas
ne reç urent-ils pas

did I not receive
 didst thou not receive
 did he not receive
 did we not receive
 did you not receive
 did they not receive

FUTURE.

Ne rec evrai-je pas
ne rec evras-tu pas
ne rec evra-t-il pas
ne rec evrons-nous pas
ne rec evrez-vous pas
ne rec evront-ils pas

shall or will I not receive
 shalt thou not receive
 shall he not receive
 shall we not receive
 shall you not receive
 shall they not receive

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

Ne rec evrais-je pas
ne rec evrais-tu pas
ne rec evrait il pas
ne rec evrions-nous pas
ne rec evriez-vous pas
ne rec evraient-ils pas

{ should, would, could, or might I
 { not receive
 shouldst thou not receive
 should he not receive
 should we not receive
 should you not receive
 should they not receive

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

N'ai-je pas reç u
n'as-tu pas reç u
n'a-t il pas reç u
n'avons-nous pas reç u
n'avez-vous pas reç u
n'ont-ils pas reç u

{ have I not received, did I not re-
 { ceive, or have I not been re-
 ceiving
 hast thou not received
 has he not received
 have we not received
 have you not received
 have they not received

PLUPERFECT.

<i>N'avais-je pas reç u</i>	{ had I not received <i>or</i> had I not
<i>n'avais-tu pas reç u</i>	{ been receiving
<i>n'avait-il pas reç u</i>	hadst thou not received
<i>n'acions-nous pas reç u</i>	had he not received
<i>n'aviez-vous pas reç u</i>	had we not received
<i>n'avaient-ils pas reç u</i>	had you not received
	had they not received

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

<i>N'eus-je pas reç u</i>	had I not received
<i>n'eus-tu pas reç u</i>	hadst thou not received
<i>n'eut-il pas reç u</i>	had he not received
<i>n'eûmes-nous pas reç u</i>	had we not received
<i>n'eûtes-vous pas reç u</i>	had you not received
<i>n'eurent-ils pas reç u</i>	had they not received

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

<i>N'aurai-je pas reç u</i>	shall <i>or</i> will I not have received
<i>n'auras-tu pas reç u</i>	shalt thou not have received
<i>n'aura-t-il pas reç u</i>	shall he not have received
<i>n'aurons-nous pas reç u</i>	shall we not have received
<i>n'aurez-vous pas reç u</i>	shall you not have received
<i>n'auront-ils pas reç u</i>	shall they not have received

CONDITIONAL PAST.

<i>N'aurais-je pas reç u</i>	{ should, would, could, <i>or</i> might I
<i>n'aurais-tu pas reç u</i>	{ not have received
<i>n'aurait-il pas reç u</i>	shouldst thou not have received
<i>n'aurions-nous pas reç u</i>	should he not have received
<i>n'auriez-vous pas reç u</i>	should we not have received
<i>n'auraient-ils pas reç u</i>	should you not have received
	should they not have received

REMARKS ON VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

The following Verbs, all ending in *avoir*, are conjugated like *recevoir* :

<i>Apercevoir,</i>	to perceive.
<i>concevoir,</i>	to conceive.

<i>décevoir,</i>	to deceive.
<i>percevoir,</i>	to collect.
<i>devoir,</i>	to owe.
<i>redevoir,</i>	to owe again.

Whenever the verbs ending in *cevoir*, in the course of conjugation have to place *a*, *o* or *u* after the *c* of the root, a cedilla must be added to *c* in order to preserve the pronunciation of the Infinitive.

Ex. *apercevoir*.

PRESENT.	<i>J'aperçois</i>
	<i>tu aperçois</i>
	<i>il aperçoit</i>
	<i>nous apercevons</i> (no cedilla needed.)
	<i>vous apercevez</i> (" ")
	<i>ils aperçoivent</i>
SUBJ. PRES.	<i>Que j'aperçoive</i>
	<i>que tu aperçoives</i>
	<i>qu'il aperçoive</i>
	<i>que nous apercevions</i> (no cedilla needed.)
	<i>que vous aperceviez</i> (" ")
	<i>qu'ils aperçoivent</i>

PART. PAST. *Aperçu*

Ex. *recevoir*.

PRESENT.	<i>Je reçois</i>	SUBJ. PRES.	<i>Que je reçoive</i>
		PART. PAST.	<i>Reçu</i>

The Participle Past of *devoir*, which is *dû*, requires the Circumflex Accent, in order to distinguish it from the Genitive of the Masculine Article *du*. No accent is given to the Feminine *due*, as there is no ambiguity here.

All the other Verbs of this Conjugation are irregular and will be given hereafter :

IV.—VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

VENDRE *To Sell* (*Affirmatively.*)

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Vend re to sell

PAST.

Avoir vend u to have sold

PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

Vend ant selling

COMPOUND OF THE PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

Ayant vend u having sold

PARTICIPLE PAST.

Vend u sold

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>Je vend s</i>	I sell, do sell, <i>or</i> am selling
<i>tu vend s</i>	thou sellest
<i>il vend</i>	he sells
<i>nous vend ons</i>	we sell
<i>vous vend ez</i>	you sell
<i>ils vend ent</i>	they sell

IMPERFECT.

<i>Je vend ais</i>	I sold, did sell, <i>or</i> was selling
<i>tu vend ais</i>	thou soldest
<i>il vend ait</i>	he sold
<i>nous vend ions</i>	we sold
<i>vous vend iez</i>	you sold
<i>ils vend aient</i>	they sold

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

<i>Je vend is</i>	I sold <i>or</i> did sel
<i>tu vend is</i>	thou soldest
<i>il vend it</i>	he sold

nous vendîmes
vous vendîtes
ils vendirent

we sold
 you sold
 they sold

FUTURE.

Je vendrai
tu vendras
il vendra
nous vendrons
vous vendrez
ils vendront

I shall *or* will sell
 thou shalt sell
 he shall sell
 we shall sell
 you shall sell
 they shall sell

CONDITIONAL MOOD

PRESENT.

Je vendrais
tu vendrais
il vendrait
nous vendrions
vous vendriez
ils vendraient

I should, would, could, *or* might sell
 thou shouldst sell
 he should sell
 we should sell
 you should sell
 they should sell

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

J'ai vendu
tu as vendu
il a vendu
nous avons vendu
vous avez vendu
ils ont vendu

{ I have sold, did sell, *or* have been
 selling
 thou hast sold
 he has sold
 we have sold
 you have sold
 they have sold

PLUPERFECT

J'avais vendu
tu avais vendu
il avait vendu
nous avions vendu
vous aviez vendu
ils avaient vendu

I had sold *or* had been selling
 thou hadst sold
 he had sold
 we had sold
 you had sold
 they had sold

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

J'eus vendu
tu eus vendu

I had sold
 thou hadst sold

<i>il eut vend u</i>	he had sold
<i>nous eûmes vend u</i>	we had sold
<i>vous eûtes vend u</i>	you had sold
<i>ils eurent vend u</i>	they had sold

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

<i>J'aurai vend u</i>	I shall <i>or</i> will have sold
<i>tu auras vend u</i>	thou shalt have sold
<i>il aura vend u</i>	he shall have sold
<i>nous aurons vend u</i>	we shall have sold
<i>vous aurez vend u</i>	you shall have sold
<i>ils auront vend u</i>	they shall have sold

CONDITIONAL PAST.

<i>J'aurais vend u</i>	{ I should, would, could, <i>or</i> might have sold
<i>tu aurais vend u</i>	thou shouldst have sold
<i>il aurait vend u</i>	he should have sold
<i>nous aurions vend u</i>	we should have sold
<i>vous auriez vend u</i>	you should have sold
<i>ils auraient vend u</i>	they should have sold

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>Que je vend e</i>	that I may sell
<i>que tu vend es</i>	that thou mayest sell
<i>qu'il vend e</i>	that he may sell
<i>que nous vend ions</i>	that we may sell
<i>que vous vend iez</i>	that you may sell
<i>qu'ils vend ent</i>	that they may sell

IMPERFECT.

<i>Que je vend isse</i>	that I might sell
<i>que tu vend isses</i>	that thou mightest have sold
<i>qu'il vend it</i>	that he might sell
<i>que nous vend issions</i>	that we might sell
<i>que vous vend issiez</i>	that you might sell
<i>qu'ils vend issent</i>	that they might sell

PAST.

<i>Que j'aie vend u</i>	that I may have sold
<i>que tu aies vend u</i>	that thou mayest have sold

<i>qu'il ait vend u</i>	that he may have sold
<i>que nous ayons vend u</i>	that we may have sold
<i>que vous ayez vend u</i>	that you may have sold
<i>qu'ils aient vend u</i>	that they may have sold

PLUPERFECT.

<i>Que j'eusse vend u</i>	that I might have sold
<i>que tu eusses vend u</i>	that thou mightest have sold
<i>qu'il eût vend u</i>	that he might have sold
<i>que nous eussions vend u</i>	that we might have sold
<i>que vous eussiez vend u</i>	that you might have sold
<i>qu'ils eussent vend u</i>	that they might have sold

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Vend s</i>	sell [thou]
<i>qu'il vend e</i>	let him sell
<i>vend ons</i>	let us sell
<i>vend ez</i>	sell [you]
<i>qu'ils vend ent</i>	let them sell

VENDRE

To Sell

(Negatively.)

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>Ne pas vend re</i>	not to sell
-----------------------	-------------

PAST.

<i>N'avoir pas vend u</i>	not to have sold
---------------------------	------------------

PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

<i>Ne vend ant pas</i>	not selling
------------------------	-------------

COMPOUND OF THE PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

<i>N'ayant pas vend u</i>	not having sold
---------------------------	-----------------

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>Je ne vend s pas</i>	{ I sell not, do not sell, or am not selling
<i>tu ne vend s pas</i>	
	thou sellest not

<i>il ne vend pas</i>	he sells not
<i>nous ne vend ons pas</i>	we sell not
<i>vous ne vend ez pas.</i>	you sell not
<i>ils ne vend ent pas</i>	they sell not

IMPERFECT.

<i>Je ne vend ais pas</i>	{ I sold not, did not sell, or was not selling
<i>tu ne vend ais pas</i>	thou soldest not
<i>il ne vend ait pas</i>	he sold not
<i>nous ne vend ions pas</i>	we sold not
<i>vous ne vend iez pas</i>	you sold not
<i>ils ne vend aient pas</i>	they sold not

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

<i>Je ne vend is pas</i>	I sold not or did not sell
<i>tu ne vend is pas</i>	thou soldest not
<i>il ne vend it pas</i>	he sold not
<i>nous ne vend îmes pas</i>	we sold not
<i>vous ne vend îtes pas</i>	you sold not
<i>ils ne vend irent pas</i>	they sold not

FUTURE.

<i>Je ne vend rai pas</i>	I shall or will not sell
<i>tu ne vend ras pas</i>	thou shalt not sell
<i>il ne vend ra pas</i>	he shall not sell
<i>nous ne vend rons pas</i>	we shall not sell
<i>vous ne vend rez pas</i>	you shall not sell
<i>ils ne vend ront pas</i>	they shall not sell

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>Je ne vend rais pas</i>	{ I should, would, could, or might not sell
<i>tu ne vend rais pas</i>	thou shouldst not sell
<i>il ne vend rait pas</i>	he should not sell
<i>nous ne vend rions pas</i>	we should not sell
<i>vous ne vend riez pas</i>	you should not sell
<i>ils ne vend raient pas</i>	they should not sell

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

<i>Je n'ai pas vend u</i>	{ I have not sold. I did not sell, or have not been selling
<i>tu n'as pas vend u</i>	thou hast not sold
<i>il n'a pas vend u</i>	he has not sold
<i>nous n'avons pas vend u</i>	we have not sold
<i>vous n'avez pas vend u</i>	you have not sold
<i>ils n'ont pas vend u</i>	they have not sold

PLUPERFECT.

<i>Je n'avais pas vend u</i>	I had not sold or had not been selling
<i>tu n'aurais pas vend u</i>	thou hadst not sold
<i>il n'avait pas vend u</i>	he had not sold
<i>nous n'avions pas vend u</i>	we had not sold
<i>vous n'aviez pas vend u</i>	you had not sold
<i>ils n'avaient pas vend u</i>	they had not sold

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

<i>Je n'eus pas vend u</i>	I had not sold
<i>tu n'eus pas vend u</i>	thou hadst not sold
<i>il n'eut pas vend u</i>	he had not sold
<i>nous n'eûmes pas vend u</i>	we had not sold
<i>vous n'eûtes pas vend u</i>	you had not sold
<i>ils n'eurent pas vend u</i>	they had not sold

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

<i>Je n'aurai pas vend u</i>	I shall or will not have sold
<i>tu n'auras pas vend u</i>	thou shalt not have sold
<i>il n'aura pas vend u</i>	he shall not have sold
<i>nous n'aurons pas vend u</i>	we shall not have sold
<i>vous n'aurez pas vend u</i>	you shall not have sold
<i>ils n'auront pas vend u</i>	they shall not have sold

CONDITIONAL PAST.

<i>Je n'aurais pas vend u</i>	{ I should, would, could, or might not have sold
<i>tu n'aurais pas vend u</i>	thou shouldst not have sold
<i>il n'aurait pas vend u</i>	he should not have sold
<i>nous n'aurions pas vend u</i>	we should not have sold
<i>vous n'auriez pas vend u</i>	you should not have sold
<i>ils n'auraient pas vend u</i>	they should not have sold

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>Que je ne vend e pas</i>	that I may not sell
<i>que tu ne vend es pas</i>	that thou mayest not sell
<i>qu'il ne vend e pas</i>	that he may not sell
<i>que nous ne vend ions pas</i>	that we may not sell
<i>que vous ne vend iez pas</i>	that you may not sell
<i>qu'ils ne vend ent pas</i>	that they may not sell

IMPERFECT.

<i>Que je ne vend isse pas</i>	that I might not sell
<i>que tu ne vend isses pas</i>	that thou mightest not sell
<i>qu'il ne vend it pas</i>	that he might not sell
<i>que nous ne vend issions pas</i>	that we might not sell
<i>que vous ne vend issiez pas</i>	that you might not sell
<i>qu'ils ne vend issent pas</i>	that they might not sell

PAST.

<i>Que je n'aie pas vend u</i>	that I may not have sold
<i>que tu n'aies pas vend u</i>	that thou mayest not have sold
<i>qu'il n'ait pas vend u</i>	that he may not have sold
<i>que nous n'ayons pas vend u</i>	that we may not have sold
<i>que vous n'ayez pas vend u</i>	that you may not have sold
<i>qu'ils n'aient pas vend u</i>	that they may not have sold

PLUPERFECT.

<i>Que je n'eusse pas vend u</i>	that I might not have sold
<i>que tu n'eusses pas vend u</i>	that thou mightest not have sold
<i>qu'il n'eût pas vend u</i>	that he might not have sold
<i>que nous n'eussions pas vend u</i>	that we might not have sold
<i>que vous n'eussiez pas vend u</i>	that you might not have sold
<i>qu'ils n'eussent pas vend u</i>	that they might not have sold

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Ne vend s pas</i>	sell not <i>or</i> do not sell [thou]
<i>qu'il ne vend e pas</i>	let him not sell
<i>ne vend ons pas</i>	let us not sell
<i>ne vend ez pas</i>	sell not <i>or</i> do not sell [you]
<i>qu'ils ne vend ent pas</i>	let them not sell

VENDRE

To Sell

(Interrogatively.)

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>Est-ce que je vend s</i>	do I sell <i>or</i> am I selling
<i>vend s-tu</i>	dost thou sell
<i>vend-il</i>	does he sell
<i>vend ons-nous</i>	do we sell
<i>vend ez-vous</i>	do you sel.
<i>vend ent-ils</i>	do they sell

IMPERFECT.

<i>Vend ais-je</i>	did I sell <i>or</i> was I selling
<i>vend ais-tu</i>	didst thou sell
<i>vend ait-il</i>	did he sell
<i>vend ions-nous</i>	did we sell
<i>vend iez-vous</i>	did you sell
<i>vend aient-ils</i>	did they sell

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

<i>Vend is-je</i>	did I sell
<i>vend is-tu</i>	didst thou sell
<i>vend it-il</i>	did he sell
<i>vend imes-nous</i>	did we sell
<i>vend ites-vous</i>	did you sell
<i>vend irent-ils</i>	did they sell

FUTURE.

<i>Vend rai-je</i>	shall <i>or</i> will I sell
<i>vend ras-tu</i>	shalt thou sell
<i>vend ra-t-il</i>	shall he sell
<i>vend rons-nous</i>	shall we sell
<i>vend rez-vous</i>	shall you sell
<i>vend ront-ils</i>	shall they sell

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>Vend rais-je</i>	should, would, could, <i>or</i> might I sell
<i>vend rais-tu</i>	shouldst thou sell
<i>vend rait-il</i>	should he sell

<i>vend rions-nous</i>	should we sell
<i>vend riez-vous</i>	should you sell
<i>vend raient-ils</i>	should they sell

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

<i>Ai-je vend u</i>	have I sold <i>or</i> did I sell
<i>as-tu vend u</i>	hast thou sold
<i>a-t-il vend u</i>	has he sold
<i>avons-nous vend u</i>	have we sold
<i>avez-vous vend u</i>	have you sold
<i>ont-ils vend u</i>	have they sold

PLUPERFECT.

<i>Avais-je vend u</i>	had I sold <i>or</i> had I been selling
<i>avais-tu vend u</i>	hadst thou sold
<i>avait-il vend u</i>	had he sold
<i>avions-nous vend u</i>	had we sold
<i>aviez-vous vend u</i>	had you sold
<i>avaient-ils vend u</i>	had they sold

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

<i>Eus-je vend u</i>	had I sold
<i>eus-tu vend u</i>	hadst thou sold
<i>eut-il vend u</i>	had he sold
<i>eûmes-nous vend u</i>	had we sold
<i>eûtes-vous vend u</i>	had you sold
<i>eurent-ils vend u</i>	had they sold

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

<i>Aurai-je vend u</i>	shall <i>or</i> will I have sold
<i>auras-tu vend u</i>	shalt thou have sold
<i>aura-t-il vend u</i>	shall he have sold
<i>aurons-nous vend u</i>	shall we have sold
<i>aurez-vous vend u</i>	shall you have sold
<i>auront-ils vend u</i>	shall they have sold

CONDITIONAL PAST.

<i>Aurais-je vend u</i>	{ should, would, could, <i>or</i> might I
	{ have sold
<i>aurais-tu vend u</i>	shouldst thou have sold
<i>aurait-il vend u</i>	should he have sold

<i>aurions-nous vend u</i>	should we have sold
<i>auriez-vous vend u</i>	should you have sold
<i>auraient-ils vend u</i>	should they have sold

VENDRE *To Sell (Negatively and Interrogatively.)*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>Est-ce que je ne vend s pas</i>	do I not sell or am I not selling
<i>ne vend s-tu pas</i>	dost thou not sell
<i>ne vend-il pas</i>	does he not sell
<i>ne vend ons-nous pas</i>	do we not sell
<i>ne vend ez-vous pas</i>	do you not sell
<i>ne vend ent-ils pas</i>	do they not sell

IMPERFECT.

<i>Ne vend ais-je pas</i>	did I not sell or was I not selling
<i>ne vend ais-tu pas</i>	didst thou not sell
<i>ne vend ait-il pas</i>	did he not sell
<i>ne vend ions-nous pas</i>	did we not sell
<i>ne vend iez-vous pas</i>	did you not sell
<i>ne vend aient-ils pas</i>	did they not sell

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

<i>Ne vend is-je pas</i>	did I not sell
<i>ne vend is-tu pas</i>	didst thou not sell
<i>ne vend it-il pas</i>	did he not sell
<i>ne vend imes-nous pas</i>	did we not sell
<i>ne vend ites-vous pas</i>	did you not sell
<i>ne vend irent-ils pas</i>	did they not sell

FUTURE.

<i>Ne vend rai-je pas</i>	shall or will I not sell
<i>ne vend ras-tu pas</i>	shalt thou not sell
<i>ne vend ra-t-il pas</i>	shall he not sell
<i>ne vend rons-nous pas</i>	shall we not sell
<i>ne vend rez-vous pas</i>	shall you not sell
<i>ne vend ront-ils pas</i>	shall they not sell

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>Ne vend rais-je pas</i>	{ should, would, could, or might I not sell
<i>ne vend rais-tu pas</i>	shouldst thou not sell
<i>ne vend rait-il pas</i>	should he not sell
<i>ne vend rions-nous pas</i>	should we not sell
<i>ne vend riez-vous pas</i>	should you not sell
<i>ne vend raient-ils pas</i>	should they not sell

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

<i>N'ai-je pas vend u</i>	{ have I not sold, did I not sell or have I not been selling
<i>n'as-tu pas vend u</i>	hast thou not sold
<i>n'a-t-il pas vend u</i>	has he not sold
<i>n'avons-nous pas vend u</i>	have we not sold
<i>n'avez-vous pas vend u</i>	have you not sold
<i>n'ont ils pas vend u</i>	have they not sold

PLUPERFECT.

<i>N'avais-je pas vend u</i>	{ had I not sold, or had I not been selling
<i>n'avais-tu pas vend u</i>	hadst thou not sold
<i>n'avait-il pas vend u</i>	had he not sold
<i>n'avions-nous pas vend u</i>	had we not sold
<i>n'aviez-vous pas vend u</i>	had you not sold
<i>n'avaient-ils pas vend u</i>	had they not sold

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

<i>N'eus-je pas vend u</i>	had I not sold
<i>n'eus-tu pas vend u</i>	hadst thou not sold
<i>n'eut-il pas vend u</i>	had he not sold
<i>n'eûmes-nous pas vend u</i>	had we not sold
<i>n'eûtes-vous pas vend u</i>	had you not sold
<i>n'eurent-ils pas vend u</i>	had they not sold

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

<i>N'aurai-je pas vend u</i>	shall or will I not have sold
<i>n'auras-tu pas vend u</i>	shalt thou not have sold
<i>n'aura-t-il pas vend u</i>	shall he not have sold
<i>n'aurons-nous pas vend u</i>	shall we not have sold

n'aurez-vous pas vend u

shall you not have sold

n'auront-ils pas vend u

shall they not have sold

CONDITIONAL PAST.

N'aurais-je pas vend u{ should, would, could, or might I
not have sold*n'aurais-tu pas vend u*

shouldst thou not have sold

n'aurait-il pas vend u

should he not have sold

n'aurions-nous pas vend u

should we not have sold

n'auriez-vous pas vend u

should you not have sold

n'auraient-ils pas vend u

should they not have sold

THE DIFFERENT KINDS OF VERBS.

After having thus shown the manner in which the verbs are conjugated according to the four conjugations, it becomes necessary to learn that French verbs differ not in form only, but in nature also. We find accordingly,

1. *Active Verbs*, which express an action directed upon an immediate object. They are often called *Transitive Verbs*, as it were because the action is passing over (*transire*) upon the object, which is their direct object, and consequently always in the accusative case. To find out if a verb is an active verb in French, take the first person, and if the words *personne*, somebody, or *quelque chose*, something, can be added, the verb is active; if not, it is neuter.

Ex. *frapper*: je frappe *quelqu'un*, I strike somebody. Active.

lire: je lis *quelque chose*, I read something. Active.

marcher: je marche { *quelqu'un*, I walk { somebody
 { *quelque chose*, { something

cannot be said, hence *marcher* is neuter.

Active Verbs make their compound tenses by means of the Auxiliary Verb *avoir*.

Ex. *j'ai frappé*

I have struck

j'ai lu

I have read

2. *Neuter Verbs*, which express either an action that has no

direct object, or no action at all, but merely a state or a condition. They are also called Intransitive Verbs.

Ex. *entrer*, to enter, can only be used with *in* : *entrer dans le salon*, to enter into the parlor; *embellir*, to grow handsome, expresses no action, but merely a condition.

Neuter Verbs make their compound tenses by means of the Auxiliary *avoir* or *être*, according to established usage; a few take either *avoir* or *être*, changing in signification accordingly. The following neuter verbs are conjugated with *être*, all others with *avoir* :

<i>aborder</i> *	to land	<i>croître</i> *	to grow
<i>accoucher</i>	{ a verb used in surgery	<i>déborder</i> *	to overflow
<i>accourir</i> *		<i>décamper</i> *	to decamp
<i>accroître</i> *	to increase	<i>décéder</i>	to die
<i>aller</i>	to go	<i>déchoir</i> *	to decay
<i>apparaître</i> *	to appear	<i>décroître</i> *	to decrease
<i>arriver</i>	to arrive	<i>dégénérer</i> *	to degenerate
<i>augmenter</i> *	to increase	<i>demeurer</i> *	to stay or remain
<i>avenir</i> or <i>adve-</i>	{ to happen	<i>descendre</i> * (3)	to go down
<i>nir</i>		<i>devenir</i>	to become
<i>baisser</i> *	to fall, to decrease	<i>diminuer</i>	to decrease
<i>cesser</i> * (1)	to cease	<i>disconvenir</i>	to deny or disown
<i>changer</i> * (2)	to change	<i>disparaître</i> *	to disappear
<i>choir</i>	to fall	<i>échapper</i> * (4)	to escape
<i>convenir</i>	to agree	<i>échoir</i> *	to become due
		<i>échouer</i> *	to run aground

(1) *Cesser* takes *être* when there is no expectation of a return.

(2) *Changer*, applied to persons takes *être*, when used to express a change in the physiognomy, and *avoir* when it alludes to a moral change.

(3) It is very easy to distinguish with all these verbs, which auxiliary must be selected; for it is customary in English, to substitute the verb *to be* for *to go*, when the action has entirely ceased. This substitution cannot take place in French: thus, *he has gone down*, as it implies that *he is still down*, must be translated by *il est descendu*, while *he has been down*, will be translated by *il a descendu*, etc.

(4) *Echapper* signifies *to pass unperceived*, and then takes *avoir*; it has besides the meaning of *to let slip*, when it takes *être*.

<i>éclore</i>	to blow	<i>redevenir</i>	to become again
<i>embellir*</i>	to grow handsome	<i>remonter*</i> (3)	to go up again
<i>empirer*</i>	to grow worse	<i>rentrer*</i>	to come in again
<i>entrer*</i> (3)	to enter	<i>repartir*</i>	to set out again
<i>expirer*</i> (5)	to expire	<i>ressortir*</i> (3)	to go out again
<i>grandir*</i>	to grow tall	<i>rester*</i>	to stay
<i>intervenir</i>	to intervene	<i>résulter*</i>	to result
<i>monter*</i> (3)	to go up	<i>retomber</i>	to fall again
<i>mourir</i>	to die	<i>retourner</i>	to return
<i>naître</i>	to be born	<i>revenir</i>	to come back
<i>partir*</i>	to set out	<i>sonner*</i> (8)	to ring
<i>parvenir</i>	to attain	<i>sortir*</i> (3)	to go out
<i>passer*</i> (6)	to pass away	<i>survenir</i>	to befall
<i>périr*</i> (7)	to perish	<i>tomber*</i>	to fall
<i>provenir</i>	to come from	<i>venir</i>	to come
<i>rajeunir*</i>	to grow young	<i>vieillir</i>	to grow old
<i>redescendre*</i> (3)	to go down again		

3. *Passive Verbs*, which express an action, which the subject (nominative) of the verb suffers from an agent, which may be expressed by means of a Preposition.

Ex. <i>je suis persécuté</i>	I am persecuted (<i>by</i> somebody.)
<i>ils furent battus par l'en-</i>	} they were beaten by the enemy.
<i>emi</i>	

Passive Verbs consist of the auxiliary verb *être* with the participle past, which must agree in gender and number with the subject.

Ex. <i>ils étaient blessés</i>	they were wounded
<i>elle sera surprise</i>	she will be surprised

(5) *Expirer*, signifying *to die*, takes *avoir*, and *être* when it means *to cease*.

(6) *Passer* is conjugated with *avoir*, when it is followed by *par*, and means, simply *to cross*.

(7) *Être* is used with *périr*, when there is no time alluded to; *avoir*, when *périr* relates to a certain period.

(8) *Sonner* takes *être* when it is intended to establish a certain relation between the ringing and the present tense, or any other mentioned in the sentence.

4. *Pronominal Verbs* are so called in French, because they are always accompanied in the infinitive by the pronoun *se*, and throughout their conjugation by two personal pronouns.

Ex. *se promener*, to walk.

PRESENT. *Je me promène*
tu te promènes
il se promène
nous nous promenons
vous vous promenez
ils se promènent

They are divided into three classes, according to their meaning :

a. *Reflexive Verbs*, which express an action that is reflected upon the subject of the verb. The pronoun *se* in the infinitive is here translated by *one's self*, and the second pronoun in the course of conjugation by *myself*, *thyself*, *himself*, etc.

Ex. *se tromper*, to deceive one's self.

PRESENT.

<i>Je me trompe</i>	I deceive myself
<i>tu te trompes</i>	thou deceivest thyself
<i>il se trompe</i>	he deceives himself
<i>nous nous trompons</i>	we deceive ourselves
<i>vous vous trompez</i>	you deceive yourselves
<i>ils se trompent</i>	they deceive themselves

b. *Reciprocal Verbs*, which express an action that is mutually affecting two or more persons. The pronoun *se* in the infinitive is here translated by *each other* or *one another*, and the second pronoun in the course of conjugation by the same words.

Ex. *s'entr'aimer*, to love each other.

PRESENT.

<i>Nous nous entr'aimons</i>	we love each other
<i>vous vous entr'aimez</i>	you love each other
<i>ils s'entr'aiment</i>	they love each other

c. Pronominal Verbs Proper are such as are peculiar to the French language and are not so used in English. The pronoun *se* in the infinitive, and the second pronoun in the course of conjugation, are here not translated at all, because their use is peculiar to French and not required in English.

Ex. *se lever*, to rise.

PRESENT.

<i>Je me lève</i>	I rise
<i>tu te lèves</i>	thou risest
<i>il se lève</i>	he rises
<i>nous nous levons</i>	we rise
<i>vous vous levez</i>	you rise
<i>ils se lèvent</i>	they rise

All pronominal Verbs are conjugated by means of the auxiliary verb *être*.

5. *Impersonal Verbs*, which express an action performed, not by a person, but by some other agency. They are used only in the third person singular.

Ex. *il pleut*, it rains; *il gèle*, it freezes; *il arrive*, it happens; *il y a*, there is; *il convient*, it is proper.

These various kinds of verbs are conjugated like the regular verbs of the four conjugations, except the numerous class of Pronominal verbs, which require the addition of personal pronouns, and of which therefore, one is here given in full.

SE LEVER

To Rise

(Affirmatively.)

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Se lever

to rise

PAST.

S'être levé

to have risen

PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

Se levant

rising

COMPOUND OF THE PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

<i>S'étant lev é</i>	having risen
----------------------	--------------

PARTICIPLE PAST

<i>Lev é</i>	risen
--------------	-------

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>Je me lèv e</i>	I rise, do rise, <i>or</i> am rising
<i>tu te lèv es</i>	thou risest
<i>il se lèv e</i>	he rises
<i>nous nous lev ons</i>	we rise
<i>vous vous lev ez</i>	you rise
<i>ils se lèv ent</i>	they rise

IMPERFECT.

<i>Je me lev ais</i>	I rose, did rise, <i>or</i> was rising
<i>tu te lev ais</i>	thou rosest
<i>il se lev ait</i>	he rose
<i>nous nous lev ions</i>	we rose
<i>vous vous lev iez</i>	you rose
<i>ils se lev aient</i>	they rose

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

<i>Je me lev ai</i>	I rose <i>or</i> did rise
<i>tu te lev as</i>	thou rosest
<i>il se lev a</i>	he rose
<i>nous nous lev âmes</i>	we rose
<i>vous vous lev âtes</i>	you rose
<i>ils se lev èrent</i>	they rose

FUTURE.

<i>Je me lèv erai</i>	I shall <i>or</i> will rise
<i>tu te lèv eras</i>	thou shalt rise
<i>il se lèv era</i>	he shall rise
<i>nous nous lèv erons</i>	we shall rise
<i>vous vous lèv erez</i>	you shall rise
<i>ils se lèv eront</i>	they shall rise

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>Je me lèverais</i>	{ I should, would, could, or might rise
<i>tu te lèverais</i>	thou shouldst rise
<i>il se lèverait</i>	he should rise
<i>nous nous lèverions</i>	we should rise
<i>vous vous lèveriez</i>	you should rise
<i>ils se lèveraient</i>	they should rise

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

<i>Je me suis levé</i>	{ I have risen, did rise, or have been rising
<i>tu t'es levé</i>	thou hast risen
<i>il s'est levé</i>	he has risen
<i>nous nous sommes levés</i>	we have risen
<i>vous vous êtes levés</i>	you have risen
<i>ils se sont levés</i>	they have risen

PLUPERFECT.

<i>Je m'étais levé</i>	I had risen or had been rising
<i>tu t'étais levé</i>	thou hadst risen
<i>il s'était levé</i>	he had risen
<i>nous nous étions levés</i>	we had risen
<i>vous vous étiez levés</i>	you had risen
<i>ils s'étaient levés</i>	they had risen

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

<i>Je me fus levé</i>	I had risen
<i>tu te fus levé</i>	thou hadst risen
<i>il se fut levé</i>	he had risen
<i>nous nous fûmes levés</i>	we had risen
<i>vous vous fûtes levés</i>	you had risen
<i>ils se furent levés</i>	they had risen

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

<i>Je me serai levé</i>	I shall or will have risen
<i>tu te seras levé</i>	thou shalt have risen
<i>il se sera levé</i>	he shall have risen
<i>nous nous serons levés</i>	we shall have risen

vous vous serez lev és
ils se seront lev és

you shall have risen
they shall have risen

CONDITIONAL PAST.

Je me serais lev é

{ I should, would, could or might,
have risen

tu te serais lev é

thou shouldst have risen

il se serait lev é

he should have risen

nous nous serions lev és

we should have risen

vous vous seriez lev és

you should have risen

ils se metaient lev és

they should have risen

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Que je me lève

that I may rise

que tu te lèves

that thou mayest rise

qu'il se lève

that he may rise

que nous nous lev ions

that we may rise

que vous vous lev iez

that you may rise

qu'ils se lèvent

that they may rise

IMPERFECT.

Que je me lev asse

that I might rise

que tu te lev asses

that thou mightest rise

qu'il se lev ât

that he might rise

que nous nous lev assions

that we might rise

que vous vous lev assiez

that you might rise

qu'ils se lev assent

that they might rise

PAST.

Que je me sois lev é

that I may have risen

que tu te sois lev é

that thou mayest have risen

qu'il se soit lev é

that he may have risen

que nous nous soyons lev és

that we may have risen

que vous vous soyez lev és

that you may have risen

qu'ils se soient lev és

that they may have risen

PLUPERFECT.

Que je me fusse lev é

that I might have risen

que tu te fusses lev é

that thou mightest have risen

qu'il se fût lev é

that he might have risen

que nous nous fussions levés
que vous vous fussiez levés
qu'ils se fussent levés

that we might have risen
 that you might have risen
 that they might have risen

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Lève-toi
qu'il se lève
levons-nous
levez-vous
qu'ils se lèvent

rise [thou]
 let him rise
 let us rise
 rise [you]
 let them rise

SE LEVER

*To Rise**(Negatively.)*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Ne pas se lever

not to rise

PAST.

Ne pas s'être levé

not to have risen

PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

Ne se levant pas

not rising

COMPOUND OF THE PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

Ne s'étant pas levé

not having risen

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Je ne me lève pas

{ I rise not, do not rise, or am not
 { rising

tu ne te lèves pas

thou risest not

il ne se lève pas

he rises not

nous ne nous levons pas

we rise not

vous ne vous levez pas

you rise not

ils ne se lèvent pas

they rise not

IMPERFECT.

Je ne me levais pas

{ I rose not, did not rise, or was not
 { rising

tu ne te levais pas

thou rosest not

<i>il ne se lev ait pas</i>	he rose not
<i>nous ne nous lev ions pas</i>	we rose not
<i>vous ne vous lev iez pas</i>	you rose not
<i>ils ne se lev aient pas</i>	they rose not

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

<i>Je ne me lev ai pas</i>	I rose not <i>or</i> did not rise
<i>tu ne te lev as pas</i>	thou rosest not
<i>il ne se lev a pas</i>	he rose not
<i>nous ne nous lev âmes pas</i>	we rose not
<i>vous ne vous lev âtes pas</i>	you rose not
<i>ils ne se lev èrent pas</i>	they rose not

FUTURE.

<i>Je ne me lèr erai pas</i>	I shall <i>or</i> will not rise
<i>tu ne te lèr eras pas</i>	thou shalt not rise
<i>il ne se lèr era pas</i>	he shall not rise
<i>nous ne nous lèr erons pas</i>	we shall not rise
<i>vous ne vous lèr erez pas</i>	you shall not rise
<i>ils ne se lèr eront pas</i>	they shall not rise

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>Je ne me lèr erais pas</i>	{ I should, would, could, <i>or</i> might not rise
<i>tu ne te lèr erais pas</i>	
<i>il ne se lèr erait pas</i>	thou shouldst not rise
<i>nous ne nous lèr erions pas</i>	he should not rise
<i>vous ne vous lèr eriez pas</i>	we should not rise
<i>ils ne se lèr eraient pas</i>	you should not rise
	they should not rise

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

<i>Je ne me suis pas lev é</i>	{ I have not risen, did not rise, <i>or</i> have not been rising
<i>tu ne t'es pas lev é</i>	
<i>il ne s'est pas lev é</i>	thou hast not risen
<i>nous ne nous sommes pas lev és</i>	he has not risen
<i>vous ne vous êtes pas lev és</i>	we have not risen
<i>ils ne se sont pas lev és</i>	you have not risen
	they have not risen

PLUPERFECT.

<i>Je ne m'étais pas levé</i>	{ I had not risen <i>or</i> had not been
<i>tu ne t'étais pas levé</i>	{ rising
<i>il ne s'était pas levé</i>	thou hadst not risen
<i>nous ne nous étions pas levés</i>	he had not risen
<i>vous ne vous étiez pas levés</i>	we had not risen
<i>ils ne s'étaient pas levés</i>	you had not risen
	they had not risen

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

<i>Je ne me fus pas levé</i>	I had not risen
<i>tu ne te fus pas levé</i>	thou hadst not risen
<i>il ne se fut pas levé</i>	he had not risen
<i>nous ne nous fûmes pas levés</i>	we had not risen
<i>vous ne vous fûtes pas levés</i>	you had not risen
<i>ils ne se furent pas levés</i>	they had not risen

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

<i>Je ne me serai pas levé</i>	I shall <i>or</i> will not have risen
<i>tu ne te seras pas levé</i>	thou shalt not have risen
<i>il ne se sera pas levé</i>	he shall not have risen
<i>nous ne nous serons pas levés</i>	we shall not have risen
<i>vous ne vous serez pas levés</i>	you shall not have risen
<i>ils ne se seront pas levés</i>	they shall not have risen

CONDITIONAL PAST.

<i>Je ne me serais pas levé</i>	{ I should, would, could, <i>or</i> might
<i>tu ne te serais pas levé</i>	{ not have risen
<i>il ne se serait pas levé</i>	thou shouldst not have risen
<i>nous ne nous serions pas levés</i>	he should not have risen
<i>vous ne vous seriez pas levés</i>	we should not have risen
<i>ils ne se seraient pas levés</i>	you should not have risen
	they should not have risen

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>Que je ne me lève pas</i>	that I may not rise
<i>que tu ne te lèves pas</i>	that thou mayest not rise
<i>qu'il ne se lève pas</i>	that he may not rise
<i>que nous ne nous levions pas</i>	that we may not rise

<i>que vous ne vous lev iez pas</i>	that you may not rise
<i>qu'ils ne se lèvent pas</i>	that they may not rise

IMPERFECT.

<i>Que je ne me lev asse pas</i>	that I might not rise
<i>que tu ne te lev asses pas</i>	that thou mightest not rise
<i>qu'il ne se lev ât pas</i>	that he might not rise
<i>que nous ne nous lev assions pas</i>	that we might not rise
<i>que vous ne vous lev assiez pas</i>	that you might not rise
<i>qu'ils ne se lev assent pas</i>	that they might not rise

PAST.

<i>Que je ne me sois pas lev é</i>	that I may not have risen
<i>que tu ne te sois pas lev é</i>	that thou mayest not have risen
<i>qu'il ne se soit pas lev é</i>	that he may not have risen
<i>que nous ne nous soyons pas lev és</i>	that we may not have risen
<i>que vous ne vous soyez pas lev és</i>	that you may not have risen
<i>qu'ils ne se soient pas lev és</i>	that they may not have risen

PLUPERFECT

<i>Que je ne me fusse pas lev é</i>	that I might not have risen
<i>que tu ne te fusses pas lev é</i>	that thou mightest not have risen
<i>qu'il ne se fût pas lev é</i>	that he might not have risen
<i>que nous ne nous fussions pas lev és</i>	that we might not have risen
<i>que vous ne vous fussiez pas lev és</i>	that you might not have risen
<i>qu'ils ne se fussent pas lev és</i>	that they might not have risen

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Ne te lève pas</i>	rise not <i>or</i> do not rise [thou]
<i>qu'il ne se lève pas</i>	let him not rise
<i>ne nous lev ons pas</i>	let us not rise
<i>ne vous lev ez pas</i>	rise not <i>or</i> do not rise [you]
<i>qu'ils ne se lèvent pas</i>	let them not rise

SE LEVER

*To Rise**(Interrogatively.)*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>Me lev é-je</i>	do I rise <i>or</i> am I rising
<i>te lève est-tu</i>	dost thou rise

<i>se lève-t-il</i>	does he rise
<i>nous levons-nous</i>	do we rise
<i>vous levez-vous</i>	do you rise
<i>se lèvent-ils</i>	do they rise

IMPERFECT.

<i>Me levais-je</i>	did I rise <i>or</i> was I rising
<i>te levais-tu</i>	didst thou rise
<i>se levait-il</i>	did he rise
<i>nous levions-nous</i>	did we rise
<i>vous leviez-vous</i>	did you rise
<i>se levaient-ils</i>	did they rise

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

<i>Me levai-je</i>	did I rise
<i>te levastu</i>	didst thou rise
<i>se levait-il</i>	did he rise
<i>nous levâmes-nous</i>	did we rise
<i>vous levâtes-vous</i>	did you rise
<i>se levèrent-ils</i>	did they rise

FUTURE.

<i>Me lèverai-je</i>	shall <i>or</i> will I rise
<i>te lèveras-tu</i>	shalt thou rise
<i>se lèvera-t-il</i>	shall he rise
<i>nous lèverons-nous</i>	shall we rise
<i>vous lèverez-vous</i>	shall you rise
<i>se lèveront-ils</i>	shall they rise

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT

<i>Me lèverais-je</i>	should, would, could, or might I rise
<i>te lèverais-tu</i>	shouldst thou rise
<i>se lèverait-il</i>	should he rise
<i>nous lèverions-nous</i>	should we rise
<i>vous lèveriez-vous</i>	should you rise
<i>se lèveraient-ils</i>	should they rise

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

<i>Me suscitais-je</i>	have I risen or did I rise
<i>t'es-tu levé</i>	hast thou risen

<i>s'est-il lev é</i>	has he risen
<i>nous sommes-nous lev és</i>	have we risen
<i>vous êtes-vous lev és</i>	had you risen
<i>se sont-ils lev és</i>	had they risen

PLUPERFECT

<i>M'étais-je lev é</i>	had I risen <i>or</i> had I been rising
<i>t'étais-tu lev é</i>	hadst thou risen
<i>s'était-il lev é</i>	had he risen
<i>nous étions-nous lev es</i>	had we risen
<i>vous étiez-vous lev és</i>	had you risen
<i>s'étaient-ils lev és</i>	had they risen

PRETERIT ANTERIOR

<i>Me fus-je lev é</i>	had I risen
<i>te fus-tu lev é</i>	hadst thou risen
<i>se fut-il lev é</i>	had he risen
<i>nous fûmes-nous lev és</i>	had we risen
<i>vous fûtes-vous lev és</i>	had you risen
<i>se furent-ils lev és</i>	had they risen

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

<i>Me serai-je lev é</i>	shall <i>or</i> will I have risen
<i>te seras tu lev é</i>	shalt thou have risen
<i>se sera-t-il lev é</i>	- shall he have risen
<i>nous serons-nous lev és</i>	shall we have risen
<i>vous serez-vous lev és</i>	shall you have risen
<i>se seront-ils lev és</i>	shall they have risen

CONDITIONAL PAST.

<i>Me serais-je lev é</i>	{ should, would, could, <i>or</i> might I
	{ have risen
<i>te serais-tu lev é</i>	shouldst thou have risen
<i>se serait-il lev é</i>	should he have risen
<i>nous serions-nous lev és</i>	should we have risen
<i>vous seriez-vous lev és</i>	should you have risen
<i>se seraient-ils lev és</i>	should they have risen

SE LEVER To Rise (*Negatively and Interrogatively.*)

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>Ne me lev é-je pas</i>	do I not rise or am I not rising
<i>ne te lev es-tu pas</i>	dost thou not rise
<i>ne se lev e-t-il pas</i>	does he not rise
<i>ne nous lev ons-nous pas</i>	do we not rise
<i>ne vous lev ez-vous pas</i>	do you not rise
<i>ne se lev ent-ils pas</i>	do they not rise

IMPERFECT.

<i>Ne me lev ais-je pas</i>	did I not rise or was I not rising
<i>ne te lev ais-tu pas</i>	didst thou not rise
<i>ne se lev ait-il pas</i>	did he not rise
<i>ne nous lev ions-nous pas</i>	did we not rise
<i>ne vous lev iez-vous pas</i>	did you not rise
<i>ne se lev aient-ils pas</i>	did they not rise

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

<i>Ne me lev ai-je pas</i>	did I not rise
<i>ne te lev as-tu pas</i>	didst thou not rise
<i>ne se lev a-t-il pas</i>	did he not rise
<i>ne nous lev âmes-nous pas</i>	did we not rise
<i>ne vous lev âtes-vous pas</i>	did you not rise
<i>ne se lev èrent-ils pas</i>	did they not rise

FUTURE.

<i>Ne me lev erai-je pas</i>	shall or will I not rise
<i>ne te lev eras-tu pas</i>	shalt thou not rise
<i>ne se lev era-t-il pas</i>	shall he not rise
<i>ne nous lev erons-nous pas</i>	shall we not rise
<i>ne vous lev erez-vous pas</i>	shall you not rise
<i>ne se lev eront-ils pas</i>	shall they not rise

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>Ne me lev erais-je pas</i>	{ should, would, could, or might I
	{ not rise
<i>ne te lev erais-tu pas</i>	shouldst thou not rise

<i>ne se lèverait-il pas</i>	should he not rise
<i>ne nous lèverions-nous pas</i>	should we not rise
<i>ne vous lèveriez-vous pas</i>	should you not rise
<i>ne se lèveraient-ils pas</i>	should they not rise

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

<i>Ne me suis-je pas levé</i>	{ have I not risen, did I not rise, <i>or</i> have I not been rising
<i>ne t'es-tu pas levé</i>	hast thou not risen
<i>ne s'est-il pas levé</i>	has he not risen
<i>ne nous sommes-nous pas levés</i>	have we not risen
<i>ne vous êtes-vous pas levés</i>	have you not risen
<i>ne se sont-ils pas levés</i>	have they not risen

PLUPERFECT.

<i>Ne m'étais-je pas levé</i>	{ had I not risen <i>or</i> had I not been rising
<i>ne t'étais-tu pas levé</i>	hadst thou not risen
<i>ne s'était-il pas levé</i>	had he not risen
<i>ne nous étions-nous pas levés</i>	had we not risen
<i>ne vous étiez-vous pas levés</i>	had you not risen
<i>ne s'étaient-ils pas levés</i>	had they not risen

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

<i>Ne me fus-je pas levé</i>	had I not risen
<i>ne te fus-tu pas levé</i>	hadst thou not risen
<i>ne se fut-il pas levé</i>	had he not risen
<i>ne nous fûmes-nous pas levés</i>	had we not risen
<i>ne vous fûtes-vous pas levés</i>	had you not risen
<i>ne se furent-ils pas levés</i>	had they not risen

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

<i>Ne me serai-je pas levé</i>	shall <i>or</i> will I not have risen
<i>ne te seras-tu pas levé</i>	shalt thou not have risen
<i>ne se sera-t-il pas levé</i>	shall he not have risen
<i>ne nous serons-nous pas levés</i>	shall we not have risen
<i>ne vous serez-vous pas levés</i>	shall you not have risen
<i>ne se seront-ils pas levés</i>	shall they not have risen

CONDITIONAL PAST.

<i>Ne me serais-je pas levé</i>	{ should, would, could, or might I not have risen
<i>ne te serais-tu pas levé</i>	shouldst thou not have risen
<i>ne se serait-il pas levé</i>	should he not have risen
<i>ne nous serions-nous pas levés</i>	should we not have risen
<i>ne vous seriez-vous pas levés</i>	should you not have risen
<i>ne se seraient-ils pas levés</i>	should they not have risen

For the purpose of practising Pronominal Verbs, *s'en aller*, which contains the pronoun *en*, is here added.

CONJUGATION OF THE VERB *S'EN ALLER*.

S'EN ALLER *To Go Away* (*Affirmatively.*)

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

S'en aller to go away

PAST.

S'en être allé to have gone away

PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

S'en allant going away

COMPOUND OF THE PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

S'en étant allé having gone away

PARTICIPLE PAST.

En allé gone away

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>Je m'en vais</i>	{ I go away, do go away, or am going
<i>tu t'en vas</i>	{ away
<i>il s'en va</i>	thou goest away
<i>il s'en va</i>	he goes away
<i>nous nous en allons</i>	we go away
<i>vous vous en allez</i>	you go away
<i>ils s'en vont</i>	they go away

IMPERFECT.

Je m'en allais{ I went away, did go away, or was
going away*tu t'en allais*

thou wentest away

il s'en allait

he went away

nous nous en allions

we went away

vous vous en alliez

you went away

ils s'en allaient

they went away

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Je m'en allai

I went away or did go away

tu t'en allas

thou wentest away

il s'en alla

he went away

nous nous en allâmes

we went away

vous vous en allâtes

you went away

ils s'en allèrent

they went away

FUTURE.

Je m'en irai

I shall or will go away

tu t'en iras

thou shalt go away

il s'en ira

he shall go away

nous nous en irons

we shall go away

vous vous en irez

you shall go away

ils s'en iront

they shall go away

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

Je m'en irais{ I should, would, could, or might
go away*tu t'en irais*

thou shouldst go away

il s'en irait

he should go away

nous nous en irions

we should go away

vous vous en iriez

you should go away

ils s'en metaient

they should go away

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

Je m'en suis allé{ I went away, did go away, or have
gone away*tu t'en es allé*

thou hast gone away

il s'en est allé

he has gone away

<i>nous nous en sommes allés</i>	we have gone away
<i>vous vous en êtes allés</i>	you have gone away
<i>ils s'en sont allés</i>	they have gone away

PLUPERFECT.

<i>Je m'en étais allé</i>	I had gone away
<i>tu t'en étais allé</i>	thou hadst gone away
<i>il s'en était allé</i>	he had gone away
<i>nous nous en étions allés</i>	we had gone away
<i>vous vous en étiez allés</i>	you had gone away
<i>ils s'en étaient allés</i>	they had gone away

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

<i>Je m'en fus allé</i>	I had gone away
<i>tu t'en fus allé</i>	thou hadst gone away
<i>il s'en fut allé</i>	he had gone away
<i>nous nous en fûmes allés.</i>	we had gone away
<i>vous vous en fûtes allés</i>	you had gone away
<i>ils s'en furent allés</i>	they had gone away

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

<i>Je m'en serai allé</i>	I shall or will have gone away
<i>tu t'en seras allé</i>	thou shalt have gone away
<i>il s'en sera allé</i>	he shall have gone away
<i>nous nous en serons allés</i>	we shall have gone away
<i>vous vous en serez allés</i>	you shall have gone away
<i>ils s'en seront allés</i>	they shall have gone away

CONDITIONAL PAST.

<i>Je m'en serais allé</i>	{ I should, would, could, or might
<i>tu t'en serais allé</i>	{ have gone away
<i>il s'en serait allé</i>	thou shouldst have gone away
<i>nous nous en serions allés</i>	he should have gone away
<i>vous vous en seriez allés</i>	we should have gone away
<i>ils s'en seraient allés</i>	you should have gone away
	they should have gone away

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>Que je m'en aille</i>	that I may go away
<i>que tu t'en ailles</i>	that thou mayest go away

qu'il s'en aille
que nous nous en allions
que vous vous en alliez
qu'ils s'en aillent

that he may go away
 that we may go away
 that you may go away
 that they may go away

IMPERFECT.

Que je m'en allasse
que tu t'en allasses
qu'il s'en allât
que nous nous en allassions
que vous vous en allassiez
qu'ils s'en allassent

that I might go away
 that thou mightest go away
 that he might go away
 that we might go away
 that you might go away
 that they might go away

PAST.

Que je m'en sois allé
que tu t'en sois allé
qu'il s'en soit allé
que nous nous en soyons allés
que vous vous en soyez allés
qu'ils s'en soient allés

that I may have gone away
 that thou mayest have gone away
 that he may have gone away
 that we may have gone away
 that you may have gone away
 that they may have gone away

PLUPERFECT.

Que je m'en fusse allé
que tu t'en fusses allé
qu'il s'en fût allé
que nous nous en fussions allés
que vous vous en fussiez allés
qu'ils s'en fussent allés

that I might have gone away
 that thou mightest have gone away
 that he might have gone away
 that we might have gone away
 that you might have gone away
 that they might have gone away

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Va-t'en
qu'il s'en aille
allons-nous-en
allez-vous-en
qu'ils s'en aillent

go away [thou]
 let him go away
 let us go away
 go away [you]
 let them go away

S'EN ALLER

To Go Away (Negatively.)

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Ne pas s'en aller

not to go away

PAST.

Ne pas s'en être allé

not to have gone away

PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

Ne s'en allant pas

not going away

COMPOUND OF THE PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

Ne s'en étant pas allé

not having gone away

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Je ne m'en vais pas{ I do not go away *or* am not going
away*tu ne t'en vas pas*

thou dost not go away

il ne s'en va pas

he does not go away

nous ne nous en allons pas

we do not go away

vous ne vous en allez pas

you do not go away

ils ne s'en vont pas

they do not go away

IMPERFECT.

Je ne m'en allais pas{ I did not go away *or* was not going
away*tu ne t'en allais pas*

thou didst not go away

il ne s'en allait pas

he did not go away

nous ne nous en allions pas

we did not go away

vous ne vous en alliez pas

you did not go away

ils ne s'en allaient pas

they did not go away

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Je ne m'en allai pas

I did not go away

tu ne t'en allas pas

thou didst not go away

il ne s'en alla pas

he did not go away

nous ne nous en allâmes pas

we did not go away

vous ne vous en allâtes pas

you did not go away

ils ne s'en allèrent pas

they did not go away

FUTURE.

Je ne m'en irai pas
tu ne t'en iras pas
il ne s'en ira pas
nous ne nous en irons pas
vous ne vous en irez pas
ils ne s'en iront pas

I shall *or* will not go away
 thou shalt not go away
 he shall not go away
 we shall not go away
 you shall not go away
 they shall not go away

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

Je ne m'en irais pas
tu ne t'en irais pas
il ne s'en irait pas
nous ne nous en irions pas
vous ne vous en iriez pas
ils ne s'en iraient pas

{ I should, would, could, *or* might
 { not go away
 thou shouldst not go away
 he should not go away
 we should not go away
 you should not go away
 they should not go away

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

Je ne m'en suis pas allé
tu ne t'en es pas allé
il ne s'en est pas allé
nous ne nous en sommes pas allés
vous ne vous en êtes pas allés
ils ne s'en sont pas allés

{ I did not go away *or* have not gone
 { away
 thou hast not gone away
 he has not gone away
 we have not gone away
 you have not gone away
 they have not gone away

PLUPERFECT.

Je ne m'en étais pas allé
tu ne t'en étais pas allé
il ne s'en était pas allé
nous ne nous en étions pas allés
vous ne vous en étiez pas allés
ils ne s'en étaient pas allés

I had not gone away
 thou hadst not gone away
 he had not gone away
 we had not gone away
 you had not gone away
 they had not gone away

PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

Je ne m'en fus pas allé
tu ne t'en fus pas allé
il ne s'en fut pas allé
nous ne nous en fûmes pas allés

I had not gone away
 thou hadst not gone away
 he had not gone away
 we had not gone away

vous ne vous en fûtes pas allés
ils ne s'en furent pas allés

you had not gone away
 they had not gone away

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Je ne m'en serai pas allé
tu ne t'en seras pas allé
il ne s'en sera pas allé
nous ne nous en serons pas allés
vous ne vous en serez pas allés
ils ne s'en seront pas allés

I shall or will not have gone away
 thou shalt not have gone away
 he shall not have gone away
 we shall not have gone away
 you shall not have gone away
 they shall not have gone away

CONDITIONAL PAST.

Je ne m'en serais pas allé
tu ne t'en serais pas allé
il ne s'en serait pas allé
nous ne nous en serions pas allés
vous ne vous en seriez pas allés
ils ne s'en seraient pas allés

I should, would, could, or might
 not have gone away
 thou shouldst not have gone away
 he should not have gone away
 we should not have gone away
 you should not have gone away
 they should not have gone away

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Que je ne m'en aille pas
que tu ne t'en ailles pas
qu'il ne s'en aille pas
que nous ne nous en allions pas
que vous ne vous en alliez pas
qu'ils ne s'en aillent pas

that I may not go away
 that thou mayest not go away
 that he may not go away
 that we may not go away
 that you may not go away
 that they may not go away

IMPERFECT.

Que je ne m'en allasse pas
que tu ne t'en allasses pas
qu'il ne s'en allât pas
que nous ne nous en allassions pas
que vous ne vous en allassiez pas
qu'ils ne s'en allassent pas

that I might not go away
 that thou mightest not go away
 that he might not go away
 that we might not go away
 that you might not go away
 that they might not go away

PAST.

Que je ne m'en sois pas allé
que tu ne t'en sois pas allé
qu'il ne s'en soit pas allé

that I may not have gone away
 that thou mayest not have gone away
 that he may not have gone away

que nous ne nous en soyons pas allés that we may not have gone away
que vous ne vous en soyez pas allés that you may not have gone away
qu'ils ne s'en soient pas allés that they may not have gone away

PLUPERFECT.

Que je ne m'en fusse pas allé that I might not have gone away
que tu ne t'en fusses pas allé { that thou mightest not have gone
 away
qu'il ne s'en fût pas allé that he might not have gone away
que nous ne nous en fussions pas allés { that we might not have gone away
 allés
que vous ne vous en fussiez pas allés that you might not have gone away
qu'ils ne s'en fussent pas allés that they might not have gone away

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Ne t'en va pas do not go away [thou]
qu'il ne s'en aille pas let him not go away
ne nous en allons pas let us not go away
ne vous en allez pas do not go away [you]
qu'ils ne s'en aillent pas let them not go away

IRREGULAR VERBS.

Irregular Verbs are those which differ in their conjugation from the models which have been given heretofore, and which regulate those that are called *Regular Verbs*. The difference can, of course, only apply to the simple tenses, as the compound tenses of all verbs are made alike.

Various methods have been attempted to arrange the very considerable number of *Irregular Verbs* in certain classes, but experience has proven that after all the student benefits more by learning them singly, as he will soon obtain a sufficient knowledge of the nature of the irregularities to feel where to expect them, and to know what they are likely to be.

The principal *Irregular Verbs* are given here, omitting those that are of rare use, and with the understanding that derivatives follow the irregularities of those verbs, from which they are derived.

I.—FIRST CONJUGATION.

ALLER

To Go

INF. Aller

PART. PRES. allant

PART. PAST, allé

PRESENT.

Je vais

tu vas

il va

nous allons

vous allez

ils vont

IMPERFECT.

J'allais

tu allais

il allait

nous allions

vous alliez

ils allaient

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

J'allai

tu allas

il alla

nous allâmes

vous allâtes

ils allèrent

FUTURE.

J'irai

tu iras

il ira

nous irons

vous irez

ils iront

CONDITIONAL.

J'irais

tu irais

il irait

nous irions

vous iriez

ils iraient

IMPERATIVE.

allons

va

qu'il aille

allez

qu'ils aillent

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

Que j'aile

que tu ailles

qu'il aille

que nous allions

que vous alliez

qu'ils aillent

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

Que j'allasse

que tu allasses

qu'il allât

que nous allussions

que vous allassiez

qu'ils allassent

ENVOYER

To Send

INF. Envoyer

PART. PRES. Envoyant

PART. PAST, Envoyé

PRESENT.

J'envoie

tu envoies

il envoie

nous envoyons

vous envoyez

ils envoient

IMPERFECT.

J'envoyais	tu envoyais	il envoyait
nous envoyions	vous envoyiez	ils envoyaient

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

J'envoyai	tu envoyas	il envoya
nous envoyâmes	vous envoyâtes	ils envoyèrent

FUTURE.

J'enverrai	tu enverras	il enverra
nous enverrons	vous enverrez	ils enverront

CONDITIONAL.

J'enverrais	tu enverrais	il enverrait
nous enverrions	vous enverriez	ils enverraient

IMPERATIVE.

	envoie	qu'il envoie
envoyons	envoyez	qu'ils envoient

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

Que j'envoie	que tu envoies	qu'il envoie
que nous envoyions	que vous envoyiez	qu'ils envoient

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

Que j'envoyasse	que tu envoyasses	qu'il envoyât
que nous envoyassions	que vous envoyassiez	qu'ils envoyassent

Conjugate after the same manner, *renvoyer*, to send back.

The compound tenses are conjugated with *Avoir*, to have.

II.—SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACQUÉRIR

To Acquire.

INF. Acquérir	PART. PRES. Acquérant	PART. PAST, Acquis
---------------	-----------------------	--------------------

PRESENT.

J'acquiers	tu acquiers	il acquiert
nous acquérons	vous acquérez	ils acquièrent

IMPERFECT.

J'acquérais	tu acquérais	il acquérait
nous acquérions	vous acquériez	ils acquéraient

PRÆTERIT DEFINITE.

J'acquis	tu acquis	il acquit
nous acquimes	vous acquites	ils acquirent

FUTURE.

J'acquerrai	tu acquerras	il acquerra
nous acquerrons	vous acquerez	ils acquerront

CONDITIONAL.

J'acquerrais	tu acquerrais	il acquerrait
nous acquerrions	vous acqueriez	ils acquerraient

IMPERATIVE.

	acquires	qu'il acquière
acquérons	acquérez	qu'ils acquièrent

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

Que j'acquière	que tu acquières	qu'il acquière
que nous acquérions	que vous acquériez	qu'ils acquièrent

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

Que j'acquisse	que tu acquisses	qu'il acquit
que nous acquissions	que vous acquissiez	qu'ils acquissent

The compound tenses are conjugated with *Avoir*, to have.

Conjugate after the same manner :

<i>Requérir</i> , to require	<i>S'enquérir</i> , to inquire
<i>Conquérir</i> , to conquer	<i>Quérir</i> , to fetch
<i>Reconquérir</i> , to conquer again.	

Conquérir, to conquer, (defective) only used in the present of the infinitive, in the præterit definite, in the imperfect of the subjunctive, and in the compound tenses.

S'enquérir, to inquire, (defective) very little used, except in the present of the infinitive, and in the compound tenses.

ASSAILLIR

To Assault

INF. Assaillir	PART. PRES. Assaillant	PART. PAST. Assailli
----------------	------------------------	----------------------

PRESENT.

J'assaille	tu assailles	il assaille
nous assaillons	vous assailez	ils assaillent

IMPERFECT.

J'assaillais	tu assaillais	il assaillait
nous assaillions	vous assailliez	ils assaillaient

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

J'assaillis	tu assaillis	il assaillit
nous assaillîmes	vous assaillîtes	ils assaillirent

FUTURE.

J'assaillirai	tu assailliras	il assaillira
nous assaillirons	vous assaillirez	ils assailliront

CONDITIONAL.

J'assaillirais	tu assaillirais	il assaillirait
nous assaillirions	vous assailliriez	ils assailliraient

IMPERATIVE.

	assaille	qu'il assaille
assaillons	assaillez	qu'ils assaillent

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

Que j'assaille	que tu assailles	qu'il assaille
que nous assaillions	que vous assailliez	qu'ils assaillent

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

Que j'assaillisse	que tu assaillisses	qu'il assaillît
que nous assaillions	que vous assaillissiez	qu'ils assaillissent

Conjugate after the same manner, *tressaillir*, to start.

The compound tenses are conjugated with *Avoir*, to have.

BOUILLIR

To Boil

INF. Bouillir	PART. PRES. Bouillant	PART. PAST. Bouilli
---------------	-----------------------	---------------------

PRESENT.

Je bous	tu bous	il bout
nous bouillons	vous bouillez	ils bouillent

IMPERFECT.

Je bouillais	tu bouillais	il bouillait
nous bouillions	vous bouilliez	ils bouillaient

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Je bouillis	tu bouillis	il bouillit
nous bouillîmes	vous bouillîtes	ils bouillirent

FUTURE.

Je bouillirai	tu bouilliras	il bouillira
nous bouillirons	vous bouillirez	ils bouilliront

CONDITIONAL.

Je bouillirais	tu bouillirais	il bouillirait
nous bouillirions	vous bouilliriez	ils bouilliraient

IMPERATIVE.

	bous	qu'il bouille
bouillons	bouillez	qu'ils bouillent

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

Que je bouille	que tu bouilles	qu'il bouille
que nous bouillions	que vous bouilliez	qu'ils bouillent

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

Que je bouillisse	que tu bouillisses	qu'il bouillit
que nous bouillions	que vous bouillissiez	qu'ils bouillissent

Conjugate after the same manner, *bouillir*, to boil away ; *rebouillir* to boil again.

The compound tenses are conjugated with *Avoir*, to have.

COURIR

To Run

INF. Courir	PART. PRES. Courant	PART. PAST. Couru
-------------	---------------------	-------------------

PRESENT

Je cours	tu cours	il court
nous courons	vous courez	ils courent

IMPERFECT.

Je courais	tu courais	il courait
nous courions	vous couriez	ils couraient

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

Je courus	tu courus	il courut
nous courûmes	vous courûtes	ils coururent

FUTURE.

Je courrai	tu courras	il courra
nous courrons	vous courrez	ils courront

CONDITIONAL.

Je courrais	tu courrais	il courrait
nous courrions	vous courriez	ils courraient

IMPERATIVE.

	cours	qu'il coure
courons	courez	qu'ils courent

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

Que je coure	que tu coures	qu'il coure
que nous courions	que vous couriez	qu'ils courent

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

Que je courusse	que tu courusses	qu'il courût
que nous courussions	que vous courussiez	qu'ils courussent

Conjugate after the same manner :

<i>Accourir,</i>	to run to.	<i>Encourir,</i>	to incur.
<i>Concourir,</i>	to concur.	<i>Parcourir,</i>	to run over.
<i>Discourir,</i>	to discourse.	<i>Recourir,</i>	to have recourse.
<i>Secourir,</i> to succor, to help.			

The compound tenses of the above verbs are conjugated with *Avoir*, to have ; those of *accourir*, to run to, are also sometimes conjugated with *Etre*, to be.

CUEILLIR

To Gather

INF. Cueillir	PART. PRES. Cueillant	PART. PAST, Cueilli
---------------	-----------------------	---------------------

PRESENT.

Je cueille	tu cueilles	il cueille
nous cueillons	vous cueillez	ils cueillent

IMPERFECT.

Je cueillais	tu cueillais	il cueillait
nous cueillions	vous cueilliez	ils cueillaient

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Je cueillis	tu cueillis	il cueillit
nous cueillîmes	vous cueillîtes	ils cueillirent

FUTURE.

Je cueillerai	tu cueilleras	il cueillera
nous cueillerons	vous cueillerez	ils cueilleront

CONDITIONAL.

Je cueillerais	tu cueillerais	il cueillerait
nous cueillerions	vous cueilleriez	ils cueilleraient

IMPERATIVE.

	cueille	qu'il cueille
cueillons	cueillez	qu'ils cueillent

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

Que je cueille	que tu cueilles	qu'il cueille
que nous cueillions	que vous cueilliez	qu'ils cueillent

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

Que je cueillisse	que tu cueillisses	qu'il cueillit
que nous cueillions	que vous cueillissiez	qu'ils cueillissent

The compound tenses are conjugated with *Avoir*, to have.

Conjugate after the same manner :

Accueillir, to welcome. *Recueillir*, to gather, to reap.

DORMIR

To Sleep.

INF. Dormir	PART. PRES. Dormant	PART. PAST, Dormi
-------------	---------------------	-------------------

PRESENT.

Je dors	tu dors	il dort
nous dormons	vous dormez	ils dorment

IMPERFECT.

Je dormais	tu dormais	il dormait
nous dormions	vous dormiez	ils dormaient

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Je dormis	tu dormis	il dormit
nous dormîmes	vous dormîtes	ils dormirent

FUTURE.

Je dormirai	tu dormiras	il dormira
nous dormirons	vous dormirez	ils dormiront

CONDITIONAL.

Je dormirais	tu dormirais	il dormirait
nous dormirions	vous dormiriez	ils dormiraient

IMPERATIVE.

dormons	dors	qu'il dorme
	dormez	qu'ils dorment

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

que je dorme	que tu dormes	qu'il dorme
que nous dormions	que vous dormiez	qu'ils dorment

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

Que je dormisse	que tu dormisses	qu'il dormît
que nous dormissions	que vous dormissiez	qu'ils dormissent

The compound tenses are conjugated with *Avoir*, to have.

Conjugate after the same manner :

<i>Endormir</i> ,	to lull asleep.	<i>Redormir</i> ,	to sleep again.
<i>S'endormir</i> ,	to fall asleep.	<i>Se rendormir</i> ,	to fall asleep again.

The compound tenses of *s'endormir*, and *se rendormir*, are conjugated with *Etre*, to be, as all pronominal verbs are.

FAILLIR

To Fail.

INF. Faillir	PART. PRES. Faillant	PART. PAST, Failli
--------------	----------------------	--------------------

PRESENT.

Je faillis	tu faillis	il faillit
nous faillîmes	vous faillîtes	ils faillirent

This verb is defective, and only used in the above tenses, and in all the compound tenses, which are conjugated with *Avoir*, to have.

FLEURIR

To blossom, to flourish.

This verb is regular and conjugated like *finir*, when speaking of plants and flowers ; but when speaking of the prosperity of a kingdom, or of a town, the participle present is *florissant*, and the imperfect of the indicative, *je florissais*, *tu florissais*, etc.

Refleurir, to blossom, or to flourish again, follows the same rule.

FUIR

To Fly.

INF. Fuir

PART. PRES. Fuyant

PART. PAST, Ful

PRESENT.

Je fuis
nous fuyonstu fuis
vous fuyezil fuit
ils fuient

IMPERFECT.

Je fuyais
nous fuyionstu fuyais
vous fuyiezil fuyait
ils fuyaient

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Je fuis
nous fuimestu fuis
vous fûtesil fuit
ils fuirent

FUTURE.

Je fuirai
nous fuironstu fuiras
vous fuirezil fuira
ils fuiront

CONDITIONAL.

Je fuirais
nous fuirionstu fuirais
vous fuiriezil fuirait
ils fuiraient

IMPERATIVE.

fuyons

fuis
fuyezqu'il fuie
qu'ils fuient

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

Que je fuie
que nous fuyionsque tu fuies
que vous fuyiezqu'il fuie
qu'ils fuient

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

Que je fusse
que nous fuissionsque tu fusses
que vous fussiezqu'il fût
qu'ils fussent

The compound tenses are conjugated with *Avoir*, to have.
Conjugate after the same manner, *s'enfuir*, to run away.

GÉSIR

To Lie

This verb (defective), which formerly signified to be lying down, is no longer in use ; we, however, say sometimes, *il gît : ci-gît*, here lies, is the common form by which an epitaph begins.

HAIR

To Hate

This verb is regular, and conjugated like *finir*, except in the first three persons singular of the present of the indicative, *je hais*, I hate; *tu hais*, thou hatest; *il hait*, he hates; and in the second person singular of the imperative, *hais*, hate.

A diæresis (·) is required over the *i* in all tenses and persons except in those above-mentioned; this diæresis is to cause the *a* and *i* to be pronounced as two syllables.

MOURIR

To Die.

INF. Mourir

PART. PRES. Mourant PART. PAST, Mort

PRESENT.

Je meurs

tu meurs

il meurt

nous mourons

vous mourez

ils meurent

IMPERFECT.

Je mourais

tu mourais

il mourait

nous mourions

vous mouriez

ils mouraient

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Je mourus

tu mourus

il mourut

nous mourûmes

vous mourûtes

ils moururent

FUTURE.

Je mourrai

tu mourras

il mourra

nous mourrons

vous mourrez

ils mourront

CONDITIONAL.

Je mourrais

tu mourrais

il mourrait

nous mourrions

vous mourriez

ils mourraient

IMPERATIVE.

meurs
mouronsmeurs
mourezqu'il meure
qu'il meurent

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

Que je meure

que tu meures

qu'il meure

que nous mourions

que vous mouriez

qu'ils meurent

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

Que je mourusse	que tu mourusses	qu'il mourût
que nous mourussions	que vous mourussiez	qu'ils mourussent

The compound tenses are conjugated with *Etre*, to be.

Conjugate after the same manner, *se mourir*, to be dying.

OUIR To Hear.

This verb (defective) can only be used in the present of the infinitive, *ouïr*, to hear; in the preterit definite, *j'ouïs*, I heard; *il ouït*, he heard; in the imperfect of the subjunctive, *que j'ouïsse*, that I might hear; *qu'il ouît*, that he might hear; and in its compound tenses, which are formed with the simple tenses of *Avoir*, to have, and its past participle *ouï*, as *j'ai ouï*, *tu as ouï*, etc.

OUVRIR To Open.

INF. Ouvrir	PART. PRES. Ouvrant	PART. PAST. Ouvert
-------------	---------------------	--------------------

PRESENT.

J'ouv <i>re</i>	tu ouv <i>res</i>	il ouv <i>re</i>
nous ouv <i>rons</i>	vous ouv <i>rez</i>	ils ouv <i>rent</i>

IMPERFECT.

J'ouv <i>rais</i>	tu ouv <i>rais</i>	il ouv <i>rait</i>
nous ouv <i>riens</i>	vous ouv <i>riez</i>	ils ouv <i>raient</i>

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

J'ouv <i>ris</i>	tu ouv <i>ris</i>	il ouv <i>rit</i>
nous ouv <i>rîmes</i>	vous ouv <i>rîtes</i>	ils ouv <i>rirent</i>

FUTURE.

J'ouv <i>rirai</i>	tu ouv <i>riras</i>	il ouv <i>rira</i>
nous ouv <i>rirons</i>	vous ouv <i>rirez</i>	ils ouv <i>riront</i>

CONDITIONAL.

J'ouv <i>rirais</i>	tu ouv <i>rirais</i>	il ouv <i>rirait</i>
nous ouv <i>ririons</i>	vous ouv <i>ririez</i>	ils ouv <i>riraient</i>

IMPERATIVE.

	ouv <i>re</i>	qu'il ouv <i>re</i>
ouv <i>rons</i>	ouv <i>rez</i>	qu'ils ouv <i>rent</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

Que j'ouv <i>re</i>	que tu ouv <i>res</i>	qu'il ouv <i>re</i>
que nous ouv <i>riens</i>	que vous ouv <i>riez</i>	qu'ils ouv <i>rent</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

Que j'ouv <i>risse</i>	que tu ouv <i>risse</i> s	qu'il ouv <i>rît</i>
que nous ouv <i>rissons</i>	que vous ouv <i>rissez</i>	qu'ils ouv <i>risse</i> nt

Compound tenses are conjugated with *Avoir*, to have.

Conjugate after the same manner :

<i>Rouvrir</i> ,	to open again.	<i>Découvrir</i> ,	to discover.
<i>Entr'ouvrir</i> ,	to half open.	<i>Offrir</i> ,	to offer.
<i>Couvrir</i> ,	to cover.	<i>Misoffrir</i> ,	to underbid.
<i>Recouvrir</i> ,	to cover again.	<i>Souffrir</i> ,	to suffer.

SENTIR

To Feel.

INF. <i>Sen tir</i>	PART. PRES. <i>Sen tant</i>	PART. PAST, <i>Sen ti</i>
---------------------	-----------------------------	---------------------------

PRESENT.

Je sen <i>s</i>	tu sen <i>s</i>	il sen <i>t</i>
nous sen <i>tons</i>	vous sen <i>tez</i>	ils sen <i>tent</i>

IMPERFECT.

Je sen <i>tais</i>	tu sen <i>tais</i>	il sen <i>tait</i>
nous sen <i>tions</i>	vous sen <i>tiez</i>	ils sen <i>taient</i>

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Je sen <i>tis</i>	tu sen <i>tis</i>	il sen <i>tit</i>
nous sen <i>tîmes</i>	vous sen <i>tîtes</i>	ils sen <i>tirent</i>

FUTURE.

Je sen <i>tirai</i>	tu sen <i>tiras</i>	il sen <i>tira</i>
nous sen <i>tirons</i>	vous sen <i>tirez</i>	ils sen <i>tiront</i>

CONDITIONAL.

Je sen <i>tirais</i>	tu sen <i>tirais</i>	il sen <i>tirait</i>
nous sen <i>tirions</i>	vous sen <i>tiriez</i>	ils sen <i>tiraient</i>

IMPERATIVE.

	sen <i>s</i>	qu'il sen <i>te</i>
sent <i>tons</i>	sen <i>tez</i>	qu'ils sen <i>tent</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

Que je <i>sen te</i>	que tu <i>sen tes</i>	qu'il <i>sen te</i>
que nous <i>sen tions</i>	que vous <i>sen tiez</i>	qu'ils <i>sen tent</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

Que je <i>sen tisse</i>	que tu <i>sen tisses</i>	qu'ils <i>sen tît</i>
que nous <i>sen tissions</i>	que vous <i>sen tissiez</i>	qu'ils <i>sen tissent</i>

The compound tenses are conjugated with *Avoir*, to have.

Conjugate after the same manner :

<i>Consentir</i> , to consent, to agree.	<i>Repartir</i> , to reply.
<i>Pressentir</i> , to foresee.	<i>Se ressentir</i> , to feel still.
<i>Ressentir</i> , to resent, to feel still.	<i>Se repentir</i> , to repent.
<i>Mentir</i> , to lie.	<i>Partir</i> , to set out.
<i>Démentir</i> , { to give the lie, to be-	<i>Repartir</i> , to set out again.
lie, to contradict.	<i>Sortir</i> , to go out.
<i>Ressortir</i> , to go out again.	

The compound tenses of the first six of the above verbs, are conjugated with *Avoir*, to have.

Those of *se ressentir* and *se repentir*, as all pronominal verbs, are conjugated with *Etre*, to be ; and those of *partir*, *repartir*, *sortir*, and *ressortir*, sometimes with *Avoir*, sometimes with *Etre*.

SERVIR

To Serve.

INF. <i>Ser vir</i>	PART. PRES. <i>Servant</i>	PART. PAST, <i>Servi</i>
---------------------	----------------------------	--------------------------

PRESENT.

Je <i>ser s</i>	tu <i>ser s</i>	il <i>ser t</i>
nous <i>ser vons</i>	vous <i>ser vez</i>	ils <i>ser vent</i>

IMPERFECT.

Je <i>ser rais</i>	tu <i>ser rais</i>	il <i>ser rait</i>
nous <i>ser vions</i>	vous <i>ser riez</i>	ils <i>ser vaient</i>

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Je <i>ser vis</i>	tu <i>ser vis</i>	il <i>ser rit</i>
nous <i>ser vîmes</i>	vous <i>ser vîtes</i>	ils <i>ser rirent</i>

FUTURE.

Je ser <i>virai</i>	tu ser <i>viras</i>	il ser <i>vira</i>
nous ser <i>virons</i>	vous ser <i>vierez</i>	ils ser <i>viront</i>

CONDITIONAL.

Je ser <i>virais</i>	tu ser <i>virais</i>	il ser <i>virait</i>
nous ser <i>virions</i>	vous ser <i>viriez</i>	ils ser <i>viraient</i>

IMPERATIVE.

	ser <i>s</i>	qu'il ser <i>ve</i>
ser <i>vous</i>	ser <i>vez</i>	qu'ils ser <i>vent</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

Que je ser <i>ve</i>	que tu ser <i>ves</i>	qu'il ser <i>ve</i>
que nous ser <i>vions</i>	que vous ser <i>viez</i>	qu'ils ser <i>vent</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

Que je ser <i>visse</i>	que tu ser <i>visses</i>	qu'il ser <i>vît</i>
que nous ser <i>vissions</i>	que vous ser <i>vissiez</i>	qu'ils ser <i>vissent</i>

Conjugate after the same manner:

Desservir, to clear the table, to do an ill office to somebody.

Se servir, to make use, to use.

The compound tenses of *servir* and *desservir*, are conjugated with *Avoir*; those of *se servir*, with *Etre*.

Asservir, to subject, is regular, and conjugated like *finir*.

TENIR

To Hold.

INF. T <i>enir</i>	PART. PRES. T <i>enant</i>	PART. PAST, T <i>enu</i>
--------------------	----------------------------	--------------------------

PRESENT.

Je <i>tiens</i>	tu <i>tiens</i>	il <i>tient</i>
nous <i>tenons</i>	vous <i>tenez</i>	ils <i>tiennent</i>

IMPERFECT.

Je <i>tenais</i>	tu <i>tenais</i>	il <i>tenait</i>
nous <i>tenions</i>	vous <i>teniez</i>	ils <i>tenaient</i>

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Je <i>tins</i>	tu <i>tins</i>	il <i>tint</i>
nous <i>tînmes</i>	vous <i>tîntes</i>	ils <i>tinrent</i>

FUTURE.

<i>Je tiendrai</i>	<i>tu tiendras</i>	<i>il tiendra</i>
<i>nous tiendrons</i>	<i>vous tiendrez</i>	<i>ils tiendront</i>

CONDITIONAL.

<i>Je tiendrais</i>	<i>tu tiendrais</i>	<i>il tiendrait</i>
<i>nous tiendrions</i>	<i>vous tiendriez</i>	<i>ils tiendraient</i>

IMPERATIVE.

	<i>tiens</i>	<i>qu'il tienne</i>
<i>t enons</i>	<i>tenez</i>	<i>qu'ils tiennent</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

<i>Que je tienne</i>	<i>que tu tiennes</i>	<i>qu'il tienne</i>
<i>que nous tenions</i>	<i>que vous teniez</i>	<i>qu'ils tiennent</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

<i>Que je tînasse</i>	<i>que tu tînasses</i>	<i>qu'il tînt</i>
<i>que nous tînassions</i>	<i>que vous tînassiez</i>	<i>qu'ils tînassent</i>

The compound tenses are conjugated with *Avoir*, to have

Conjugate after the same manner :

<i>*Appartenir</i> , to belong.	<i>Disconvenir</i> , to disagree.
<i>Advenir</i> , to happen.	<i>*Entretenir</i> , to entertain.
<i>*Circonvenir</i> , to circumvent.	<i>Intervenir</i> , to intervene
<i>*Contenir</i> , to contain.	<i>*Maintenir</i> , to maintain.
<i>*Contrevenir</i> , to contravene.	<i>Méconvenir</i> , to succeed ill.
<i>Convenir</i> , to agree.	<i>*Obtenir</i> , to obtain.
<i>*Déprévenir</i> , to unprepossess.	<i>Provenir</i> , to proceed from.
<i>*Déténir</i> , to detain.	<i>*Prévenir</i> , to prevent, to inform.
<i>Devenir</i> , to become.	<i>Parvenir</i> , to attain.
<i>Redevenir</i> , to become again.	<i>*Soutenir</i> , to sustain, to support.
<i>*Retenir</i> , to retain.	<i>Se ressouvenir</i> , to recollect.
<i>Revenir</i> , to come again, to come back.	<i>Se souvenir</i> , to remember.
<i>S'abstenir</i> , to abstain.	<i>*Soulager</i> , to relieve.
	<i>Survenir</i> , to come unexpectedly.
	<i>Venir</i> , to come.

Those of the above verbs, which are marked with an asterisk (*), are conjugated in their compound tenses with *Avoir*, to have, and the others, with *Être*, to be.

Advenir, to happen, is only used in the third person singular of the present of the indicative, as *s'il advient*, if it happens.

Provenir, to proceed from, is only employed in its third persons singular and plural.

VÊTIR

To Clothe.

INF. Vêt *ir*

PART. PRES. Vêt *ant*

PART. PAST, Vêt *u*

PRESENT.

Je vêt *s*

tu vêt *s*

il vêt

nous vêt *ons*

vous vêt *ez*

ils vêt *ent*

IMPERFECT.

Je vêt *ais*

tu vêt *ais*

il vêt *ait*

nous vêt *ions*

vous vêt *iez*

ils vêt *aient*

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Je vêt *is*

tu vêt *is*

il vêt *it*

nous vêt *îmes*

vous vêt *îtes*

ils vêt *irent*

FUTURE.

Je vêt *irai*

tu vêt *iras*

il vêt *ira*

nous vêt *irons*

vous vêt *irez*

ils vêt *iront*

CONDITIONAL.

Je vêt *irais*

tu vêt *irais*

il vêt *irait*

nous vêt *irions*

vous vêt *iriez*

ils vêt *iraient*

IMPERATIVE.

vêt *ons*

vêt *s*

qu'il vêt *e*

vêt *ez*

qu'ils vêt *ent*

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

Que je vêt *e*

que tu vêt *es*

qu'il vêt *e*

que nous vêt *ions*

que vous vêt *iez*

qu'ils vêt *ent*

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

Que je vêt *isse*

que tu vêt *isses*

qu'il vêt *ît*

que nous vêt *issions*

que vous vêt *issiez*

qu'ils vêt *issent*

The compound tenses are conjugated with *Avoir*, to have

Conjugate after the same manner :

Revêtir, to clothe. *Se vêtir*, to dress, or clothe one's self.
Dévêtir, to strip, to undress. *Se dévêtir*, to divest one's self.

The compound tenses of *se dévêtir*, are conjugated with *Etre*, to be, as all pronominal verbs are.

III.—THIRD CONJUGATION.

S'ASSEOIR

To Sit down.

INF. S'asseoir PART. PRES. S'asseyant PART. PAST. Assis

PRESENT.

Je m'assieds	tu t'assieds	il s'assied
nous nous asseyons	vous vous asseyez	ils s'asseyent or ils s'asseient

IMPERFECT.

Je m'asseyais	tu t'asseyais	il s'asseyait
nous nous asseyions	vous vous asseyiez	ils s'asseyaient

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Je m'assis	tu t'assis	il s'assit
nous nous assimes	vous vous assites	ils s'assirent

FUTURE.

Je m'asseyerai	tu t'asseyeras	il s'asseyera
or je m'asseierai	tu t'asseieras	il s'asseiera
or je m'assiérai	tu t'assiéras	il s'assiéra
nous nous asseyerons	vous vous asseyerez	ils s'asseyeront
or nous nous asseierons	vous vous asseierez	ils s'asseieront
or nous nous assiérons	vous vous assiérez	ils s'assiéront

CONDITIONAL.

Je m'asseyerais	tu t'asseyerais	il s'asseyerait
or je m'asseierais	tu t'asseierais	il s'asseierait
or je m'assiérais	tu t'assiérais	il s'assiérait
nous nous asseyerions	vous vous asseyeriez	ils s'asseyeraient
or nous nous asseierions	vous vous asseieriez	ils s'asseieraient
or nous nous assiérions	vous vous assiériez	ils s'assiéraient

IMPERATIVE.

	assieds-toi	qu'il s'asseye <i>or</i> qu'il s'asseie
asseyons-nous	asséyez-vous	qu'ils s'asséyent <i>or</i> qu'ils s'asseient

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

Que je m'asseye	que tu t'asseyes	qu'il s'asseye
<i>or</i> que je m'asseie	<i>or</i> que tu t'asseies	<i>or</i> qu'il s'asseie
que nous nous asseyions	que vous vous asseyiez	qu'ils s'asséyent <i>or</i> qu'ils s'asseient

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

Que je m'assisse	que tu t'assisses	qu'il s'assît
que nous nous assissions	que vous vous assissiez	qu'ils s'assissent

Conjugate after the same manner, *se rasseoir*, to sit down again.

The compound tenses of these two verbs are conjugated with *Etre*, to be, as all pronominal verbs are.

Conjugate after the same manner, without the second pronoun *me*, *te*, *se*, etc., *asseoir*, to sit down.

The compound tenses are conjugated with *Avoir*, to have.

CHOIR

To Fall.

This verb is not used except in the present of the infinitive.

DÉCHOIR

To Decay.

This verb is seldom used, except in the present of the infinitive and in its compound tenses, which are conjugated sometimes with *Etre*, sometimes with *Avoir*.

ECHOIR

To fall, to expire, to be due, to fall due.

This verb is only used in the third person of the indicative, *il échoit*, sometimes pronounced *il échet*; in *il échut*, in *il écherra*, in *il écherrait*, in *qu'il échût*, etc., in *échoir*, in *échéant*, in *échu*, and in the compound tenses, which are conjugated sometimes with *Avoir*, sometimes with *Etre*.

FALLOIR

To be necessary.

PRESENT.

Il faut

it is necessary

IMPERFECT.

Il fallait

it was necessary

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Il fallut

it was necessary

FUTURE.

Il faudra

it shall or will be necessary

CONDITIONAL.

Il faudrait{ it should, would, or might be
{ necessary

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

Qu'il faille

that it may be necessary

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

Qu'il fallût

that it might be necessary

The compound tenses of this verb, (unipersonal and defective) are formed by the addition of its participle past, *fallu*, to the third person singular of the verb *Avoir*; as, *il a fallu*, it has been necessary, etc.

The expressions *I must, he must, we must, you must, they must*, etc., are rendered by *il must that I—it must that he*, etc.; the verb which follows is put in the subjunctive mood, and in the person indicated by the personal pronoun, which is before *must* in English, as *I must write, il faut que j'écrive*; *you must drink, il faut que vous buviez*; we say also, *il me faut écrire, il vous faut boire*.

MOUVOIR

To Move.

INF. Mouvoir

PART. PRES. Mouvant

PART. PAST, Mu

PRESENT.

Je meus

tu meus

il meut

nous mouvons

vous mouvez

ils meuvent.

IMPERFECT.

Je mouvais

tu mouvais

il mouvait

nous mouvions

vous mouviez

ils mouvaiient

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Je mus	tu mus	il mut
nous mûmes	vous mûtes	ils murent

FUTURE.

Je mouvrai	tu mouvras	il mouvra
nous mouvrons	vous mouvrez	ils mouvront

CONDITIONAL.

Je mouvrais	tu mouvrais	il mouvrait
nous mouvriions	vous mouvriez	ils mouvraient

IMPERATIVE.

	meus	qu'il meuve
mouvons	mouvez	qu'ils meuvent

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

Que je meuve	que tu meuves	qu'il meüve
que nous mouvions	que vous mouvriez	qu'ils meuvent

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

Que je musse	que tu musses	qu'il mût
que nous mussions	que vous mussiez	qu'ils mussent

The compound tenses are conjugated with *Avoir*, to have.

Conjugate after the same manner :

Emouvoir, to move. *Promouvoir*, to promote.
S'émouvoir, to be concerned.

The compound tenses of *s'émouvoir* are conjugated with *Etre*.

Promouvoir, is only used in the present of the infinitive and in the compound tenses.

PLEUVOIR *To Rain.*

INFINITIVE.

<i>Pleuv</i>	to rain
--------------	---------

PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

<i>Pleuvant</i>	raining
-----------------	---------

PARTICIPLE PAST

<i>Plu</i>	rained
------------	--------

PRESENT.

Il pleut it rains, does rain, or is raining

IMPERFECT.

Il pleuvait it rained, did rain, or was raining

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Il plut it rained, or did rain.

FUTURE.

Il pleuvra it will rain

CONDITIONAL.

Il pleuvrait it would rain

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

Qu'il pleuve that it may rain

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

Qu'il plût that it might rain

The compound tenses of the above unipersonal verb are formed by the addition of its participle passive, *plu*, to the third person singular of the simple tenses of *Avoir*; as, *il a plu*, it has rained, etc.

POURVOIR *To Provide.*

INF. *Pouvoir* PART. PRES. *Pourvoyant* PART. PAST. *Pourvu*

PRESENT.

<i>Je</i> <i>pourvois</i>	<i>tu</i> <i>pourvois</i>	<i>il</i> <i>pourvoit</i>
<i>nous</i> <i>pourvoyons</i>	<i>vous</i> <i>pourvoyez</i>	<i>ils</i> <i>pourvoient</i>

IMPERFECT.

<i>Je</i> <i>pourvoyais</i>	<i>tu</i> <i>pourvoyais</i>	<i>il</i> <i>pourvoyait</i>
<i>nous</i> <i>pourvoyions</i>	<i>vous</i> <i>pourvoyiez</i>	<i>ils</i> <i>pourvoyaient</i>

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

<i>Je</i> <i>pourvus</i>	<i>tu</i> <i>pourvus</i>	<i>il</i> <i>pourvut</i>
<i>nous</i> <i>pourvûmes</i>	<i>vous</i> <i>pourvûtes</i>	<i>ils</i> <i>pourvurent</i>

FUTURE.

<i>Je</i> <i>pourvoirai</i>	<i>tu</i> <i>pourvoiras</i>	<i>il</i> <i>pourvoira</i>
<i>nous</i> <i>pourvoirons</i>	<i>vous</i> <i>pourvoirez</i>	<i>il</i> <i>pourvoiront</i>

CONDITIONAL.

Je pourvoirais	tu pourvoirais	il pourvoirait
nous pourvoirions	vous pourvoiriez	ils pourvoiraient

IMPERATIVE.

	pourvois	qu'il pourvoie
pourvoyons	pourvoyez	qu'ils pourvoient

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

Que je pourvoie	que tu pourvoies	qu'il pourvoie
que nous pourvoyions	que vous pourvoyiez	qu'ils pourvoient

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

Que je pourvusse	que tu pourvusses	qu'il pourvût
que nous pourvussions	que vous pourvussiez	qu'ils pourvussent

The compound tenses are conjugated with *Avoir*, to have.

POUVOIR *To be able.*

INF. Pouvoir	PART. PRES. Pouvant	PART. PAST, Pu
PRESENT.		

Je puis <i>or</i> je peux	tu peux	il peut
nous pouvons	vous pouvez	ils peuvent

IMPERFECT.

Je pouvais	tu pouvais	il pouvait
nous pouvions	vous pouviez	ils pouvaient

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Je pus	tu pus	il put
nous pûmes	vous pûtes	ils purent

FUTURE.

Je pourrai	tu pourras	il pourra
nous pourrons	vous pourrez	ils pourront

CONDITIONAL.

Je pourrais	tu pourrais	il pourrait
nous pourrions	vous pourriez	ils pourraient

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

Que je puisse	que tu puisse	qu'il puisse
que nous puissions	que vous puissiez	qu'ils puissent

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

Que je pusse	que tu pusses	qu'il pût
que nous pussions	que vous pussiez	qu'ils pussent

The compound tenses are conjugated with *Avoir*, to have.

SAVOIR

*To Know.*INF. *Savoir*PART. PRES. *Sachant*PART. PAST. *Su*

PRESENT.

Je sais
nous savonstu sais
vous savezil sait
ils savent

IMPERFECT.

Je savais
nous savionstu savais
vous saviezil savait
ils savaient

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Je sus
nous sûmestu sus
vous sûtesil sut
ils surent

FUTURE.

Je saurai
nous sauronstu sauras
vous saurezil saura
ils sauront

CONDITIONAL.

Je saurais
nous saurionstu saurais
vous sauriezil saurait
ils sauraient

IMPERATIVE.

sachons

sache
sachezqu'il sache
qu'ils sachent

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

Que je sache
que nous sachionsque tu saches
que vous sachiezqu'il sache
qu'ils sachent

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

Que je fusse
que nous fussionsque tu fusses
que vous fussiezqu'il fût
qu'ils fussent

The compound tenses are conjugated with *Avoir*, to have.

Savoir, to know, must not be confounded with *connaître*, to know. *Connaître* is mostly used in the sense of *to be acquainted with*; and *savoir*, to know by heart.

SEOIR

To fit, to become, to fit well.

INF. *Seoir* PART. PRES. *Seyant* PART. PAST, *Sis*

PRESENT.

Il sied it fits *ils sièent* they fit

IMPERFECT.

Il seyait it fitted *ils seyaient* they fitted

FUTURE.

Il siéra it will fit *ils siéront* they will fit.

CONDITIONAL.

Il siérait it would fit *ils siéraient* they would fit

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

Qu'il siée that it may fit *qu'ils sièent* that they may fit

This verb, which is only employed in the third person of the singular, and of the plural of some tenses, has no compound tenses.

SURSEOIR

To reprieve, to put off.

This verb is seldom used, except in the present of the infinitive.

VALOIR

To be worth.

INF. *Valoir* PART. PRES. *Valant* PART. PAST, *Valu*

PRESENT

Je vaux *tu vaux* *il vaut*
nous valons *vous valez* *ils valent*

IMPERFECT.

Je valais *tu valais* *il valait*
nous valions *vous valiez* *ils valaient*

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Je valus *tu valus* *il valut*
nous valûmes *vous valûtes* *ils valurent*

FUTURE.

Je vaudrai	tu vaudras	il vaudra
nous vaudrons	vous vaudrez	ils vaudront

CONDITIONAL.

Je vaudrais	tu vaudrais	il vaudrait
nous vaudrions	vous vaudriez	ils vaudraient

IMPERATIVE.

	vaux	qu'il vaille
valons	valez	qu'ils valient

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

Que je vaille	que tu vailles	qu'il vaille
que nous valions	que vous valiez	qu'ils valient

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

Que je valusse	que tu valusses	qu'il valût
que nous valussions	que vous valussiez	qu'ils valussent

The compound tenses are conjugated with *Avoir*, to have.

Conjugate after the same manner :

Retenir, to return like for like. *Équivaloir*, to be equivalent.

Prévaloir, to prevail.

This last makes, in the subjunctive, *que je prévale*, *que tu prévalues*, *qu'il prévale*, *que nous prévalions*, *que vous prévaliez*, *qu'ils prévalent*.

VOIR To See.

INF Voir	PART. PRES. Voyant	PART. PAST, Vu
----------	--------------------	----------------

PRESENT.

Je vois	tu vois	il voit
nous voyons	vous voyez	ils voient

IMPERFECT.

Je voyais	tu voyais	il voyait
nous voyions	vous voyiez	ils voyaient

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Je vis	tu vis	il vit
nous vîmes	vous vîtes	ils virent

FUTURE.

Je verrai	tu verras	il verra
nous verrons	vous verrez	ils verront

CONDITIONAL.

Je verrais	tu verrais	il verrait
nous verrions	vous verriez	ils verraient

IMPERATIVE.

	vois	qu'il voie
voyons	voyez	qu'ils voient

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

Que je voie	que tu voies	qu'il voie
que nous voyions	que vous voyiez	qu'ils voient

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

Que je visse	que tu visses	qu'il vît
que nous vissions	que vous vissiez	qu'ils vissent

The compound tenses are conjugated with *Avoir*, to have.

Conjugate after the same manner :

Revoir, to see again.

Entrevoir, to have a glimpse of.

PRÉVOIR

To Foresee.

This verb is conjugated like *Voir*, to see, except in the future and in the present of the conditional.

FUTURE.

Je prévoirai	tu prévoiras	il prévoira
nous prévoirons	vous prévoirez	ils prévoiront

CONDITIONAL.

Je prévoirais	tu prévoirais	il prévoirait
nous prévoirions	vous prévoiriez	ils prévoiraient

VOULOIR

To be willing.

INF. Vouloir	PART. PRES. Voulant	PART. PAST, Voulu
--------------	---------------------	-------------------

PRESENT.

Je veux	tu veux	il veut
nous voulons	vous voulez	ils veulent

IMPERFECT.

Je voulais	tu voulais	il voulait
nous voulions	vous vouliez	ils voulaient

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Je voulus	tu voulus	il voulut
nous voulûmes	vous voulûtes	ils voulurent

FUTURE.

Je voudrai	tu voudras	il voudra
nous voudrons	vous voudrez	ils voudront

CONDITIONAL.

Je voudrais	tu voudrais	il voudrait
nous voudrions	vous voudriez	ils voudraient

IMPERATIVE.

veuillez	(is the only person used)
----------	---------------------------

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

Que je veuille	que tu veuilles	qu'il veuille
que nous voulions	que vous vouliez	qu'ils veuillent

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

Que je voulusse	que tu voulusses	qu'il voulût
que nous voulussions	que vous voulussiez	qu'ils voulussent

Compound tenses with *Avoir*

IV.—FOURTH CONJUGATION.

BATTRE

To Beat.

INF. Battre	PART. PRES. Battant	PART. PAST, Battu
-------------	---------------------	-------------------

PRESENT.

Je bats	tu bats	il bat
nous battons	vous battez	ils battent

IMPERFECT.

Je battais	tu battais	il battait
nous battions	vous battiez	ils battaient

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Je battis	tu battis	il battit
nous battîmes	vous battîtes	ils battirent

FUTURE.

Je battrai	tu battras	il battrà
nous battrons	vous battrez	ils battront

CONDITIONAL.

Je battrais	tu battrais	il battrait
nous battrions	vous batteriez	ils battraient

IMPERATIVE.

	bats	qu'il batte
battons	battez	qu'ils battent

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

Que je batte	que tu battes	qu'il batte
que nous battions	que vous battiez	qu'ils battent

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

Que je battisse	que tu battisses	qu'il battît
que nous battissions	que vous battissiez	qu'ils battissent

The compound tenses are conjugated with *Avoir*, to have.

Conjugate after the same manner :

Abattre, to pull down.

Rebattre, to beat again.

Combattre, to fight.

S'écabattre, to make or be merry.

Débattre, to debate.

Se débattre, to struggle.

Rabattre, to pull down again, to abate.

The compound tenses of *s'écabattre* and *se débattre*, are conjugated with *Etre*, to be.

BOIRE

To Drink.

INF. Boire	PART. PRES. Buvant	PART. PAST, Bu
------------	--------------------	----------------

PRESENT.

Je bois	tu bois	il boit
nous buvons	vous buvez	ils boivent

IMPERFECT.

Je buvais	tu buvais	il buvait
nous buvions	vous buviez	ils buvaient

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Je bus	tu bus	il but
nous bûmes	vous bûtes	ils burent

FUTURE.

Je boirai	tu boiras	il boira
nous boirons	vous boirez	ils boiront

CONDITIONAL.

Je boirais	tu boirais	il boirait
nous boirions	vous boiriez	ils boiraient

IMPERATIVE.

	bois	qu'il boive
buvons	buvez	qu'ils boivent

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

Que je boive	que tu boives	qu'il boive
que nous buvions	que vous buviez	qu'ils boivent

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

Que je busse	que tu busses	qu'il bût
que nous bussions	que vous bussiez	qu'ils bussent

The compound tenses are conjugated with *Avoir*, to have.
Conjugate after the same manner, *reboire*, to drink again.

CLORE

To Close.

INF. Clore

PART. PAST, Clos

PRESENT.

Je clos	tu clos	il clot
---------	---------	---------

FUTURE.

Je clorai	tu cloras	il clora
nous clorons	vous clorez	ils cloront

CONDITIONAL.

Je clorais	tu clorais	il clorait
nous clorions	vous cloriez	ils cloraient

This verb, (defective) is only used in the above few tenses and persons, and in all the compound tenses, which are formed with *Avoir*, to have.

Conjugate after the same manner, *enclore*, to inclose.

CONCLURE

To Conclude.

INF. Conclure

PART. PRES. Concluant

PART. PAST, Conclu

PRESENT.

Je conclus	tu conclus	il conclut
nous concluons	vous concluez	ils concluent

IMPERFECT.

Je concluais	tu concluais	il concluait
nous concluions	vous concluiez	ils concluaien ^t

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Je conclus	tu conclus	il conclut
nous conclûmes	vous conclûtes	ils conclurent

FUTURE.

Je conclurai	tu concluras	il conclura
nous conclurons	vous conclurez	ils concluront

CONDITIONAL.

Je conclurais	tu conclurais	il conclurait
nous conclurions	vous concluriez	ils concluraient

IMPERATIVE.

	conclus	qu'il conclue
concluons	concluez	qu'ils concluent

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

Que je conclue	que tu conclus	qu'il conclue
que nous concluions	que vous concluiez	qu'ils concluent

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

Que je conclusse	que tu conclusses	qu'il conclût
que nous conclusions	que vous conclusions	qu'ils conclusions

The compound tenses are conjugated with *Avoir*, to have.

Conjugate after the same manner, *exclure*, to exclude.

CONFIRE

To Pickle.

INF. Conf <i>ire</i>	PART. PRES. Conf <i>isant</i>	PART. PAST, Conf <i>it</i>
----------------------	-------------------------------	----------------------------

PRESENT.

Je conf <i>is</i>	tu conf <i>is</i>	il conf <i>it</i>
nous conf <i>isons</i>	vous conf <i>isez</i>	ils conf <i>ient</i>

IMPERFECT.

Je conf <i>isais</i>	tu conf <i>isais</i>	il conf <i>isait</i>
nous conf <i>isions</i>	vous conf <i>isiez</i>	ils conf <i>isaient</i>

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Je conf <i>is</i>	tu conf <i>is</i>	il conf <i>it</i>
nous conf <i>îmes</i>	vous conf <i>îtes</i>	ils conf <i>irent</i>

FUTURE.

Je conf <i>irai</i>	tu conf <i>iras</i>	il conf <i>ira</i>
nous conf <i>irons</i>	vous conf <i>irez</i>	ils conf <i>iront</i>

CONDITIONAL.

Je conf <i>irais</i>	tu conf <i>irais</i>	il conf <i>irait</i>
nous conf <i>irions</i>	vous conf <i>iriez</i>	ils conf <i>iraient</i>

IMPERATIVE.

	conf <i>is</i>	qu'il conf <i>ise</i>
conf <i>isons</i>	conf <i>isez</i>	qu'ils conf <i>isent</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

Que je conf <i>ise</i>	que tu conf <i>ises</i>	qu'il conf <i>ise</i>
que nous conf <i>isions</i>	que vous conf <i>issiez</i>	qu'ils conf <i>issent</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

Que je conf <i>isse</i>	que tu conf <i>isses</i>	qu'il conf <i>ît</i>
que nous conf <i>issions</i>	que vous conf <i>issiez</i>	qu'ils conf <i>issent</i>

The compound tenses are conjugated with *Avoir*, to have.

Conjugate after the same manner :

Suffire, to suffice. *Circconcire*, to circumcise

COUDRE

To Sew.

INF. Coudre	PART. PRES. Cousant	PART. PAST, Cousu
-------------	---------------------	-------------------

PRESENT.

Je couds	tu couds	il coud
nous cousons	vous cousez	ils cousent

IMPERFECT.

Je cousais	tu cousais	il cousait
nous cousions	vous cousiez	ils cousaient

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Je cousis	tu cousis	il cousit
nous cousîmes	vous cousîtes	ils cousirent

FUTURE.

Je coudrai	tu coudras	il coudra
nous coudrons	vous coudrez	ils coudront

CONDITIONAL.

Je coudrais	tu coudrais	il coudrait
nous coudrions	vous coudriez	ils coudraient

IMPERATIVE.

	couds	qu'il couse
cousons	cousez	qu'ils cousent

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

que je couse	que tu couses	qu'il couse
que nous cousions	que vous cousiez	qu'ils cousent

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

que je cousisse	que tu cousisses	qu'il cousît
que nous cousissions	que vous cousissiez	qu'ils cousissent.

The compound tenses are conjugated with *Avoir*, to have.

Conjugate after the same manner :

Découdre, to rip. *Recoudre*, to sew again.

CROIRE *To Believe.*

INF. Croire	PART. PRES. Croyant	PART. PAST, Cru
-------------	---------------------	-----------------

PRESENT.

Je crois	tu crois	il croit
nous croyons	vous croyez	ils croient

IMPERFECT.

Je croyais	tu croyais	il croyait
nous croyions	vous croyiez	ils croyaient

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Je crus	tu crus	il crut
nous crûmes	vous crûtes	ils crurent

FUTURE.

Je croirai	tu croiras	il croira
nous croirons	vous croirez	ils croiront

CONDITIONAL.

Je croirais	tu croirais	il croirait
nous croirions	vous croiriez	ils croiraient

IMPERATIVE.

	crois	qu'il croie
croyons	croyez	qu'ils croient

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

Que je croie	que tu croies	qu'il croie
que nous croyions	que vous croyiez	qu'ils croient

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

Que je crusse	que tu crusses	qu'il crût
que nous crussions	que vous crussiez	qu'ils crussent

CROÎTRE

To Grow.

INF. Croître	PART. PRES. Croissant	PART. PAST, Crû
--------------	-----------------------	-----------------

PRESENT.

Je crois	tu crois	il croit
nous croissons	vous croissez	ils croissent

IMPERFECT.

Je croissais	tu croissais	il croissait
nous croissions	vous croissiez	ils croissaient

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Je crûs	tu crûs	il crût
nous crûmes	vous crûtes	ils crurent

FUTURE.

Je croitrai	tu croitras	il croitra
nous croitrons	vous croîtrez	ils croîtront

CONDITIONAL.

Je croitrais	tu croitrais	il croitrait
nous croitrions	vous croitriez	ils croitraient

IMPERATIVE.

	crois	qu'il croisse
croissons	croissez	qu'ils croissent

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

Que je croisse	que tu croisses	qu'il croisse
que nous croissions	que vous croissiez	qu'ils croissent

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

que je crûsse	que tu crûsses	qu'il crût
que nous crûssions	que vous crûssiez	qu'ils crûssent

The compound tenses are conjugated sometimes with *Avoir*, sometimes with *Etre*; with *Avoir*, when it expresses the action of growing, and with *Etre*, when it denotes the state in which one is.

Conjugate after the same manner :

<i>Accroître</i> ,	to increase.	<i>Décroître</i> ,	to decrease.
--------------------	--------------	--------------------	--------------

DIRE To Say.

INF. Dire	PART. PRES. Disant	PART. PAST, Dit
-----------	--------------------	-----------------

PRESENT.

Je dis	tu dis	il dit
nous disons	vous dites	ils disent

IMPERFECT.

Je disais	tu disais	il disait
nous disions	vous disiez	ils disaient

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Je dis	tu dis	il dit
nous dîmes	vous dites	ils dirent

FUTURE.

Je dirai	tu diras	il dira
nous dirons	vous direz	ils diront

CONDITIONAL.

Je dirais	tu dirais	il dirait
nous dirions	vous diriez	ils dirigeraient

IMPERATIVE.

	dis	qu'il dise
disons	dites	qu'ils disent

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

Que je dise	que tu dises	qu'il dise
que nous disions	que vous disiez	qu'ils disent

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

que je disse	que tu dissés	qu'il dit
que nous dissions	que vous dissiez	qu'ils dissent

The compound tenses are conjugated with *Avoir*, to have.
Conjugate after the same manner, *redire*, to say again,

The following verbs,

<i>Contredire</i> ,	to contradict.	<i>Médire</i> ,	to slander,
<i>Dédire</i> ,	to disown,	<i>Prédire</i> ,	to foretell,
<i>Interdire</i> ,	to interdict,	<i>Se d'édire</i> ,	to recant,
<i>Maudire</i> ,	to curse,		

are also conjugated like *dire*, except in the second person plural of the indicative present, and the imperative, in which they make

<i>Contredisez</i>	<i>Médisez</i>
<i>Dédisez</i>	<i>Prédisez</i>
<i>Interdisez</i>	<i>Dédisez</i>

Maudisez

Maudire, takes two *s*'s in *maudissant*; in the three persons plural of *nous maudissons*, *vous maudissez*, *ils maudissent*; in all the persons of *je maudissais*, etc.; in the third person singular, of *qu'il maudisse*, and also in the three persons plural, of *que nous maudissions*, etc.; in its other persons and tenses it is conjugated like *dire*.

ECLORE

To hatch, to blow, to open.

INF. Eclorc

PART. PAST. Eclos

PRESENT.

Il éclot

ils éclosent

FUTURE.

Il éclora

ils écloront

CONDITIONAL.

Il éclorait

ils éclograient

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

qu'il éclore

qu'ils éclosent

The compound tenses are conjugated with *Avoir*, to have.

Ecrire

To Write.

INF. *Ecr ire*PART. PRES. *Ecr ivant*PART. PAST, *Ecr it*

PRESENT.

J'éc*ri*stu éc*ri*sil éc*ri*tnous éc*ri*onsvous éc*ri*vezils éc*ri*vent

IMPERFECT.

J'éc*ri*vaistu éc*ri*vaisil éc*ri*vaitnous éc*ri*visionsvous éc*ri*viezils éc*ri*vaient

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

J'éc*ri*vistu éc*ri*visil éc*ri*vitnous éc*ri*vîmesvous éc*ri*vîtesils éc*ri*rirent

FUTURE.

J'éc*ri*raitu éc*ri*rasil éc*ri*ranous éc*ri*ronsvous éc*ri*rezils éc*ri*ront

CONDITIONAL.

J'éc*ri*raistu éc*ri*raisil éc*ri*raitnous éc*ri*rionsvous éc*ri*riezils éc*ri*raient

IMPERATIVE.

éc*ri*onséc*ri*squ'il éc*ri*veéc*ri*vezqu'ils éc*ri*vent

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

Que j'éc*ri*veque tu éc*ri*vesqu'il éc*ri*veque nous éc*ri*visionsque vous éc*ri*viezqu'ils éc*ri*vent

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

Que j'éc*ri*visseque tu éc*ri*vissesqu'il éc*ri*vîtque nous éc*ri*vissionsque vous éc*ri*vissiezqu'ils éc*ri*vissent

The compound tenses are conjugated with *Avoir*, to have.

Conjugate after the same manner :

Circonscrire, to circumscribe.

Proscrire, to proscribe.

Décrire, to describe.

Récrire, to write again.

Inscrire, to inscribe.

Souscrire, to subscribe.

Prescrire, to prescribe.

Transcrire, to transcribe.

FAIRE

To make, to do, to cause.

INF. Faire

PART. PRES. Faisant

PART. PAST, Fait

PRESENT.

Je fais

tu fais

il fait

nous faisons

vous faites

ils font

IMPERFECT.

Je faisais

tu faisais

il faisait

nous faisions

vous faisiez

ils faisaient

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Je fis

tu fis

il fit

nous fîmes

vous fîtes

ils firent

FUTURE.

Je ferai

tu feras

il fera

nous ferons

vous ferez

ils feront

CONDITIONAL.

Je ferais

tu ferais

il ferait

nous ferions

vous seriez

ils feraient

IMPERATIVE.

faisons

fais

qu'il fasse

faites

qu'ils fassent

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

Que je fasse

que tu fasses

qu'il fasse

que nous fassions

que vous fassiez

qu'ils fassent

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

Que je fissé

que tu fisses

qu'il fit

que nous fissions

que vous fissiez

qu'ils fissent

The compound tenses are conjugated with *Avoir*, to have.

Conjugate after the same manner :

Contrefaire, to counterfeit, to mimic.

R faire, to do again.

D'faire, to undo.

Satisfaire, to satisfy.

Redéfaire to undo again.

Sur faire, to ask too much

FRIRE

To Fry.

INF. Frire

PART. PAST, Frit

PRESENT.

Je fris

tu fris

il frit

FUTURE.

Je frirai

tu friras

il frira

nous frirons

vous frirez

ils friront

CONDITIONAL.

Je frirais

tu frirais

il frirait

nous fririons

vous fririez

ils friraient

IMPERATIVE.

fris

This verb, (defective) is only used in the above few persons and tenses, and in all the compound tenses, which are formed with *Avoir*.

To supply the persons and tenses which are wanting, the different tenses of *faire*, to make, with the infinitive present of *frire*, are used; as, *nous faisons frire, vous faites frire, ils font frire, etc.*

JOINDRE

To Join.

INF. Joi ndre

PART. PRES. Joi gnant

PART. PAST, Joi nt

PRESENT.

Je joi ns

tu joi ns

il joi nt

nous joi gnons

vous joi gnez

ils joi gnent

IMPERFECT.

Je joi gnais

tu joi gnais

il joi gnait

nous joi gnions

vous joi gniez

ils joi gnaient

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Je joi gnis

tu joi gnis

il joi gnit

nous joi gnîmes

vous joi gnîtes

ils joi gnirent

FUTURE.

Je joi ndrai

tu joi ndras

il joi ndra

nous joi ndrons

vous joi ndrez

ils joi ndront

CONDITIONAL.

Je joi <i>ndrais</i>	tu joi <i>ndrais</i>	il joi <i>ndrait</i>
nous joi <i>ndrions</i>	vous joi <i>ndriez</i>	ils joi <i>ndraient</i>

IMPERATIVE.

	joi <i>ns</i>	qu'il joi <i>gne</i>
joi <i>gnons</i>	joi <i>gnez</i>	qu'ils joi <i>gnent</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

Que je joi <i>gne</i>	que tu joi <i>gues</i>	qu'il joi <i>gne</i>
que nous joi <i>gnions</i>	que vous joi <i>gniez</i>	qu'ils joi <i>gnent</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

Que je joi <i>guisse</i>	que tu joi <i>guisses</i>	qu'il joi <i>gnît</i>
que nous joi <i>guissions</i>	que vous joi <i>guissiez</i>	qu'ils joi <i>guissent</i>

Compound tenses are conjugated with *Avoir*, to have.

Conjugate, after the same manner, all verbs whose present of the infinitive ends

in {	<i>aindre</i>	as	<i>Craindre</i> ,	to fear.
	<i>ein dre</i>	as	<i>Peindre</i> ,	to paint.
	<i>aindre</i>	as	<i>Poin dre</i> ,	to dawn.

Also:

Astreindre, to subject, to compel. *Eteindre*, to put out, to extinguish.

Atteindre, to reach, to overtake. *Feindre*, to feign, to pretend.

Ceindre, to gird. *Plaindre*, to pity.

Contraindre, to constrain, to force. *Restreindre*, to restrain.

Enfreindre, to infringe. *Teindre*, to dye.

LIRE

To Read.

INF. Lire	PART. PRES. Lisant	PART. PAST, Lu.
-----------	--------------------	-----------------

PRESENT

Je lis	tu lis	il lit
nous lisons	vous lisez	ils lisent

IMPERFECT.

Je lisais	tu lisais	il lisait
nous lisions	vous lisiez	ils lisaient

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Je lus	tu lus	il lut
nous lûmes	vous lûtes	ils lurent

FUTURE.

Je lirai	tu liras	il lira
nous lirons	vous lirez	ils liront

CONDITIONAL.

Je lirais	tu lirais	il lirait
nous lirions	vous liriez	ils liraient

IMPERATIVE.

	lis	qu'il lise
lisons	lisez	qu'ils lisent

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

Que je lise	que tu lises	qu'il lise
que nous lisions	que vous lisiez	qu'ils lisent

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

Que je lusse	que tu lusses	qu'il lût
que nous lussions	que vous lussiez	qu'ils lussent

The compound tenses are conjugated with *Avoir*, to have.

Conjugate after the same manner :

Relire, to read again. *Elire*, to elect.

METTRE

To Put.

INF. Mettre	PART. PRES. Mettant	PART. PAST, Mis
-------------	---------------------	-----------------

PRESENT.

Je mets	tu mets	il met
nous mettons	vous mettez	ils mettent

IMPERFECT.

Je mettais	tu mettais	il mettait
nous mettions	vous mettiez	ils mettaient

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Je mis	tu mis	il mit
nous mîmes	vous mîtes	ils mirent

FUTURE.

Je mettrai	tu mettras	il mettra
nous mettrons	vous mettrez	ils mettront

CONDITIONAL.

Je mettrais	tu mettrais	il mettrait
nous mettrions	vous mettriez	ils mettraient

IMPERATIVE.

	mets	qu'il mette
mettons	mettez	qu'ils mettent

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

Que je mette	que tu mettes	qu'il mette
que nous mettions	que vous mettiez	qu'ils mettent

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

Que je misse	que tu misses	qu'il mit
que nous missions	que vous missiez	qu'ils missent

Compound tenses are conjugated with *Avoir*, to have.

Conjugate after the same manner :

<i>Admettre</i> , to admit.	<i>Promettre</i> , to promise.
<i>Commettre</i> , to commit.	<i>Remettre</i> , to put again, to set again,
<i>Compromettre</i> , to compromise.	to replace.
<i>Démettre</i> , to disjoint, to put out.	<i>Soumettre</i> , to submit.
<i>Omettre</i> , to omit.	<i>Transmettre</i> , to transmit.
<i>Permettre</i> , to permit.	<i>Se démettre</i> , to resign.
<i>Se remettre</i> , to interpose.	

The two last have their compound tenses conjugated with *Etre*.

MOUDRE

To Grind.

INF. Moudre	PART. PRES. Moulant	PART. PAST, Moulu
-------------	---------------------	-------------------

PRESENT.

Je mouds	tu mouds	il moud
nous moulons	vous moulez	ils moulent

IMPERFECT.

Je moulais	tu moulais	il moulait
nous moulions	vous mouliez	ils moulaient

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Je moulus	tu moulus	il moulut
nous moulûmes	vous moulûtes	ils moulurent

FUTURE.

Je moudrai	tu moudras	il moudra
nous moudrons	vous moudrez	ils moudront

CONDITIONAL.

Je moudrais	tu moudrais	il moudrait
nous moudrions	vous moudriez	ils moudraient

IMPERATIVE.

mouls	moules	qu'il moule
moulons	moulez	qu'ils moulent

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

Que je moule	que tu moules	qu'il moule
que nous moulions	que vous mouliez	qu'ils moulent

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

Que je moulusse,	que tu moulusses	qu'il moulût
que nous moulussions	que vous moulussiez	qu'ils moulussent

The compound tenses are conjugated with *Avoir*, to have.

Conjugate after the same manner :

Remoudre, to grind again.

Emoudre, to grind, to whet.

NAÎTRE

To be born.

INF. Naître	PART. PRES. Naissant	PART. PAST, Né
-------------	----------------------	----------------

PRESENT.

Je nais	tu nais	il naît
nous naissons	vous naissez	ils naissent

IMPERFECT.

Je naissais	tu naissais	il naissait
nous naissions	vous naissiez	ils naissaient

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Je naquis	tu naquis	il naquit
nous naquîmes	vous naquîtes	ils naquirent

FUTURE.

Je naîtrai	tu naîtras	il naîtra
nous naîtrons	vous naîtrez	ils naîtront

CONDITIONAL.

Je naîtrais	tu naîtrais	il naîtrait
nous naîtrions	vous naîtriez	ils naîtraient

IMPERATIVE.

naissions	naïs	qu'il naisse
	naissiez	qu'ils naissent

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

Que je naisse	que tu naisses	qu'il naisse
que nous naissions	que vous naissiez	qu'ils naissent

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

Que je naquisse	que tu naquisses	qu'il naquît
que nous naquissions	que vous naquissiez	qu'ils naquissent

The compound tenses are conjugated with *Etre* to be.

Conjugate after the same manner:

Renâître, _____ to revive.

PAÎTRE _____ *To Graze.*

INF. <i>Paître</i>	PART. PRES. <i>Paissant</i>	PART. PAST, <i>Pu</i>
--------------------	-----------------------------	-----------------------

PRESENT.

Je pais	tu pais	il paît
nous paissions	vous paisez	ils paissent

IMPERFECT.

Je paissais	tu paissais	il paissait
nous paissions	vous paissiez	ils paissaient

FUTURE.

Je paîtrai	tu paîtras	il paîtra
nous paîtrons	vous paîtrez	ils paîtront

CONDITIONAL.

Je paîtrais	tu paîtrais	il paîtrait
nous paîtrions	vous paîtriez	ils paîtraient

IMPERATIVE.

	pais	qu'il paise
paissions	paissez	qu'ils paissent

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

Que je paise,	que tu paisses	qu'il paise
que nous paissions	que vous paissiez	qu'ils paissent

Conjugate after the same manner :

Repâître, to feed. *Se repâître*, to feed one's self.

These last two verbs have a preterit definite, and an imperfect of the subjunctive.

Je repus	tu repus	il reput
nous repûmes	vous repûtes	ils repurent
Que je repusse	que tu repusses	qu'il repût
que nous repussions	que vous repussiez	qu'ils repussent

The compound tenses of *repâître*, are conjugated with *Avoir*, and those of *se repâître*, with *Etre*.

PARAÎTRE

To Appear.

INF. Par *être* PART. PRES. Par *aissant* PART. PAST, Par *u*

PRESENT.

Je par <i>ais</i>	tu par <i>ais</i>	il par <i>ait</i>
nous par <i>aissions</i>	vous par <i>aissiez</i>	ils par <i>aissent</i>

IMPERFECT.

Je par <i>aissais</i>	tu par <i>aissais</i>	il par <i>aissait</i>
nous par <i>aissions</i>	vous par <i>aissiez</i>	ils par <i>aissaient</i>

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Je par <i>us</i>	tu par <i>us</i>	il par <i>ut</i>
nous par <i>ûmes</i>	vous par <i>ûtes</i>	ils par <i>urent</i>

FUTURE.

Je par <i>aitrai</i>	tu par <i>aitras</i>	il par <i>aitra</i>
nous par <i>aitrons</i>	vous par <i>aitrez</i>	ils par <i>aitront</i>

CONDITIONAL.

Je par <i>aitrais</i>	tu par <i>aitrais</i>	il par <i>aitrait</i>
nous par <i>aitrions</i>	vous par <i>aitriez</i>	ils par <i>aitraient</i>

IMPERATIVE.

	par <i>ais</i>	qu'il par <i>aisse</i>
par <i>aiissons</i>	par <i>aissez</i>	qu'ils par <i>aiissent</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

Que je par <i>aisse</i>	que tu par <i>aiesses</i>	qu'il par <i>aisse</i>
que nous par <i>aiissions</i>	que vous par <i>aiissiez</i>	qu'ils par <i>aiissent</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

Que je par <i>usse</i>	que tu par <i>usses</i>	qu'il par <i>ût</i>
que nous par <i>ussions</i>	que vous par <i>ussiez</i>	qu'ils par <i>ussent</i>

The compound tenses are conjugated with *Avoir*, to have.

Conjugate after the same manner :

<i>Apparaître</i> , to appear.	<i>Reconnaître</i> , to recognize, to know again.
<i>Comparaître</i> , to appear.	
<i>Connaître</i> , to know.	<i>Reparaître</i> , to appear again.
<i>Disparaître</i> , to disappear.	<i>Se méconnaître</i> , to forget one's self.
<i>Méconnaître</i> , to mistake, to forget, to neglect.	

The compound tenses are conjugated with *Etre*.

PLAIRE

To Please.

INF. Pl <i>aire</i>	PART. PRES. Pl <i>aisant</i>	PART. PAST, Pl <i>us</i>
---------------------	------------------------------	--------------------------

PRESENT.

Je pl <i>ais</i>	tu pl <i>ais</i>	il pl <i>ait</i>
nous pl <i>aisons</i>	vous pl <i>aisez</i>	ils pl <i>aisent</i>

IMPERFECT.

Je pl <i>aisais</i>	tu pl <i>aisais</i>	il pl <i>aisait</i>
nous pl <i>aisions</i>	vous pl <i>aisiez</i>	ils pl <i>aisaient</i>

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Je pl <i>us</i>	tu pl <i>us</i>	il pl <i>ut</i>
nous pl <i>ûmes</i>	vous pl <i>ûtes</i>	ils pl <i>urent</i>

FUTURE.

Je pl <i>airai</i>	tu pl <i>airas</i>	il pl <i>aira</i>
nous pl <i>airons</i>	vous pl <i>airez</i>	ils pl <i>airont</i>

CONDITIONAL.

Je pl <i>airais</i>	tu pl <i>airais</i>	il pl <i>airait</i>
nous pl <i>airions</i>	vous pl <i>airiez</i>	ils pl <i>airaient</i>

IMPERATIVE.

pl <i>aisons</i>	pl <i>ais</i> pl <i>aisez</i>	qu'il pl <i>aise</i> qu'ils pl <i>aisent</i>
------------------	----------------------------------	---

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

Que je pl <i>aise</i>	que tu pl <i>aises</i>	qu'il pl <i>aise</i>
que nous pl <i>aisions</i>	que vous pl <i>aisiez</i>	qu'ils pl <i>aisent</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

Que je pl <i>usse</i>	que tu pl <i>usses</i>	qu'il pl <i>ût</i>
que nous pl <i>ussions</i>	que vous pl <i>ussiez</i>	qu'ils pl <i>ussent</i>

The compound tenses are conjugated with *Avoir*, to have.

Conjugate after the same manner :

Complaire, to humor, to please. *Se taire*, to forbear talking, to be
Déplaire, to displease. silent, to hold one's tongue.

Taire, to conceal, to keep secret.

The compound tenses of *se taire* are conjugated with *Etre*, to be

POINDRE

To shoot forth, to dawn.

Poindre

il poin *t*

il poindra.

PRENDRE

To Take.

INF. Prendre

PART. PRES. Prenant

PART. PAST, Pris

PRESENT.

Je prends	tu prends	il prend
nous prenons	vous prenez	ils prennent

IMPERFECT.

Je prenais	tu prenais	il prenait
nous prenions	vous preniez	ils prenaient

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Je pris	tu pris	il prit
nous primes	vous prîtes	ils prirent

FUTURE.

Je prendrai	tu prendras	il prendra
nous prendrons	vous prendrez	ils prendront

CONDITIONAL.

Je prendrais	tu prendrais	il prendrait
nous prendrions	vous prendriez	ils prendraient

IMPERATIVE.

	prends	qu'il prenne
prenons	prenez	qu'ils prennent

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

Que je prenne	que tu prennes	qu'il prenne
que nous prenions	que vous preniez	qu'ils prennent

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

Que je prisse	que tu prisses	qu'il prit
que nous prissions	que vous prissiez	qu'ils prissent

The compound tenses are conjugated with *Avoir*, to have.

Conjugate after the same manner :

<i>Apprendre</i> , to learn.	<i>Rapprendre</i> , to learn again.
<i>Comprendre</i> , to comprehend, to understand.	<i>Reprendre</i> , to take again, to resume.
<i>Déprendre</i> , to loosen, to disengage.	<i>Surprendre</i> , to surprise, to deceive.
<i>Désapprendre</i> , to unlearn.	<i>Se méprendre</i> , to mistake.
<i>Entreprendre</i> , to undertake.	<i>S'êprendre</i> , to be smitten.

The compound tenses of *se méprendre* and *s'êprendre*, are conjugated with *Etre*, to be ; *s'êprendre* is used only in the participle past, and in all the compound tenses.

RÉDUIRE

To Reduce.

INF. Rédui <i>re</i>	PART. PRES. Rédui <i>sant</i>	PART. PAST, Rédui <i>t</i>
----------------------	-------------------------------	----------------------------

PRESENT.

Je rédui <i>s</i>	tu rédui <i>s</i>	il rédui <i>t</i>
nous rédui <i>sons</i>	vous rédui <i>sez</i>	ils rédui <i>sant</i>

IMPERFECT.

Je rédui <i>sais</i>	tu rédui <i>sais</i>	il rédui <i>soit</i>
nous rédui <i>sions</i>	vous rédui <i>siez</i>	ils rédui <i>soient</i>

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Je rédui <i>sis</i>	tu rédui <i>sis</i>	il rédui <i>sît</i>
nous rédui <i>sîmes</i>	vous rédui <i>sîtes</i>	ils rédui <i>sirent</i>

FUTURE.

Je rédui <i>rai</i>	tu rédui <i>ras</i>	il rédui <i>ra</i>
nous rédui <i>rons</i>	vous rédui <i>rez</i>	ils rédui <i>ront</i>

CONDITIONAL.

Je rédui <i>rais</i>	tu rédui <i>rais</i>	il rédui <i>rait</i>
nous rédui <i>rions</i>	vous rédui <i>riez</i>	ils rédui <i>raient</i>

IMPERATIVE.

	rédui <i>s</i>	qu'il rédui <i>se</i>
rédui <i>sons</i>	rédui <i>sez</i>	qu'ils rédui <i>sent</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

Que je rédui <i>se</i>	que tu rédui <i>ses</i>	qu'il rédui <i>se</i>
que nous rédui <i>sions</i>	que vous rédui <i>siez</i>	qu'ils rédui <i>sent</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

Que je rédui <i>sisse</i>	que tu rédui <i>sisses</i>	qu'il rédui <i>sît</i>
que nous rédui <i>sissions</i>	que vous rédui <i>sissiez</i>	qu'ils rédui <i>sissent</i>

The compound tenses are conjugated with *Avoir*, to have.

Conjugate in the same manner:

<i>Conduire</i> , to conduct, to lead.	<i>Luire</i> , to shine, to glow.
<i>Construire</i> , to construct.	<i>Nuire</i> , to hurt.
<i>Cuire</i> , to bake.	<i>Produire</i> , to produce.
<i>Déduire</i> , to deduct, to take from.	<i>Reconduire</i> , to reconduct, to lead back.
<i>Détruire</i> , to destroy.	
<i>Econduire</i> , to discard in polite manner.	<i>Reconstruire</i> , to construct again.
<i>Enduire</i> , to plaster.	<i>Recuire</i> , to bake again.
<i>Entreluire</i> , to shine a little, to glow a little.	<i>Reluire</i> , to shine, to glow.
<i>Induire</i> , to induce.	<i>Renduire</i> , to plaster again.
<i>Instruire</i> , to instruct.	<i>Reproduire</i> , to reproduce.
<i>Introduire</i> , to introduce.	<i>Séduire</i> , to seduce.
	<i>Traduire</i> , to translate.

RESOUDRE

*To Dissolve, to Resolve.*INF. Résoudre PART. PRES. Résolvant PART. PAST, Résolu *or* résous

PRESENT.

Je ré sous	tu ré sous	il ré sout
nous ré solvons	vous ré solvez	ils ré solvent

IMPERFECT.

Je ré solvais	tu ré solvais	il ré solvait
nous ré solvions	vous ré solviez	ils ré solvaient

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Je ré solus	tu ré solus	il ré solut
nous ré solûmes	vous ré solûtes	ils ré solurent

FUTURE.

Je ré soudrai	tu ré soudras	il ré soudra
nous ré soudrons	vous ré soudrez	ils ré soudront

CONDITIONAL.

Je ré soudrais	tu ré soudrais	il ré soudrait
nous ré soudrions	vous ré soudriez	ils ré soudraient

IMPERATIVE.

	ré sous	qu'il ré solve
ré solvons	ré solvez	qu'ils ré solvent

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

Que je ré solve	que tu ré solves	qu'il ré solve
que nous ré solvions	que vous ré solviez	qu'ils résolvent

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

Que je ré solusse	que tu ré solusses	qu'il ré solût
que nous ré solussions	que vous ré solussiez	qu'ils ré solussent

The compound tenses are conjugated with *Avoir*, to have.

The above verb has two participles past. *Résolu*, is used when *résoudre* is employed to express *to resolve*; and *résous*, when employed to express *to dissolve*.

Absoudre, to absolve. *Dissoudre*, to dissolve.

These two last verbs have no preterit definite. nor imperfect of the subjunctive.

RIRE

To Laugh.

INF. Rire

PART. PRES. Riant

PART. PAST. Ri

PRESENT.

Je ris
nous rionstu ris
vous riezil rit
ils rient

IMPERFECT.

Je riaais
nous riionstu riaais
vous riiezil riaait
ils riaient

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Je ris
nous rîmestu ris
vous rîtesil rit
ils rirent

FUTURE.

Je rirai
nous rironstu riras
vous rirezil rira
ils riront

CONDITIONAL.

Je rirais
nous ririonstu rirais
vous ririezil rirait
ils riraient

IMPERATIVE.

rions

ris
riezqu'il rie
qu'ils rient

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

Que je rie
que nous riionsque tu ries
que vous riiezqu'il rie
qu'ils rient

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

Que je risse
que nous rissionsque tu risses
que vous rissiezqu'il rît
qu'ils rissentCompound tenses are conjugated with *Avoir*, to have.

Conjugate after the same manner :

Sourire, to smile. *Se rire de*, to laugh at.The compound tenses of *se rire de*, are conjugated with *Etre*.

ROMPRE

To Break.

INF. Rompre

PART. PRES. Rompant

PART. PAST, Rompu

PRESENT.

Je romps
nous romponstu romps
vous rompezil rompt
ils rompent

IMPERFECT.

Je rompais
nous rompionstu rompais
vous rompiezil rompait
ils rompaient

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Je rompis
nous rompîmestu rompis
vous rompîtesil rompit
ils rompirent

FUTURE.

Je romprai
nous rompronstu rompras
vous romprezil rompra
ils rompront

CONDITIONAL.

Je romprais
nous romprionstu romprais
vous rompriezil romprait
ils rompraient

IMPERATIVE.

rompons

romps
rompezqu'il rompe
qu'ils rompent

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

Que je rompe
que nous rompionsque tu rompes
que vous rompiezqu'il rompe
qu'ils rompent

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

Que je rompisse
que nous rompissionsque tu rompiasses
que vous rompiassiezqu'il rompit
qu'ils rompiissentThe compound tenses are conjugated with *Avoir*, to have.

Conjugate after the same manner :

Corrompre, to corrupt.*Interrompre*, to interrupt.

SUIVRE

To Follow.

INF. Suivre

PART. PRES. Suivant

PART. PAST, Suivi

PRESENT.

Je suis

tu suis

il suit

nous suivons

vous suivez

ils suivent

IMPERFECT.

Je suivais

tu suivais

il suivait

nous suivions

vous suiviez

ils suivaient

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Je suivis

tu suivis

il suivit

nous suivîmes

vous suivîtes

ils suivirent

FUTURE.

Je suivrai

tu suivras

il suivra

nous suivrons

vous suivrez

ils suivront

CONDITIONAL

Je suivrais

tu suivrais

il suivrait

nous suivrions

vous suivriez

il suivraient

IMPERATIVE.

suivons

suis

qu'il suive

suivez

qu'ils suivent

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

Que je suive

que tu suives

qu'il suive

que nous suivions

que vous suiviez

qu'ils suivent

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

Que je suivisse

que tu suivisses

qu'il suivit

que nous suivissions

que vous suivissiez

qu'ils suivissent

The compound tenses are conjugated with *Avoir*, to have.

Conjugate after the same manner :

Poursuivre, to pursue, to prosecute. *S'en suivre*, to follow, to result.

The last verb is only used in the third person singular of every tense.

TRAIRE

To Milk.

INF. Traire	PART. PRES. Trayant	PART. PAST, Trait
-------------	---------------------	-------------------

PRESENT.

Je traie	tu traies	il traie
nous trayons	vous trayez	ils traient

IMPERFECT.

Je trayais	tu trayais	il trayait
nous trayions	vous trayiez	ils trayaient

FUTURE.

Je trairai	tu trairas	il traira
nous trairons	vous trairez	ils trairont

CONDITIONAL

Je trairais	tu trairais	il trairait
nous trairions	vous trairez	ils trairaient

IMPERATIVE.

	traie	qu'il traie
trayons	trayez	qu'ils traient

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

Que je traie	que tu traies	qu'il traie
que nous trayions	que vous trayiez	qu'ils traient

The compound tenses are conjugated with *Avoir*, to have.

Conjugate after the same manner :

Abstraire, to abstract.

Rentreire, to fine draw.

Attraire, to attract, to entice.

Retraire, to redeem an estate.

Distraire, to distract, to divert.

Soustraire, to subtract, to hide, to

Extraire, to extract.

conceal, to take away.

Se soustraire à, to avoid, to escape, to withdraw one's self from.

Se soustraire à, is conjugated with *Etre*, to be.

VAINCRE

To vanquish, to conquer.

INF. Vaincre	PART. PRES. Vainquant	PART. PAST, Vaincu
--------------	-----------------------	--------------------

PRESENT.

Je vains	tu vains	il vaine
nous vainquons	vous vainquez	ils vainquent

IMPERFECT.

Je vainquais	tu vainquais	il vainquait
nous vainquions	vous vainquiez	ils vainquaient

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Je vainquis	tu vainquis	il vainquit
nous vainquîmes	vous vainquîtes	ils vainquirent

FUTURE.

Je vaincrai	tu vaincras	il vaincra
nous vaincrons	vous vaincrez	ils vaincront

CONDITIONAL.

Je vaincrais	tu vaincrais	il vaincrait
nous vaincristions	vous vaincriez	ils vaincraient

IMPERATIVE.

	vaincs	qu'il vainque
vainquons	vainquez	qu'ils vainquent

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

Que je vainque	que tu vainques	qu'il vainque
que nous vainquions	que vous vainquiez	qu'ils vainquent

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

Que je vainquisse	que tu vainquisses	qu'il vainquît
que nous vainquissions	que vous vainquissiez	qu'ils vainquissent

The compound tenses are conjugated with *Avoir*, to have.

Conjugate after the same manner :

Convaincre, to convince.

VIVRE

To Live.

INF Vivre	PART. PRES. Vivant	PART. PAST, Vécu
-----------	--------------------	------------------

PRESENT.

Je vis	tu vis	il vit
nous vivons	vous vivez	ils vivent

IMPERFECT.

Je vivais	tu vivais	il vivait
nous vivions	vous viviez	ils vivaient

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Je vécus	tu vécus	il vécut
nous vécûmes	vous vécûtes	ils vécurent

FUTURE.

Je vivrai	tu vivras	il vivra
nous vivrons	vous vivrez	ils vivront

CONDITIONAL.

Je vivrais	tu vivrais	il vivrait
nous vivrions	vous vivriez	ils vivraient

IMPERATIVE.

	vis	qu'il vive
vivons	vivez	qu'ils vivent

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

Que je vive	que tu vives	qu'il vive
que nous vivions	que vous viviez	qu'ils vivent

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

Que je vécusse	que tu vécusses	qu'il vécût
que nous vécussions	que vous vécussiez	qu'ils vécussent

The compound tenses are conjugated with *Avoir*, to have.

Conjugate after the same manner :

Revivre, to revive. *Survivre*, to survive.

EXERCISES ON THE VERBS.

I.—FIRST CONJUGATION.

I would give it to you with pleasure, if you would hide it. He prefers pleasure to duty, but I wished that he might rather prefer duty to pleasure. Do not irritate this man; he is drunk, and you would be sorry afterwards. Let him propose a better plan, I have proposed mine. We neglect too often our friends; let us think more of them and less of ourselves. You admired her, but I loved her. We would console her in her grief, but she refused our sympathy. Have you employed all your resources, or did you not rather neglect the most important means? Let them yield this and they will soon discover that I changed for a purpose. Does he support any candidate, or by whom is he supported? He was fishing in the stream

when he caught that big fish. He awoke late and found that all his friends had gone in the morning. Would you not have flown to her assistance, if she had cried? He ate too much, and now he has dined a second time. I wish that you may remain here for a week; I will stay with you. That he should oblige my brother and offend his own, was a great surprise to all. He warned me that I should not copy his example. We expected that they would have burnt the ship.

II.—SECOND CONJUGATION.

Choose your seat and do not leave for an hour. Warn your friends that they convert themselves or it will be too late. They served him well, but they slept too much. Did not the enemies invade an immense country, and did they not invest several fortresses? He softened his father by his submission, and I foresaw that he might succeed if he came back in time. I wished that you would not sully your glory by these mean deeds. He obtains all his money from his wife; she retains nothing, and thus she suffers frequently; but he blemishes his reputation. Let us finish this work; he will punish us if we are not ready. They predicted that we would disobey the laws and that we would weaken the strength of our party. Hold this sword and do not let it fall. He left this morning, and we shall leave to-morrow; when will you leave? Let him maintain himself by his labor and all will honor him.

III.—THIRD CONJUGATION.

He receives a large salary, but he owes large sums of money. When he owed me a hundred dollars, I feared that he would not pay me, but he has fulfilled his promise. Let them conceive these ideas and they will perceive soon their errors. We perceived the house from the top of the mountain, but they did not perceive us. We shall conceive hopes of her recovery if she suffers less to-night than yesterday; the doctor said that he perceived good symptoms. He told us that we should not receive this officer with too much politeness, because he was not a friend of our nation, but that we should be polite to those who come to our house.

IV.—FOURTH CONJUGATION.

We knew him well when he sold goods in this city, but he did not know us, for we lived in another part of the city. Let them be silent or they will render themselves hateful to the enemy. We lost all our money, and you would lose yours if you sold your paintings

now. Did this dog bite you or had you been bitten before? He did not please by his manners but by his conduct. Pity us, my friends, for we have pitied you when you were unfortunate. You fear an idle threat, why did you not fear the real danger? He consoled me, that I might not melt in tears. I would recognize him everywhere, but he will not recognize his own brother. I said it that you might hear the opinion of an honest man, but you heard only the half of my speech. They appeared surprised, but it surprised them not, for they had heard it yesterday. Let us take patience and let us seem contented with our lot, if we cannot be so. He expected us at the gate and we heard his voice, but he seemed (to be) angry. That he may depend on me and on my friends, is my sincere wish.

V.—PRONOMINAL VERBS.

They walked for several hours in the garden, and when they had walked enough, they proposed to each other to withdraw into the house. Why did she not prepare herself for this event, she knew that it might come soon. We have ruined ourselves in this enterprise, and you would ruin yourself if you engaged in the same. They applauded themselves, but they were mistaken; they had not escaped yet. Do not forget yourselves when you are in his house. Should she betray herself by her tears, or should she not rather control herself and hide her sorrow? They fought each other all that day, and when evening came they withdrew to their camp. Let us not reproach ourselves with (de) faults of others; we have enough to do with our own faults. You would degrade yourself if you were not deceived; they have loved each other all their life. Will not that man submit to so just a law? She will dishonor herself, if she forgets herself so far. He grew rich by the misfortunes of others, and now chance has reduced him to poverty. Do not expose yourself to the air; we exposed ourselves last night and we made ourselves sick.

VI.—PASSIVE VERBS.

He was esteemed by all his friends, but now he is hated and despised. They would be feared and dreaded if they were stronger. I wish that the doors were opened; they have been closed since yesterday. I suspect that the artifice will have been discovered, and the author, no doubt, has been exposed. My father was respected and my mother was revered. These young ladies retired, although they

were recognized. He performed with so much ability that he was applauded universally. Would he have been praised, as he was, if he had been less modest? He is known by nobody, but, still, he is very happy. How many countries, unknown to the ancients, have been discovered in our days?

VII.—IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Does it rain this morning or does it freeze? It did not snow during the winter, but it snows this morning. When did it hail in your city? Do you think (that) it will freeze again to-morrow? It happened that I was present at that remarkable adventure, and it appears now that I was the only witness. Would it be proper that I should speak to her, or would it appear presumptuous? It thundered twice when I was absent; has it thundered again? It will lighten after several seconds.

VIII.—ON THE VERB "*Il y a.*"

There was a great difference of age between these two persons. Was there a great crowd at the theatre? I wish there could be a law to prevent this; there has been too much of it. What has there been better than this in the history of our country? There being so many difficulties, the affair has been abandoned. There was one woman in the company, but there were a hundred men, and there would have been many children also, if it had been permitted. There has been a festival every day, and there will be a solemn feast to-morrow. I wish that there might be a larger crowd.

IX.—ON THE VERB "*Il faut.*"

[All expressions implying necessity, duty, obligation, or want, are in French expressed by *falloir*, followed by *que* with the verb in the Subjunctive. I must remain; it is necessary that I remain: *il faut que je reste*. He had to work; it was necessary that he worked: *il fallait qu'il travaillât*.]

You must speak to him about this affair, and he must answer you politely or there will be a difficulty. We were obliged to set out yesterday, for we had to be in the city before Thursday. What must I do in order to please you? You must do your duty faithfully and you will please everybody. What does he want? He wants something to eat and something to drink. I had to abandon all hope of seeing him again. You must not forget that you promised me a letter; you must, on the contrary, remember your promise and write very often

I do not think that it is necessary to be a magician, to guess your secrets. You ought to ask pardon for your faults, and they will be readily forgiven.

X.—ON THE IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

He will go this evening into the country—will you go with him? I will go when you go; for I would have gone yesterday, if I had not preferred to go with you. Well, let us go at once, for if we go later it will be too hot. Let him go with us, he is a pleasant companion, and if we go together we shall have a pleasant walk. When will you send those flowers to your sister, or have you sent them already? No, I would have sent them this morning, but the gardener had given them to a friend; I shall send my bouquet this evening. I would not send them so late, she will not be at home then. Did you send the letters to the post-office? Yes, I sent all by the servant. I wish that you would send me a little money, I have none.

XI.—IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

Blessed be the man who has converted so many heathens! The arts and sciences flourished at Athens in the time of Pericles. They fled from the battle-field, and I fled with them; you saw us, perhaps, in our flight; we acted not with prudence and care, for we were frightened; the enemy assailed us with an enormous force, and when we began to flee, we ran as fast as we could. Would he not hate that man, if he knew all? He hated him before, but now he will despise him. Does she really hate the vain pomp and parade of worldly greatness? They discoursed on the certainty of another life, and that we should not run after shadows. He is very sick, and his strength fails him every day more; he came near dying yesterday. How did he acquire his riches? I have inquired after it and requested his friends to tell me, but I have not learnt it. Would you dress your children better if you could collect your money more easily? Let us receive him with kindness, and he will receive us well when we come to his country.

XII.—IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

How did he fall into poverty, and why has he fallen so suddenly in the esteem of the public? He has put in the lottery, and he hopes a capital prize will fall to him. I did not believe that it was necessary for me to pay so soon; the bill has not yet fallen due. It was necessary that you should provide for its payment now, or you would have

had to pay much more hereafter. Shall we see you to-night? I would see you again, if I could, and I hope that I shall be able to come. We moved him by our prayers to tears, and he promised that he would promote our interests. It will not rain to-day, for it rained yesterday, and it is rare that it rains two days one after the other. Let us sit down here; you, madam, seat yourself in a chair, and I will sit on the turf. We sat where we could, and when the usher said Sit down, gentlemen, we were much embarrassed. To conclude this business it would be necessary that they should see each other at once; I foresaw this, and provided for the interview. One ounce of gold is equivalent to fifteen ounces of silver—what would ten ounces be equivalent to? Doubt not that truth and justice will prevail in the end. If she is willing, we are willing, too. He says that he can do what he will do, because men will do nothing more than what they can do, if they are wise.

XIII.—IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

These substances resolve themselves into ashes when they are burnt; but this matter does not resolve itself at all. Who would absolve him if he should commit a great crime? Have they resolved on war or peace? My sister sewed all the day, and yet, when the evening came, the dress was not sewed, and some pieces which were finished have to be sewed over again. Let him take his share; I took mine yesterday, and you have taken yours before us. What news have you learnt? I learnt that the city was taken, and that the enemy would live at the expense of the inhabitants for a month. Would you undertake this business if I placed it in your hands? You reproved him too sharply; bad company has corrupted him, perhaps, but he is not wicked by nature. They followed us for two days, but then they pursued us no longer, and we escaped. They fought with fury, and after they had beaten the enemy and vanquished their famous generals, they made a triumphal procession. He did his best, you did not so well, and they would have done better if they had wished it. Could it be possible that we should make such a mistake? He must make a better use of his talents. They satisfied themselves that they would do mischief if they went. He was born in this city, where his parents were born also. They wrote their letters this morning; I shall write mine now; will you not write yours also? Did you think me capable of a crime, when you made that remark? I would not believe it of you, even if somebody said so.

PARTICIPLES.

Participles derive their name from the fact that they partake of the nature of the verbs from which they derive their origin and meaning, and of the adjective, which they resemble in form and use.

The verb has two participles :

A *participle present*, which invariably ends in *ant*, has its feminine in *ante*, and its two plural forms in *ants* and *antes*.

Ex. *charmant* ; *une femme charmante*, a charming woman ; *des enfants charmants*, charming children ; *deux histoires charmantes*, two charming stories.

A *participle past*, which ends in the first conjugation in *é* (*éc*, *es*, *ces*), in the second in *i* (*ic*, *is*, *ies*), in the third and fourth in *u* (*ue*, *us*, *ues*).

Ex. *un homme caché*, a concealed man ; *une beauté célébrée*, a celebrated beauty ; *des gens désespérés*, desperate people.

Both participles are declined like adjectives, and have to agree with the noun they qualify, whenever they are not used as mere parts of the verb, but have the meaning of adjectives. The following rule will easily determine in what capacity they are used.

1. They are parts of the verb when they express an action, and consequently have an object. In this case they remain unchanged.

Ex. *Je l'ai vue charmant tout le monde*, I have seen her charming (who charmed) everybody ; *mon ami, étonnant les assistants, tomba sur eux*, my friend, astonishing the bystanders, fell upon them.

2. They are adjectives when they express, not an action, but a quality. Then they agree with the noun which they qualify.

Ex. *C'est une femme charmante*, she is a charming woman ; *quelle nouvelle étonnante !* what surprising news !

It must be remembered, that as adjectives, they are invariably placed after the noun, contrary to the usage in English.

3. The Participle Past agrees, besides, with the subject of the verb, whenever it is used with the auxiliary *être*.

Ex. *Elle est étonnée*, she is astonished ; *ils se sont battus*, they have fought ; *elles s'étaient promenées*, they had walked.

4. The Participle Past, when used with the auxiliary *avoir*, agrees with the direct object, when this object precedes it.

Ex. *Quelle femme avez-vous vue ?* which woman have you seen ? *combien des hommes a-t-il tués ?* how many of the men has he killed ? *je l'ai rencontrée*, I have met her ; *les choses que j'ai oubliées*, the things I have forgotten.

EXERCISE.

These ladies are charming ; they have entertained us for an hour ; but now they will not stay, for you have frightened them. I left them in an embarrassing situation, and even his consoling words had no effect. This was one of the ladies whom we had obliged, and yet she has ill-treated and deceived us. Your servant has washed your plates, but he has not wiped them ; they are spoilt. She had spoken to us, but she has not saluted us with her usual kindness. This amusing story is not true ; it has been invented by a celebrated novelist. He told us several instances of amazing bravery ; they have astonished us beyond measure. How many of them has he seen himself ? He has seen all those which he related to us.

CHAPTER VI.

ADVERBS.

Adverbs are words so called because they principally serve to qualify verbs ; they may, however, qualify adjectives and other adverbs also. But, whatever may be their uses, they always remain unchanged.

Ex. *Vous avez fait bien*, you have done well ; *elle est bien belle*, she is very handsome ; *vous écrivez bien négligemment*, you write very negligently.

There are four different kinds of adverbs, according to their manner of formation :

1. *Simple Adverbs*, or such as are nothing but adverbs, and are not derived from other parts of speech. Such are *très*, *fort*, and *bien*, very ; *peu*, little ; *mal*, ill ; *ici*, here ; *là*, there ; *tôt*, soon ; *tard*, late.

2. *Derivative Adverbs*, or such as are derived from adjectives. This is done by the addition of *ment* (the Latin ablative of *mens*, *mente*.)

a. To the adjective simply, when it ends in a vowel.

Ex. *riche* : *richement*, richly ; *poli* : *poliment*, politely ; *ingénù* : *ingénument*, ingenuously.

b. To the feminine of the Adjective, if the masculine ends in a consonant.

Ex. *grand* : *grandement*, grandly ; *franc* : *franchement*, frankly ; *naïf* : *naïvement*, artlessly ; *frais* : *franchement*, freshly ; *nouveau* : *nouvellement*, newly.

c. By a change of the final syllables *ant* and *ent* into *amment* and *emment*, which are both pronounced like the first.

Ex. *constant* : *constamment*, constantly ; *éloquent* : *éloquemment*, eloquently.

Except *lent*, which makes *lentement*, slowly ; and *présent*, which makes *présentement*, presently.

d. The following Adverbs accent the final *e* of the Adjective, when adding *ment* :

aveuglément, blindly. *énormément*, enormously.
commodément, commodiously. *opiniâtrément*, obstinately.
conformément, conformably.

EXERCISE.

This orator spoke very eloquently, but he did not touch the heart. his sentiments were not delivered ingenuously. He entered blindly into the conspiracy and suffered severely. I will tell you frankly that you have deserved abundantly all your punishments, for you have

acted wickedly, and the judge has treated you after all very leniently. She endured her sufferings patiently, and gave us a good example. He was one of the best writers of the last century ; he thought deeply and wrote nobly. The battle was fought conformably to his orders, and all went well, but instantly after his death every thing was in confusion.

3. *Compound Adverbs*, or such as consist of a noun or a preposition, as *d'abord*, at first or at once ; *en effet*, indeed ; *par force*, forcibly ; *à présent*, now ; *après demain*, after to-morrow.

Adverbs of Quantity, when followed by nouns, must be connected with them by the preposition *de*, of ; which is not used in English.

Ex. *beaucoup de peine*, much trouble ; *peu d'argent*, little money ; *trop de zèle*, too much zeal ; *moins de bruit*, less noise.

Except only *bien*, very much, a great deal, which is not followed by *de*, but by the partitive article.

Ex. *bien de la peine*, very much trouble ; *bien des amis*, very many friends.

EXERCISE.

Much money and little wisdom are less desirable than much wisdom and little money. He has as many friends as I, but he has more enemies. I had not enough patience with this child ; perhaps she had too many faults. How many dollars have you in your purse ? I have not enough to pay him. Few men learn by experience. Give me a little attention and I will tell you more secrets than your wife. He did it with less hesitation than his brother, who has more prudence. Too much zeal is almost as bad as too little, but no zeal at all is fatal to any enterprise.

Negative Adverbs, used with the verb, require, as has already been stated, the addition of *ne* before the verb, whether they precede or follow the verb.

Ex. *Je n'ai vu rien*, I have seen nothing ; *rien ne peut être mieux*, nothing can be better ; *il n'y est jamais*, he is never there ; *jamais de ma vie n'ai-je vu le pareil*, never in my life have I seen the like.

EXERCISE.

I have not seen him this week ; he has never been absent so long, and nothing is more probable than his death. She said nothing to me, and I said nothing to her ; have you ever heard of two more silent persons ? Nobody came to her party, and she had invited all. I know nobody in this city, for I have never been here before. We have no more time to give you, and we have only one room in which we live. Nothing will persuade me that he is not dishonest ; I have never seen a more wicked face.

COMPARATIVE DEGREES.

Adverbs form their Comparatives and Superlatives in precisely the same manner as Adjectives.

Ex. *plus richement*, more richly ; *moins abondamment*, less abundantly ; *le plus gaiment*, most gaily ; *le moins promptement*, least promptly.

The irregular comparatives of Adjectives have their corresponding irregular comparatives of Adverbs, and both are here placed side by side for the better comparison.

			COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
Adj.	<i>bon</i> ,	good ;	<i>meilleur</i> , better ;	<i>le meilleur</i> , best.
Adv.	<i>bien</i> ,	well ;	<i>mieux</i> , better ;	<i>le mieux</i> , best.
Adj.	<i>mauvais</i> ,	bad ;	<i>pire</i> , worse ;	<i>le pire</i> , worst.
Adv.	<i>mal</i> ,	ill ;	<i>pis</i> , worse ;	<i>le pis</i> , worst.
Adj.	<i>petit</i> ,	small ;	<i>moindre</i> , smaller ;	<i>le moindre</i> , smallest.
Adv.	<i>peu</i> ,	little ;	<i>moins</i> , less ;	<i>le moins</i> , least.

It will be seen that in English adjectives and adverbs frequently look alike, as is the case with better and worse, and best and worst ; whilst in French the two parts of speech differ essentially. This requires, therefore, careful attention.

EXERCISE.

He did it more promptly than we expected. He behaved most handsomely, although he was the least informed of all. I like him better every day ; but his brother is the better man of the two. Have

you seen a worse child than Mary? No; but Anna is the worst of all the children. Is she worse to-day or better? She was worse yesterday, and the doctor said that to-morrow will be the worst day of her illness. I have drunk a better wine, but I have never seen a worse cook. He does it well, but she does it badly.

CHAPTER VII.

PREPOSITIONS.

Prepositions placed before nouns, pronouns, and verbs, show their relation to each other in the same sentence.

According to their uses they are either

Simple prepositions, which are placed immediately before the nouns—

Ex. *le fruit de l'arbre*, the fruit of the tree; *la mort de César*, the death of Cæsar; *tué par lui*, killed by him;—or,

Compound prepositions, which require an additional preposition, *de* or *à*, to connect them with the noun.

Ex. *quant à vous*, concerning you; *vis-à-vis de la maison*, opposite the house; *jusqu'à midi*, until noon; *près de Genève*, near Geneva.

The three Prepositions which occur most frequently are : *de*, *à* and *par*.

De corresponds to all the meanings of the English *of* or *from*, and in passive constructions to *by*.

Ex. *un homme de génie*, a man of genius; *je viens de Rome*, I come from Rome; *elle est aimée de ses parents*, she is beloved by her parents.

A corresponds to the English *to*; with names of cities, to *at* or *in*, and generally expresses purpose or intention.

Ex. *J'ai beaucoup à faire*, I have much to do; *donnez-la à Jean*, give it to John; *il est à Londres*, he is in London; *cela*

arriva à Paris, that happened at Paris ; *est-il bon à manger*, is it good to eat (for the purpose of eating) ?

Par corresponds to the English *through*, and in passive constructions to *by*, when a physical agency is referred to, while *de* is used when the agency is moral or mental.

Ex. *Passez par ma chambre*, go through my chamber ; *il fut tué par un soldat*, he was killed by a soldier ; *elle l'a fait par pitié*, she did it from (through) pity.

Dans and *en* both mean *in*, but with this distinction, that *dans* always means within and into. and is accompanied by the article, whilst *en* has no such meaning and is used only when the Noun has no Article.

Ex. *Il entra dans la ville*, he entered into the city ; *elle n'est pas dans la maison*, she is not inside the house.

Il est en France, he is in France ; *il faut le faire en hâte*, it must be done in haste.

When Prepositions are placed before Verbs they require to be followed by the Infinitive (instead of the Participle Present used in English).

Ex. Without saying a word, *sans dire mot* ; he was scolded for having done it, *il fut blâmé de l'avoir fait* ; it is good for eating, *il est bon à manger*.

Except *en* when it means *by* or *while*, which is followed by the Part. Present.

Ex. *Il tomba en descendant*, he fell while coming down ; *on l'apprend en étudiant*, it is acquired by studying it.

EXERCISE.

I shall not leave you without explaining to you my motives. Has he not found his book while looking for the other things? She will have paid you well by giving you that sum of money; are you not content with a hundred dollars? This house is good for the winter, but it is not cool enough for the summer. He was not found in the suburbs, but they discovered him within Paris. I went there before them, and thus I obtained a seat before you. While going to the concert we discussed the matter, but we did not decide on any thing. Did you see

ab en when you passed through that country, or did you return without having met them? He was punished because he said the laws were good to punish but not to prevent crime. As for me, I know nothing of it; but as for you, you know every thing. He lives opposite us, and we see him often fall asleep while reading.

CHAPTER VIII.

CONJUNCTIONS.

Conjunctions serve to connect words in the same sentence, or sentences and parts of sentences with each other.

Ex. *Pierre et Paul*, Peter and Paul; *je le vis et je le saluai*, I saw him and spoke to him; *il l'a fait et elle ne l'a pas fait*, he has done it and she has not done it.

Et besides meaning *and*, is also repeated, and then corresponds to the English as well—as, or both.

Ex. *Je l'ai et vu et admiré*, I have both seen and admired him; *on a pris et le père et le fils*, they have caught the father as well as the son.

Ou, meaning *or*, may also be repeated, and then corresponds to the English either—or.

Ex. *Ou le roi ou le ministre va parler*, either the king or the minister will speak; *ou il s'est trompé ou il nous a déçus*, he has either been mistaken or he has deceived us.

The negative alternative is expressed by *ni—ni*, which requires, like all negative expressions, the additional use of *ne* before the verb.

Ex. *Ni le roi ni le ministre ne parlera*, neither the king nor the minister will speak; *je ne l'ai ni vu ni salué*, I have neither seen him nor greeted him; *ni l'un ni l'autre*, neither the one nor the other.

Que corresponds to the English *that* and loses its *e* before words beginning with a vowel or mute *h*; it cannot be omitted in

French as in English, but must be used (and supplied) whenever two verbs are connected with each other.

Ex. I know he is here, *je sais qu'il est ici* ; I hope you will come, *j'espère que vous viendrez* ; he said he would go, *il dit qu'il irait*.

Si, when it corresponds to the English conditional *if*, can in French be followed only by two tenses of the Verb ; by the Present Indicative, for the English Present and Future ; and by the Imperfect Indicative, for any other Tenses or Moods that may be used in English :

Ex. If he comes, *s'il vient* ; if he will say yes, *s'il dit qu'oui* ; if he should come to-morrow, *s'il venait demain* ; if she were to promise again, *si elle promettait de nouveau*.

EXERCISE.

I have given him both my love and my esteem, and I shall withdraw neither the one nor the other for all your arguments. I saw he was angry, and since I did not wish to make matters worse or to engage myself in the quarrel, I went away. Either you or he must do it, for it has to be done to-day, or you as well as he will suffer severely. I had seen neither your friend nor his wife when I met you ; and if you were never to pardon me for it, I cannot say otherwise. If he comes this morning, tell him I will be there certainly, and if he will wait, my library is open ; if he should refuse to wait, you must lock the house. She would not sing last night because she was not well ; perhaps she will sing to-day, since she says she is quite well again.

CHAPTER IX.

INTERJECTIONS.

Interjections are short, indeclinable words which serve to express the sudden emotions of man. They are, of course, as numerous and varied as the latter. The following are the

most familiar, whilst others are either of rare occurrence, as *e. g.*, only in poets, or of objectionable nature :

Ah, ai, ouf—of pain ; *hélas*, alas ; *fi, fi donc*, fie ; *gare, hem, holdà, ho*—of warning ; *bravo, vivat*—of applause ; *ouais ?* of surprise ; *holà, hem, ho, eh*—of calling ; *chut*, hush !—*allons, alerte, vite*—of encouragement ; *tiens*—look, look here !

GRAMMAR OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE.

PART II.

FOR ADVANCED SCHOLARS.

IN the First Part of this Grammar the different parts of speech have been considered simply with a view to their form and ordinary meaning.

In the Second Part they will be treated as forming part of a sentence, and with a view to their relations to each other. The same order will be observed as in the First Part, and the student is expected continually to refer to the elementary explanations there given, which will not be repeated.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

PREFACE	PAGE 2
---------------	--------

CHAPTER I.

NOUNS.

<i>Gender of Nouns</i>	9
By Signification	10
By Termination	12
Exercise	17
<i>Number of Nouns</i>	18
Exercise	20
Plural of Proper Names	21
Exercise	22
Plural of Compound Nouns	23
Exercise	25
Plural of Abstract Nouns	26

CHAPTER II.

ARTICLES.

Formation	26
Place of the Article	28
Repetition of the Article	28
Use of the Article	29
Use of the Definite Article	30
Use of the Indefinite Article	30
Exercise	31
Use of the Partitive Article	32
Exercise	32
Exercise	33

	PAGE
The Article with Proper Names.....	34
Exercise	35
The Article with Names of Countries, etc.....	36
Exercise	37
The Article with Names of Months, etc.....	38
Exercise	38
The Article with Nouns in Apposition.....	39
Exercise	39
Exercise.....	40
The Article with Names of Measure.....	41
Exercise	41
Exercise	42
Omission of the Article.	42
Exercise	43
Exercise	45
English Compound Nouns in French.....	45
Exercise.....	47
<i>Monsieur, Madame</i> , etc.	48
Exercise.....	52

CHAPTER III.

ADJECTIVES.

Agreement of Adjectives.....	52
<i>Nu, demi, feu</i> , etc.....	53
Adjectives as Adverbs.....	55
Exercise.....	56
Compound Adjectives.....	56
Adjectives qualifying several Nouns.....	57
Adjectives used as Nouns.....	58
Exercise	58
The Place of Adjectives.....	59
List of Adjectives with double meaning.....	59
Exercise.....	63
Comparative Degrees.....	63
Exercise.....	65
The Relative Superlative.....	66
Exercise.....	67
The Absolute Superlative.....	68
Exercise.....	69
Regimen of Adjectives.....	69

	PAGE
List of Adjectives and their Prepositions.....	70
Exercise.....	72
Adjectives of Measure.....	72
Exercise.....	74
Adjectives of Number.....	74
Cardinal Numbers.....	74
Definitions of Time.....	75
Exercise.....	78
Ordinal Numbers and other Numerals.....	79
Exercise.....	81

CHAPTER IV.

PRONOUNS.

<i>Personal Pronouns</i>	82
Conjunctive Personal Pronouns.....	84
Subjects (as nominatives).....	84
Direct Object (accusative).....	87
Exercise.....	90
Indirect Object (Dative).....	90
Exercise.....	93
Indirect Object (Genitive).....	93
Meaning and use of <i>en</i>	93
Exercise.....	96
Place of Conjunctive Personal Pronouns.....	97
As Subject.....	97
Exercise.....	99
As Object.....	99
Exercise.....	100
Repetition of Personal Pronouns....	101
Exercise.....	102
Personal Pronouns for Possessive Pronouns.....	102
Exercise.....	104
How to translate <i>it</i>	104
Exercise.....	106
Personal Pronouns with Neuter Verbs.....	106
Reflexive Personal Pronouns.....	107
Absolute Personal Pronouns.....	108
Exercise.....	109
Exercise.....	111

	PAGE
The Pronoun <i>soi</i>	111
Exercise	112
<i>Possessive Pronouns</i>	113
Exercise.....	114
With Articles, etc.....	114
Exercise.....	116
<i>Demonstrative Pronouns</i>	116
Exercise	118
Absolute forms.....	119
Exercise	120
With <i>ci</i> and <i>là</i>	120
Exercise	122
<i>Relative Pronouns</i>	123
Exercise	125
<i>Quoi</i> and <i>où</i>	126
Exercise.....	127
<i>Absolute and Interrogative Pronouns</i>	127
Exercise.....	129
<i>Lequel</i> and <i>quel</i>	130
Exercise.....	131
<i>Indefinite Pronouns</i>	131
Used alone.....	131
Exercise.....	134
Used with Nouns.....	140
Exercise.....	141
Used with or without Nouns.....	142
Exercise.....	145
The same continued.....	146
Exercise.....	150
Followed by <i>que</i>	151
Exercise.....	152

CHAPTER V.

VERBS.

Uses of Verbs.....	154
The Verb and its Subject.....	157
Exercise.....	159

	PAGE
The Verb and Collective Nouns.....	160
Exercise.....	161
The Place of the Subject.....	162
Exercise.....	164
The Place of the Object.....	164
Exercise.....	167
The Tenses and Moods of the Verb.....	167
The Infinitive.....	167
Exercise.....	171
The Present.....	172
Exercise.....	173
The Past Tenses.....	173
Exercise.....	176
The Compound Past Tenses.....	177
Exercise.....	179
The Future.....	179
Exercise.....	181
The Conditional.....	181
Exercise.....	182
The Imperative.....	182
The Subjunctive Mood.....	183
The Sequence of Tenses.....	184
The Use of the Subjunctive.....	185
Four Exercises.....	192
The Participle Present.....	194
Exercise.....	195
The Participle Past.....	196
Exercise.....	199
Special Rules on the same subject.....	200
Exercise.....	202
The English Auxiliary Verbs in French.....	202
<i>Pouvoir</i>	202
Exercise.....	204
<i>Vouloir</i>	205
Exercise.....	206
<i>Devoir</i>	207
Exercise.....	208
<i>Laisser</i>	209
Exercise.....	210

	PAGE
<i>Falloir</i>	210
Exercise.....	212
Idiomatic Use of Verbs.....	212
<i>Avoir</i> and <i>y avoir</i>	212
Exercise.....	212
<i>Etre</i>	217
<i>Faire</i>	220
Exercise.....	222
<i>Aller</i> and <i>Venir</i>	223
Exercise.....	224

CHAPTER VI.

ADVERBS.

Place of Adverbs.....	227
<i>Si, aussi, tant, and autant</i>	228
Exercise.....	229
<i>Beaucoup</i> and <i>bien</i>	229
Interrogative Adverbs.....	231
Exercise.....	232
Negative Adverbs.....	233
Exercise.....	236

CHAPTER VII.

PREPOSITIONS.

Special Rules on some Prepositions.....	239
Exercise.....	242
Same subject continued.....	242
Lists of Verbs with their Prepositions.....	248
Exercise.....	249

CHAPTER VIII.

CONJUNCTIONS.....	250
-------------------	-----

CHAPTER IX.

INTERJECTIONS.....	255
--------------------	-----

FRENCH GRAMMAR.

PART II.

CHAPTER I.

NOUNS.

THE two most important relations, which influence the form of French Nouns in a sentence, and through them affect all words connected with them, are their Gender and their Number, the manner in which they convey the idea of sex, and that of a singular or plural number.

I.—GENDER OF NOUNS.

The idea of sex is expressed by the Gender of Nouns, which in French is double: Masculine and Feminine. The Neuter Gender of the Latin language, from which most French Nouns are derived, has been lost at a time when all Latin terminations were lost; and hence, to the eye and to the ear, the distinction between Masculine and Neuter ceased to be clear. Hence, Nouns which were Neuter in Latin, are either Masculine or Feminine in French, though the majority belong to the former class. Hence, also, Nouns which are Neuter in English, are either Masculine or Feminine in French.

The Gender, in French, is determined—

a. By the *Meaning* of the nouns. This gives the following rules:

Masculine are :

1. The names of male beings.

Ex. *Alexandre ; César ; cheval*, horse ; *éléphant*, elephant.

Except the following words, which, for etymological reasons, are feminine, although they designate men : *sentinelle*, sentinel ; *estafette*, express ; *vedette*, mounted sentinel, and *vigie*, lookout. *Sentinelle* is occasionally used as a masculine.

2. The names of beings generally considered as male.

Ex. *ange*, angel ; *génie*, genius ; *centaure*, centaur.

This includes all diminutive names of animals, even when the original name was feminine.

Ex. *le lionceau*, a young lion ; *un sourisceau*, a young mouse ; *un becasseau*, a young woodcock.

3. The names of days, months, and seasons.

Ex. *dimanche*, Sunday ; *Janvier*, January ; *été*, summer.

Except saints' days, where *la fête* is understood ; as, *La Ste. Jean*, St. John's day ; *La Toussaint*, All Saints' Day.

4. The words of decimal nomenclature.

Ex. *centime*, cent ; *gramme*.

5. The names of metals and so-called elementary bodies.

Ex. *or*, gold ; *fer*, iron ; *oxigène*, oxygen ; *sulfate*, sulphate.

Except *platine*, which the Academy treats as a feminine.

6. The names of trees and shrubs.

Ex. *pin*, beech ; *chêne*, oak.

Except *yeuse*, holly ; *arbrépine*, hawthorn ; *bourdaie*, alder ; *épine*, thorn ; *ronce*, brier, and *vigne*, vine.

7. The names of winds.

Ex. *Est*, East ; *Sud*, South ; *Ouest*, West ; *Nord*, North.

Except *bise* and *tramontane* ; *brise* and *monssons*, monsoon.

8. The names of mountains.

Ex. *Chimboraso* ; *Cénis* ; *Liban*, Lebanon ; *Etna*.

Except those used only in the plural: *Alpes*, *Pyrénées*, *Cordüières* and *Vosges*.

9. The names of cities, towns and villages.

Ex. *Londres*, *Paris*, *Berlin*, *Vienne*.

Except those derived from a Latin feminine, as *Roma* : *Rome* ; *Mantua* : *Mantoue* ; and those which are used with a feminine article, as *La Rochelle*, *La Nouvelle Orléans*.

When towns are personified, they are always addressed as feminines.

Ex. *Oh malheureuse Tyr ! dans-quelles mains es-tu tombée !*
Oh, unhappy Tyre, in whose hands art thou fallen !

10. The names of countries which do not end in mute *e*.

Ex. *Danemarck*, Denmark ; *Piémont*, Piedmont.

11. All other parts of speech, like numerals, verbs, adjectives, prepositions, etc., when used as nouns.

Ex. *le manger*, eating ; *le pourquoi*, the wherefore ; *un si*, an if ; *le tiers*, the third ; *le noir*, the black.

Except *la moitié*, half ; and technical terms like *une parallèle*, a parallel (*ligne* being understood).

Feminine are :

1. The names of female beings.

Ex. *Vénus* ; *déesse*, goddess ; *nymphé* ; *femme*, woman.

2. The names of virtues and qualities.

Ex. *la bonté*, kindness ; *l'opiniâtreté*, obstinacy.

Except *courage* and *mérite*.

b. By the *Termination* of the noun. This gives the following rule :

Nouns ending in mute *e* are generally feminine, and all others generally masculine.

This rule is, however, subject to numerous exceptions.

most of which have been given in the First Part of this Grammar. They arise mainly from these two considerations, which will guide the educated foreigner better in ascertaining the gender of French nouns than a multitude of rules :

1st. The meaning of a noun prevails over the mere form.

2d. The derivation of a noun from a Latin word aids in so much, as the original gender is generally preserved, the neuter, of course, being excepted.

It must be borne in mind, also, that these and other rules in French are subject to the influence of fashion and caprice. Thus *affaire* and *rencontre* were formerly both masculine, the latter as late as the date of J. B. Rousseau ; they are now feminine. *Insulte*, *âge* and *art* have changed their gender in more recent times. *Carrosse*, formerly a feminine noun, became masculine, because Louis XIV., as a boy, forgot its gender, and called for *Le carrosse* ! This uncertainty of genders has led to the fact, that many nouns are even now of both genders.

An important class of nouns are those which have to be applied to both sexes. We observe here the following rules :

1. When they end in mute *e*, they remain unchanged :

Ex. *aigle*, eagle ; *cygne*, swan ; *esclave*, slave ; *sauvage*, savage ; *créole*, creole.

Except	<i>doge</i> ,	Fem. <i>dogaresse</i> .	<i>druide</i> ,	Fem. <i>druidesse</i> .
	<i>drôle</i> ,	<i>drôlesse</i> .	<i>ierogne</i> ,	<i>ierognesse</i> .
	<i>ogre</i> ,	<i>ogresse</i> .	<i>pauvre</i> ,	<i>pauvresse</i> .
	<i>tigre</i> ,	<i>tigresse</i> .		

2. Some have a different termination for the feminine :

Ex. <i>loup</i> ,	Fem. <i>louve</i> .	<i>daim</i> ,	Fem. <i>daine</i> .
<i>canard</i> ,	<i>cane</i> .	<i>chevreuil</i> ,	<i>chevrete</i> .
<i>compagnon</i> ,	<i>compagne</i> .	<i>bachdier</i> ,	<i>bachete</i> .
<i>farceur</i> ,	<i>farceuse</i> .	<i>serviteur</i> ,	<i>servante</i> .
<i>jouteur</i> ,	<i>jouteuse</i> .		

3. The following nouns retain their gender as well as their form, whether applied to man or woman :

<i>Agresseur</i> ,	masc.	aggressor.	<i>guide</i> ,	masc.	guide.
<i>amateur</i> ,	masc.	amateur.	<i>monstre</i> ,	masc.	monster.
<i>ange</i> ,	masc.	angel.	<i>orateur</i> ,	masc.	orator.
<i>appui</i> ,	masc.	support.	<i>partisan</i> ,	masc.	partisan.
<i>artisan</i> ,	masc.	tradesman.	<i>philosophe</i> ,	masc.	philosopher.
<i>artiste</i> ,	masc.	artist.	<i>personne</i> ,	fem.	person.
<i>assassin</i> ,	masc.	murderer.	<i>poète</i> ,	masc.	{ poet.
<i>auteur</i> ,	masc.	{ author.			{ poetess.
		{ authoress.	<i>pratique</i> ,	fem.	customer.
<i>bête</i> ,	fem.	fool.	<i>précepteur</i> ,	masc.	preceptor.
<i>botaniste</i> ,	masc.	botanist.	<i>prédécesseur</i> ,	masc.	predecessor.
<i>bourreau</i> ,	masc.	tormentor.	<i>professeur</i> ,	masc.	professor.
<i>caution</i> ,	fem.	security.	<i>prosauteur</i> ,	masc.	proser.
<i>censeur</i> ,	masc.	editor.	<i>rédacteur</i> ,	masc.	{ writer in
<i>churlatan</i> ,	masc.	quack.			{ newspapers.
<i>chef</i> ,	masc.	chief.	<i>secrétaire</i> ,	masc.	secretary.
<i>commis</i> ,	masc.	clerk.	<i>souscripteur</i> ,	masc.	subscriber.
<i>connaissance</i> ,	fem.	acquaintance.	<i>successeur</i> ,	masc.	successor.
<i>diable</i> ,	masc.	{ a passionate person, or one who succeeds in diffi-			
		{ cult undertakings.			
<i>défenseur</i> ,	masc.	defender.	<i>témoin</i> ,	masc.	witness.
<i>détracteur</i> ,	masc.	slanderer.	<i>traducteur</i> ,	masc.	translator.
<i>disciple</i> ,	masc.	disciple.	<i>tyran</i> ,	masc.	tyrant.
<i>dupe</i> ,	fem.	dupe.	<i>vainqueur</i> ,	masc.	vanquisher.
<i>écrivain</i> ,	masc.	writer.	<i>versificateur</i> ,	masc.	versifier.
<i>gage</i> ,	masc.	pledge.	<i>victime</i> ,	fem.	victim.

Enfant, child, also is invariable, but takes the feminine article when applied to a girl, as *la pauvre enfant*, the poor little girl.

4. The following nouns occur both as masculine and as feminine, without any change of meaning :

Amour, which is masculine in the singular and feminine in the plural, unless it designates little amours.

Ex. *Un vif amour*, warm love; *il n'est point d'éternelles amours*, there is no everlasting love.

Automne is masculine when the adjective stands before it, and feminine when it follows it.

Ex. *Et toi, riant automne!* and thou, smiling autumn! *une automne nouvelle*, a new autumn.

Couleur, color, is feminine, except when it designates any particular color. It then becomes masculine.

Ex. *Une belle couleur*, a fine color; *un beau couleur rose*, a pretty pink-color.

Couple, couple, is masculine when it designates the union of a man and a woman in marriage and friendship, and feminine when it merely serves to express the number two.

Ex. *Quel beau couple!* what a handsome couple! *Donnez-moi une couple d'œufs*, give me a couple (two) of eggs.

When two of the same kind go together by necessity, *paire* is substituted for *couple*, as in English.

Ex. *Une paire de gants*, a pair of gloves; *une paire de bottes*, a pair of boots.

Délice retains, from its Latin original, the peculiarity of being masculine in the singular and feminine in the plural.

Ex. *C'est un vrai délire*, this is perfect delight; *craignez ses trompeuses délices*, fear her treacherous charms.

Gens, people, is essentially masculine, only it gives the feminine form to those adjectives which immediately precede it.

Ex. *Toutes ces bonnes gens*, all these good people; *instruits par l'expérience, les vieilles gens sont soupçonneux*, taught by experience, old people are suspicious.

Hymne, hymn, is feminine when used to designate Christian hymns, and masculine in all other cases.

Ex. *Chantons ces belles hymnes de Luther*, let us sing those beautiful hymns by Luther; *un hymne adressé à Vénus*, a hymn to Venus.

Orge, barley, is feminine as long as it means barley standing, and becomes masculine when barley is prepared for use.

Ex. *Voilà de belles orges*, that is fine barley; *l'orge mondé*, peeled barley.

Orgue, organ, is, like *délice*, masculine in the singular and feminine in the plural.

Ex. *Cet orgue est excellent*, this organ is excellent; *y a-t-il de bonnes orgues ?* are there fine organs there ?

Œuvre, work, is feminine when it means any one great work of art, etc., and masculine when it has the sense of deed or creation. In the plural, where it means the works of an author, it is always feminine.

Ex. *C'est une œuvre brillante*, cet opéra, this opera is a brilliant work. *Les œuvres complètes de Voltaire*, Voltaire's complete works.

5. The following nouns occur, also, as masculines and as feminines, but they change their meaning with their gender :

MASCULINE.		FEMININE.	
<i>Aide</i>	aid, adjutant	<i>aide</i>	assistance
<i>Aigle</i>	{ eagle, a reading	<i>aigle</i>	{ the Roman stand-
	{ desk (at church)		{ ard
<i>barbe</i>	a Barbary horse	<i>barbe</i>	beard
<i>berce</i>	redbreast	<i>berce</i>	cow-parsnip
<i>capre</i>	privateer	<i>capre</i>	caper
<i>carpe</i>	wrist (in anatomy)	<i>carpe</i>	carp
<i>cartouche</i>	scroll	<i>cartouche</i>	cartridge
<i>cloaque</i>	sink	<i>cloaque</i>	ancient aqueduct
<i>coche</i>	{ stage-coach, or	<i>coche</i>	{ notch
	{ packet-boat on		{ fat sow
	{ a river		
<i>cravate</i>	Croat	<i>cravate</i>	cravat
<i>crêpe</i>	crape	<i>crêpe</i>	pancake
<i>espace</i>	space	<i>espace</i>	space (in printing)
<i>follicule</i>	follicle	<i>follicule</i>	pod
<i>forêt</i>	drill	<i>forêt</i>	forest

MASCULINE.		FEMININE.	
<i>foudre</i>	{ large tun, thunderbolt (in elevated style)	<i>foudre</i>	{ thunderbolt (literally)
<i>givre</i>	hoar-frost	<i>givre</i>	{ snake (in heraldry)
<i>greffe</i>	register's office	<i>greffe</i>	graft
<i>guide</i>	guide	<i>guide</i>	rein
<i>gueule</i>	gules, in heraldry	<i>gueule</i>	mouth of animals
<i>héliotrope</i>	turnsoll (flower)	<i>héliotrope</i>	{ heliotrope, (precious stone)
<i>interligne</i>	interline	<i>interligne</i>	lead (in printing)
<i>iris</i>	rainbow	<i>iris</i>	sprig-crystal
<i>laque</i>	China varnish	<i>laque</i>	gum-lac
<i>lis</i>	lily	<i>Lis or Lys</i>	Lys (a river)
<i>livre</i>	book	<i>livre</i>	pound
<i>loutre</i>	{ hat or muff of otter hair	<i>loutre</i>	otter
<i>manche</i>	handle	<i>manche</i>	{ sleeve, the British Channel
<i>mémoire</i>	bill	<i>mémoire</i>	memory
<i>merci</i>	thanks	<i>merci</i>	mercy
<i>mode</i>	mood	<i>mode</i>	fashion
<i>môle</i>	mole, pier	<i>môle</i>	(a surgical word)
<i>moufle</i>	a tackle of pulleys	<i>moufle</i>	mitten
<i>moule</i>	mould	<i>moule</i>	{ muscle (a shell-fish)
<i>offlee</i>	office, business	<i>offlee</i>	pantry, larder
<i>ombre</i>	{ a game at cards, a fish	<i>ombre</i>	shade
<i>parallèle</i>	comparison	<i>parallèle</i>	parallel
<i>pendule</i>	pendulum	<i>pendule</i>	clock
<i>Perche</i>	{ Perche (a prov. insect)	<i>perche</i>	pole, perch (a fish)
<i>période</i>	the highest pitch	<i>période</i>	period
<i>pique</i>	spade at cards	<i>pique</i>	pique, grudge
<i>piochin</i>	giant-snapper	<i>piochin</i>	peony (a flower)
<i>plane</i>	planescree	<i>plane</i>	plane (a tool)
<i>poule</i>	stove, canopy	<i>poule</i>	frying-pan
<i>ponte</i>	punto (at cards)	<i>ponte</i>	laying of eggs

MASCULINE.

FEMININE.

<i>poste</i>	post	<i>poste</i>	{ letter or horse post
<i>pourpre</i>	purple, a color,	<i>pourpre</i>	purple, a fabric
<i>prétexte</i>	pretext	<i>prétexte</i>	Roman virile robe
<i>réclame</i>	{ calling back a hawk	<i>réclame</i>	{ catch word (in printing)
<i>relâche</i>	relaxation	<i>relâche</i>	shelter (for a ship)
<i>remise</i>	livery coach	<i>remise</i>	coach-house
<i>serpentine</i>	Serpentarius	<i>serpentine</i>	snake-root
<i>sexe</i>	sextus	<i>sexe</i>	sexe (in theology)
<i>solde</i>	{ balance of an ac- count	<i>solde</i>	pay
<i>somme</i>	nap, slumber	<i>somme</i>	sum, load
<i>souris</i>	smile	<i>souris</i>	mouse
<i>tour</i>	turn, trick	<i>tour</i>	tower
<i>triomphe</i>	triumph	<i>triomphe</i>	trumps (in cards)
<i>trompette</i>	trumpeter	<i>trompette</i>	trumpet
<i>vague</i>	vague, airy plains	<i>vague</i>	wave, surge
<i>vase</i>	vase	<i>vase</i>	mud, slime
<i>vigogne</i>	{ cloth of Vigogne hair	<i>vigogne</i>	Llama
<i>voile</i>	veil	<i>voile</i>	sail

EXERCISE.

This great singer was a beautiful lady ; she was a stranger here, but your cousin and her husband had seen her before. There was hoar-frost this morning, and later it rained ; this will spoil the wheat and the barley. Mme. de Genlis was the governess of one of the kings of France and the author of several books. Her collected works have been published. Has your neighbor, the grocer, many customers now ? He has lost many who have gone to my other neighbor, the corporal's widow. When I was in that country I admired the excellent organs for which Holland is famous. He has paid for that book one pound sterling, and he thinks it cheap. She has played us a bad trick and deserves to be punished. That tower is very old ; it was probably built by the Romans. Our guide was a peasant woman, and when I lost the reins of my horse she helped me better than a man would have done. The trumpeter sounded his trumpet and summoned them

to surrender. We were all in the boat, when the wind tore the sail and my sister's veil was carried off.

II.—NUMBER OF NOUNS.

Common Nouns can represent one person or object, or several persons or objects, and, having a form for each, are said to be in the singular or plural.

Proper Names, designating but one person or object, can therefore have no plural as long as they are used as genuine proper names. It will be seen, hereafter, that they are frequently used as *Common Nouns*, and that they then occur in the plural also.

The rules on the formation of the plural have been fully given in the First Part of this Grammar.

The following nouns have no plural in French :

1. The names of *metals* and so-called elements, when used in their general meaning.

Ex. *l'or*, gold ; *la cuivre*, copper ; *le vif-argent*, mercury.

2. The names of *virtues* and *vices*, and certain conditions of man, being used as abstract nouns.

Ex. *l'ardeur*, zeal ; *la foi*, faith ; *l'adolescence*, youth ; *le bonheur*, happiness ; *le courage*, courage ; *l'hymen*, marriage.

3. *Adjectives* used as nouns.

Ex. *le beau*, the beautiful ; *le vrai*, truth.

4. *Infinitives of verbs* used as nouns.

Ex. *le lever et le coucher*, rising and retiring ; *le dormir*, sleeping.

Except when they are qualified by an adjective.

Ex. *les bons dîners*, good dinners ; *les rires ironiques*, ironical laughs.

5. *Foreign words* take a plural form when they have become fully naturalized ; as long as they are considered as genuine foreign words, they are used only in the singular. The follow-

ing words of such origin appear to have been naturalized, and occur in the plural form in standard authors :

<i>panorama</i>	panorama,	<i>lady</i>	lady,
<i>opéra</i>	opera,	<i>déficit</i>	deficit,
<i>impromptu</i>	impromptu,	<i>examen</i>	examination,
<i>debet</i>	balance	<i>imbroglio</i>	difficulty,
<i>duo</i>	duo,	<i>incognito</i>	incognito,
<i>écho</i>	echo,	<i>macaroni</i>	macaroni,
<i>alinéa</i>	paragraph,	<i>whig</i>	whig,
<i>à parté</i>	aside,	<i>numéro</i>	number,
<i>bravo</i>	bravo,	<i>piano</i>	piano,
<i>zéro</i>	zero,	<i>pensum</i>	task,
<i>quolibet</i>	quodlibet,	<i>récépissé</i>	receipt.
<i>placet</i>	petition,		

6. *Other parts of speech*, used for the occasion as nouns.

Ex. *Trois un de suite*, three ones in succession ; *les oui et les nons*, the ayes and noes.

The following nouns are singular in French and plural in English :

<i>avoine</i>	oats,	<i>métaphysique</i>	metaphysics,
<i>compensation</i>	amends,	<i>optique</i>	optics,
<i>cresson</i>	cresses,	<i>politique</i>	politics,
<i>fraisil</i>	cinders,	<i>pneumatique</i>	pneumatics,
<i>lie</i>	dregs,	<i>pourpre</i>	purples (a fever),
<i>linge</i>	clothes,	<i>rougeole</i>	measles.
<i>morale</i>	ethics, morals,		

The following nouns are plural in French and singular in English :

PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.
<i>accordailles</i>	marriage (articles),	<i>confins</i>	boundary,
<i>alentours</i>	neighborhood,	<i>connaissances</i>	knowledge,
<i>armoiries</i>	coat of arms,	<i>décombres</i>	rubbish,
<i>assistants</i>	audience,	<i>dépens</i>	expense,
<i>atours</i>	dress,	<i>épinards</i>	spinach,
<i>broussailles</i>	thicket,	<i>errements</i>	tracks,
<i>brouillis</i>	brushwood,	<i>fiançailles</i>	betrothal.

PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.
<i>fonts (de baptême)</i>	font (baptismal),	<i>meubles</i>	furniture,
<i>fraîs</i>	expense,	<i>nippes</i>	{ small wearing
<i>immuables</i>	real estate,		{ apparel,
<i>immondices</i>	filth,	<i>obsèques</i>	funeral,
<i>instances</i>	entreaty,	<i>ténèbres</i>	darkness,
<i>limites</i>	boundary,	<i>vergettes</i>	brush.
<i>ômes</i>	ghost,		

The following nouns have both numbers in French and are used in only one in English :

PLURAL.	SING. AND PLUR.	SINGULAR.	SING. AND PLUR.
Alms	<i>aumône, aumônes,</i>	Property	<i>bien, biens,</i>
pains	<i>peine, peines,</i>	kindness	<i>bonté, bontés,</i>
ashes	<i>cendre, cendres,</i>	hair	<i>cheveu, cheveux,</i>
riches	<i>richesse, richesses,</i>	advice	<i>conseil, conseils,</i>
news	<i>nouvelle, nouvelles,</i>	people (?)	<i>peuple, peuples,</i>
progress	<i>progrès, progrès,</i>	poetry	<i>poésie, poésies.</i>

EXERCISE.

Who bore the great expense of this enterprise? Burke's most famous book has the title: "The Beautiful and the Sublime." The boundary has been crossed and the war has begun. When did his betrothal take place, and will the wedding follow soon? It is the saddest sight that one can witness, to see a wedding followed immediately by a funeral. To give alms is the precious privilege of those who possess riches; to give advice belongs to the wise. The real estate was left to the children, the plate and the furniture in the house were given to the widow. My knowledge is not very extensive. Is he a relative, or only an acquaintance? Did you stand the examinations in law? He uses a coat of arms as if he were noble, but I have known his father, who used to gather brushwood in the forests and sold it for fuel. We stayed with her until dark; when they brought lights, we left her. Which do you like better, optics or acoustics? I have not studied these subjects.

PLURAL OF PROPER NAMES.

Proper Names, as has been mentioned before, do not form a plural as long as they serve to designate but one person or object. Thus they remain unchanged even when they represent two or more members of the same family, without forming a class of them.

Ex. *Les deux Corneille se sont distingués*, both Corneilles have been distinguished; *l'Espagne a produit les deux Sénèque*, Spain has given birth to the two Senecas.

They retain the singular form even before a plural article in elevated style, when their merit is referred to, by using a forcible ellipsis.

Ex. *Le mérite des Homère, des Virgile et des Milton*, the merit of (poets like) Homer, Virgil and Milton.

Proper names, however, are frequently used as common nouns, and then they will appear in the plural form. This is done—

1. When they are applied to whole classes of men, so that the individuality is completely sunk in the number.

Ex. *L'histoire des douze Césars*, the history of the twelve Cæsars; *les Stuarts n'y rentrèrent plus*, the Stuarts did not return there any more; *parlons des Pharaons*, let us speak of the Pharaos.

2. When they are used to designate character or qualities taken from the bearer of the proper name.

Ex. *Même aux Nérons on doit l'obéissance*, we must obey even (men like) the Neros. *Louis fit des Boileaux—Auguste des Virgiles*, Louis made (poets like) Boileaus—Augustus, Virgils.

3. When they are used to designate the works of the bearers of these proper names.

Ex. *Ce Musée possède deux Raphaëls*, that museum possesses two (paintings by) Raphael. *Les vrais Elzévir sont rares*, genuine (editions by the) Elzevirs are scarce.

EXERCISE.

My brother has bought two Horaces, one in Latin and one in English; I bought for myself a fine history of the twelve Cæsars, in four volumes, which are bound like my Virgils and my Juvenals. Great generals are forgotten, but the people will never forget the Washingtons and the Lafayettes. The last of the Bourbons, who has yet a throne in Europe, is the Queen of Spain; the Stuarts have long ceased to be a reigning family. The Christians taught the pagans to respect their rulers, and that we owe obedience even to men like Nero. It is a curious fact in the history of French literature that there were two Boileaus and two Racines. The Catos never travelled otherwise, neither alone nor with their armies.

PLURAL OF COMPOUND NOUNS.

Compound Nouns are in French only those which consist of two or three words connected with each other by a hyphen.

Ex. *Arc-en-ciel*, rainbow; *coq-à-l'âne*, funny story; *eau-de-vie*, brandy.

It will be seen at once that they do not often correspond in French and in English, the latter language having a tendency either to express them by a single word, as dandy and castor for *petit-maitre* and *porte-bailier*, or to write the two component elements in one word, as fireman, *pompier*, and bookseller, *libraire*.

French compound nouns, which are not united by hyphens, but written in one word, are of course subject to the elementary rules on the formation of the plural, and simply add an *s* to the last letter.

Ex. *pompier*, *pompiers*; *libraire*, *libraires*.

Except *gentil homme*, nobleman, which adds *s* to both parts and makes *gentils hommes*, and *Monseigneur*, *Monsieur*, *Madame*, and *Mademoiselle*, which make *Messieurs*, *Messieurs*, *Mesdames*, and *Mesdemoiselles*.

The general principles which alone can guide foreigners safely in learning how to form the plural of compound nouns are these:

1. Only such parts of a compound noun as are declinable when standing alone, can take the sign of the plural.

Ex. *des fausses clefs*, false keys : adjective and noun.

des chefs-lieux, principal towns : noun and noun.

des vice-présidents, vice-presidents : noun only.

des passe-partout, master keys : neither part.

2. Those parts only take the sign of the plural, which are used with a plural meaning.

Ex. *des arcs-en-ciel*, rainbows ; *ciel* is not plural.

des tête-à-tête, private interview ; *tête* is taken in the singular meaning.

Hence are obtained the following rules :

In compound nouns consisting of a noun and an adjective or a noun and a noun, without preposition, both parts take the sign of the plural.

Ex. *les francs-maçons*, the free-masons.

les basses-cours, the poultry-yards.

des choux-fleurs, cauliflowers.

les chefs-lieux, the principal towns.

Except the following :

des blanc-seings, blanks.

des terre-pleins, platforms.

des cheval-légers, lighthorse men.

des hôtels-dieu, hospitals (God's houses),

and a few others of rare occurrence.

Except, also, that the Adjective *demi* remains unchanged in compound nouns.

Ex. *des demi-heures*, half-hours ; *les demi-dieux*, the demigods.

Compound nouns, consisting of nouns connected by a preposition, give the sign of the plural to the first only.

Ex. *des arcs-en-ciel*, rainbows ; *deux chefs d'œuvre*, two masterpieces ; *les eaux-de-vie*, the brandies ; *des vers-à-soie*, silkworms.

Except *des coq-à-l'âne*, idle tales ; *des pied-à-terre*, temporary residences ; *des tête-à-tête*, private interviews

Compound nouns consisting partly or wholly of indeclinable parts of speech like adverbs, verbs or prepositions, take the sign of the plural only where it is admissible or not at all.

Ex. *les porte-huiliers* (verb and noun), the castors.

les avant-gardes (preposition and noun), the vanguards.

des essuie-mains (verb and noun), the towels.

des cure-dents (verb and noun), the toothpicks.

des passe-partout (verb and preposition), master-keys.

des pour-boire (preposition and verb), servants' fees.

Except that when the meaning is not plural, even the declinable parts of such compound nouns will not take the sign of the plural.

Ex. *les serre-tête*, the night-caps (for one head only).

des réveille-matin, alarm-clocks (the morning only).

des contre-poison, counter-poison (not against many poisons.)

The word *garde*, of frequent occurrence in compound nouns, forms a plural when it is the noun *garde*, a keeper, but it remains unchanged when it is the verb *garde*, referring to a thing.

Ex. *les gardes-chasse*, the game-keepers.

les garde-œil, the screen (preserve-sight).

Compound nouns consisting of foreign elements, remain unchanged in the plural.

Ex. *des pique-nique*, pic-nics (German).

des auto-da-fé, public executions (Portuguese).

des post-scriptum, postscripts (Latin).

A list of certain compound nouns, with their plural appended, is added here, because they contain component parts of rare occurrence alone or of peculiar meaning :

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
<i>aigue-marine</i>	aqua-marine	<i>aigues-marines</i>
<i>arc-boutant</i>	battress	<i>arcs-boutants</i>
<i>blanc-seing</i>	blank (signed)	<i>blancs-seings</i>
<i>boute-feu</i>	lintstock	<i>boute-feu</i>
<i>cheval-léger</i>	lighthorse	<i>cheval-légers</i>

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
<i>contre-danse</i>	cotillion	<i>contre-danses</i>
<i>épine-vinette</i>	raspberry	<i>épines-vinettes</i>
<i>ex-président</i> (and others compounded with <i>ex</i>)	ex-president	<i>ex-présidents</i>
<i>fesse-mathieu</i>	miser	<i>fesse-mathieu</i>
<i>fier-à-bras</i>	bully	<i>fier-à-bras</i>
<i>franc-alleu</i>	freehold	<i>francs-alleux</i>
<i>franc-réal</i>	a sort of pear	<i>francs-réals</i>
<i>gomme-gutte</i>	gamboge	<i>gommes-guttcs</i>
<i>guet-apens</i>	ambush	<i>guets-apens</i>
<i>grand'mère</i> (and all others in which <i>grand</i> is fol- lowed by an apostrophe)	grandmother	<i>grand'mères</i>
<i>havre-sac</i>	knapsack	<i>havre-sacs</i>
<i>loup-cervier</i>	lynx	<i>loups-cerviers</i>
<i>loup-garou</i>	were-wolf	<i>loups-garous</i>
<i>maître-ès-arts</i>	master of arts	<i>maîtres-ès-arts</i>
<i>mi-carème</i>	mid-lent	<i>mi-carèmes</i>
<i>nerf-férure</i>	overreach	<i>nerfs-férures</i>
<i>orang-outang</i>	orang-outang	<i>orangs-outangs</i>
<i>passe-port</i>	passport	<i>passe-ports</i>
<i>porc-épic</i>	porcupine	<i>porcs-épics</i>
<i>pie-grièche</i>	speckled magpie	<i>pies-grièches</i>
<i>semi-ton</i> (and all combined with <i>semi</i>)	semi-tone	<i>semi-tons</i>
<i>tragi-comédie</i>	tragi-comedy	<i>tragi-comédies</i>
<i>vice-roi</i> (and all combined with <i>vice</i>)	viceroy	<i>vice-rois</i>

EXERCISE.

Have you ever seen silkworms? they eat more voraciously than any other animals. These young ladies were his granddaughters, and there were two grandmothers in the house. We have lost the key to our room; perhaps you have a master-key, with which we can open the door. Send the game-keepers and let them come up to-morrow early; I want to go out shooting; tell them especially to see if there are any hedgehogs in the garden; I have never seen those animals. After the polonaise they danced several cotillions, and at last they

finished with a reel. Dandies are not contemptible, because they may be very good men; but they are often very ridiculous. Have you heard that the thieves broke last night into the poultry-yards of our neighbors and stole all their fowls? The vanguards of the two armies met when the rearguards were at the distance of twenty miles the one from the other. The masons of this country have done a great deal of good to both parties during the last war.

PLURAL OF ABSTRACT NOUNS.

Abstract Nouns which designate a quality, virtue or vice, a condition or a general idea, independent of any connection with actual life, can have no plural as long as they are strictly used in that sense.

Ex. *La bonté nous rend aimables*, kindness makes us agreeable; *la beauté passe, l'esprit reste*, beauty fades, wit remains; *la recherche du bonheur*, the search after happiness; *la charité est la première des vertus*, charity is the first virtue.

These same nouns are, however, frequently employed as common nouns, to designate special acts, the effects of such qualities or the actual results of general ideas, and then they appear in the plural form.

Ex. *Elle m'a comblé de bontés*, she has overwhelmed me with kind acts; *il y a des beautés de tous le temps*, there are beauties for all seasons; *que de petits bonheurs ne lui devons-nous pas!* how many moments of happiness we owe him! *faites vos charités en secret*, perform your charities in secret.

CHAPTER II.

ARTICLES.

The three Articles which the French language employs for the purpose of defining accurately the extent of the signification of nouns are derived from other parts of speech. as the Latin, the original form of the French, possessed no such part

of speech. There, on the contrary, the duty of the modern article was performed by the great variety of terminations, which formed the so-called declensions of Latin nouns. The complicated system of these varied and numerous forms was accessible neither to the dull ear of the barbarians, who conquered the Roman Empire, nor to their uncultivated intellect. Hence the total loss of all inflections and the reduction of French nouns to one single form. The latter was now no longer capable of expressing case or number, and yet, as the newly formed language, arising from a mixture of Latin words with German forms, regained slowly its former power, a necessity arose for expressing the more delicate shades of meaning, and the relations which nouns had to other words in the same sentence. To supply the lost inflections, all the idioms that were descended from the Latin, the so-called Romance languages, began to place certain words before the nouns, which gradually fulfilled the same purpose. These were pronouns or numerals and prepositions. They took uniformly—

1. The Demonstrative Pronoun, *ille, illa, illud*, and placed it before the noun to give it a more definite meaning. By constant use it lost part of its substance when thus employed, and soon nothing was left but the forms now in use,

le, la, l' and les.

Before these pronouns they placed the two prepositions *de*, of, and *ad*, to, which from the same frequency of joined use, combined and produced the forms

du, de la, de l' and des,
au, à la, à l' and aux.

So that *de l'homme* literally means *de ille homo*, of that man, and *à la femme*, *ad illa femina*, to that woman.

2. The Numeral Adjective *unus, una, unum*, to give to the noun before which it was placed an indefinite meaning. This

also lost, with all other words, its termination, retaining only for the feminine a mute *e*, and thus producing the forms

un, *une,*

and with the same prepositions

d'un, *d'une,*
à un, *à une,*

so that *d'un homme* is literally *de unus homo*, of one man, and *d'une femme*, *de una femina*, of one woman.

This is the origin of the forms of the Definite and Indefinite Article. The Partitive Article consists, as has been shown in the First Part of this Grammar, simply of the preposition *de* or of its combinations with the Definite Article :

du, *de la,* *de l',* *des.*

PLACE OF THE ARTICLE.

The place of the Article is invariably before the noun which it serves to qualify ; it allows, however, adjectives and the adverbs that qualify them, to interpose between it and the noun, because it qualifies these words together with the noun.

Ex. *La raison veut l'utile*, reason calls for that which is useful. *Les petites misères*, little miseries ; *le plus affreux objet*, the most frightful object.

Tout, all, and the compound nouns *Monseigneur*, *Monsieur*, *Madame* and *Mademoiselle* alone place the article after themselves.

Ex. *Tout le monde*, the whole world ; *toute l'année*, the whole year ; *Monsieur le Président*, Mr. President ; *Madame la Comtesse*, the (lady) Countess.

REPETITION OF THE ARTICLE.

The Article used to determine the signification of several nouns must be repeated before each noun.

Ex. *Les lettres, les paquets et l'argent doivent être affranchis*, letters, parcels and money must be prepaid; *J'ai vu le père et la mère de cet enfant*, I have seen the father and mother of this child.

The article before adjectives is not repeated when both adjectives qualify the same person or object.

Ex. *Le sage et pieux Fénélon*, the wise and pious Fénélon; *la grande et magnifique fête du roi*, the large and magnificent entertainment of the king.

The article before adjectives must be repeated, if the two adjectives refer to distinct persons or objects.

Ex. *Le premier et le second surintendant*, the first and the second superintendent (two different persons); *l'ancien et le nouveau continent*, the Old and the New World; *le second et le troisième étage*, the second and third story.

The article may be omitted—

Before two plural nouns taken in a general sense :

Ex. *Le dévouement des pères et mères*, the devotion of fathers and mothers.

Before two nouns connected by *ou*, or, which explain each other :

Ex. *Les députés ou représentatifs du peuple*, the deputies or representatives of the people; *les Césars ou empereurs de Rome*, the Cæsars or emperors of Rome.

USE OF THE ARTICLES.

The great principle which forms the basis of all the rules on the use of articles in French is this :

Every noun must be accompanied by an article or its equivalent, unless it is so united with another noun, a verb or a preposition as to form but one idea with them.

The following classes of words are equivalent to the article, and therefore fulfil the purposes of this fundamental rule as well as the article :

The Possessive Adjectives : *mon, ton, son*, etc.

The Demonstrative Adjectives : *ce, cette, ces*, etc.

The Interrogative Adjectives : *quel, lequel*, etc.

The Cardinal Numbers : *un, dix, cent*, etc.

The Pronominal Adjectives : *aucun*, no ; *chaque*, every ; *certain*, certain ; *maint*, many a ; *nul*, no ; *plusieurs*, several ; *quelque*, some, *tel*, many a, in proverbial expressions, *tout* in the sense of every.

Being equivalent to the article, these words, of course, cannot be accompanied by the article.

USE OF DEFINITE ARTICLE.

The *Definite Article* is placed before common nouns, when it is desired to take their meaning in a general sense—to represent the whole class or species, or some definite part of the whole. The purpose is to give a *definite* meaning to the noun.

Ex. *L'or est un métal*, gold is a metal.

J'étudie le Français, I study French.

Les hommes sont mortels, man is mortal.

Elle aime la musique, she is fond of music.

Je préfère les chevaux noirs, I prefer black horses.

La force n'est pas la raison, force is not reason.

La suite des grandes passions, the effect of great passions.

This rule applies in like manner to other parts of speech used for the occasion as nouns.

Ex. *L'avare est misérable*, misers are unhappy (Adjective).

Le manger et le boire, drinking and eating (Verb).

Il demande le pourquoi, he asks why (Adverb).

USE OF THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

The *Indefinite Article* is used in French as in English, whenever a vague, indefinite meaning is to be given to the noun.

Ex. *Nous avons vu un soldat*, we saw a soldier.

Y a-t-il une église ? is there a church there ?

It supplies the place of the partitive article, when a quality, virtue or vice is taken in a partitive sense and qualified by an adjective or other word following it.

Ex. *Cet homme a du talent*, that man has talent (Partitive Article).

Cet homme a un talent remarquable, that man has remarkable talent.

Il montre un grand courage, he shows great courage.

It is used, also, with the meaning of the English *a certain kind of*, when the noun is accompanied by an adjective.

Ex. *Nous y avons bu un vin délicieux*, we drank there a delicious (kind of) wine.

Il fit un temps atroce, it was horrible weather.

EXERCISE.

Poverty is often the fruit of vice, but wealth is rarely the result of wisdom. Men are credulous, they believe every story that is told them with an air of authority. Bad books are often more dangerous than bad men; they have subtle poison in their most charming pages. These laws give encouragement to industry, and agriculture is not neglected. Children are often unhappier than they appear, for griefs and sorrows are not measured by years. Youth is a happy age, but it passes away swifter than all other seasons of our life. Patience is one of those virtues which it is most difficult to acquire. Do you like strawberries? I like raspberries better, but I cannot procure any at this season of the year; spring is the only season when we have an abundance of them. The husband teaches mathematics and the wife music, but who teaches Latin and Greek? Wine is very dear, and therefore beer is recommended by many physicians, but I like wine best. If we wish to distinguish truth from falsehood we must be very prudent, for fiction is often stranger than truth. Weak men are governed by their passions, and good men endeavor to follow principles; but men generally act more by impulse than from conviction. Young children are exposed to many dangers, yet, how many escape! Life is a joy in youth, a duty in later years, and a burden in old age.

USE OF THE PARTITIVE ARTICLE.

The Partitive Article serves to designate some part of a species, some individuals of a class, or some portions of a whole. As there is no such article in English, the end is here obtained by the use of *some* and *any*, or by the suppression of the article, leaving *some* or *any* to be understood.

Ex. *J'ai du pain et du fromage*, I have (some) bread and cheese.

Voulez-vous de la crème? will you take (some) cream?

Nous n'eumes pas de chevaux, we had no (not any) horses.

Il a montré de la sagesse, he has shown (some) wisdom.

Avez-vous du thé et du café? have you any tea and coffee?

The difference between this article and the definite article is especially striking, when verbs like *manger*, to eat, *boire*, to drink, *prendre*, to take, are followed by their object.

Ex. *Prenez-vous du thé?* do you take tea?

Prenez-vous le thé? do you eat supper?

The partitive article is *de* simply, before adjectives and in negative sentences.

Ex. *Il y a de beaux chevaux*, there are fine horses there.

Nous n'avons pas de pain, we have no bread.

N'eut-il pas de créanciers? had he no creditors?

 EXERCISE.

Have patience and you will overcome all these difficulties. Give me bread and butter and I want no cake. Do you take tea or coffee? I take tea at breakfast and coffee at supper, but I like tea better than coffee. Has she any friends with her? I know that she has no enemies, for everybody loves her; but there are always envious men in the world who hate us. He wanted money, and I had no money in the house. I gave him some provisions, but he said he had meat and bread. Do you like sweet wines? Come and I will give you glasses in order to try my wine. He has shown some courage in this affair,

but I expected that he would also have prudence. Are there any slaves in that country? There are no slaves there now, they have given them their liberty. I have seen men who had never known fear, but I have always doubted their courage. I wish I had pens, ink and paper, I would write letters to all my friends; I have leisure now, and to-morrow I shall have work to do during the whole day. They have shown profound wisdom in the management of their affairs if we had had experience we would have succeeded.

The rule that the partitive article consists of *de* only before adjectives, does not apply to compound nouns, consisting of an adjective and a noun, because here the former is a part of the noun itself.

Ex. *Ce sont des petits-mâîtres*, they are dandies.

Nous connaissons des franc maçons, we know some free masons.

Nor to adjectives, used as nouns.

Ex. *Y a-t-il du nouveau?* is there any news?

Mêlez du rouge et du bleu, mix some red and blue.

The partitive article is, in a few instances, expressed in English by *some of the*, all of which is rendered by *du*, etc., only.

Ex. *Donnez-moi du doux*, give me some of the sweet (wine).

Aurez-vous des dorés? will you have some of the gilt?

EXERCISE.

Will you not buy good lemons? they are fresh and better than lemons are generally. The children are going to have new aprons, and their mother will buy linen for them. He told us long stories about the war, and wonderful adventures through which he had passed. We received them with hesitation, for although he loves Truth generally, he sometimes tells things which are not strictly true. Do you like novels, or do you think they do harm to young people? This author shows that he has imagination, but he lacks judgment. That man has bad children and he does not punish them, although

he knows that bad examples are pernicious. Do you not think that even soldiers are tired of long wars? The Prussian troops have better guns than the Austrians, but these have more experienced generals. When he sat down at table he found himself surrounded by children and grandchildren, sons-in-law and daughters-in-law.

The partitive article resumes its full form, *du, de la, de l',* and *des* after negative verbs, when they are used interrogatively at the same time. This is also the case when the negative is not absolute, but only added with regard to the object of the verb.

Ex. *Ne jouez pas des airs trop longs,* do not play too long tunes.

Je ne vous donnerai pas des vers, I will give you no verses.

N'a-t-il pas des amis qui puissent venir à son aide? has he no friends that could come to his aid?

N'eurent-elles pas des chapeaux? did they not wear bonnets?

The partitive article is altogether suppressed, for the sake of euphony, when it is preceded by the preposition *de*.

Ex. *La déposition de (des) témoins subornés,* the evidence of bribed witnesses.

On lui donna du vinaigre au lieu d'eau, they gave him vinegar instead of water.

Je déclare en faveur de bière, I declare in favor of beer.

THE ARTICLE WITH CERTAIN CLASSES OF NOUNS.

I.—WITH PROPER NAMES.

Proper Names, as has already been seen in the chapter on nouns, take no article as long as they are used as genuine proper names.

Ex. *César fut tué trop tôt;* Cæsar was killed too soon.

Il ressemble un peu à Racine, he resembles Racine somewhat.

But when they are used as common nouns, they are subject to the same rules as the latter.

Ex. *Les Racines et les Molières sont rares*, (men like) Racine and Molière are rare. *Charles XII. était l'Alexandre du Nord*, Charles XII. was the Alexander of the North. *C'est un vrai Caton*, he is a real Cato. *Donnez-moi le Virgile annoté*, give me the (copy of) Virgil with notes. *Où est l'Horace de mon frère ?* where is my brother's Horace? *J'ai vendu le Guide que vous avez vu*, I have sold the (painting by) Guido which you saw.

Italian artists and writers are, after the manner of their country, spoken of with the article. Female singers also are thus quoted.

Ex. *Le Tasse est l'Homère de l'Italie*, Tasso is the Homer of Italy. *Le Michel Ange n'aurait pas mieux fait*, Michael Angelo could not have done better. *La Grisi va reparaître*, Madame Grisi is going to perform again.

Proper names, preceded by titles, require the article before the latter, contrary to English usage.

Ex. *Le Général Washington et les députés*, General Washington and the Representatives. *Où est le docteur N. ?* where is Dr. N. ?

The article is also required before adjectives which qualify proper names, except *Saint*, which is considered as forming part of the name itself.

Ex. *Allez chercher le jeune Pierre*, go and look for young Peter.

Où est donc la petite Marie ? where is little Mary ?

C'est la fête de St. Jean, this is St. John's day.

EXERCISE.

Marshal Lannes was the friend of the Emperor Napoleon and received many favors from his patron. Doctor Johnson was one of the first writers of England, and one of her most remarkable men. Have you read the history of Cardinal Woolsey, of his brilliant career, and his

sudden downfall? I went to see poor James and his sick brother to-day; they were both very sad. King Richard went to the Holy Land, and when he returned he was made prisoner by his enemy, the Duke of Austria. Where is young Lewis now? I have not seen him for many years; he and pretty Mary came every day to my house, and brought me a bouquet of flowers.

II.—WITH THE NAMES OF COUNTRIES AND CITIES.

The names of Countries are used in French with the definite article.

a. When the countries are taken as a whole, or in any way individualized, as by ascribing to them certain qualities or functions.

Ex. *La France est un empire florissant*, France is a flourishing empire. *L'Italie a déclaré la guerre à l'Autriche*, Italy has declared war against Austria. *On ne saurait trop admirer la conduite de l'Angleterre*, England's conduct cannot be too much admired.

β. When the countries are situated out of Europe and little known.

Ex. *L'empereur de la Chine n'est qu'une poupée*, the emperor of China is but a puppet. *J'ai vécu deux ans au Mexique*, I have lived two years in Mexico.

Hence all the States of the Union, *les Etats-Unis*, are accompanied by the article.

Ex. *Du Maine au Texas*, from Maine to Texas; *la Virginie et la Caroline du Sud*, Virginia and South Carolina; *il vient de la Louisiane*, he comes from Louisiana.

The names of countries are used without the article—

a. When only a part, and not the whole, is referred to.

Ex. *Il demeure en Espagne*, he lives in Spain (somewhere); *il vient d'Angleterre et il va en Suisse*, he comes from England and is going to Switzerland.

The prepositions *to* and *in* are both translated in French by *en*.

b. When they are used to qualify another noun in the manner of an adjective.

Ex. *Les rois de France en faisaient de même*, the kings of France (French kings) did the same. *Il préfère le tabac d'Espagne*, he prefers Spanish tobacco. *Achetez-vous du coton d'Amérique?* do you buy American cotton?

The names of Cities take no article, when they are genuine proper names.

Ex. *Londres est plus grand que Paris*, London is larger than Paris. *Il y a le plus beau musée à Dresde*, there is a most beautiful museum at Dresden. *Il demeure à Vienne*, he lives in Vienna.

The prepositions *in* and *at* with the names of cities are both rendered in French by *à*, unless they have the meaning of *within*, when it is *dans*.

Ex. *Qui est votre banquier à Paris?* who is your banker in Paris? *Il mourut à Naples*, he died at Naples. *La Révolution était dans Paris*, the revolution was in (inside of) Paris.

But when they are made like common nouns, they are accompanied by the article.

Ex. *Le Havre de Grace* (harbor of refuge) *est un grand port*, Havre is a large port. *Nous irons à la Nouvelle Orléans*, we shall go to New Orleans. *La Haye est une grande ville en Hollande*, The Hague is a large city in Holland.

EXERCISE.

Italy is truly the garden of Europe, and Norway the most sterile of all countries. Prussia and Austria are old and bitter enemies, but France induced them to make war against each other for her own benefit. The Pyrenees separate France from Spain and the Alps from Italy. I had lived ten years in Germany, when I emigrated to the United States and settled in North Carolina. Michigan is a pen insula, surrounded by great lakes and traversed by railroads. We landed at Havre, when we first came to France, and from thence we went to La Rochelle, where we remained two years; after that we lived in Lyons and Marseilles. Have you ever been in New Orleans? It is not the capital of Louisiana. The Bourbons were at one time kings of France, of Spain, and of Naples; now the Queen of Spain is

the only member of that family on a throne. He likes Burgundy wines better than any other wines; for my part, I prefer Italian wines, and after them, the light French wines. The goldsmiths melt down Spanish dollars and French crowns.

III.—WITH THE NAMES OF MONTHS AND DAYS.

The names of Months in definitions of time are never used with the article, but accompanied by the preposition *en*, even when there is no preposition used in English.

Ex. *Il arrivera ici en Août prochain*, he will reach here next August; *la bataille fut livrée en Juin*, the battle was fought in June; *nous y resterons jusqu'en Avril*, we shall stay there till April.

The names of Days, used as definitions of time, have no article nor preposition before them.

Ex. *Elle fut ici dimanche*, she was here on Sunday; *nous nous reverrons mercredi prochain*, we shall meet again on next Wednesday.

The addition of the Definite Article gives the meaning either—

a. Of a definite day of that name.

Ex. *Il fut pris le Lundi et il échappa le Mardi*, he was taken on Monday and escaped on Tuesday; *je l'ai vu le Vendredi Saint*, I saw him on Good Friday.

b. Or of every to the name of the day.

Ex. *Le courrier arrive le Jeudi*, the mail comes on every Thursday. *Nous avons nos leçons le Samedi et le Mercredi*, we have our lessons on Saturdays and Wednesdays.

The Indefinite Article may be added as in English.

Ex. *C'était un Dimanche à l'église*, it was on a Sunday at church.

EXERCISE.

He will arrive in France in January or February and stay there until March, when he will leave for Denmark. We go to the country

in July and do not return to town until October. May is the month I like best of all the months of the year. In that remote neighborhood they have no mail but on Tuesdays and Thursdays; my cousin receives her letters on Saturday. I saw her last Christmas-day; she was then in bad health; on Tuesday she was taken sick; and on Friday she died. Sailors have a general superstition that Friday is an unlucky day, and all the efforts made by intelligent captains and others to overcome the prejudice, have proved in vain. The laws of this country do not permit any work to be done on Sundays, but the Jews are exempted, because they do not work on Saturdays.

IV.—WITH NOUNS IN APPPOSITION.

Two nouns are said to be used in apposition to each other when one is added to explain the other, so that both designate the same person or object.

The noun in apposition takes, in French, the article when it serves to distinguish the first from others of its kind, or when it is followed by a relative pronoun or other word, which shows its definite character.

Ex. *Votre frère, le capitaine, est là*, your brother, the captain, is here. *Il n'eut qu'une épée, son arme favorite*, he only had a sword, his favorite weapon. *Musard, l'homme qui dirigeait*, Musard, the man who led.

But when the noun in apposition is used as a mere adjective, it has no article.

Ex. *Le pâon, emblème de l'orgueil*, the peacock, emblem of pride; *Marie, divine beauté*, Marie, divine beauty; *Tartufe, comédie de Molière*, Tartufe, a comedy by Molière.

EXERCISE.

I have read in the newspapers that your brother, the sailor, has returned from abroad; is your other brother, the soldier, also at home now? The poet says: the butterfly, the perfect model of inconstancy, caresses all the flowers. Malherbes, a man of extraordinary knowledge, was simple and artless, whilst his adversary, an ignorant man,

claimed the highest honors. We were reading *Ivanhoe*, a novel by Walter Scott, when she entered the room, and Louisa, the eldest sister, exclaimed: There comes Mary, the true copy of Rebecca! Those gentlemen, strangers to our country, were hospitably received, and Kosuth, a man of rare genius, went almost in triumph through the Northern States.

Nouns may be used in apposition to the verb *to be*, and other verbs of like nature, as, to become, to be made, chosen, appointed, etc., in which case they will not be preceded by any article, although the English uses the indefinite article in such constructions.

Ex. *Il est musicien*, he is a musician; *on l'a nommé président*, he has been appointed president; *qui a été élu maire?* who has been chosen Mayor? *il s'est fait moine*, he has become a monk.

But if the noun in apposition mark a distinction from the first or express the character, either by a name or a designation, it will be accompanied, as in English, by the indefinite or the partitive article.

Ex. *Cet homme est un Hercule*, that man is a Hercules.

Ces demoiselles ne sont pas des beautés, those young ladies are no beauties.

Une telle réponse est une insulte, such an answer is an insult.

With the third person singular of *être* the subject is, in such cases, expressed by *ce* and not by *il*.

Ex. *C'est un ivrogne*, he is a drunkard. *C'était une femme comme il y en a peu*, she was a woman such as there are few; *ce sont vos vrais amis*, they are your true friends.

EXERCISE.

I shall prefer speaking Italian to him, as he is an Italian: if he were a Portuguese, I could not do the same, as I dislike Portuguese, a miserable language. You have never read Camoens, the author of

the Lusiades, or you would not say that. Do you see those two ladies? They were nuns, but they have escaped from Cosenza, a famous convent; now they are ladies of the great world, without that awkwardness, the effect of long seclusion. He was a man of genius and of great merit, and when he was chosen Governor of the State, the citizens were rejoiced at it. I thought you were a Spaniard, but I have learned since that you are a German. That man deserves no respect; he is a gambler and leads a disreputable life. She is an excellent woman, and I hope that she will earn a livelihood; she has been appointed governess to the Queen's children. He would have been a captain if he had not been a drunkard.

V.—WITH NOUNS OF MEASURE.

The definite article is used in French with nouns, expressing measurement in weight, time or money, where the English uses the indefinite article or a preposition.

Ex. Coffee costs twenty cents a pound, *le café coûte vingt sous la livre.*

We pay him ten dollars a week, *nous lui payons dix dollars la semaine.*

Four times a year, *quatre fois l'an.*

Give them three francs for each person, *donnez-leur trois francs la personne.*

EXERCISE.

These men agreed to work for a dollar a day, but they ask now ten dollars a week, which is nearly two dollars a day. How do you sell your coffee? I can sell you some for thirty cents a pound or for ninety dollars a bag. The mail used to arrive here twice a week; now we get it five times a week. I see him twice a day, in the morning at breakfast and at night before going to bed. I will give you twenty-one pounds per barrel, if you can sell me a hundred and twenty each year. These engravings were very cheap; they only cost twelve cents a piece or ten dollars a hundred. There was one pineapple for each person, but several guests did not eat that dangerous fruit.

Per cent. is translated in French by *pour cent.*

Ex. I will pay you ten per cent., *Je vous payerai dix pour cent.*

The English usage of employing names of relationship, like father, mother, etc., without any article, is inadmissible in French. There the possessive pronoun is used before such words.

Ex. Father says it is so, *mon père dit que c'en est ainsi.*

Where is uncle gone to? *votre oncle, où est-il allé?*

Call sister at once, *appelez votre sœur de suite.*

The English usage of employing the preposition *to* in terms expressive of blood or business relations and the like, is also not found in French. The preposition *de* is used in all such cases.

Ex. He is physician to the Queen, *c'est le médecin de la Reine.*

He was appointed architect to the Institute, *on l'a nommé architecte de l'Institut.*

EXERCISE.

Brother said he would never consent to the captain's marriage with sister, because she was too young yet. It is considered a great honor in England to be appointed physician to the Queen. She is the only heir to that immense property, for the prince, a man of genius, but very miserly, had acquired vast estates in Spain and in Portugal. What does mother say to this extraordinary event?

THE OMISSION OF THE ARTICLE.

The Article is omitted before Nouns, contrary to the general principle that every noun in French must be preceded by an article or its equivalent, in the following cases :

1. In addressing persons or things, by apostrophe.

Ex. *Homme qui que tu sois*, man, whoever thou art; *fleurs charmantes, qui ornent la campagne!* charming flowers, adorning the fields!

2. To give greater energy to animated style, as *e. g.* in enumerating several persons or objects, in proverbial expressions, etc.

Ex. *Je ne trouve partout que lâche flatterie,
Qu'injustice, intérêt, trahison, fourberie.*

Everywhere I meet with nothing but mean flattery,
Injustice, selfishness, treachery, dishonesty.

Plus fait douceur que violence, we can do more by gentle means than by violence.

Contentement passe richesse, contentedness is better than riches.

3. In giving titles to books and addresses of persons.

Ex. *Préface. Reflexions générales.*

Il demeure rue Piccadilly, Quartier St. James, à Londres.
He lives in Piccadilly, St. James', London.

4. After the following conjunctions and adverbs: *ni, soit, jamais* and *tout*, when the nouns following them are used in a partitive sense.

Ex. *Le sage n'a ni amour ni haine*, wise men know neither love nor hatred; *soit inspiration de Dieu, soit erreur de l'homme*, either divine inspiration or human error; *jamais, peut-être, historien n'a été plus attrayant*, never perhaps was a historian more attractive; *tout est vanité*, all is vanity.

The indefinite article used in English after *what* is omitted in French.

Ex. *Quel homme!* what a man! *Quelle aventure!* what an adventure!

EXERCISE.

Man, whoever thou art, remember, when pride tempts thee, that thy existence was a play of Nature, that life is but a play of Fate, and that thou wilt soon be the play of Death! When Fléchier spoke of him in his sermon he said: Citizens, foreigners, enemies, nations, kings, emperors, weep for him and revere him! Nations, praise the Lord! Why do you not speak, brother John, are you sick? He gave me a list of the books, which he had lent you: Voltaire's novels, La

Fontaine's Fables, Boileau's Poems and Fléchier's Funeral Sermons. I saw written on this sheet of paper, French Exercises, but I think it was a letter. What a beautiful landscape! It is the loveliest I have ever seen in all my journeyings. He did it unconsciously; and his motive was neither ignorance nor malice. Never has general earned a purer renown and never were battles fought more carefully. Every thing was confusion and terror, and never was nation more seriously frightened.

The Article is omitted also, when a noun forms with another part of speech such a close union as to represent but one idea. This is done by joining a Noun—

1. To another *Noun*, which it qualifies after the manner of an adjective, thus forming a compound noun. The union is established by means of the preposition *de* or *à* or *en*, after which, then, no article is used.

Ex. *une cloche d'alarme*, an alarm-bell.

une brosse à dents, a tooth-brush.

une grille en fer, an iron railing.

3. To a *Verb*, with which it forms a new verb.

Ex. *avoir peur*, to be afraid.

avoir soif, to be thirsty.

prendre congé, to take leave.

porter témoignage, to give evidence.

3. To a *Preposition*, by which union adverbs are made.

Ex. *en effet*, indeed.

par force, forcibly.

de suite, immediately.

If the purpose is not to form an adverb, but if *e. g.* the noun is separated from the preposition by an adjective, the general rule applies again and the article must be supplied.

Ex. *Avec courage*, bravely; *avec un grand courage*, with great courage; *par force*, forcibly; *par une force supérieure*, by superior force.

The article is, also, omitted for euphony's sake before the two

adjectives *divers* and *différent*, to avoid the immediate repetition of two *d*'s.

Ex. *Nous avons employé différents moyens*, we have used different means; *diverses personnes me l'ont recommandé*, various people have recommended him to me.

EXERCISE.

Soldiers, this day of glory has been crowned with complete success; continue to serve your country zealously and courageously and you will restore peace to your fellow citizens. Let us receive them with politeness, for Machiavelli, an Italian writer, says we must treat our enemies as if they might become our friends, and our friends as if they might become our enemies. We were hungry and thirsty, but she was even more thirsty than the others. Different persons use different words, for some think with rapidity, others with grave consideration. Windmills are unknown in this country, but steam-mills are not rare. Have you any coffee-cups or teacups in your sideboard? I would like a cup of tea before supper, for I am quite exhausted

ENGLISH COMPOUND NOUNS IN FRENCH.

English Compound Nouns are generally made by uniting simply two nouns in one and writing them in one word, as penman, nightcap, windmill, &c. In French a preposition is required to unite the two nouns, and this preposition varies according to the precise relation in which, according to the meaning, one noun stands to the other. That noun which qualifies the other is placed after it, and is, as has been stated above, not preceded by an article, because it forms with the first but one idea, that of the new compound.

The prepositions which serve for this purpose are principally *en*, *à* and *de*, which are used in the following manner:

The preposition *en* expresses the material of which the first noun is made, and this only in such cases where special attention is called to the substance—in ordinary cases *de* suffices.

Ex. *Cette coupe est en or, et point en argent doré*, this cup is of gold, and not of silver gilt.

Une grille en bronze coûterait plus qu'une grille en fer, a bronze railing would cost more than an iron railing.

Une église en pierre taillée, a church built of cut rock.

The preposition *à* expresses—

1. The purpose for which the first noun is intended.

Ex. *Une tasse à thé et un verre à vin*, a teacup and a wine-glass.

C'est un moulin à farine, this is a flour-mill.

Des bateaux à vapeur, à voiles, à rames, steamers, sailing-vessels, rowboats.

2. The main characteristic by which the first noun is distinguished from others of the same class.

Ex. *J'ai été mordu par un serpent à sonnettes*, I have been bitten by a rattlesnake.

C'est un homme à lettres, he is a literary man.

Ils n'eurent que des instruments à cordes, they had only stringed instruments.

The preposition *de* expresses all other relations between the two parts of a compound noun, not conveyed by *en* and *à*.

Ex. They took our watches and gold rings, *ils prirent nos montres et nos bagues d'or*.

I prefer river-fish to sea-fish, *je préfère les poissons de rivière aux poissons de mer*.

Will you take a cup of tea or of coffee? *Voulez-vous une tasse de thé ou de café?*

If the second noun should express something that enters into the composition of the first, it retains, in its meaning, its independence, and will, therefore, have to be preceded by the article, since it does not produce a new idea, nor form a genuine compound noun.

Ex. *Vous aurez une soupe aux huîtres et une omelette aux confitures*, you shall have oyster soup and an omelet with preserves.

Donnez-moi un pot de pommade au jasmin, give me a box of pomatum of jasmine.

Des tableaux à l'huile et au pastel, oil paintings and pastel paintings.

English compound nouns have occasionally a present participle for their first part. According to the rules on the use of prepositions, they can only be followed by the Infinitive, and this is, therefore, the form that must be given to these participles.

Ex. He wants a frying-pan, *il lui faut un poêle à frire*.

They are in the dining-room, *ils sont dans la salle à manger*.

In English, the words *man*, *woman*, *boy* and *girl* are often used in compound nouns to designate the vendor of the article expressed by the first noun. In French, *marchand* or *marchonde* are used for this purpose.

Ex. Here comes the milkman with his bells, *voilà le marchand de lait avec sa sonnette*.

The little apple-girl did not come to-day, *la petite marchande de pommes n'est pas venue aujourd'hui*.

In English compound nouns the first part is left in the singular number, although it may have a plural meaning. No such anomaly exists in French, where the noun takes its proper form.

Ex. A five-dollar bill, *un billet de cinq dollars*.

Where is the ox-stall? *où est l'étable à bœufs?*

EXERCISE.

It is strange for so rich a man to wear a silver watch, and especially when it is fastened to a costly gold chain. The fashion for this summer is to wear silk dresses, straw bonnets and thread gloves; in winter I prefer buckskin gloves. They stole all our silver spoons, and we were compelled for some days to use iron spoons, which we found with our servants. Have you ever drunk goat's milk? It is very rich, but

the odor is unpleasant. When the enemy entered the town, one man ran out with a table-knife, another with a kitchen-knife in his hand ; but everybody had a weapon. He has in his store excellent printing-paper, but he has no fine letter-paper. I would like to give you some wine, but I have not a wine-glass nor any glass in the house ; the dwelling-house was burnt, and this is nothing but a tool-house, which serves me for a week. She hid the note in the dining-room on the tea table under a flower-pot, and we were all looking for it in the sleeping-rooms up stairs. Steamers and screws of every kind cross the Atlantic during the whole year, and some are iron vessels ; sailing-ships and wooden vessels diminish constantly in number. I saw in Venice two beautiful alabaster columns before the high altar of an old church ; they are far more beautiful than marble pillars. Are these really gold chandeliers, or is it only an imitation in silver ? I can give you a ten-dollar bill, if you can repay me to-morrow ; I cannot pay my bill at the shoe-store, and I owe some money to the sign-painter. Have you ever heard a charcoal-man in London ? his cry is very peculiar.

MONSIEUR, MADAME, ETC.

When it became the custom to address persons by some title expressive of reverence, the nations that had spoken Latin employed generally the word *senior*, elder, for that purpose. Its full form is in French preserved in the softened word *seigneur*, which still holds the preeminence as "the Lord" by excellence.

Ex. *Notre Seigneur, Jésus Christ.*

This was united to the possessive pronoun and formed the title *Monseigneur*, formerly given to the princes of the royal blood and still bestowed on very high personages, such as Cardinals. *Seigneur*, however, proved too long and cumbersome for daily use and soon dwindled down into *Sieur*, which was formerly largely used, but now occurs only in legal documents.

Ex. *Le Sieur N. N. est cité de paraître, &c.*, Mr. N. N. is summoned to appear, &c.

This *sieur* again was still further shortened into *sire*, which

also, once very generally used, is now strictly confined to sovereign rulers.

Ex. *Sire, les sujets de Votre Majesté la félicitent*, Sire, the subjects of your Majesty congratulate you.

Through the Norman French, finally, this *sire* became familiar to the English people, by whom it was reduced to its present form of *sir*, now the universal title given to man.

In like manner was the word *domina*, lady or mistress, chosen to address women, and with it a spurious diminutive form, *domicella*, little lady. Softened and slightly changed, these words have become *dame* and *demoiselle*, and are in this form used together with *sieur*.

All four words are habitually combined with the possessive pronouns *mon*, *ma*, and *mes*, and thus produce the words *Monseigneur* and *Messeigneurs*, *Monsieur* and *Messieurs*, *Madame* and *Mesdames*, *Mademoiselle* and *Mesdemoiselles*. As the use of these words is somewhat different from English words of the kind, the following rules will be given :

Monsieur and *Messieurs* are used—

1. Before proper names, like the English *Mr.* and *Messrs.*

Ex. *Connaissez-vous Mr. Lefebvre?* do you know Mr. Lefebvre?

Cette lettre est adressée à M.M. Blond & Cie., this letter is directed to Messrs. Blond & Co.

2. Without a name, like the English *Sir* and *Gentlemen*, in addressing others.

Ex. *Monsieur, je ne vous comprends pas*, Sir, I do not understand you.

Mais, Messieurs, vous demandez trop, but, Gentlemen, you ask for too much.

3. With the article or pronoun, like the English *gentleman* and *gentlemen*, to designate persons as such.

Ex. *Est-ce un monsieur, qui désire me voir?* is it a gentleman who wants to see me?

Il y eut plus de dames que de messieurs, there were more ladies there than gentlemen.

Ce monsieur-là pourrait vous le dire, that gentleman there might be able to tell you.

Monsieur does not express the English *gentleman*, when this has any other meaning, but that of *man* in contrast with *child* or *woman*. When *gentleman* is used to express a man of good manners, well-dressed, etc., the French say *un homme comme il faut*, a man as he ought to be. When it is used to convey the idea of a man of high principles and sterling character, they say *un homme d'honneur*, a man of honor.

Madame and *Mesdames* are used—

1. Before proper names, like the English *Mrs.* and the plural.

Ex. *Mme. Vieuxtemps où demeure-t-elle?* where does Mrs. Vieuxtemps live?

Cette école est tenue par Mesdames Viardot, that school is kept by the ladies Viardot.

2. Without a name, like the English *Madam* and *Ladies* in addressing others.

Ex. *Madame, vous me comblez de bontés*, Madam, you overwhelm me with kindness.

Veillez me suivre, Mesdames, please follow me, ladies.

The words *lady* and *ladies*, used in speaking not to but of third persons, are rendered by *dame* and *dames* without the possessive pronoun.

Ex. *Voilà donc ces dames, que vont-elles faire?* just look at those ladies, what are they about?

Cette dame paraît me connaître, that lady seems to know me.

Mademoiselle and *Mesdemoiselles* are used precisely in the same way as *Madame* and *Mesdames*, but apply only to unmarried ladies, without regard to their age.

Ex. *J'ai l'honneur de parler à Mlle. Biot?* I have the honor of speaking to Miss Biot?

Je ne saurai rien vous refuser, Mademoiselle, I can refuse you nothing, young lady.

The simple word *demoiselle* and its plural, are used to designate unmarried ladies.

Ex. *Sa sœur est encore demoiselle,* his sister is still unmarried.

Les dames attendront ici ; les mariées de ce côté, les demoiselles de l'autre, the ladies will wait here—the married ladies on this side, the unmarried on that.

All three forms, *Monsieur*, *Madame* and *Mademoiselle*, and their plurals, are in French prefixed to titles of dignity and of relationship, the latter, however, only when referring to relatives of the person to whom we speak.

Ex. *Monsieur le comte est parti ce matin,* the count left this morning.

Madame la baronne est-elle chez elle ? is the baroness at home ?

Messieurs les Sénateurs se sont rassemblés, the Senators have reassembled.

Comment se porte Mme. votre mère ? how is your mother ?

J'ai vu Mesdemoiselles vos sœurs qui viennent de rentrer.

I have seen your sisters who have just come back.

The same words are used occasionally instead of the pronouns, as expressions of extreme politeness, from motives of great courtesy or of bitter irony.

Ex. *Monsieur voudrait-il me rendre ce service ?* could you render me this service ?

Madame n'est-elle pas Française ? are you not French, Madam ?

On ne saurait rendre trop de grâces à Monsieur, we cannot be too grateful to you, Sir.

Que Madame ne se fâche, on s'en va de ce pas, do not get angry, Madam, I am going at once.

EXERCISE.

I know these ladies, but they do not know me; two of them were the same young ladies we met last night after the opera. He introduced me to two gentlemen from Mexico, who are here on a political mission, with a letter from the Cardinal. Here are seats for the ladies, but where are you going to place the gentlemen? A man who can act thus is not a gentleman, whatever may be his wealth and his social position. Who was it that rang the bell; was it a beggar or a gentleman? It was your father, Sir, accompanied by your grandmother. Did you meet your sisters, Madam? they were taking a walk by the sea-shore. When he had done this, he said in a low tone: Captain, I am sorry for it, and I beg your pardon. Doctor, I wish you would have the kindness to come and see my daughter; she is now with your wife, and awaits your return with impatience. These gentlemen have met your mother in Paris; the young ladies were well and enjoyed the pleasures of that great and brilliant city.

CHAPTER III.

ADJECTIVES.

The great principle which determines the form under which the adjective appears in a sentence is this: that the Adjective, expressing nothing but a quality belonging to the noun, and being, therefore, dependent on the latter, must agree with it in gender and number.

It makes no difference, whether adjective or noun stand side by side or are separated from each other; if in meaning they belong together, they must also correspond in form.

Ex. *Il y a des hommes qu'il ne faut jamais voir petits*, there are men who ought never to be seen, when they are little.

In compound nouns care must be had to make the adjective agree with that part which it qualifies.

Ex. *On vend chez les peaux (F.) de renards (M.) noirs (M.)*, Black fox-skins are sold high.

Ils portaient des bas (M.) de soie (F.) blancs (M.), they used to wear white silk stockings.

Donnez-moi une brosse (S.) à dents (P.) molle (S.), give me a soft tooth-brush.

A few adjectives appear to be exceptions to this fundamental rule, but the exceptions are only apparent, and the non-agreement of these adjectives with their nouns is easily explained. They are the following :

1. *Nu*, *demi* and *feu*, under certain circumstances, remain unchanged before feminine or plural nouns.

Nu, bare, is placed before nouns, connected with them by a hyphen, and forms, then, so far a part of the noun that it remains unchanged. If it is placed after a noun, it becomes again a common adjective, subject to the rule.

Ex. *On l'a vu qui marchait nu-tête et nu-pieds,* he has been seen walking bare-headed and bare-footed.

Il avait la tête nue et point de gants, his head was bare and he had no gloves.

2. *Demi*, half, is in like manner prefixed to nouns, and then forms part of them. When separated, it is declined like all adjectives.

Ex. *Restez ici une demi-heure jusqu'à mon retour,* stay here half an hour until I return.

Un homme issu d'un sang fécond en demi-dieux, a man born of a race fertile in demigods.

Le discours a duré une heure et demie, the speech lasted an hour and a half.

Demi may also sometimes be used before adjectives, as *demi-mort*, half dead, but generally its place is supplied by *à moitié* or *à demi*, because in these cases it becomes a genuine adverb. When *half* is repeated, it is rendered by *moitié*.

Ex. *Le drapeau est moitié rouge moitié blanc,* the flag is half white half red.

Half before a noun is expressed, when not forming, as *demi*, part of the noun, by *à moitié*.

Ex. *Après le drame on est admis à moitié prix*, after the drama, admittance at half price.

Feu, late, is used either before the article or after it; in the former case it remains unchanged, in the latter, which occurs when we wish to distinguish a deceased person from a living one of the same rank or name, it is declined.

Ex. *J'ai ouï dire à feu ma sœur*, I have heard my late sister say.

La jeune reine n'en usait pas comme la Reine actuelle, the late Queen did not act like the present Queen.

2. *Grand*, great, in its feminine form, *grande*, is occasionally used as part of a compound noun. It is then written *grand'* and remains unchanged.

Ex. *Il y aura deux grand'fêtes ce mois*, there will be two great holidays this month.

Il porte trois grand'voiles aux grand'verques, she carries three mainsails at the mainyards.

The following are the most frequent expressions of this kind :

<i>Grand'mère</i> ,	grandmother.	<i>Grand'peine</i> ,	hard labor.
<i>Grand'chambre</i> ,	high court.	<i>Grand'peur</i> ,	great fear.
<i>Grand'chère</i> ,	high cheer.	<i>Grand'pitié</i> ,	great piety.
<i>Grand'chose</i> ,	much.	<i>Grand'rue</i> ,	main street.
<i>Grand'faim</i> ,	extreme hunger.	<i>Grand'salle</i> ,	great hall.
<i>Grand'garde</i> ,	main guard.	<i>Grand'soif</i> ,	extreme thirst.

3. *Franc de port*, prepaid, is used adverbially, and then remains unchanged; as an adjective it is subject to the general rule.

Ex. *Je vous ai envoyé, franc de port, toutes vos lettres*, I have sent you, prepaid, all your letters.

Votre courrier ne vous apporta que deux lettres franches de port, your mail brought you only two prepaid letters.

4. *Excepté*, except, *suppose*, supposed, *ci-joint*, enclosed, *y compris*, inclusive, and *inclus*, enclosed, although participles, and

as such subject to the same rules as adjectives, remain unchanged when they are used as adverbs, before their nouns.

Ex. *Excepté ces cas, il n'y a pas de différence*, except in these cases, there is no difference.

Ces cas sont exceptés, these cases are excepted.

Vous trouverez ci-joint deux lettres cachetées, you will find enclosed two sealed letters.

Beaucoup and *peu*, being adverbs, cannot be used for *many* and *few* as adjectives, but their place is supplied by *rare* and *nombreux*.

Ex. True friends are few, *les vrais amis sont rares*.

The book is good but its faults are many, *le livre est bon mais les fautes sont nombreuses*.

A large number of adjectives are used adverbially in French, *i. e.*, without any change of form. They are mainly such as express an impression made upon the senses, like *haut*, loud, *bas*, low, *bon*, good, and *mauvais*, bad (of odor), *vite*, quick, *lent*, slow, and those representing languages, *Français*, French, *Anglais*, English, etc. Being true adverbs in these cases, where they qualify, not a noun but a verb, they remain unchanged.

Ex. *Elle chante trop bas pour une salle de concert*, she sings too low for a concert-room.

Parlez donc plus haut, on ne vous entend pas, speak louder, they do not hear you.

Allez vite chercher le médecin, go quickly for the doctor.

Il parle Italien, Espagnol, et deux autres langues, he speaks Italian, Spanish and two other languages.

Adjectives of color, finally, are sometimes nothing else but nouns used adverbially. In that case they remain unchanged, the expression being evidently elliptical and the words *couleur de*, color of, supplied in mind.

Ex. *Elle avait une robe rouge et des rubans marron*, she had on a red dress and chestnut colored ribbons.

Il porte toujours des gants paille, he always wears straw-colored gloves.

EXERCISE.

I went to my tailor and told him to make me a dress-coat of his best black cloth. St. Louis carried a crown of thorns, barefooted and bareheaded, from the wood of Vincennes to Notre-Dame. I waited there half an hour, and I would have waited an hour and a half, but he came soon after my arrival. Two pounds and a half of meat make a very good soup, especially if you have an abundance of vegetables. She was as well as the late princess of Conti among those who flattered themselves with this hope. He has studied three years and a half in some of the German universities. The Spanish flag is half red and half yellow, the French flag is the tricolor. He is much to be pitied, for, although the causes of his ruin are many, such cases of perfect honesty as his are few. It is an order of the Gods, that is never broken, that they sell us very dear the gifts which they make us. If you walk fast, you can easily overtake him, but when you approach him, speak loud or he will not hear you. These flowers smell bad; I wish you would bring me some that smell good.

COMPOUND ADJECTIVES.

Compound Adjectives consist of two adjectives connected, like compound nouns, by a hyphen. The manner in which they agree with the noun they qualify depends not on their form but on their meaning.

If both adjectives qualify the noun, both will agree with it.

Ex. *Nous avons dans ce pays des perdrix grises blanches*, we have in this country white and gray partridges.

If one adjective qualifies the other, the latter alone is declined.

Ex. *Il y a dans ce champ de l'avoine clair-semée*, this field has thinly sown oats in it.

Des enfants nouveau-nés la plupart meurt, of new-born children the majority die.

If the two adjectives qualify each other, which is the case in adjectives of color, both remain unchanged.

Ex. *J'aime beaucoup la soie bleu-clair*, I am very fond of light-blue silk.

ADJECTIVES QUALIFYING SEVERAL NOUNS.

The manner in which adjectives that qualify two or more nouns agree with the latter, is determined by the following rules :

An adjective which qualifies two or more nouns of the same gender is put in the plural and agrees in gender with them.

Ex. *Le riche et l'indigent sont sujets à la même loi*, rich and poor are subject to the same law.

J'admire sa douceur et son égalité d'esprit merveilleuses, I admire her marvellous gentleness and equanimity.

If the nouns are of different gender, the adjective is put in the plural masculine, but care is taken to place the masculine noun nearest to the adjective.

Ex. *Il avait sa vie et son bonheur attachés au succès*, his life and his happiness depended on success.

J'ai trouvé ma plume et mon papier gâtés, I found paper and pen spoilt.

An adjective placed after several nouns which are synonyms, agrees with the last only.

Ex. *Toute sa vie n'a été qu'un travail, qu'une occupation continue*, all his life has been but one continued work and labor.

Le fer, le bandeau, la flamme est toute prête, the sword, the bandage, the pile is quite ready.

An adjective qualifying two nouns, connected by a conjunction so as to exclude one another, appears in the plural masculine.

Ex. *Il y a un homme ou une femme âgés*, there is an old man or an old woman.

ADJECTIVES USED AS NOUNS.

Many French adjectives can be used as nouns by the simple addition of the article. Their form will be that of the noun which is understood.

Ex. *Le sage* (*l'homme sage*) *se sert des fous pour aller à ses fins*, the wise man uses the fool to attain his end.

Une coupable (*femme coupable*) *aimée est bientôt innocente*, a beloved criminal is easily (thought) innocent.

Les menteurs les plus grands disent le vrai quelquefois, the greatest liars tell the truth sometimes.

Attention must be had, however, to the fact that in French, as in English, not all adjectives can be used as nouns alike; some designate men only, as *le riche*, the rich, *le pauvre*, the poor, *le noir* the negro, *le blanc*, the white man, *le sage*, the wise man, *l'avare*, the miser, while others designate abstract qualities only, as *le beau*, the beautiful, *le vrai*, all that is true, *le faux*, all that is false, etc. These latter, expressing abstract ideas, cannot take the plural form.

EXERCISE.

Your brothers and sisters are present, but your mother has not yet come in; how long will she or your father be absent? The poor and the rich, the imprudent and the prudent, subject to the same law, undergo the same fate. Clemency and majesty depicted on the face of this august infant foretell us the happiness of his people. He was there, listening to the sermon, mouth and eyes open and all attention. Augustus governed Rome with a sustained gentleness and sweetness. That secrecy, that mystery, that improper confidence will make you love your old friends, without gaining any new friends. When the firemen rushed from the house, they had their faces and hands burnt and their clothes and boots torn to pieces. Avaricious men are foes to the whole world, spendthrifts are only their own enemies. The rich owe help to the poor, but the rich are often too lazy to grant it and the poor too proud to accept it. We ought always to search for the True and abhor the False.

THE PLACE OF ADJECTIVES.

The general rules on the place of Adjectives have been given in the First Part of this Grammar, and it remains here only to repeat, that no absolute law exists on the subject, the place depending more on the peculiar genius of the language and the established usage than on any general principle. The adjective placed before the noun is considered as more intimately connected with it, and as making, by falling first upon the ear of the listener, a stronger impression. Hence accented adjectives are placed before the noun. In the next place, the laws of euphony forbid long adjectives being placed before monosyllabic nouns; and generally, shorter adjectives precede longer nouns. *Les champêtres airs*, country air; *des terrestres soins*, earthly cares, and the like, are intolerable in French. On the other hand, plural adjectives have to precede nouns beginning with a vowel, as *de brillants atours*, brilliant surroundings, *de courageux amis*, bold friends.

The construction of the sentence has its influence on the place of the adjective in so far as an adjective followed by its regimen must necessarily be placed after the noun, else it would be separated from its regimen.

Ex. *C'est un malheur commun à tous*, that is a misfortune common to all.

Quels sont les fiefs dépendants de ce duché? which are the fiefs that belong to this duchy?

The place of the adjective depends, finally, so completely on the genius of the language, that large numbers of these words actually change their signification with their place, having one meaning before and another after the noun. The following are the most important adjectives of this class, accompanied generally by those nouns in connection with which alone they have the double meaning:

Un BON homme
a simple artless man

un homme BON
a good, affectionate man.

un BRAVE homme

a honest man

une CERTAINE nouvelle

some sort of news

mon CHER ami

my dear friend

une COMMUNE voix

a unanimous voice

quel CRUEL homme !

what a tiresome fellow !

la DERNIÈRE année

the last year of any period

une FAUSSE corde

a string out of tune

un FAUX jour

a bad light

un FIER poltron

a great coward

un FURIEUX menteur

an excessive liar

un GALANT homme

a clever man

un GRAND homme

a great man

le GRAND air

the air of high society

le HAUT ton

a haughty tone

un HONNÊTE homme

an honest man

le JEUNE Scipion

young Scipio

ce MALHEUREUX homme

that contemptible wretch

un MALHONNÊTE homme

a dishonest man

MAUVAIS air

bad appearance

un MÉCHANT homme

un homme BRAVE

a brave man.

une nouvelle CERTAINE

sure news.

un habillement CHER

an expensive dress.

un voix COMMUNE

an indifferent voice.

quel homme CRUEL !

what a cruel man !

l'année DERNIÈRE

last year.

une corde FAUSSE

a false string.

un jour FAUX

an ill-painted light.

un poltron FIER

a proud coward.

un lion FURIEUX

a furious lion.

un homme GALANT

a man who is complaisant to the ladies.

un homme GRAND

a tall man.

l'air GRAND

a noble countenance

le ton HAUT

a loud tone

un homme HONNÊTE

a polite man.

Scipion le JEUNE

Scipio the younger.

un homme MALHEUREUX

a destitute.

un homme MALHONNÊTE

an impolite man.

l'air MAUVAIS

wicked appearance.

un homme MÉCHANT

a bad man

une MÉCHANTE épigramme

a miserable epigram

un MISÉRABLE enfant

an ill-natured child

MORT-bois

wood of little value, such as
brooms, brambles, etc.

MORTE eau

the lowest tides

une MORTELLE heure

an excessively long hour

un NOUVEAU livre

a new book ; another book

un PAUVRE auteur

an author without merit

PAUVRE petit !

poor child !

un PLAISANT homme

a whimsical, ridiculous man

un PETIT homme

a small man

les PROPRES termes

the same words

PROPRES mains

own hands

SAINT-Esprit

Holy Ghost

FEMME sage

a prudent woman

un SEUL enfant

an only child

un SIMPLE domestique

a single servant

un TRISTE homme

a worthless man

UNIQUE tableau

single painting

un VILAIN homme

an unpleasant man

an ill-thinking man

une épigramme MÉCHANTE.

a wicked epigram.

un enfant MISÉRABLE

a destitute child.

bois MORT

dead wood.

eau MORTE

standing water.

cette vie MORTELLE

this mortal life.

un livre NOUVEAU

a book lately published.

un auteur PAUVRE

an author without fortune.

un petit PAUVRE

a little beggar.

un homme PLAISANT

an agreeable, merry man.

un homme PETIT

a mean man.

les termes PROPRES

the proper words.

mains PROPRES

clean hands.

Esprit SAINT

Spirit of God.

sage FEMME

a midwife.

un enfant SEUL

a child alone.

un domestique SIMPLE

a foolish servant.

un homme TRISTE

a sad man.

tableau UNIQUE

unparalleled painting.

un homme VILAIN

a wicked man.

un VRAI conte
a mere story,

un conte VRAI
a true story.

When two adjectives qualify one noun, they are generally placed after it for the same reason which places long adjectives after short nouns.

Ex. *C'est un voyage long et fatigant*, that is a long and fatiguing journey.

Ces tableaux nobles et imposants, these fine and imposing paintings.

But if one or both of these adjectives belong to classes to which special rules assign a given place, these rules must be strictly observed.

Ex. *J'aime une grande table ronde au salon*, I like a large round table in the parlor.

Ce petit enfant gâté a tout dit, this spoilt little child has told every thing.

L'histoire d'un jeune homme pauvre, the story of a poor young man.

It has already been stated, in speaking of the use of the article, that if the two adjectives refer to two different nouns, although but one may be mentioned, the article must be repeated before each.

Ex. *Le premier et le second volume*, the first and the second volume.

La langue Italienne et l'Espagnole sont deux sœurs, the Italian and Spanish languages are sisters.

Heureux, happy, is perhaps the only adjective which, in interjections, may be placed before article and noun. Otherwise it is only allowed to poetical license to place sometimes an adjective before the verb *être*.

Ex. *Heureux l'homme qui sait endurer!* happy the man who knows how to endure!

Sacré ils sont, car personne n'y touche, sacred they are for nobody touches them.

EXERCISE.

If the living frighten us, what have we to fear of the dead? The incomparable author of this great work was hardly known during his lifetime. Socrates, at the last hour of his life and surrounded by his friends and followers, showed that he was a true philosopher. These burglars used false keys in order to open all the doors of houses which had been left empty by their occupants. You shall not touch that beautiful, new book, if you have not clean hands; it is too easily spoilt. A cruel man is an inhuman, miserable person, who loves to make others suffer or see them suffer. That good old soldier has been in all the wars of his country, and he still looks a strong, healthy man. I have not been much at home last year, but I promise you that that shall have been the last year in which I travel so far. Will you wear to-night your fine blue dress, or do you prefer the new green dress, which you bought recently? That rich old miser will leave his immense wealth to a spendthrift nephew, who will spend it all in a few short years. She has bought a large, commodious house, where she will entertain all her young, gallant friends. His former glory had passed away, when he, the first man of the Republic, made himself ruler of his native State.

COMPARATIVE DEGREES.

Three Comparative Degrees are generally spoken of: The Positive, which is nothing more than the simple meaning of the adjective, without any comparison, and therefore not in reality a degree of comparison; the Comparative in its three-fold nature as a comparative of superiority, of inferiority and of equality, and the Superlative, relative or absolute.

The simple rules on the formation of the comparatives and superlatives have already been given in the First Part of this Grammar. It remains here only to add the rules on the use of the so-called irregular comparatives.

Meilleur (from the Latin *melior*), better, is the only comparative of *bon*, as *plus bon* is never used; *mieux*, is the comparative of *bien*, instead of *plus bien*, which also cannot be used.

Ex. *C'est un meilleur résultat qu'on n'avait expecté*, that is
a better result than had been expected.

Meilleur enters also into the idiomatic expressions *de bonne heure*, early, and *à bon marché*, cheap.

Ex. *Nous nous levons de meilleure heure que nos voisins*, we rise earlier than our neighbors.

Il l'a acheté meilleur marché que nous, he has bought it cheaper than we.

Pire (from the Latin *pejor*), worse, is the comparative of *mauvais*, by the side of *plus mauvais*, which is also used, but with this distinction, that *pire* is used to express something worse than a bad thing, whilst *plus mauvais* suggests no such comparison.

Ex. *Sa condition est mauvaise, mais elle a été pire*, his condition is bad, but it has been worse.

Il n'est pas plus méchant que les autres, he is no worse than the others.

Moindre (from the Latin *minor*), less, is the comparative of *petit*, small, and is used, like *pire*, to compare two objects small in themselves, while *plus petit* is simply smaller than any object, however large or small in itself.

Ex. *Est-ce qu'elle est moindre que cette petite fille?* is she smaller than this little girl?

Elle n'était pas plus petite que moi, she was not smaller than I.

Moindre is also used as a comparative of inferiority of *bon*, in the sense of less good.

Ex. *Ce vin là est moindre que l'autre*, that wine there is inferior to the other.

The English *better*, *worse*, and *less* are adverbs as well as adjectives. In French two separate forms answer the two purposes. The adverbs corresponding to the adjectives *meilleur*, *pire* and *moindre* are *mieux* (Latin *minus*), *pis* (Latin *pejus*), and *moins* (Latin *minus*).

Ex. *Est-ce qu'il va mieux ce matin?* is he any better this morning?

J'ai peur qu'il ne se porte pis même qu'hier, I fear he is even worse than yesterday.

Il m'aime moins que tous ses amis, he loves me less than all his friends:

EXERCISE.

His reasoning is not better than yours, but his style is much clearer and more pleasing. In many cases the remedy is worse than the disease. Do you rise earlier in summer than in winter? No, we think it better to rise during the whole year at the same hour. I could have bought these books cheaper, but I did not wish to take advantage of his distress. Have you seen the Spanish dwarf? They say he is even smaller than Tom Thumb. This criminal was surely very wicked, but I doubt whether he was worse than his brother, who was pardoned last year. That block of marble weighs a thousand pounds, and yet it is smaller than many others in the same building. Bad friends are worse than wise enemies; we fear our enemies, but we are deceived by our friends. Shipwreck and death are less fatal to man than the sins he commits. I like him better, not because he is better than his brother, but because we have known each other so many years.

Plus and *moins*, more and less, are frequently used, not to form comparative degrees, but as Adverbs of Quantity. Then they must be followed, like the whole class of those words, by *de* and not by *que*.

Ex. *Ce tableau coûte plus de cent dollars*, that painting costs more than a hundred dollars.

Pendant j'aurais pu l'acheter pour moins de cinquante, yet I might have bought it for less than fifty.

In comparisons of inequality, *i. e.*, superiority and inferiority, the verb of the second term takes the negative particle *ne* before it, without however becoming negative itself.

Ex. *Elle est moins belle qu'elle n'était il y a deux ans*, she is less handsome than she was two years ago.

Il s'est montré meilleur général qu'on n'avait espéré, he has shown himself a better general than was hoped for.

With regard to the construction of the Relative Superlative, the following rules have to be observed :

1. If the second term of the comparison consists of a noun, the connection with the first term is made in French by *de*, instead of any other preposition, unless the latter be emphasized.

Ex. *C'est l'homme le plus savant du pays*, he is the most learned man in the country. *Elle est toujours la première de l'école*, she is always the first in her school. *C'est ce qu'il y a de mieux dans Paris ; il y en a d'autres dehors*, this is the best to be had inside of Paris ; there are others outside.

2. If the second term contains a verb, this must be used in the form of the subjunctive.

Ex. *C'est le plus grand navire qu'on ait jamais construit*, this is the largest vessel that has ever been built.
Quel est le meilleur vin que vous puissiez me donner ?
 Which is the best wine you can give me ?

Attention must be paid to the form of the article before the superlative, especially with regard to the following two points :

1. The definite article being the only mark of distinction between the comparative and the superlative, it can neither be omitted nor supplied by the indefinite article, as in English.

Ex. *Elle est sans doute la femme la plus aimable*, she is beyond doubt the most lovely woman.
Vous aurez toujours mes vœux les plus sincères, you will always have my best wishes.
Elle me regarda de l'air le plus affectueux, she looked at me with a most affectionate look.

2. The article agrees, of course, with the adjective and its noun, but frequently *le plus* and *le moins* are used adverbially before such adjectives, and then they remain unchanged.

Ex. *C'est la femme la plus gaie que je connaisse*, she is the gayest lady I know.

Elle a l'air triste, même quand elle est le plus gaie, she looks sad even when she is most gay.

Les arbres les plus hauts sont le plus exposés à la foudre, the highest trees are most exposed to lightning.

Elle est le mieux mise quand elle est le moins parée, she is best dressed when she is least adorned.

EXERCISE.

They say she is the best singer in the world now, but I like her the least of all I have heard, although her voice is the most cultivated I know. That enigma has been given to the most learned men in the city, and they have not guessed it: it is the best I have ever read. I have noticed that, even when she is least attentive to what happens around her, nothing escapes her attention. The first cotton-press that was introduced in this country is not as old as the oldest man in the State. He said to me, with a most affected manner: I cannot imagine that he is a better tailor than mine; when I tried him, I found him less skilful than I had hoped. She is much prettier than we had thought, but she is the worst educated young lady we have ever known. The best-established opinions are often overthrown in times of revolutions. Of all these musicians, she is the one who pleases me best, for she sings more correctly than the best singer I have ever heard sing.

Certain classes of adjectives have no degrees of comparison; but as this arises simply from their signification and not from any peculiarity of form, no rules for their use are required. They are principally such as express an absolute quality, as *éternel*, eternal; *mortel*, mortal; *divin*, divine; *suprême*, supreme; *unique*, and negative adjectives, as *immortel*, immortal; *impuni*, unpunished; *immense*, immeasurable, etc. Their meaning can never be made relative to others, as what is unique or immortal cannot possibly be more or less so, and this is the only reason why they are said to have no comparatives or superlatives.

The Absolute Superlative, made by prefixing an adverb expressive of the highest degree to the adjective, employs for that purpose most frequently *très*, *fort* and *bien*, all three of which correspond to the English *very*, with this distinction :

Très expresses simply a generally admitted opinion, without any special emphasis.

Ex. *Très bien, vous pouvez vous en aller*, very well, you may go
C'est une terre très fertile, that is very rich soil.

Fort is stronger in its effect, and is, alone, employed before participles past, when it expresses the English *very much*.

Ex. *C'était un homme fort savant*, he was a very learned man.
Je suis fort surpris de vous voir ici, I am very much surprised to see you here.

Bien is used to express our personal conviction, and represents, therefore, the English *very much indeed*, or similar expressions.

Ex. *Madame, vous êtes bien aimable*, madam, you are very kind indeed.

Il était bien honnête et me comblait de bontés, he used to be extremely civil and loaded me with kindness.

The English *very* or *very much*, when used without an adjective, is translated simply by *beaucoup* ; *très beaucoup*, or any similar combination being inadmissible, as *beaucoup* is an adverb, and as such cannot be qualified by another adverb.

Ex. *Je l'ai beaucoup aimé*, I have loved him very much.

Comment vous plait-elle ? Mais beaucoup, plus que je n'ai pensé. How do you like her ? Why, very much better than I thought.

There are a few adjectives in French which make a superlative by adding *issime*. They are formed in imitation of the word *généralissime*, which the great Cardinal Richelieu made, by his own will and authority, when he went to take command of the French army in Italy. The termination comes, through

the Italian, from the Latin *issimus*, and is confined to adjectives used as titles. They are mainly the following : *illustrissime*, most illustrious ; *révérendissime*, most reverend ; *excellentsissime*, most excellent ; *éminentissime*, most eminent, and *sérénissime*, most serene (highness). Others, which have occasionally been formed after the same manner, belong exclusively to the familiar or comic style.

EXERCISE.

These two brothers were not very much esteemed in spite of their riches, since everybody knew how they gained their wealth. This wine is very good, but after all only an ordinary wine ; I like something better. I told him that he had been very imprudent indeed, and that his best friends would show him less sympathy than they would have done if he had been more cautious. She was very much interested in the proceedings and watched them with a most attentive eye ; she was perhaps the best-informed person in the audience. I am extremely sorry, Madam, if I have said any thing that could give you a worse opinion of him ; he is the most excellent man in the world and the best friend I have upon earth. When the ambassador approached, the master of ceremonies said : Will your Serene Highness permit me to present the minister of his majesty the king ? You are very polite indeed, gentlemen, and I am most sincerely obliged to you for all your kindness.

REGIMEN OF ADJECTIVES.

Certain adjectives in French, as in English, do not have a complete meaning, unless a noun or a verb be added. The word so added is called their *régime*, regimen, and is always connected with the adjective by a preposition.

Ex. *C'est une arme peu propre à la guerre*, that is a weapon hardly fit for war.

La charrue est l'instrument le plus utile à l'homme, the plough is the most useful instrument for man.

Cet empereur n'était pas digne de régner, that emperor was not worthy to reign.

Other adjectives have no regimen, their signification being complete in itself, as *intrépide*, *vertueux*, virtuous, *inviolable*, *brave*, *sage*, etc.

Still others may be used with or without a regimen, according to the meaning which they have in the sentence.

Ex. *Un digne vieillard s'approcha de nous*, a worthy old man came near us.

C'est une faute digne de la plus sévère punition, that fault deserves the severest punishment.

The following adjectives use different prepositions for their connection with the regimen, from the English. In all other cases the same prepositions are used in both languages :

<i>Adroit à profiter,</i>	Skilful <i>in</i> profiting.
<i>Approchant de la vérité,</i>	Approaching <i>to</i> truth.
<i>Bon pour ses enfants,</i>	Good <i>to</i> his children.
<i>Célèbre { par } son génie,</i> { pour }	{ Famous <i>for</i> his genius.
<i>Civil envers tous,</i>	Civil <i>to</i> all.
<i>Complice de ce crime,</i>	Accomplice <i>in</i> this crime.
<i>Curieux de voir,</i>	Curious <i>to</i> see.
<i>Désigneux d'apprendre,</i>	Who disdains <i>to</i> learn.
<i>Ignorant en médecine,</i>	Ignorant <i>of</i> medicine.
<i>Étranger aux intrigues,</i>	Unacquainted <i>with</i> intrigue.
<i>Évident pour nous,</i>	Obvious <i>to</i> us.
<i>Fiché de l'accident,</i>	Sorry <i>for</i> the accident.
<i>Fort de mes principes,</i>	Strong <i>in</i> my principles.
<i>Fort au jeu,</i>	Superior <i>in</i> playing.
<i>Fort sur l'histoire,</i>	Well versed <i>in</i> history.
<i>Fou de musique,</i>	Crazy <i>for</i> music.
<i>Impatient d'arriver,</i>	Impatient <i>to</i> arrive.
<i>Incompatible avec nos mœurs,</i>	Incompatible <i>with</i> our manners.
<i>Inconciliable avec le bon sens,</i>	Irreconcilable <i>to</i> good sense.
<i>Inconsolable de cette perte,</i>	Inconsolable <i>for</i> that loss.
<i>Indulgent pour ses enfants,</i>	Indulgent <i>to</i> his children.
<i>Inquiet de voir le cours des affaires,</i>	Uneasy <i>about</i> the course of affairs.
<i>Inquiet sur ses enfants,</i>	Uneasy <i>about</i> my children.
<i>Insensible à la honte,</i>	Insensible <i>to</i> shame.
<i>Insolent avec son père,</i>	Insolent <i>to</i> his father.

<i>Intéressé à votre succès,</i>	Interested <i>in</i> your success.
<i>Occupé à écrire,</i>	Busy writing.
<i>Parent du roi,</i>	Related <i>to</i> the king.
<i>Paresseux d'écrire,</i>	Lazy <i>in</i> writing.
<i>Polî avec or envers les dames,</i>	Polite <i>to</i> the ladies.
<i>Propre à la guerre,</i>	Fit <i>for</i> war.
<i>Ravi de vous voir,</i>	Overjoyed <i>to</i> see you.
<i>Reconnaissant de vos bontés,</i>	Grateful <i>for</i> your kindness.
<i>Redevable de votre éducation,</i>	Indebted <i>for</i> your education.
<i>Sensible à vos bontés,</i>	Sensible <i>of</i> your kindness.
<i>Sourd à ma voix,</i>	Heedless <i>of</i> my voice.
<i>Surpris de la nouvelle,</i>	Surprised <i>at</i> the news.
<i>Tributaire du grand seigneur,</i>	Tributary <i>to</i> the grand seigneur.
<i>Victime d'un préjugé,</i>	Victim <i>to</i> a prejudice.

Some adjectives are connected by *de*, when they follow the verb *être*, preceded by a personal pronoun, and by *à*, when *être* has *ce* for its subject.

Ex. *Il est beau de mourir pour la patrie*, it is beautiful to die for one's country.

C'est beau à voir, that is pretty to look at.

Il est doux de jouir de la solitude, it is pleasant to enjoy solitude.

Cela est doux au toucher, that is soft to the touch.

Facile, followed by a verb preceded by *à*, gives to the infinitive a passive signification.

La forteresse ne sera pas si facile à réduire, the fortress will not be so easily reduced.

C'est facile à faire, that is easily done.

The same difference is made by some adjectives according as they are followed by a noun, when they take *à*, or a verb, when they take *de*.

Ex. *Il est bon de manger du fruit le matin*, it is good to eat fruit in the morning.

Ce fruit n'est pas bon à manger, that fruit is not good to eat.

Il est utile de s'habituer au travail, it is useful to get accustomed to work.

Nous aimons ceux qui sont utiles à leurs confrères, we like those who are useful to their brethren.

If a noun should be governed by two adjectives, which require different prepositions, the construction of the sentence must be so changed as to prevent any incorrectness. *Responsable*, for instance, requires *à* before things and *envers* before persons; hence it cannot be said—

Ex. *Vous êtes responsable à la Providence et à Dieu*, but,
Vous êtes responsable à la Providence et envers Dieu, you are responsible to God and to Providence.

EXERCISE.

They were very impatient to see us, for they were inconsolable for their loss, and hoped that we would come and, indulgent to their grief, help them in their misfortunes. A man ready to avenge himself, awaits only the right moment to do harm. Those who are most eager for praise are rarely lavish of it themselves. Although my son is not lazy in writing, I never have letters like the others; he is too busy with the duties of his office. He was celebrated for his great power of mind, but he had a strange weakness: he was liable to forget what he had said, and thus he often repeated the same things. He always comes to school early, but he is by no means as punctual in fulfilling his other duties. Rousseau, endowed with a strong and fiery imagination, was all his life subject to frequent fits of melancholy and liable to all its sad effects. A heart free from care is a guaranty for the greatest happiness; but such a heart is not easy to be found.

ADJECTIVES OF MEASURE.

Adjectives of Measure have a different construction in French from that which is used in English. The difference is mainly the following:

In English there is but one construction admissible: the measure itself (ten pounds, two yards, six years, etc.) is placed first, and the adjective of measure (heavy, long, old) after it.

In French two modes of construction may be employed :

1. The adjective of measure is placed first, and connected by the preposition *de* with the measure itself.

Ex. *Une tour haute de deux cents pieds*, a tower two hundred feet high.

2. The more elegant construction, however, is to use the verb *avoir* instead of the English *to be*, followed by the measure, and then to use either the adjective of measure or the corresponding noun.

Ex. *Une tour qui a cent pieds de hauteur*, a tower which is a hundred feet high.

Cette rivière a quatre-vingt mètres de largeur, this river is eighty metres wide.

Les murs d'Alger avaient douze pieds d'épaisseur, the walls of Algiers were twelve feet thick.

In speaking of age the word *âge* is left out, when the verb *avoir* is thus substituted for *to be*, but not with other verbs.

Ex. *Cette petite fille n'a que six ans*, this little girl is only six years old.

Elle mourut à l'âge de soixante-dix, she died at the age of seventy.

When two measures are mentioned in connection, the English preposition *by* or the conjunction *and*, are both translated by *sur*.

Ex. *Cette chambre a vingt pieds de largeur sur trente de longueur*, this room is twenty feet wide by thirty feet long.

Les murs n'ont que trois pieds d'épaisseur sur douze de haut, the walls are only three feet thick and twelve feet high.

When two objects are compared by means of measurement of any kind, the English preposition *by* is translated by *de*.

Ex. *Elle est plus grande de sa sœur de toute la tête*, she is taller than her sister by a whole head.

Il est plus âgé que sa femme de dix ans, he is older than his wife by ten years.

The preposition *in* before nouns of measure, is also rendered in French by *de*.

Ex. *Il a trois pieds de diamètre*, it is three feet in diameter.

EXERCISE.

How many men will you have to dig the foundations of a house, the walls of which are four feet thick? I have a ditch in my garden, to drain it, which is seven feet wide, three feet deep, and a hundred and twenty feet long. She was only seventeen years of age when she was married, and she died when she was sixty-one years old. That table does not suit me, it is round and has two feet and a half in diameter, but it is nearly three feet high, and that is too high by half a foot. This poor prisoner was confined in a cell, four feet wide by six feet long; the walls were four feet thick, and the little window, which pierced them, gave very little light. The Amazon river is in that place twenty miles wide, though it is wider than the Ganges by two miles.

ADJECTIVES OF NUMBER.

The *Cardinal Numbers* are so called from the Latin word *cardo*, hinge, to express, as it were, that upon them depend, as the door hangs on its hinges, all other numerals. This is the same idea which has led to the naming of Cardinals in the church, of the cardinal points in geography, and the cardinal virtues: prudence, justice, force and temperance. These numerals answer to the question: *Combien y a-t-il?* how many are there?

The *Ordinal Numbers* are so called because they give the order or rank which persons and things hold among themselves.

Collective Numerals are nouns made from the Cardinal Numbers and express a number collectively. Such are *dix-*

aine, half a score; *douzaine*, dozen; *vingtaine*, score; *centaine*, a hundred.

Distributive Numerals express a portion of a whole, such as *un demi*, a half; *un tiers*, a third; *un quart*, a fourth.

Proportional Numerals express the multiplication of the cardinals, *le double*, *le triple*, *le quadruple*; *le centuple*, a hundred-fold.*

With regard to the use which is made of these different classes of numerals, the following rules are to be observed :

The *Cardinal Numbers* are used in definitions of time somewhat differently from the English, as will be seen in these points :

1. The date of the *year* is invariably given in cardinal numbers preceded by *en*, or, more formally, *en l'an*, in the year, writing a thousand *mil* (not *mille*), and using no conjunction.

Ex. *Nous sommes en l'an mil huit cent soixante-sept*, we are in the year 1867.

Il mourut en dix-sept cent quatre-vingt-seize, he died in 1796.

2. The date of the *month* is given in cardinal numbers, except the first, which is always *le premier*, and the second, which may be *le second*, though *le deux* is more frequent. The preposition *on* is never translated.

Ex. *Nous reviendrons le onze de ce mois*, we shall return on the eleventh of this month.

Le vingt-cinq du mois prochain il y aura une tempête, on the twenty-fifth of next month there will be a storm.

The preposition *of* before the names of months is generally omitted.

Ex. *Il naquit le treize Avril, il y a trente ans*, he was born on the thirteenth of April, thirty years ago.

La bataille fut livrée le trois Mars, the battle was fought on the third of March.

3. The hour of the *day* is given in cardinal numbers, according to the nature of the question: *Quelle heure est-il?* what time is it?

Ex. *Il est une heure*, it is one o'clock.

Nous y serons à trois heures, we shall be there at three o'clock.

The fractions of an hour are simply placed after the numeral; the expressions: a quarter to or before half-past two, etc., being unknown to the French.

Ex. *Il arriva ici à deux heures et demie*, he got here at half-past two o'clock.

Nous finirons à onze heures et quart, we shall finish at a quarter past eleven.

Il est huit heures trois quarts à ma montre, it is a quarter to nine by my watch.

Le temps qu'il faut est huit heures cinquante-cinq (minutes), the required time is five minutes to nine.

Twelve o'clock in the daytime is not *douze heures*, but *midi*, and twelve o'clock at night is *minuit*.

Ex. *On sonne la grande cloche à midi et à minuit*, the great bell is rung at noon and at midnight.

On y dîne à midi ou à midi et demie, they dine there at noon or at half past twelve o'clock.

The day, morning, and evening are expressed by *jour*, *matin* and *soir*, when the time is merely counted, and by *journée*, *matinée* and *soirée*, when the duration is to be expressed. The same applies to *an* and *année*.

Ex. *Il venait tous les matins à six heures*, he came every morning at six o'clock.

J'ai employé la matinée à me promener, I have spent the morning in walking.

Où passerez-vous la soirée? *Ce soir je resterai chez moi.*
Where will you spend the evening? To-night I shall stay at home.

Pendant toute l'année je ne l'ai vu que deux fois, I have seen him only twice during the whole year.

To-night, when it means this evening, and last night in the same sense, are translated by *ce soir* and *hier soir*, the noun *nuît* being used only for the night proper. The evening or the night before is rendered by *la veille*, as the morning or the day following, by *le lendemain*.

Ex. *Je l'ai vu avant hier soir et je le reverrai ce soir*, I saw him night before last, and I shall see him again to-night.

Il dormit et la veille et le lendemain de la bataille, he slept both on the day before and the day after the battle.

4. The names of Sovereigns are accompanied by the cardinal numbers without article, except *Premier* and *Second*, but these also have no article.

Ex. *George Trois succéda à George Second*, George III. succeeded George II.

Louis Onze et Louis Quatorze ont fait beaucoup pour la France, Louis XI. and Louis XIV. have done much for France.

The great Emperor Charles V. and the famous Pope Sixtus V. are both quoted as *Charles Quint* and *Sixte Quint*.

When cardinal and ordinal numbers are coupled together, the former must precede the latter.

Ex. *Les deux premiers jours de ce mois*, the first two days of this month.

If cardinal numbers follow the verb *être*, they may be placed immediately after it, when the noun belonging to the cardinal may be easily supplied; if this is not the case, the words *au nombre de*, to the number of, must be added.

Ex. *Nous étions cinq au départ ; nous sommes deux*, we were five of us on starting; we are two of us.

Les fautes sont trop nombreuses ; elles sont au nombre de vingt, there are too many mistakes; they are twenty.

Both, when immediately followed by a noun, is translated by *les deux*.

Ex. *J'ai acheté les deux volumes à la fois*, I have bought both volumes at the same time.

Voulez-vous les deux chiens ou seulement un? Do you want both dogs or only one?

But if both is not followed by any noun, it is translated by *tous deux*, when both are represented as acting together, and by *tous les deux*, when acting separately.

Ex. *Ils sortirent tous deux*, they both went out (together.)

Ils sont sortis tous les deux, both have left (one after another.)

EXERCISE.

This great general died on the nineteenth of August, and was buried with much haste on the twenty-first: his obsequies were not celebrated until the thirteenth of the next month. The physician had left him apparently in good health at half-past eleven o'clock at night, and at a quarter to five on the next morning he was found dead. The unfortunate Louis the Sixteenth was led to the scaffold on the twenty-first of June, one thousand seven hundred and ninety-three. She was seventy-seven years old when I saw her, and she had walked the whole morning in her garden. What time was it when you saw her? It was last night at half-past eight. Charles the Fifth and Francis the First were rivals for the supreme power in Europe; it is difficult to tell which enjoyed the most. I was absent on the fourth of July, or at least I did not return until late at night; we had a nice little supper, and a few minutes after midnight we all retired. The first three volumes of this work are far superior to the others, and I think twenty-one have appeared. There were twenty of us in that club, but only eight have survived; we are rarely four of us at table.

When the noun to which the cardinal number refers is not given but represented by the pronoun *en*, the numeral must be preceded by the preposition *de*.

Ex. *Sur cinq cents combattants il y en eut cent de tués*, out of five hundred combatants there were one hundred killed.

C'étaient ses gravures et il n'y en avait que deux de bonnes,
they were his engravings, and there were only two
good ones among them.

But if the noun itself is given after the numeral, *de* is not added.

Ex. *Il y eut cent hommes tués et deux cent blessés,* one hundred
men were killed and two hundred wounded.

The *Ordinal Numbers* are used in English in all cases where the difference has not already been stated, and where their place is not supplied by the cardinal numbers.

It will be remembered that the ordinal numbers are always placed before their nouns, except when volume, chapter or page of a book and the like are quoted.

Ex. *J'ai reçu le troisième tome, qui vient de paraître,* I have
received the third volume, which has just been published.

Vous le trouverez, Livre troisième, chapitre premier, you
will find it, Book third, Chapter first.

It must not be forgotten that *le premier* and *le dernier* are considered as superlatives, and hence have the same effect upon the construction of the sentence as that class of words. Thus they require the verb to appear in the subjunctive mood.

Ex. *C'est la dernière gravure qu'il ait faite,* this is the last
engraving he has made.

Je suis le premier qui soit venu, I am the first who has
come.

The *Collective Nouns* are the following :

<i>Unité,</i>	unit.		
<i>couple,</i>	couple.	<i>quinzaine,</i>	{ about fifteen, a fortnight.
<i>trio,</i>	trio, three.		
<i>demi-douzaine,</i>	half a dozen.	<i>vingtaine,</i>	{ a score, about twenty.
<i>huitaine,</i>	a week.		
<i>neuvaine</i>	nine days of prayer.	<i>trentaine,</i>	{ a score and a half, about thirty.
<i>dizaine,</i>	half a score.		
<i>douzaine,</i>	dozen.	<i>quarantaine,</i>	{ two score, about forty.

<i>cinquantaine</i> ,	{ two score and a half, about fifty.	<i>un millier</i> ,	{ one thousand, about one thousand.
<i>soixantaine</i> ,	{ three score, about sixty.	<i>myriade</i> ,	one myriad.
		<i>million</i> ,	one million.
<i>un cent</i>	{ one hundred, pre- cisely.	<i>milliard</i> , or <i>billion</i> ,	{ one thousand mil- lions.
<i>centaine</i> ,	{ one hundred, about one hundred.	<i>trillion</i> ,	trillion.

Except in commercial transactions, these words do not represent the precise number they express, but only a number nearly approaching to it. Thus *une vingtaine* may be a few more or less than twenty. As they are nouns, they require the preposition *de* to connect them with other nouns.

Ex. *Il m'a vendu une douzaine d'œufs*, he has sold me a dozen eggs.

Cela vous coûtera une dizaine de mille dollars, that will cost you about \$10,000.

Le cent de paille que vous me fournîtes, the hundred-weight of straw you furnished me.

These words are occasionally used to designate the age of persons, without any other word.

Ex. *Ce vieillard a passé la soixantaine*, this old man is over sixty years old.

The *Distributive Numbers* are *la moitié*, *le tiers*, *le quart*, *un cinquième*, and the ordinal numbers as in English.

Ex. *Les deux tiers sont plus grands que la moitié*, two-thirds are more than one-half.

On lui a donné les quatre cinquièmes du profit, they have given him four-fifths of the profit.

Le trois centième, the three-hundredth ($\frac{3}{1000}$).

Les trois centièmes, three-hundredths ($\frac{3}{1000}$).

It must be borne in mind that *moitié*, half, is a noun and subject to the rules on nouns.

Ex. *Il a pris la plus grosse moitié*, he has taken the largest half.

La moitié ne suffirait pas, half of it would not be enough.

While *demi* is an adjective, which is always used with a noun, whether that noun be expressed or understood.

Ex. *Je lui donne une demi-gourde le jour*, I give him half a dollar a day.

Trois heures et demie (heure) s'étaient écoulées, three and a half hours had passed.

EXERCISE.

Did you not find that sentence in Bacon's Works, Book fifth, Chapter second, page one hundred and first? It was the thirty-second year after that glorious peace when war broke out again, and inundated all Europe with blood. Sixtus the Fifth lived at the same time as Henry the Fourth; both were very famous men, but in very different ways. I have seen both brothers; the likeness is indeed so great that one can well take the one for the other. There were only three-hundred, but in spite of their inferiority, they resisted the enemy for several hours; they only gave way when they had two hundred killed and about fifty wounded. Has he passed sixty years, or does he look older than he really is? Nine-tenths of those who have heard it will not know the purport of his speech. It lasted three-quarters of an hour, and half was filled with statistics which interested nobody. I was there half an hour before him, when there were only about twenty persons in the hall; later in the evening, there were perhaps a hundred. I have bought two hundred-weight of straw for my cows; they cost me already more than ninety-three dollars, and this morning the servant told me that they had both run away. He obtained her father's consent on the tenth of July, and he became her husband before a fortnight had passed away. The wedding took place at night in the church, and after that they spent about twenty days at a friend's house in the country.

CHAPTER IV.

PRONOUNS.

I. — PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Personal Pronouns, the forms of which have been given in the First Part of this Grammar, have their name from their original purpose, that of supplying the place of names of persons, in order to avoid their frequent repetition. Although this is still their principal duty, their use is by no means confined to persons, and they represent not only lifeless objects, as

Ex. *Quant à la maison je la trouve détestable*, as to the house,
I think it detestable,

but even whole sentences :

Ex. *Il ne me salue jamais, et moi je ne l'aperçois jamais*, he never speaks to me, and I never notice it (that he does not speak) ;

in which cases the sentence is not unfrequently represented in a different construction.

Ex. *Voulez-vous que j'aille vous voir ? Oui, je le veux (que vous veniez me voir)*, do you wish me to go and see you ?
Yes, I wish it (that you come and see me).

Personal Pronouns differ :

1. As far as they represent three persons, the first, or the person who is speaking. *je*, I, *nous*, we ; the second, or the person spoken to, *tu*, thou, *vous*, you ; and the third, or the person spoken of, *il, elle*, he, she and it ; *ils, elles*, they ; *on*, some one, etc. As the first and second persons are always in sight of each other, there is no need of expressing their gender ; it is different with the third person, which is absent, and hence the pronoun representing it has various forms for the genders.

2. As far as they are conjunctive, *i. e.*, only to be used in immediate connection with a verb, like *je, me, tu, te, le, lui, or*

absolute, *i. e.*, only to be used by themselves, without a verb, or united to a preposition, like *moi*, *toi*, *eux*, etc.

Some pronouns are conjunctive and absolute without change of form—like *elle*, she; *nous*, we; *vous*, you; *elles*, they.

Ex. *Elle* (conj.) *a assez, la maison est à elle* (abs.), she has enough, the house belongs to her.

Savez-vous (conj.) *qu'il l'a fait pour vous* (abs.), do you know that he did it for you?

Quant à elles (abs.) *elles* (conj.), *n'en savent rien*, as for them, they know nothing of it.

3. As far as they represent the subject (nominative) of a verb, like *je*, *tu*, *il* and *elle*, or the direct object (accusative), like *me*, *te*, *le* and *la*, or the indirect object (genitive and dative), like *en*, *y*, *lui*, *leur*, etc.

Some pronouns serve for all three purposes :

Nous and *vous* mean we and you, nom.

“ “ us and you, acc.

“ “ to us and to you, dat.

Ex. *Nous* (nom.) *nous* (acc.) *aimons et vous* (nom.) *vous* (acc.) *flattez*, we love ourselves and you flatter yourselves.

Nous vous (dat.) *donnerons ce que vous nous* (dat.) *donnerez*, we will give you what you will give us.

Me, *te*, and *se* mean me, thee, one's self (acc.)

“ “ to me, to thee, to one's self (dat.)

Ex. *Il me dit à moi ce qu'il te dit à toi*, he told me what he told thee.

Il me hait car il te préfère, toi, he hates me for he prefers thee.

On se (acc.) *trompe toujours quand on se* (dat.) *plait trop*, one always deceives one's self, when one is too well pleased with one's self.

I.—CONJUNCTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS AS SUBJECTS.

(Nominative.)

Je, not written, as in English, with a capital initial, when it does not begin a sentence, suffers elision when immediately preceding a verb, beginning with a vowel or mute *h*, and has the gender of the person it represents.

Ex. *Je suis satisfaite, dit la reine, de vos services*, I am satisfied, said the queen, with your services.

When placed in interrogative sentences, after a verb which ends in mute *e*, it compels the verb to place an acute accent on this *e* to avoid two mute *e*'s following each other.

Ex. *Veillé-je ! puis-je croire un pareil dessein ?* Am I awake !
Can I believe such a plan ?

Dussé-je en mourir, je l'essaierai, even if I were to die of it, I will try it.

When the verb in the present is monosyllabic, it is not used interrogatively with *je*, but the question is asked by means of *est-ce que ?*

Ex. *Est-ce que je dors ou est-ce que je veille ?* Am I asleep or am I awake ?

Tu, also, is of both genders according to the person it represents.

Ex. *Tu es bénie, Madone, parmi les femmes*, thou art blessed, Madonna, among women.

The use of *tu*—which is expressed by the verb *tutoyer quelqu'un*, to *thou* a person—is not as rare as in English, but still limited. *Tu* is employed—

In addressing God :

Ex. *Grand Dieu ! tes jugements sont remplis d'équité*, Great God ! thy judgments are full of justice.

In elevated and poetical style :

Ex. *Grand roi, cesse de vaincre ou je cesse d'écrire*, great king, cease conquering, or I must cease writing.

In addressing very intimate friends, and, generally, members of the same family :

Ex. *Mon ami, je te supplie, ne fais pas cela*, my friend, I pray thee, don't do that.

Tiens, mon enfant, que fais-tu là ? Why, child, what are you doing there?

To address inferior persons, servants, etc., by *tu*, is no longer usage. Except in remote provinces, it has been abandoned since the Revolution of 1848.

In expressing contempt or intentional insult :

Ex. *Connais-tu l'héritier du plus saint des monarques, reine ?*
Dost thou know the heir of the holiest of monarchs,
O queen ?

Il and *elle*, derived, like the definite article, from the Latin demonstrative pronoun *ille, illa*, represent the three pronouns he, she and it, as the French has no neuter. *Il* also represents the *it* which is the vague subject of impersonal verbs.

Ex. *Il chante, il danse, il s'amuse tous les jours*, he sings, he dances, he amuses himself every day.

Ce tableau me plaît, il est original, I like this painting ; it is original.

Cette table est trop petite, elle ne me convient pas, this table is too small, it does not suit me.

Il neige, ou il va neiger tout-à-l'heure, it snows, or is going to snow directly.

Nous, we, from the Latin *nos*, is used for both genders and for both numbers, according as it represents a masculine or feminine noun, and as it is used in the plural, or by a figure of speech, for the singular, as is done by sovereigns, editors, etc.

Ex. *Nous sommes toutes présentes, dirent-elles*, we are all here, they said.

Nous, George Premier, par la grâce de Dieu, etc., we, George the First, by the grace of God, etc.

Vous, you, from the Latin *vos*, is in like manner used for both genders and numbers, as it is now-a-days the only pronoun employed in addressing persons.

Ex. *Vous êtes savant, Monsieur, vous savez tout*, you are learned, Sir, you know every thing.

Vous vous trompez, Messieurs, on ne passe pas! You are mistaken, Gentlemen, you cannot pass here!

Persuadé comme vous l'êtes, vous devez le faire, as you are convinced, you ought to do it.

Both of these pronouns, *nous* and *vous*, are rarely placed directly before a noun expressive of character, station, or nationality. In such cases the word *autres* is inserted between the pronoun and the noun.

Ex. *Nous autres soldats nous ne nous en soucions pas*, we soldiers do not mind it.

Vous autres philosophes, vous le savez mieux, you philosophers know that better.

Nous autres Américains, nous n'y sommes pas encore, we Americans have not yet arrived there.

Ils and *elles*, from the Latin *illi* and *illæ*, represent the English *they* in all genders.

Ex. *Les médecins se sont-ils retirés déjà?* Have the doctors already left?

Parlez aux dames, elles y sont seules, speak to the ladies, they are alone there.

J'aime ces maisons, elles sont commodes, I like those houses, they are convenient.

Où, from the Latin *homo*, which is also only used as a subject, will be mentioned under the head of indefinite pronouns, to which it belongs, being the indefinite personal pronoun of the French.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS AS DIRECT OBJECT.

(Accusative.)

Me is the accusative of *je*, and elides like the latter before a verb beginning with a vowel or mute *h*.

Ex. *Il me plaint car il m'aime*, he pities me, for he loves me.
Bajazet aujourd'hui m'honore et me caresse, Bajazet now honors and caresses me.

After the imperative, *me* is always exchanged for *moi*, unless it should be followed by *en* or *y*, when it resumes its original form.

Ex. *Il me loue ; louez-moi* (not *me*) *donc aussi vous*, he praises me ; do you praise me also.
Suivez-m'y (not *moi*), *s'il vous plait*, follow me there, if you please.

Te is the accusative of *tu*, and used like *me*.

Ex. *Tu te trompes, mon ami, il est tard*, thou art mistaken, friend, it is late.

Te, also, has to be exchanged for *toi* after the imperative, and like *me*, resumes its original form before *en*. It is not used before *y*.

Ex. *Tais-toi !* (not *te*) *tu fais un fracas énorme*, hush ! thou makest a terrible noise.
Va-t-en (not *toi*), *coquin, que je ne t'assomme pas !* Be off, rascal, or I shall kill thee !

Le is the accusative of *il*, and represents the English *him* or *it*.

Ex. *C'est Dieu qui me l'a donné, mon mari chéri*, it is God who has given him to me, my beloved husband.
Ce livre ? Je le tiens de mon ancien précepteur, this book ? I received it from my former teacher.

Le is the pronoun which is added to all active verbs in order to comply with the rule, that every active verb in French

must have its object expressed, which is not the case in English.

Ex. Is this your house? Yes, it is. *Est-ce là votre demeure?*
Oui, ce l'est.

Will you do me this favor? No, I cannot. *Voulez-vous me faire cette faveur?* *Je ne le peux pas.*

Did they do it yesterday? Yes, they did. *Est-ce qu'ils l'ont fait hier?* *Oui, ils l'ont fait.*

Le answers also for the English *so*, when it can be exchanged for *it* and does not mean thus, in this manner.

Ex. I thought so, but I did not like to say so, *je le pensais, mais je ne voulais pas le dire.*

It appears so, and perhaps it is so, *il paraît et peut-être il en est ainsi.*

La is the accusative of *elle* and represents the English *her* or *it*.

Ex. *Voilà la dame; je la vois qui s'approche*, there is the lady;
I see her coming.

L'Empereur aime la France il la rend heureux, the Emperor loves France, he makes it (her) happy.

Je la vois, la maison de mes pères, I see it, the house of my fathers.

It is not always easy, at first sight, to decide when the object of an active verb, understood in English and to be supplied in French, is to be translated by *le* simply, or by *le* or *la* or *les*. The rule is, that when the object is an adjective, *le* alone is supplied; when it is a noun, that form of the pronoun is supplied which corresponds with the noun in gender and number.

Ex. *Est-il malade? Oui, il l'est (malade)*. Is he sick? Yes, he is.

Puisqu'il dit que nous sommes exigeants, soyons-le (exigeant), since he says we are exacting, let us be so.

Votre sœur sera-t-elle votre héritière? Oui, elle la sera (l'héritière). Will your sister be your heir? Yes, she will.

Sont-ce là vos robes? Non, ce ne les sont pas (les robes).
Are those your dresses? No, they are not.

Hence the difference between

Etes-vous mariée? Oui, je le suis (adjective). Are you married? Yes, I am.

Etes-vous la mariée? Oui, je la suis (noun). Are you the bride? Yes, I am.

Even the (English) auxiliary verbs are active verbs in French and require the addition of their direct object, like other verbs of this class.

<i>Ex. Je sais que je le dois,</i>	I know I ought.
<i>Je le pourrais, s'il le faut,</i>	I could if I must.
<i>Il dit qu'il le veut,</i>	He says he will.
<i>Je vous le dirai,</i>	I will tell you.

Nous, unchanged, is used as accusative of the nominative *nous*.

Ex. Nous (nom.) *nous apercevons qu'on nous* (acc.) *trompe*, we are aware that we are deceived.

Vous, unchanged, is accusative also of *vous*.

Ex. Vous (nom.) *êtes riche, je vous* (acc.) *en félicite*, you are rich, I congratulate you.

Les is the common accusative of *ils* or *elles*, and represents the English *them* in all three genders.

Ex. Voyez-vous ces hommes? Je les crains. Do you see those men? I am afraid of them.

Les malheurs disparaissent quand on les brave, misfortunes vanish if we face them.

EXERCISE.

It hails and snows very hard and it is not possible to go out. Come in and stand by the stove, it is warm and comfortable. I offer you my hand, and I hope you will not refuse it. Help me and I will help you, but after all it is with God to help us both. You ought to take exercise every day, your health demands it. I know I ought, and the doctor says so too, but I cannot force myself to do it. Will you come to-night and take tea with us? Yes, I will, with pleasure, if I may bring my sister also. Certainly you may, and we shall be very happy to see her. Be silent and go away, you are in a passion and know not what you say. He is not asleep. Yes, he is, and he will be for an hour, if nobody awakes him. Well, young ladies, are you ready at last? Yes, we are, and altogether at your service. Since you say so, let us go and take our walk. She was not very amusing to-day, perhaps she will be more so to-morrow, when there will be more company at our house. Is your master at home? No, sir, he is not; he has left for Europe two days ago. I thought so, and would have come sooner, but I had not time, and now I am sorry for it.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS AS INDIRECT OBJECT.

(Dative.)

Me is dative as well as accusative, like the English *me*, and stands as indirect object for *à moi*.

Ex. *Il me* (acc.) *voit et il me* (dat.) *parle tous les matins*, he sees me and he speaks to me every morning.

On ne saurait me reprocher (à moi) d'aimer la table, they cannot reproach me with a fondness for the table.

Hence it cannot be omitted before a second verb, if it should represent different objects with the two verbs.

Ex. *Il m'a plu (à moi) et enchanté (me)*, cannot be said, but *me* must in such cases be repeated with the auxiliary verb:

Il m'a plu et m'a enchanté, he has pleased me and charmed me.

This *me*, like the accusative, is changed into *moi*, after the imperative, unless it precede *en* or *y*.

Ex. *Donnez-moi (à moi) deux*, give me two.
Donnez-m'en deux, give me two of them.
Suivez-m'y, follow me there.

Te, in like manner, is dative as well as accusative of *tu*, and means *to thee* and *thee*.

Ex. *Tais-toi, pendard*, hush (thyself), scoundrel.
Prends-t'en tant que tu voudras, take as much of it as thou wantest.

(Such a sentence as this would *not* be used in French, on account of its unpleasant sound—it is added simply as an illustration and a warning with regard to the laws of euphony.)

Lui is the dative of *il* and *elle*, and corresponds to the English *to him*, *to her*, and *to it*, standing, as it does, for *à lui* and *à elle*.

Ex. *Je lui parlais franchement*, I spoke frankly to him.
On lui a rendu son mari, they have restored her husband to her.

Quand le vaisseau fut lancé on lui mit les mâts, when the vessel was launched, they put the masts in (to) it.

If, however, two pronouns representing persons should be connected with the same verb, *lui* cannot be used for *to him* or *to her*, but its place must be supplied by *à lui* and *à elle*.

Ex. He compares me to him, *il me compare à lui*.
 Shall I introduce you to her? *Dois-je vous présenter à elle?*

He gave himself entirely up to her, *il s'adonna entièrement à elle*.

Y (from the Latin *ibi*) is also a conjunctive personal pronoun, representing as such mainly the indirect object of *il* or *elle*, when applied to things. It can be applied to persons only in connection with the two verbs, *penser*, to think, and *se fier*, to trust.

Ex. *Pensez-vous à votre bien-aimée? Oui, j'y pense jour et nuit.* Do you think of your lady-love? Yes, I think of her day and night.

Ne vous y fiez pas, elle a des caprices, do not rely on her, she is fickle.

A lui and *à elle* can, however, be used equally well with these verbs.

Applied to things, *y* means *to it* or *to them*.

Ex. *Ajoutez-y un peu de sucre, s'il vous plaît,* add a little sugar to it, if you please.

Il faut y donner toute votre attention, you ought to give your whole attention to it.

Ces fautes sont graves, faites-y attention, these are grave faults, pay attention to them.

Nous and *vous* are used as datives as well as accusatives, and their precise meaning can be ascertained only from the position in the sentence.

Ex. *On nous (acc.) loue et on nous (dat.) fait des compliments,* they praise and compliment us.

Vous (nom) cherchez toujours à vous (dat.) faire des amis, you always try to win (make) friends (for yourselves).

Leur is the dative of the nominative *ils* and *elles*, and represents, therefore, *to them* in all genders.

Ex. *Voyez mes enfants, on leur donne des cadeaux,* look at my children, they are receiving presents.

Mes filles me disent qu'on leur en avait parlé, my daughters told me that they had spoken to them about it.

Y occurs as a substitute for *à eux* and *à elles*, under the same condition, under which it can be used for *à lui* and *à elle*, as has been explained above.

Ex. *Ces hommes sont dangereux, ne vous y fiez pas!* Those men are dangerous, do not trust them!

EXERCISE.

Give him all that you have and I will give you all I have Who was it that spoke to her this morning? I saw nobody who spoke to her, but I sent a friend to her, who told her that the carriage was waiting for her. Tell her all of it, or, if you cannot do that, tell me all of it and I will tell her. Go away, thou art too bad; and be silent about it or thou wilt be punished severely. He confided in them and they deceived him. Add to it a measure of sugar and it will be very good to eat. If you had given to it more attention, you would have succeeded better. What has he told you? He told me that they would go away to-morrow, in order to spend a year in Paris, and that he would go there himself next year. I have heard that news, but I have given no credit to it, because he has told me so twice and he has not yet gone there. That was the residence of Voltaire: think of it, when you are on the banks of the lake of Geneva.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS AS INDIRECT OBJECT.

(Genitive.)

There is but one conjunctive personal pronoun, which represents the genitive case, and that is *en* (from the Latin *inde*), which is used as a genitive of all the pronouns of the third person, singular and plural, and hence represents: of him, of her, of it, of them, from him, etc., about him, etc.

Ex. *Voilà mon frère, je lui en dirai quelque chose*, here is my brother, I will tell him something about it.

Si vous avez du thé, donnez m'en une tasse, if you have any tea, give me a cup of it.

Il avait dix enfants, mais il en a perdu six, he had ten children, but he has lost six of them.

Like the pronoun *y*, *en* also requires the imperative of verbs, which ends in mute *e*, to add an *s* in order to avoid the hiatus.

Ex. *Parles-en à ton père quand il rentre*, speak of it to thy father when he comes in.

Sois sage, mon enfant, et donnes-en un à ta sœur, be good, my child, and give one of them to thy sister.

It will be remembered that *en*, like *y*, has also the effect of changing *moi* and *toi* after the imperative into *me* and *te*.

Ex. *Dites-m'en tout ce que vous en savez*, tell me all you know about it.

Tais-t'en avec tout le monde, be silent about with everybody.

En is generally used with reference to persons only when they have been mentioned either in the same sentence, or at least in the one immediately preceding it.

Ex. *Vous avez vu mon ami, qu'en pensez-vous?* You have seen my friend, what do you think of him?

Que dit-elle de moi? Elle n'en dit que du bien. What did she say of me? She said nothing but what was good of you.

Besides these immediate purposes for which *en* is used as a personal pronoun, it serves to express various other words, which have a kindred meaning in English. Of these the following are the most important :

En is used for *some* or *any*, when these words are employed as pronouns, and consequently not accompanied by any noun ; the manner of expression being that the French say, *e. g.*, Give me of them ! instead of the English, Give me some !

Ex. *Donnez-m'en, si vous en avez abondance*, give me some, if you have plenty.

Quel dommage ! Je n'en ai pas. What a pity ! I have not any.

Des amis ! J'en ai, mais en très petit nombre. Friends ! I have some, but very few.

If *en* in such constructions be qualified by an adjective, it requires, like all pronouns, the addition of the preposition *de*.

Ex. I have some very good, but they are quite dear, *j'en ai de très bons, mais ils coûtent cher.*

These are good, but I have seen some that are better, *celles-ci sont bonnes, mais j'en ai vu de meilleures.*

En is also used to express the English words *one* and *ones*, when they are added to adjectives instead of a noun.

Ex. This apple is bad, give me a good one, *cette pomme est mauvaise, donnez-m'en une bonne.*

Have you no better ones? I do not like these. *N'en avez-vous pas de meilleures? Je n'aime pas celles-ci.*

This can, of course, only apply to adjectives which are objects of the verb, as it has already been stated that *en* can never refer to the subject, the nominative. If *one* and *ones* are used with the subject, they remain untranslated in French.

Ex. A good one would cost twice as much, *un bon coûterait deux fois plus.*

Good ones are very rare at this season, *les bons sont fort rares à cette saison.*

En is used instead of the English *it*, whenever it becomes the object of a verb which in French is followed by the preposition *de*.

Ex. I will use it, if you will lend it to me, *je m'en servirai, si vous voulez me le prêter.*

En is supplied in French to express the whole, of which a quantity, a number, or any measure forms the direct object of a verb in English, without mentioning the whole.

Ex. How many books have you? I have two thousand (books). *Combien de livres avez-vous? J'en ai deux mille.*

I gave him half (of my money) and I kept the other half, *je lui en donnai la moitié et je gardai l'autre.*

I thought you had given him more, *je croyais que vous lui en aviez donné plus.*

Unless this quantity, measure, etc., is preceded by the definite article or possessive pronoun, in which case it is clearly enough defined and does not require the addition of *en*.

Ex. I gave him half and kept the best part, *je lui en donnai la moitié et je gardai la meilleure partie.*

Take six and leave me my share, *prenez-en six et laissez-moi ma part.*

En is omitted in French, even when *of it* or *of them* are used in English, whenever the latter words refer to the indirect object of the verb, accompanied by a preposition.

Ex. I met several ladies and I spoke to two of them, *j'ai rencontré plusieurs dames et j'ai parlé à deux.*

He was employed for all and only plead for one, *il était engagé pour tous et il n'a plaidoyé que pour un.*

Finally, it must be borne in mind that *en* cannot be used for the English *of it*, *of them*, etc., or for *some* or *any*, if these words are not accompanied by verbs, as *en* is a conjunctive personal pronoun, and consequently can be used only in immediate connection with a verb. In such cases, the French either repeat the verb, or substitute *d'entre* (from amongst) for *en*.

Ex. How many did you see? Two of them. *Combien en avez-vous vus? J'en ai vu deux, or deux d'entre eux.*

You have taken six spoons. No, Sir, only four. *Vous-avez pris six cuillers. Non, Monsieur, je n'en ai pris que quatre.*

EXERCISE.

I foresee that this young man will become your friend, for you are always speaking of him. I like these men, and I say of them what your friend told you. Give me a small number of them, if you please, and lend her as many as you can give her, she will make a better use of them than I. Can you lend me some money? I am sorry, I have not any, but I will tell you who has some. I do not like that tea; I have tried a small quantity and it is not good; show me some better. The sample I gave you was of the best tea in the city; now I have not any, but I shall have some that is more costly, by the next vessel. How many brothers had she? She had five, but she has lost one lately and another last year; thus she has only three now. Will you take two or three pieces of S. K.? Only two of them, if you please; but if I find I have enough money, I shall take the third also. Out of

a hundred men that buy lottery tickets, one wins a prize and ninety-nine lose their money. I want a knife, and I want a large one, for I have lost all the small ones I have ever bought. You have not treated me fairly, you sold me an old one for a new one.

PLACE OF CONJUNCTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

a. As Subject.

The elementary rules on the place of personal pronouns have already been given, and it has been seen that, as nominatives of the verb, they precede it, except in the interrogative form, when they are placed, as in English, after the verb.

Ex. *Je l'ai salué, pourquoi ne me salue-t-il pas ?* I have bowed to him, why does he not bow to me ?

It has also been stated that if in questions the subject be a noun, it must be placed at the head of the sentence, and then repeated after the verb in the form of the corresponding pronoun.

Ex. *L'Empereur est-il parti pour Fontainebleau ?* Has the Emperor left for Fontainebleau ?

Les hommes ne seront-ils jamais plus sages qu'à présent,
Will men never be any wiser than they are now ?

To these general rules must now be added the following, which refer to more particular constructions :

In English a condition may be expressed by simply giving to the verb the interrogative form, and instead of saying : If he had been here, this would not have happened, we may say : Had he only been here, this would not have happened. In general, such constructions are not admissible in French and must be rendered by employing *si*, if.

Ex. Should you go there now, it would be too late, *si vous y alliez maintenant, il serait trop tard.*

But in cases in which great emphasis is laid upon the condition, as when we say or can say *even if*, the French employ

the interrogative form of the whole of the subjunctive of the verbs *avoir*, *être* and *devoir*, and the third person singular of the same tense and mood of all verbs, like the English, for the same purpose.

Ex. *Dussé-je en mourir, je le ferais néanmoins*, even if I were to die of it, I would do it nevertheless.

Fût-il plus riche que Crésus, il ne serait pas heureux, even if he were richer than Cræsus, he would not be happy.

Eussent-ils eu six cents canons, ils ne l'auraient pas emporté, even if they had had six hundred guns, they would not have gained the battle.

Donnât-il tout son bien aux pauvres, il ne gagnerait pas le ciel, even if he were to give all he has to the poor, he would not enter into heaven.

Personal pronouns are, also, generally placed after the verb, when for the sake of emphasis one of the following adverbs is placed at the beginning of the sentence : *à peine*, scarcely ; *en vain*, in vain ; *au moins*, at least ; *encore*, yet ; *toujours*, still ; *peut-être*, perhaps, and several others, expressing a conclusion.

Ex. *À peine fut-il entré, qu'il éclata en injures*, hardly had he come in, when he broke forth in insults.

Toujours sera-t-il suspect à tous ceux qui l'ont connu, still he will be suspected by all who have known him.

Peut-être auriez-vous mieux fait de vous taire, perhaps you had done better to keep silence.

It must not be overlooked that the pronoun is thus placed after the verb only when the above-mentioned adverbs are placed, for some particular purpose and always with a more or less idiomatic meaning, at the head of the sentence, instead of their legitimate place after the verb.

In incidental sentences personal pronouns are invariably placed after the verb.

Ex. *Eh bien, dit-il, finissons-en*, well, he said, let us make an end of it.

EXERCISE.

I have seen it often enough, and I do not care to see it again. Was this man ever one of your friends, or did he merely claim your friendship to protect himself in his crimes? Were he here now, he could not be admitted, because the general is too much engaged to see any one; but should you see him in an hour or sooner, you may send him to me and I will tell him when he can succeed. Even if he were the President of the United States, he would have no right to prohibit this. Should I lose my all, I will venture upon this enterprise and carry it through, even if it were the last thing I shall do upon earth. Nothing in this world, he repeated twice, will induce me to act thus, I value my honor more than all the riches of the earth.

b. As Object.

Personal Pronouns which are direct or indirect objects of a verb are placed immediately before it, except in the affirmative imperative, when they are placed after it and connected with it by a hyphen. This rule has already been stated and explained in the First Part of this Grammar. There remains, however, to be considered the case in which two such pronouns are connected with the same verb. Their place is, in that case, entirely prescribed by rules :

If the two pronouns represent different persons, the first person precedes the second, and the second the third.

Ex. He told it to me before he told it to you, *il me le dit avant qu'il vous le dit.*

I gave them to you yesterday at the Exchange, *je vous les ai donnés hier à la Bourse.*

You owe them to me and you shall pay them to me, *Vous me les devez et vous me les payerez.*

If the two pronouns represent the same person, which can, of course, occur only with the third person, the direct object precedes the indirect.

Ex. He sent them to her and she sent them back to him, *il les lui envoya et elle les lui renvoya.*

He took the purse and gave it to them, with these words, *il prit la bourse et la leur donna avec ces mots.*

If the two pronouns are placed after the imperative, that of the third person is invariably placed first, for the sake of euphony, and both are joined by hyphens to the verb. If they should both be of the third person, here also the direct object precedes the indirect.

Ex. Give it to me at once or I must take it, *donnez-le-moi de suite ou je devrai le prendre.*

Send him to us and we will take care of him, *envoyez-le-nous et nous nous en chargerons.*

Show it to him and then give it back to them, *montrez-le-lui et après rendez-le-leur.*

En and *y* will be found, in accordance with these rules, always nearest to the verb, when before it, and farthest from it, after the imperative.

Ex. *Il aurait dû vous en donner autant*, he ought to have given you as many.

Donnez-lui-en autant qu'il voudra, give him as much as he wants.

Est-ce que vous l'y voyez tous les jours? Do you see him there every day?

Conduisez-nous-y et nous vous rendrons grâce, carry us there and we will be obliged to you.

It has already been mentioned that for the sake of euphony *is* is placed before *moi* and *toi*, as, *Invitez-y-moi*, invite me to it; but such phrases are of very rare occurrence and ought to be avoided by foreigners.

EXERCISE.

When he saw that I was a foreigner, he said to me: I cannot trust you, send me a native. When he had read the book, he gave it to me, with the promise that I would return it to him to-morrow or the next

day. Did you see that beautiful rose? I gathered it this morning in my garden: I presented it to her politely at breakfast; she took the leaves of it and placed them into a vase, where she collects a large quantity of rose-leaves, in order to make a perfume of them. Send her to him, he will know what she can do to it. If you have your books here, take this pretty one, add it to them, and they will appear twice as handsome as before. What did he tell you about it? He told me no more of it than he had told you, but he promised that he would carry me there and show it to me himself. Take the dollar and give it to them, and then take this letter and send it to her; she will read it at once. When you have looked at all the engravings, return them to her, and tell her that I wish to see them also, if she can lend them to me for some time. Sell me a hundred of them and I will give you a good price.

REPETITION OF CONJUNCTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Personal Pronouns must be repeated before every verb, to which they serve as an object. This rule has no exception with regard to the pronouns of the first and second person.

Ex. I saw and recognized her before you did, *je la vis et je la reconnus avant vous.*

I will study and learn it by heart to-night, *je vais l'étudier et l'apprendre par cœur ce soir.*

The pronouns of the third person, however, may be used but once, instead of being repeated, when the two verbs which they qualify are of the same nature.

Ex. *Il vint et dit*, he came and said.

Je la vis et saluai, I saw and saluted her.

But if the two verbs have different objects, or one is affirmative and the other negative, or if they are separated by incidental sentences, the pronouns of the third person also must be separated.

Ex. *Elle voulut et elle ne voulut pas*, she would and she would not.

Je l'ai rencontré et je lui ai parlé, I have met him and spoken to him.

Il la cassa quand j'étais absent, et il ne l'a pas fait raccommoder, he broke it when I was away, and has not had it mended.

If the two verbs thus used with the same pronouns are in the imperative mood, the usage is to repeat the pronoun, but to place it before, instead of after, the second verb.

Ex. *Tenez ce livre ; lisez-le et le relisez*, take this book ; read and re-read it.

Nettoyez-les et les polissez tant que vous pourrez, clean and polish them as well as you can.

EXERCISE.

I like this young lady as well as you, but I think you flatter and praise her too much. He spoke to me for half an hour, and did not say a single word which I had not heard before. She went and came back ten times ; at last she made an effort and really went away. Speak to him or write to him on the subject ; he will give you the best advice, and accompany it with a sum of money. I will give you your mother's letter ; read it and re-read it, it is full of good advice, and you ought to study and follow it during your whole life. She saw it but she did not recognize it, and yet it was her own child. I think of it and remember it every day when I come to your house—how I loved and cherished it !

PERSONAL PRONOUNS SUBSTITUTED FOR POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

Possessive Pronouns referring to parts of the body of the person speaking or spoken of and to, are not rendered in French by the corresponding words, but their place is supplied by the article before the noun, and the indirect object of the proper personal pronoun before the verb. Instead of saying : His head aches, *sa tête fait mal* ; the French say : The head aches to him, *la tête lui fait mal*.

Ex. I washed my face, *je me lavai le visage.*

I will break his head, *je lui casserai la tête.*

She has cut her finger, *elle s'est blessé au doigt.*

The verb, to beg pardon, is in French used after the same manner, substituting the personal for the possessive pronoun.

Ex. I beg your pardon, *je vous demande pardon.*

With passive verbs, the nominative of which is a person, the pronoun is superfluous, as there can arise no ambiguity in such a case.

Ex. I was wounded in my shoulder, *je fus blessé à l'épaule.*

The general rule of thus substituting one class of pronouns for another is, however, set aside whenever there could either an ambiguity arise as to the person whose parts are spoken of, or when special emphasis is resting on the possessive pronoun. In these cases the latter is translated literally.

Ex. Push your feet (not anybody else's), *poussez vos pieds.*

Show me your teeth, *montrez-moi vos dents.*

Having wept so much, their eyes were red, *ayant tant pleuré, leurs yeux étaient rouges.*

On the other hand, the article alone suffices to represent the possessive pronoun, without the addition of a personal pronoun, when we speak of an action natural to the part of the body referred to, and when there can be no ambiguity.

Ex. I opened my mouth, *j'ouvris la bouche*

Shut your eyes, *fermez les yeux.*

If the noun expressing a part of the body, be accompanied by an adjective, the possessive pronoun must be used.

Ex. Give me your beautiful hand, *donnez-moi votre belle main.*

What has become of her bright eyes? *ses yeux brillants que sont-ils devenus?*

It must be borne in mind here, that in French the singular of

nouns expressing a part of the body is used, instead of the English plurals, when each person has but one such part.

Ex. They all lost their lives, *ils perdirent tous la vie.*

The savages cut off their noses and ears, *les sauvages leur coupèrent le nez et les oreilles.*

EXERCISE.

You pull my hair too severely in combing it; take care, or my head will ache for several hours. He was wounded lightly in the arm, but he lost his leg. Go into the chamber and wash your hands and face. When the robbers had entered his room, they tied his arms and bandaged his eyes, so that he could neither see nor hear. She said she felt a slight pain in her foot, perhaps she has sprained it. Please stop my ears, I cannot endure that dreadful noise. Show me your teeth, the dentist said, and I will tell you if it is necessary to draw them. I opened my mouth, but he insisted that he could not see my teeth yet. He will certainly not punish you this time, if you go at once to him and beg his pardon. Do not put your feet on the cushion; your boots are not clean, and you will soil the cover. He raised his arms to heaven and expressed his unbounded astonishment. In his first duel he was wounded in the shoulder and his adversary lost his left leg; both combatants lost their lives during the war. He cannot speak of it, for as soon as he mentions it, the tears come into his eyes.

HOW TO TRANSLATE *it* INTO FRENCH.

The personal pronoun *it* represents either a noun or a whole sentence or a part of a sentence. In the first case it is translated by *il* or *elle*, according to the gender of the noun which it represents; in the latter case, before *être*, by *ce*. An additional test to know when *ce* is to be substituted for *il*, is to see if the English *it* can be supplied by *that*, in which case it is invariably rendered by *ce*.

Ex. Try this beer, it is excellent, *goûtez cette bière, elle est excellente.*

Try it again ; it is better already, *essayez de nouveau ; c'est mieux déjà.*

Tell me seriously, is it (that) really so ? *Dites-moi sérieusement, est-ce vraiment ainsi ?*

It has been the same each time he has come, *c'a été la même chose chaque fois qu'il est venu.*

Ce is not used before an adjective followed by *de*.

Ex. It is useless to go there now, *il* (not *c'est*) *est inutile d'y aller maintenant.*

Nor in the familiar exclamation : *est-il possible ?* But in all definitions of time with *être*, *ce* will be required, as in such expressions *that* can always be substituted for *it*.

Ex. It was in June when I saw him last, *c'était en Juin que je l'ai vu la dernière fois.*

Was it yesterday that he came to your house ? *Est-ce que ce fut hier qu'il est venu chez vous ?*

Ce may be separated from the verb *être* in these cases, when the two verbs *pouvoir* and *devoir* are connected with it.

Ex. It cannot be he, for I have seen him myself, *ce ne peut pas être lui, car je l'ai vu moi-même.*

It must be a queer thing, *ce doit être une drôle de chose.*

Another peculiarity in this use of *ce* for *it*, is that it is followed by the plural of the verb, when connected with nouns or personal pronouns of the third person, whilst with all other persons it remains singular.

Ex. It is they who ought to be blamed for it, *ce sont eux qu'on doit blâmer.*

It was you who told me so, *c'était vous qui me l'avez dit.*

Is it your children or mine whom he wants to see ? *Sont-ce vos enfants ou les miens qu'il veut voir ?*

It must not be forgotten, in this connection, that *it* may not

only be the subject (nominative) but also the direct object (accusative) of the verb, in which case it has to be translated by *le*.

Ex. Ride out, your health requires it, *sortez à cheval, votre santé le demande.*

Don't do so, you know the master prohibits it, *ne le faites pas, vous savez que le maître le défend.*

Do you think this is it? *Croyez-vous que ce l'est?*

EXERCISE.

When I heard it first, I thought it was not true, but the papers say that it is surely so, and I fear that it cannot be doubted any longer. It is difficult to understand their reasons for these measures, but it was so last year, and I presume it is so in all great crises. He offered me his credit in that city, and I knew that it was not small, but I made no use of it, because I had money enough. It is we whom they blame, and yet you know very well that it is they who are the cause of all these misfortunes. Is it really you, my dear friend, whom I have not seen for so many years? It was not difficult to guess what would be the consequences of his manner of living, for it was clear that he spent twice as much as he took in. You are mistaken, Sir, it cannot be she whom you saw, for she was at my house at that hour, and she is there now. It was half-past ten when I saw her, and I am sure it was she. It has been so in all revolutions: success is the only test by which rights are decided. It was a very cunning trick, and it will not be easy, even hereafter, to discover exactly how it was done. Is it possible, he cried out, that you have committed such a blunder, and you speak of it as if it were a mere trifle? Do you not know that it will be a cause of great loss and much regret to you and your family?

PERSONAL PRONOUNS WITH NEUTER VERBS.

There are some neuter verbs in French followed by the preposition *à*, the meaning of which is such as not to coalesce easily with their object; hence the conjunctive form of the personal pronouns cannot be used with them, but they require

the preposition *à* to be expressed, and the proper form of the (absolute) personal pronoun to be used after them. These verbs are principally *aller à*, to go to ; *boire à*, to drink to ; *être à*, to belong to ; *penser à*, to think of (and other verbs expressing thoughts, like *méditer à*, etc.) ; *recourir à*, to have recourse to, and *viser à*, to aim at.

Ex. I went to him and told him what I wanted, *j'allai à lui et je lui dis ce qu'il me fallait.*

Think of me when you are in Venice, *pensez à moi quand vous serez à Venise.*

This belongs to him, for he has bought it, *c'est à lui, car il l'a acheté.*

REFLEXIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

The conjunctive reflexive pronoun of the French is *se*, which represents all English forms of the third person, himself, herself, itself, themselves and one's self, without translating the word self, which is only used when there is an emphasis resting on it.

Ex. She deceives herself if she thinks so, *elle se trompe, si elle le pense.*

They love themselves too well and others too little, *ils s'aiment trop et les autres trop peu.*

He has killed himself in a moment of rage, *il s'est tué dans un moment de rage.*

Se is the only pronoun which can be used to represent the nominative *on*, in the oblique cases.

Ex. *On se trouve en danger quand on y pense le moins*, we find ourselves in danger, when we least think of it.

It has already been stated in the First Part of this Grammar that this conjunctive pronoun *se* is used with all pronominal verbs in French alike, but that it is differently translated into English according to the special nature of these verbs, viz. in reflexive verbs by *one's self*, in reciprocal verbs by *each other*, and in pronominal verbs proper not at all.

Ex. *On peut être savant et se tromper néanmoins, one may be learned and yet be mistaken.*

Ils allaient se tuer tout de bon, they were about to kill each other in good earnest.

Il faudra se lever de bonne heure demain, we will have to rise early to-morrow.

II.—ABSOLUTE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Personal pronouns are called absolute, when they have no connection with the verb, but stand either entirely alone or are dependent on a preposition.

Ex. Who is there? It is I, who come to see you, *qui est là? C'est moi, qui viens vous voir.*

He, who had been my friend, abandoned me, *lui, qui avait été mon ami, m'abandonna.*

Go with them, they will show you the way, *allez avec eux, ils vont vous montrer la route.*

In these examples, *I* and *he* are used without connection with any verb, and *them* depends on the preposition *with*.

The forms of the absolute personal pronouns are :

1st person, singular : *moi*, I or me.

2d " " *toi*, thou or thee.

3d " " { *lui*, he or him.
 { *elle*, she or her.

1st person, plural : *nous*, we or us.

2d " " *vous*, you.

3d " " { *eux*, they (masc.) or them.
 { *elles*, they (fem.) or them.

Although these absolute forms cannot be used in connection with a verb, they may be added to the conjunctive form—

1st. In order to express emphasis :

Ex. I, I saw it, and I assure you it is so, *moi, je l'ai vu et je vous assure qu'il en est ainsi.*

I do not see him, whom I wished most to see, *je ne le vois pas lui, que je désirais voir le plus.*

2. In order to express distinction between several persons.

Ex. He was here, but she was absent, *lui, il fut ici mais elle, elle fut absente.*

I have seen him and her, but they have forgotten me, *je les ai vus, lui et elle, mais ils m'ont oublié.*

3. In order to couple a pronoun with a noun, both being subject or object of the same verb.

Ex. I know them and their neighbor, *je les connais, eux et leur voisin.*

She and her brother live together, *elle et son frère ils demeurent ensemble.*

You and I who were there know it well, *vous et moi qui étions là, nous le savons bien.*

It will be seen from these examples, that whenever pronouns are the subject or object of a verb, the conjunctive form must be used in the first place — and can never be omitted — and the absolute form is only superadded afterwards for such specific purposes as have been mentioned.

Ex. *Il nous invita vous et moi*, he invited (us), you and me. *Je vous parlai à vous et à elle*, I spoke (to you), to you and to her.

Nous les recevrons lui et sa femme, we will receive (them), him and his wife.

EXERCISE.

1, whose reputation he tries to ruin, I have never done him any thing but good services. You and I are content with our fate, but I believe that is a rare exception. Speak for me, if you can find an opportunity, and I will speak for you whenever I can. He went away with them and he came back with them, but he did not think of them after they had parted. These ladies and I were together at the theatre last night; they like the opéra, but I, I was tired and nearly fell asleep.

You and your brother will see that I was right when I told you that you ventured too much. I know him and her, for I have known their whole family since I have been in this country ; he is a nice fellow, but she is a shrew. We had invited her and her sisters, but only she and one of her brothers came, the others were sick. You may tell him this secret to-morrow, but you cannot tell her any thing of it until the affair is over. Did she not receive you and her very well, when she discovered who you were? Yes, she was very kind to me, and so were her parents, and I thanked both her and them.

The absolute forms of the personal pronouns are, moreover, used whenever they are followed by a relative pronoun, because the latter separates the personal pronoun from its verb, and permits it thus no longer to be conjunctive.

Ex. *Moi, qui suis son fils, je le déclare coupable*, I, who am his son, I declare him guilty.

Qu'est-ce que c'est que lui qui nous traite si indignement?

Who is he, who treats us so badly?

Eux qui ont mal calculé, devraient payer, they who have calculated wrong ought to pay.

The absolute forms are, also, used whenever the pronoun is separated from the verb by a noun or an adjective, because then also it ceases to be truly conjunctive.

Ex. *Moi seul je le vis quand il mourut*, I alone saw him as he died.

Lui, le héros, pouvait-il s'oublier si tristement? He, the hero, could forget himself so sadly?

The absolute forms are, finally, placed by ellipsis before the infinitive of verbs in order to give great emphasis to the expression.

Ex. *Moi, trahir le meilleur de mes amis?* I (should) betray the best of my friends?

Lui, faire une telle lâcheté et se conduire si mal? He (could) act so meanly and conduct himself so badly?

EXERCISE.

She who takes such good care of her health when she is well, is very imprudent when she is the least indisposed. I know him and her, both have been my friends for many years ; he is almost a brother to me, and she will be my wife next week. They should have forgotten so far all that we have done for them, and repay us with such ingratitude? I cannot and will not believe it, for they have ever been my best friends. He who is your brother would not lend you this small sum, and I whom you have hardly known am willing to give you all you may want. It is she who is always complaining of her health and not he, for he is never sick ; and both he and she will live yet many years. Yes, I shall punish him and no one else, for he alone is guilty ; and the others who were caught with him, were not his accomplices but his victims. He was on horseback and I was on foot, nevertheless I was first at the rendezvous, and when the seconds came we saw that it was they who had given him false directions.

THE PRONOUN *soi*.

Soi is the absolute form of the reflexive pronoun, which, from the nature of its meaning, can never occur by itself, but is only used in connection with prepositions or the conjunction *que*, where it has, of course, all the various meanings that have been mentioned in the explanation of the conjunctive form *se*.

Ex. *On pense toujours plus à soi qu'à autrui*, we always think more of ourselves than of others.

Il est facile d'être riche quand on n'a que soi, it is easy to be rich when one has only one's self.

Heureux qui vit chez soi ! Happy he who has a home !

Generally the use of *soi* is avoided, except after *on*, and *lui* or *elle* are used instead ; still, in cases in which an ambiguity might arise, *soi* must be employed to mark the person of the subject in contradistinction to that of a third person spoken of.

Ex. *Il ne parle que de soi*, or better, *que de lui-même*, he only speaks of himself.

L'avare qui a un fils prodigue n'amasse ni pour soi ni

pour lui. The miser who has a prodigal son, looks neither for himself nor for him.

When *soi* is joined to *même*, it loses its pronominal character and may be used like a noun.

Ex. *Un tel ami est un autre soi-même.* Such a friend is another self (*alter ego*.)

Où mon amour me trompe où Zaire aujourd'hui pour l'élever à soi, descendrait jusqu'à lui. If my passion does not deceive me, Zaire would now, in order to raise him up to herself, lower herself to him.

Soi is also very generally used in reference to lifeless objects.

Ex. *La vertu est aimable en soi,* virtue is attractive in itself.

La franchise est bonne de soi, mais elle a ses excès, frankness is good in itself, but it may go too far

EXERCISE.

When one speaks against his neighbor, he speaks against himself. People think too much of themselves and rely too much on themselves, hence they are so often mistaken. He has covered himself with disgrace, and he must be ashamed when he thinks of himself. He who loves work has enough in himself; he can do without the company of others. In order to have true peace, we must be in peace with God, with our neighbors and with ourselves. These things are indifferent in themselves, but they may become of great importance. Crime always drags after it a certain meanness, which it is not very easy to conceal from an observant eye. This young man, while doing the will of his father, works for himself.

It will be recollected that the absolute forms *moi* and *toi* take the place of the conjunctive forms *me* and *te* after the imperative of verbs, unless they should be followed by *en*.

Ex. *Dites-moi donc la vérité,* now tell me the truth.

Tais-toi, pendard, tu as trop dit déjà, be still, rascal, you have said too much already.

Donnez-m'en tout ce que vous pourrez, give me as much as you can.

Moi, however, is placed after *y*, contrary to general rules, for the sake of euphony.

Ex. *Tu vas à l'opéra, mènes-y-moi*, you are going to the opera, take me with you.

In familiar language *moi* is sometimes added to the imperative, as a mere expletive, to give, as it were, greater force to the expression

Ex. *Faites-moi taire ces gens-là!* Make those people keep silence there!

Frappez-le moi un peu sur le dos, strike him a little on the back.

II.—POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

Possessive Pronouns have their name from the fact that they generally qualify nouns by means of their relation to the owner or possessor. It will be seen, however, that in French this original purpose is by no means accomplished by the use of possessive pronouns, except in a few limited cases.

These pronouns are, like all others, divided into conjunctive, or such as are invariably used in close connection with a noun, and absolute, or such as stand instead of a noun and are consequently always accompanied by an article.

The elementary rules on the use of both classes have already been given in the First Part of this Grammar. It will be borne in mind that the conjunctive agree with the noun which they qualify, while the absolute agree with the noun which they represent.

Ex. *Cette homme parla à sa mère et à la mienne*, this man spoke to his mother and to mine.

C'était sa fille et point la vôtre, this was his daughter and not yours.

S'il prend ma bague, je prendrai la sienne, if he takes my ring, I'll take his.

Possession is in French expressed, not by means of the possessive pronouns as in English, but by means of the verb *être*,

in the signification of, to belong, followed by *à* and the absolute form of the personal pronoun.

Ex. This house is mine, but it will be yours, *cette maison est à moi, mais elle sera à vous.*

Whose watch was it? It was hers. *Cette montre à qui fut-elle? Elle était à elle.*

The only exception to this rule applies to the cases in which possessive pronouns are used, not to express possession itself, but rather distinction between two objects by means of possession.

Ex. *Ne prenez pas ce chapeau, c'est le mien,* do not take that hat, that is mine.

Laquelle a-t-il perdue, la vôtre ou la leur? Which has he lost, yours or theirs?

EXERCISE.

This is my brother's sentiment and mine; I hope yours is not different from ours. I have returned you your books, what have you done with hers? The book which I lost yesterday was not mine but my wife's; she regrets the loss bitterly. Here are all the jewels you have ever given me; now say, which are to be yours and which mine? Your servants and ours are frequently quarrelling; we shall have to change them all, or there will be no peace for you or me. This is my sister's horse; if you wish to see mine you must go to the stable. I am too tired to go with you, but I should like to see yours, they are famous in the whole town. Whose cottage is this? My dear friend, to-day it is mine, but to-morrow it may be yours, for I mean to leave it to you after my death. Why, my friend, do not speak so, for your life may be longer than mine. She shall not have these bracelets; I will give her mine, but I will never give her these.

In English, possessive pronouns may be placed, by means of the preposition *of*, after the noun which they qualify, and the latter can, in such cases, be accompanied by an indefinite article or a demonstrative pronoun, as in—A friend of mine, or These

books of his. Both modes of expression are not known to the French, and when they have to be translated, a choice must be made between the demonstrative and the possessive pronouns, as only one can be used. The less important will be omitted, and we will say either : These books, or His books. For A friend of mine, we say, One of my friends.

Ex. *Un de mes amis*, a friend of mine.

Ces livres or *vos livres*, those books of yours.

Take these pictures of mine and sell them at auction,
prenez ces tableaux et vendez-les à l'encan.

Was that a friend of yours ? *Est-ce que c'était un de vos amis ?*

The possessive pronouns *its* and *theirs*, when referring to lifeless objects, are not translated by *le sien*, etc., but by *en*, unless the objects are personified by having some quality or action applied to them.

Ex. *Voyez cet arbre ; les fruits en sont excellents*, look at this tree ; its fruit is excellent.

Est-ce que mon cheval a déjà mangé son avoine ? Has my horse eaten its oats already ?

The possessive pronouns are not used before nouns followed by a relative pronoun, but are exchanged, in that case, for the definite article.

Ex. *J'ai reçu la (not votre) lettre que vous m'avez écrite*, I have received your letter which you have written me.

Tenez les (not vos) promesses que vous m'avez faites, keep your promises which you have made me.

Le mien, *le tien*, and occasionally *le sien*, are used to express my, thy, his or her property, and treated as nouns.

Ex. *Le mien et le tien, sont la source de toutes les querelles*, what is mine and what is thine, this is the source of all troubles.

Il a mangé tout le sien, he has spent all his property.

Les miens, les vôtres and all the plurals are used to express my parents, friends, adherents, etc., and treated as nouns.

Ex. *Les miens ne m'ont pas secouru dans ce danger*, my friends have not stood by me in this danger.

Il faut amener Mme. votre épouse et tous les vôtres, you must bring your wife and all your family.

EXERCISE.

A clerk of his has defrauded him largely and brought about his failure by his dishonesty. Was this man ever a friend of yours, or did he only pretend to be acquainted with you? I am surprised at your question; a man like him never could be a friend of mine. These horses of yours are very handsome and very fast, but they are not sound, they will not live long, especially if you do not change that groom of yours, who treats them badly. A neighbor of yours heard the noise the burglars made in breaking the kitchen window, and came at once to our assistance; without this aid of his, the whole house would have been stripped of every thing valuable and we would have lost all our property. When this news reaches our country, what will our people say about it? You and yours will always be welcome at my house, and I shall ever be delighted to see you there.

III.—DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

It has already been explained in the First Part of this Grammar that the demonstrative pronouns also are divided into two classes: conjunctive, or such as are invariably connected with a noun or the verb *être*, and absolute, or such as stand alone and represent themselves nouns. The former were represented by *ce* and its various forms, the latter by compounds of *ce* with the absolute forms of personal pronouns, as *celui*, *celle*, etc. It was also stated that the distinction between the two English demonstrative pronouns This and That, had to be expressed, in French by the addition of *ci* (from *ici*) and *là*, either to the pronouns themselves, as *ceci*, *ceta*, *celui-ci*, *ceux-là*, or to the

nouns preceded by these pronouns, as *cet homme-ci*, this man, and *cet homme-là*, that man.

The conjunctive forms agree, of course, with the noun which they qualify, the absolute with that which they represent.

Ex. *Cet homme et cette femme ne sont pas mariés*, this man and this woman are not married.

Cette maison et celle que vous m'avez vendue, this house and that which you have sold me.

Mes filles et celles de notre voisin, my daughters and those of our neighbors.

Ce is conjunctive to the verb *être* only, although in familiar conversation a few other verbs occur with it, as *ce me semble*, it seems to me. It has the peculiarity of leaving the verb in the singular, even when referring to a plural, unless the latter should be a pronoun of the third person plural, or a word preceded by a preposition. In these two cases the verb is used in the plural.

Ex. *Ce sera nous tous qui lui en seront redevables*, we all of us will be obliged to him for it.

C'est vous qui êtes chéris, it is you who are beloved.

Ce sont eux qui ont ordonné tout, it is they who have arranged all.

Quoi ! c'est à ces dieux que vous sacrifiez ? What ! is it these gods you worship ?

Whenever *ce* and *être* are followed by a noun or pronoun preceded by a preposition, they must be connected by *que* with the following verb.

Ex. *C'est à vous que je parle*, it is to you I speak.

Ce n'est pas de cela qu'il s'agit aujourd'hui, that is not the question to-day.

When *ce* is followed by a relative pronoun, *ce* must be repeated before the next verb, of which it forms the subject.

Ex. *Ce que je crains c'est d'être surpris*, what I fear is to be taken in.

Ce que j'aime le mieux c'est de vous voir ici, what I like best, is to see you here.

Ce must be supplied in French before *être*, when the subject of the latter verb is the preceding part of the sentence.

Ex. *Le mieux dans ces cas c'est de se taire*, the best in such cases is to be quiet.

Vivre tout seul c'est trop triste, to live quite alone is too sad.

Although many classic authors omit the *ce* when *être* is followed by the nominative, as

Ex. *L'enfer des femmes est la vieillesse*, old age is the hell of women.

EXERCISE.

It seems to me that this wine is not so good as that in the cask. That is not possible, for this is much older and more costly, and the other is a wine of very little value. It is the number of people and the abundance of food which make the true strength and the true wealth of a country. It is indifferents works that one ought to abridge; it would be an act of injustice to shorten a work of great merit. It is they who have done all this, and now they have the impudence to say that it is we who are responsible for the result. It is neither the arts nor the handicrafts that can degrade man: it is vices only that can do that. The true praise of a poet is to retain his verses and to hear them recited in the streets. The only way to compel men to speak well of us is to act well. You have done great things; but confess the truth, it is hardly by you that they have been accomplished. What I have told you is the simple truth; you may believe it or not, as you choose. What we endure with least patience, are calumnies and treacheries.

The absolute forms, *celui*, etc., have not only the general meaning of the English demonstrative pronouns, but are used,

besides, to render various other expressions, of which the following are the most important :

They represent *the one*, when followed by a relative pronoun.

Ex. The one for whom I work, is a better master, *celui pour qui je travaille, moi, est un meilleur maître.*

This is not the one whom I love best, *ce n'est pas celle que j'aime le mieux.*

They represent, also, the English personal pronoun, when it is employed in a general sense and followed by a relative pronoun.

Ex. He who weeps will be consoled, *celui qui pleure sera consolé.*

He who will not labor must suffer, *ceux qui ne veulent pas travailler doivent souffrir.*

But when the personal pronoun refers to an individual, it is literally translated.

Ex. He, who was rich, has lost every thing, *lui, qui était riche a perdu tout.*

They represent, also, the English *one*, followed by a relative pronoun.

Ex. I do not like one who tells stories, *je n'aime pas ceux qui font des contes.*

One who knows so well ought not to say that, *celui qui le sait si bien ne devrait pas le dire.*

They represent, finally, the English *which*, when it has the signification of *whichever*.

Ex. Take which of these papers you prefer, *prenez celui de ces journaux que vous préférez.*

Celui, etc., must be supplied in French when in English the nominative of a possessive case is omitted idiomatically.

Ex. These horses and my father's (horses) are alike, *ces chevaux et ceux de mon père sont pareils.*

I will send you yours and your wife's, *je vous enverrai les vôtres et ceux de votre femme*

EXERCISE.

He who wishes to be happy in this world is not always so, because we rarely know what makes our true happiness. You can read which of these books you choose, only put them back again in their places in the library. He who says so is either mistaken or he says deliberately what is not true; you may take your choice. There is an old proverb in various languages which says: He to whom fortune pipes, dances well. Will you please show me your picture, I mean the one which you bought a year ago, when you were in Italy. I cannot show you that, because it is in the hands of an artist, but I can show you the one I brought from Italy when I was there before. He who wants to reap where he has not sowed, is a dishonest man. They who talk will be punished, and the one who is first discovered will be punished very severely. Do you think you ever could love one who has done such an act? Do you recollect the young lady I wanted to introduce you to, the one with the auburn hair and the majestic figure? Well I am sorry for it, but she has married and left our city.

Celui-ci, celui-là and the other absolute forms connecte with *ci* and *là*, lose by that combination their general character and are used to point out more individually and directly, those with *ci* representing the English this one, those with *là* the English that one, and kindred expressions.

Ex. *Donnez-moi celui-ci et prenez celui-là*, give me this one and take that one.

Ceux-ci sont assez bons, ceux-là ne valent rien, these here are pretty good, those are worth nothing.

Celui-ci and its various forms represent the English the latter, as being nearer to the moment of speaking, and *celui-là*, etc., the former, as being more remote.

Ex. *De ces mots celui-là est vieux, celui-ci est inconnu*, of these words the former is old, the latter unknown.

Ceci and *cela*, not having a personal pronoun in their composition, can be used with reference to lifeless objects only. The latter is in familiar conversation contracted into *ça*.

Ex. *Ceci me plaît, et je vous dis cela tout franchement*, I like that, and I tell you that quite openly.

Bonjour, Monsieur, comment ça va-t-il ? Good-morning, Sir : how are you ?

Hence also the first words of the revolutionary song, *Ca ira*, etc. In very familiar conversation *cela* occasionally answers to represent persons only, but this rare use of *cela* is not to be imitated. Thus, upon seeing children at play, one may say :

Cela est heureux, cela ne fait que jouer, are they happy, they have nothing to do but to play !

Cela is used for the English *it*, when that pronoun represents not a noun, but a whole sentence, and is not the nominative of the verb to be (in which case it would be translated by *ce* simply.)

Ex. *N'y allez pas, puisque cela lui déplairait fort*, do not go there, since it would displease him much.

Cela me plaît qu'il l'a fait lui-même, it pleases me that he has done it himself.

The English demonstrative pronouns *this* and *that*, when followed by the verb to be, are frequently expressed in French by the two words *voici* and *voilà*, which thus serve, in a manner, as demonstrative pronouns. They consist of the imperative of the verb *voir*, *vois*, see or behold, and the words *ici* and *là*. Hence they can only be used for objects virtually in sight, and are not admissible in interrogative sentences. Their verbal origin produces, moreover, the peculiar effect, that whilst nouns, which are the object, are placed after them, pronouns under the same circumstances are placed before them.

Ex. *Voici mes enfants, où sont les vôtres ?* Here or these are my children, where are yours ?

Voilà mon ami qui arrive enfin, there is my friend coming at last.

Sont-ce là vos enfants ou les miens ? Are those your children or mine ?

Les voici, je l'avais bien dit qu'ils ne nous manqueraient

pas ! There they are ; had I not said that they would not disappoint us !

Voici and *voilà* may be followed by an adjective or an adverb.

Ex. *Nous voilà sauvés pour cette fois*, now we are safe for this time.

Les voilà à l'endroit même où nous les attendions, there they are, at the very spot where we expected them.

But they cannot, as in English, be followed by a participle present, which must be rendered in French by *qui* and the proper tense of the verb.

Ex. *La voilà qui vient à notre rencontre*, there she is, coming to meet us.

When the two words are followed by an expression of quantity, they require *en* to be used before them.

Ex. *En voilà un, si je ne me trompe pas*, there is one of them, if I am not mistaken.

There is virtually no difference of meaning between *voici* and *voilà*, except that *voilà* refers to what has been mentioned before, and *voici* to what is coming after.

Ex. *Voilà ce qu'il a proposé et voici ce que je désire, moi*, that is what he proposed, and this is what I want.

In familiar style *voilà* is occasionally used interrogatively.

Ex. *En voilà-t-il tout ?* Is that all ?

EXERCISE.

A faithful magistrate and a brave officer are equally worthy of esteem ; the former makes war upon enemies at home, the latter upon enemies abroad. This machine is moved by springs and is very imperfect, that one is moved by steam and is quite new. When he came into the room he exclaimed : " What do I see ! is this my son, or do my eyes deceive me ? " I took the boy by the hand, and leading him to his father, I said : " This is your son, whom you thought lost ; and this is your daughter, whom you have never seen. These apples are not better than my neighbor's ; where are those you had this morning ? He is twice great, who having great merits, never speaks

of them, but leaves that to others. I do not say that, but I assure you, that I will not permit you to repeat it. That is easy enough, but you ought to try to work better than any of your rivals, and then you would succeed beyond doubt. How do you do, Madam? Thank you, Sir, I am well, but my poor daughter has been quite sick, and that troubles me sorely. There she is, and I said she would never come!

IV.—RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Relative Pronouns have their name from the fact that they relate or refer to some preceding noun or pronoun, which is called their antecedent.

Ex. *Il y a bien des personnes qui le savent*, there are a great many persons who know it.

Ce sont eux que nous blâmons seuls, it is they alone whom we blame.

The fundamental rule applying to the construction of all relative sentences is this :

There must be in French expressed the three parts of such a sentence : the antecedent, the relative pronoun, and its verb.

These three parts must follow in the order mentioned. In the sentence, *Voilà l'homme dont je parle*, there is the man I am speaking of, *l'homme* is the antecedent, *dont* the relative pronoun, and *je parle* its verb. Thus the three parts are present, and they follow each other in the prescribed order.

In English, on the contrary, the three parts are not necessarily required, one or the other being frequently omitted ; nor is the order in which they have to stand in French, by any means always observed. Hence arise the following different constructions.

1. In English the antecedent may be omitted. Then it has to be supplied in French by the proper form of the demonstrative pronoun *ce*, etc., for things, *celui*, etc., for persons.

Ex. What pleases me most is her modesty, *ce* (supplied) *qui me plaît le mieux, c'est sa modestie*.

I know what you want to say, *je sais ce* (supplied) *que vous voulez dire.*

Here are all who will be present, *voilà tous ceux* (supplied) *qui seront présents.*

2. In English the relative pronoun may be omitted. It has to be supplied in French.

Ex. Where is the book she had in her hand? *Où est le livre qu'* (supplied) *elle tenait à la main?*

These are the men you wanted to see, *voilà les hommes que* (supplied) *vous vouliez voir.*

3. In English the preposition governing the relative pronoun may be placed at the end of the sentence. In French it must be placed before the pronoun.

Ex. Can you guess what I am thinking of? *Pouvez-vous devinez ce à quoi je pense?*

Who was the man you were speaking to in the street? *Qui était l'homme à qui vous parliez dans la rue?*

4. In English the relative pronoun may be separated from the antecedent by intervening words. In French the order of words must be so changed as to bring them into immediate succession.

Ex. A vessel has arrived which brought me a letter. Not *un vaisseau est arrivé, qui*, but *il est arrivé un vaisseau qui m'a apporté une lettre.*

A friend told me so, who had seen it himself, *je l'ai appris d'un ami qui l'avait vu de ses propres yeux.*

5. In English the verb may be separated from the relative pronoun by intervening words. In French it must be placed in its proper place, immediately after the relative pronoun.

Ex. This is what the priest at Brussels has told me, *voilà ce que m'a dit le prêtre à Bruxelles.*

The book which your charming sister gave me, *le livre que m'a donné votre sœur charmante.*

The only exception to this general rule is furnished by *dont*, which is followed by its nominative, instead of by its verb, although, when the following noun is in any other case, the rule again applies.

Ex. You whose kindness has been so great, *vous dont les bontés ont été si grandes.*

But, You whose kindness I feel so deeply, *vous dont je sens tant les bontés.*

I paid for the book whose cover I spoil, *j'ai payé le livre dont j'ai gâté la couverture.*

It must not be forgotten that *qui*, etc., cannot be used whenever the relative pronoun is subject to a preposition, but that in all such cases *lequel*, etc., must be substituted.

Ex. The monarch in whose States we were, *le monarque dans les états duquel nous étions.*

The crime for which he is condemned, *le crime pour lequel il a été condamné.*

EXERCISE.

If you cannot do it, the persons who are my true friends will obtain for me all the money I want, for my credit is what I rely on in this crisis. I know what would be the best medicine for you; fresh air and an abundance of exercise; they are all I would prescribe for you. I cannot remember against whom he spoke, but it was the best speech I ever heard in my life. These men whose abominable crime has been so severely punished, will not be allowed to re-enter society—which is not severity but simple justice. When he returned to this country he went to see the mayor of the fortress from which he had escaped, and spoke to all who had known him during his captivity. This has brought us at last a peace, the sweetness of which surpasses all other pleasures, and for which we cannot be too grateful. You whose brilliant talents we all acknowledge, ought not, on that account, cease to make the greatest efforts. Were you in the ship the main-mast of which was struck by lightning and in which so many passengers were killed?

What is occasionally used in English before nouns, with the double power of an adjective and a pronoun, as in the phrase: What money he had. In French it has to be rendered as if it meant: All the money.

Ex. What clothes they had left him were wet, *tous les vêtements qu'on lui avait laissés, étaient mouillés.*

Give him what money he may want, *donnez-lui tout l'argent qu'il lui faudra.*

Quoi, as relative pronoun, can be used only as indirect object, consequently it will be always accompanied by a preposition.

Ex. *La chose à quoi l'avare pense le moins*, the thing of which misers think least.

Voilà ce de quoi je voulais vous parler, this is what I wanted to speak to you about.

Il n'y a rien sur quoi l'on ait plus écrit, there is nothing about which more has been written.

After *rien*, however, *quoi* is not used, but its place is supplied by *dont*.

Ex. *Il n'y a rien dont Dieu ne soit l'auteur*, there is nothing of which God is not the author.

De quoi, used relatively, but without an antecedent, has the signification of Something to, and kindred expressions.

Ex. *Donnez-moi de quoi écrire*, give me something to write about.

Il est riche, il a de quoi être content, he is rich, he has reason to be satisfied.

The adverb *où* (from the Latin *ubi*), literally meaning, where, is often used instead of the two relative pronouns preceded by a preposition, but its use is limited to definitions of time and space.

Ex. *L'instant où nous naissons, est un pas vers la mort*, the moment in which we are born, is a step towards death.

Voilà la maison où naquit Molière, this is the house in which Molière was born.

Où admits of the two prepositions *de* and *par*.

Ex. *Le péril d'où vous m'avez sauvé fut terrible*, the danger from which you have rescued me was a terrible one.

Les moyens par où cet intrigant est arrivé à la fortune, the means by which this intriguer has been so fortunate.

EXERCISE.

The city in which he arrived was full of sympathizing friends, and the dangers through which he had passed endeared them to him still more. He was received with shouts, and the house in which he took his lodgings was surrounded from morning till night by enthusiastic crowds. Happy is he who, content with his humble fate, lives in the obscure condition in which Heaven has concealed him! He would not tell us the country from which he came, and although we were sure enough that he was a foreigner, we could not tell where he was born. Tell me what you are thinking of and I will tell you what was in my thoughts. Henry IV., to whose kindness of heart so much praise has been given, was in reality a very selfish man. The diseases of the soul are the most dangerous; we ought to work at curing them; still, this is what we rarely think of. We have always something to amuse ourselves with; and when that fails us, we go out into the streets, and there is no lack of oddities there. There is nothing of which we know less than the true state of our neighbor's heart. Time would fail us to tell you all the dangers through which we have passed and all the difficulties from which Providence has rescued us during our last journey.

V.—ABSOLUTE AND INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

The same pronouns serve in English as relative and as interrogative pronouns, the only difference being that in the former capacity they have an antecedent to which they relate, while in the latter they are used without an antecedent, so that they are called interrogative, when they are used in questions.

In French the relative and the absolute pronouns resemble each other, but there are certain striking differences in the use

of both classes, which have been already stated in the First Part of this Grammar. Thus *qui*, as an absolute pronoun, is accusative as well as nominative, when referring to persons, and *dont* can never be used except as a relative pronoun. These and similar points of importance must here be recalled.

Qui, as an absolute pronoun, contains its antecedent in the shape of a personal pronoun, which must be supplied in English.

Ex. *Qui veut parler de tout, souvent parle au hazard*, he who wants to speak of every thing, often speaks at hazard.

Lâche qui veut mourir, courageux qui peut vivre, a coward is he who wants to die, brave is he who can live on.

Qui, as an interrogative pronoun, may be subject or object of the sentence, and thus answers for the English *who?* or *whom?*

Ex. *Qui ne sait compatir aux maux qu'on a soufferts?* Who cannot feel for the sufferings which he has endured?

Qui avez-vous choisi pour compagnon de voyage? Whom have you chosen for your travelling companion?

Qui, repeated, has in proverbial and similiar expressions the meaning of *some* and *others*.

Ex. *Qui pleurait qui riait, mais tous étoient émus*, some wept and others laughed, but all were moved.

Que, never employed absolutely, is also never used as the nominative of a verb, for which *is* substituted, for the sake of greater cleanness, *Qu'est-ce qui?*

Ex. What made you come so late? *Qu'est-ce qui vous a fait venir si tard?*

What has pleased you best? *Qu'est-ce qui vous a plu le mieux?*

Que is used only as accusative of a verb, for the English *what?*

Ex. *Que voulut-il dire, en parlant si brusquement ?* What did he mean by speaking so rudely ?

Que voulez-vous que je fasse pour lui ? What do you want me to do for him ?

Quoi, from the Latin *quod*, may be an absolute and an interrogative pronoun. In the former capacity it is used either alone or with a preposition.

Ex. *Elle chante mais je ne saurais vous dire quoi*, she is singing, but I cannot tell you what.

A quoi vous attendez-vous de fâcheux ? What unpleasant event do you expect ?

Quoi, followed by a comparative, has the meaning of What is ?

Ex. *Quoi de plus amusant que de les voir jouer ?* What is more amusing than to see them play ?

Je ne sais quoi is often used in French for the words : A certain something.

Ex. *Il y a dans cette affaire je ne sais quoi que je n'entends pas*, there is something in this matter which I do not understand.

EXERCISE.

To whom were you speaking when I saw you this morning ? I can tell you who it was, but I cannot tell you what we were speaking of, for that was my friend's secret. He has always something mysterious about him, which I do not like, but this time it was an important secret which he confided to me. What do you want and what can I do for you ? Nothing, Sir, I thank you, for he who wishes to be independent must learn to help himself. When the news of our delivery arrived, some cried out and others were silent, but the cause of this different behavior was the same in all. What belongs to you here ? Show it to me and I will send it to your house with what belongs to your sister. Will that glass contain what is in this phial, or must I send for a larger one ? Tell me whom you frequent and I

will tell who you are. Whom did you do that for? I worked for myself, which is the true policy of a man who wants to make his fortune.

Lequel and its various forms can be used as interrogative pronouns only in the signification of Which of several?

Ex. *Laquelle de ces deux sœurs préférez-vous?* Which of these two sisters do you like best?

De tous ces livres, lesquels sont les vôtres? Among all these books, which are yours?

Quel and its forms have the same meaning when used in reference to a pronoun; but when used in connection with a noun, they mean What kind of?

Ex. *Quel est le vôtre?* *Je voudrai le voir.* Which is yours? I should like to see it.

Quel est cet homme? *Il n'a pas l'air comme il faut.*
What kind of a man is he? He does not look like a gentleman.

Quelle est cette musique que j'entends de loin? What music is that I hear from afar?

It must be borne in mind, from what has been said in connection with the possessive pronoun, that the interrogative form, Whose? is in French expressed by *à qui* when standing alone or when followed by *être*.

Ex. *À qui est cette belle maison sur la route?* Whose is that beautiful house by the roadside?

À qui, dites-vous? Whose do you say?

But when Whose? is used without the verb To be, it is rendered either by *quel* or by *de qui*, according to the construction required.

Ex. I know whose daughter would suit him, *je sais quelle est la fille qui lui conviendrait.*

Can you tell me whose portrait this is? *Sauriez-vous
me dire quel est ce portrait?*
Whose ring? *La bague de qui?*

EXERCISE.

What was it you wanted to tell me when we were interrupted? I have entirely forgotten what I intended to mention to you, but it was nothing very important or I would remember it now. Which of these two young ladies is his sister, the light-haired or the dark-haired? I can see which of them is the prettiest, but I cannot tell which is the cleverest. What success has he had in his enterprise? Whose horses are these two bays which we have seen pass our house several times to-day? They are my cousin's, who is very fond of fine horses, and if you show him a number he will tell you at once which are sound and which are not. What a wonderful tale! and you hope that we or anybody else will believe it?

VI.—INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

There is a class of pronouns in French, whose special purpose it is to designate persons and things, not individually but vaguely and generally, and hence their name of indefinite pronouns. They differ in their use, inasmuch as some are never employed in connection with a noun, but stand alone and are substitutes for nouns, whilst others are only found before nouns, and a third class are used sometimes with and sometimes without a noun.

1.—*Indefinite Pronouns used alone.*

The principal pronoun of this class is *on*, a word of frequent use and great importance in French. It is derived from the Latin *homo*, now *homme*, and has passed through the various shortenings of *hom*, *om* and *on*. This derivation is still very influential, having the following practical effects :

On cannot be used for any agency but that of man, hence

excludes God, mechanical or indefinite agencies. It cannot be said, *on créa le monde*, the world was created, because the agent is not indefinite but known, and is not man, but God. Nor can it be said, *on pleuvait hier*, there was rain yesterday, because here the agency, though indefinite, is not a personal one.

On can only be used as a nominative, the subject of a sentence, as it is derived from a nominative, and not, like all other nouns, from an oblique case.

On has a way of its own to avoid the hiatus, which is everywhere else remedied by the insertion of a *t* between two hyphens, or the addition of an *s* to the first word ending in a vowel. With *on*, the remedy is to place an *l*, the article *le*, before it, when it is preceded by *et*, *si*, *ou* or *que*, according to euphony.

Ex. *Si l'on veut vivre tranquille, on doit se taire*, if we wish to live quietly, we must be discreet.

Ce que l'on conçoit bien s'énonce clairement, what is well understood is clearly expressed.

The same *l* is also frequently placed before *on* when it begins a sentence.

Ex. *L'on va et l'on vient et rien n'est accompli*, they come and go and nothing is done.

But, as this is done for the sake of euphony, care must be had not to insert this *l*, when the same letter occurs already, as its repetition would be more offensive to the ear than the vowel sound of *on*.

Ex. *Je ne veux pas qu'on le tourmente*, I do not want him to be troubled.

Il alla où on lui dit qu'il devait aller, he went where he was told he ought to go.

It has already been explained in the First Part of this Grammar, that *on* cannot be translated literally into English, as the latter has no such word as an indefinite personal pronoun. The substitutes are many, such as : people, men, they, somebody, we, and especially the passive construction.

Ex. *On n'est pas toujours maître de soi*, we are not always masters of ourselves.

On frappe à la porte, si je ne me trompe pas, somebody knocks, if I am not mistaken.

Ce qu'on admire le plus n'est pas toujours ce qu'il y a de mieux, what is most admired is not always the best.

When *on* is referred to in the same sentence, this can only be done by the reflexive pronoun *se* and *soi*, as *le* and *lui* would be too definite to correspond to the indefinite character of *on*.

Ex. *On pense toujours plus à soi qu'à autrui*, people always think more of themselves than of others.

On s'en est beaucoup émerveillé à la cour, they have wondered very much at it at court.

On is naturally masculine singular; nevertheless, when it so evidently refers to women or to a plural as to leave no doubt on the mind, it may be accompanied by an adjective or participle in the feminine or the plural.

Ex. *Ah, Madame, on n'est pas toujours jeune et jolie*, ah, Madam, people (you) are not always young and pretty.

On n'est pas des esclaves pour être si maltraités, we are not slaves to be so badly treated.

On must be repeated before every verb for which it serves as subject.

Ex. *On le loue, on le menace et on n'obtient rien*, he is praised, he is threatened, and nothing is gained by it.

On may be placed before every kind of verb, except impersonal verbs, because their agency is not that of man.

Ex. *On aime et l'on est aimé*, we love and we are loved.

On tombe dans de mauvaises habitudes et on s'en repent, people fall into bad habits and repent.

On convient qu'on s'est trompé, they admit that they have been mistaken.

When *on* occurs twice in the same sentence it must necessarily refer to the same subject, or the construction would be incorrect. It cannot be said, *on dit qu'on a pris la ville*, because the subject of *dit* is not the same as that of *a pris*. It must be expressed thus: *on dit que la ville a été prise*, they say that the city has been taken.

Although *on* may be translated by *one*, it cannot be used for the English *one*, followed by a relative pronoun. This must be translated, when indefinite, by *quelqu'un*, and when definite by *celui*.

Ex. I know one who would do it, *je sais quelqu'un qui pourrait le faire*.

One who could say so would say any thing, *celui qui dirait cela, dirait tout ce qu'on voudrait*.

On is frequently used in conversation to designate persons present, either the speaker himself or the person spoken to. This is especially done when ironical politeness or downright rudeness is to be conveyed and yet the directness of the personal pronoun is to be avoided.

Ex. *On n'est pas si sage qu'on pourrait me reprendre*, you are not so wise that you could reprove me.

On vous est infiniment obligé, Monsieur, I am infinitely obliged to you, Sir. (Ironical.)

EXERCISE.

Vice can only be overcome by fleeing from it. People often think that men who look benevolent and receive everybody with a smile, are very kind, but they are mistaken. It was said that the war had come to an end, but unfortunately the last news by the telegraph is not so hopeful, and it is said now, that the war will recommence soon. They ought to have rewarded this great general by giving him an estate and settling upon him a pension, for he is poor and he has lost his health in the service of his country. What do people think of his last work, do they admire it as much as his former writings, or do

they say it is inferior? I do not know what has been done for him, but I know that something has been given to him, either an estate or a large sum of money. It is a maxim of French philosophers that men do not love those to whom they owe much, because gratitude is the heaviest burden that can oppress men. What a sad sentiment! If we wish to live quietly we must learn to despise the talk of fools, the hatred of the envious and the insolence of the rich. Sir, she said with a mocking courtesy, I am your humble servant, and I will not trouble you any more. Paris is an admirable place: a hundred things happen there every day which are unknown in the provinces and admired even in the great capital.

Quelqu'un, from the Latin *qualis* and *unus*, is used absolutely, *i. e.* without reference to any noun, and then occurs only in the masculine singular and plural (*quelques-uns*), for persons.

Ex. *Quelqu'un a dit que l'âme du monde est le soleil*, somebody has said the sun is the soul of the world.

Quelques-uns s'en sont déjà allés, some have already left.

In this sense it can only be used as subject of a verb; and when Somebody is to be translated as object of a verb, the French substitute for it *quelques personnes*.

Ex. I have spoken to some, *j'ai parlé à quelques personnes*.

That may surprise some, it has not surprised me, *cela peut surprendre quelques personnes, il ne m'a pas surpris, moi*.

Quelqu'un will be translated by Any or Anybody, in interrogative sentences. In this case it must be treated, when the subject of the sentence, like a noun, and repeated after the verb in the form of the proper pronoun.

Ex. *L'avez-vous dit à quelqu'un?* Have you told anybody so?

Quelqu'un est-il venu pendant mon absence? Has anybody been here during my absence?

Quelqu'un cannot be used in connection with a negation, in which case *personne* must be substituted.

Ex. I have not mentioned it to anybody, *je ne l'ai mentionné à personne.*

Anybody, standing alone in English, and meaning, that there is no choice, is rendered in French by *n'importe qui*.

Ex. As for me, you may tell it to anybody, *quant à moi, vous pourrez le dire à n'importe qui.*

Quelqu'un, also, represents the English one, followed by a relative pronoun.

Ex. *Je ne saurais estimer quelqu'un qui agirait ainsi*, I could not esteem one who could act so.

When this pronoun is referred to in the same sentence, this is done by the reflexive pronoun *se* or *soi*.

Ex. *C'est quelqu'un qui ne pense qu'à soi*, that is some one who thinks only of himself.

Quelqu'un s'est trompé en y allant, somebody has made a mistake by going there.

Quelqu'un may be, secondly, used relatively, *i. e.* with reference to a noun, and in that case it has a feminine as well as a masculine, and relates to things as well as to persons, but the persons or things must be either mentioned in the same sentence or at least represented by *en*.

Ex. *Connaissez-vous quelques-uns de ces messieurs?* Do you know any of these gentlemen?

Avez-vous de ces étoffes? Je crois en avoir quelques-unes.

Have you these materials? I believe I have some.

When accompanied by an adjective, *quelqu'un* requires the addition of *de*.

Ex. *Donnez-m'en quelques uns de frais*, give me some fresh ones.

Quelqu'un always means so precisely some, in contradiction to none, that it cannot be used negatively. In such sentences *aucun* is substituted.

Ex. Have you not some to give me? *n'en avez-vous aucun à me donner?*

Some, repeated, is not translated by *quelqu'un*, but in the following manner :

Ex. Some were good and some were bad, *les uns étaient bons, les autres étaient mauvais*.

Chacun, from the Latin *quisque unus*, is like *quelqu'un* used absolutely, instead of a noun, or relatively, with reference to a noun. In the former case it means everybody or every one, and occurs only in the masculine.

Ex. *Chacun croit avoir le sens commun*, everybody thinks he has common sense.

J'ai payé chacun de mes créanciers, I have paid every one of my creditors.

As a relative pronoun *chacun* occurs in the feminine also and has a distributive meaning, corresponding to the English each.

Ex. *Regardez séparément chacune de ces médailles*, look at each of these medals separately.

Chacun de nous prendra son parti, each one of us will decide for himself.

There is some difficulty in deciding when *chacun* is to be represented by the singular pronoun *son*, *sa* and *ses*, or by the plural pronoun *leur*. The decision depends entirely upon the meaning to be conveyed : if the possessive pronoun refers to each, individually, *son* must be used ; if it refers to each and all, collectively, *leur* must be used.

Ex. *J'ai payé ces hommes, à chacun sa part*, I have paid these men, to each one his share.

Les langues ont, chacune, leur bizarrerie, languages have, each one, their peculiarity.

Some additional aid may be obtained from the fact that *son* is invariably employed when *chacun* is placed after the direct object of the verb, because in all such cases the latter has a distributive meaning, whilst *leur* will be used when *chacun* precedes the direct object.

Ex. *Ils ont donné leur avis, chacun selon ses vues*, they have given their opinion, each one according to his views.

Ils ont rempli chacun leur devoir, they have done their duty, each one of them.

Chacun may be represented in the same sentence by *il*, but if reflexive, *se* and *soi* only can be used.

Ex. *Chacun pense qu'il le sait le mieux*, everybody thinks he knows best.

Dans ces cas-là, chacun ne pense qu'à soi, in such cases everybody thinks but of himself.

Un chacun and *tout chacun* are antiquated expressions, occurring in older authors, but not admissible now.

Ex. *Un chacun est chaussé de son opinion*, every one of us has his own opinion.

Personne, which is also used as a noun, is employed as an indefinite pronoun in the sense of anybody. It becomes negative, meaning nobody, only when accompanied by *ne*.

Ex. *Personne a-t-il été ici ce matin?* Has anybody been here this morning?

Non, Monsieur; au moins je n'ai vu personne, no, Sir; at least I have seen nobody.

Followed by an adjective, *personne* requires, like all pronouns, the preposition *de*.

Ex. *Dans ce sens-là je ne connais personne d'heureux*, in that sense I know nobody who is happy.

Quiconque, from the Latin *quis* and *cunque*, means whoever, whichever, etc., but can be used with reference to persons only. It has no plural, but it may be used with reference to feminine nouns, if they are mentioned in the same sentence.

Ex. *Quiconque répand le sang des hommes*, whoever spills human blood.

Quiconque de vous, Mesdames, sera assez hardie, which ever of you, ladies, will be bold enough.

Whichever, etc., applied to things, are rendered in French by the demonstrative pronoun.

Ex. Take whichever you want, *prenez celui qui vous conviendra*.

Rien, from the Latin accusative *rem*, means any thing, and becomes negative, with the meaning of nothing, only when accompanied by *ne*.

Ex. *Il l'a fait sans rien dire*, he did it without saying any thing.

Rien de plus fâcheux est-il jamais arrivé ? Has any thing more provoking ever happened ?

Je n'en sois rien et je ne veux rien savoir, I know nothing of it and wish to know nothing.

Rien is one of the few words which, being the direct object of a verb, may be placed before the infinitive, and, for the purpose of great emphasis, even before the participle past.

Ex. *Il ne vaut rien, il ne sait rien faire*, he is good for nothing, he cannot do any thing.

Je vous assure solennellement que je ne lui ai rien dit, I assure you solemnly, I have told him nothing at all.

EXERCISE.

Somebody told me that you left town and were living in the country, but I hear so many stories now-a-days, that I have almost determined not to believe anybody. Had you spoken to anybody of your plans, for they seem to be known by everybody ? I shall never be able to trust one who was willing to betray his country when it was in danger. Whoever expects a certain misfortune may already be considered as unhappy. He offered this reward to any one who would discover the author of that atrocious murder, but nobody has yet announced himself to claim the money. Has any one ever seriously doubted the existence of God ? These flowers are very pretty, but some of them have thorns which hurt my hand. Several ladies had promised to come, but some sent an excuse and others stayed away without saying any thing. Try each one of your friends separately

and you will see how very few really sincere ones there are. They brought their offerings to the temple, each one according to his means and his piety. Caesar and Pompey had each their merit, but they were different merits. Did you find any thing remarkable in the works of that author? He left us without saying any thing, and consequently nothing can be done to help him.

2.—*Indefinite Pronouns, which are always joined to a Noun.*

Quelque, from the Latin *qualisque*, and its plural *quelques*, correspond to the English *Some*, in the sense of a small quantity, in the singular, and a small number, in the plural.

Quelque elides its final *e* only before *un* and *autre*, making *quelqu'un* and *quelqu'autre*, somebody else.

Ex. *Il doit avoir quelque passion secrète*, he must have some secret passion.

Quelques crimes toujours précèdent les grande crimes, some crimes always precede great crimes.

Quelque must be well distinguished from the partitive article, which always expresses a part of a whole, whilst *quelque* means only one out of a number, or *Some* in contradistinction to *None*.

Ex. *Vous aurez sans doute quelque argent*, you will certainly have some money.

Il y aura peut-être quelque personne obligeante, there will perhaps be some obliging person.

Quelque, meaning, like *quelqu'un*, always distinctly *Some*, in contradistinction to *None*, cannot be used negatively, except in questions. *Aucun* is used for *Some* in negative sentences.

Ex. *N'y aurait il pas quelque brave homme?* Might there not be some good fellow?

Quelque unites with the noun *chose*, thing, to express *Something*, and is then treated as a masculine.

Ex. *J'ai quelque chose de beau à vous montrer*, I have something pretty to show you.

Chaque holds the same relation to *chacun* that *quelque* holds to *quelqu'un*, only it has of course no plural, as it means Each or Every.

Ex. *Chaque passion parle un différent langage*, every passion speaks a different language.

A chaque jour suffit sa peine, each day has its own troubles.

Quelconque, from the Latin *qualiscunque*, corresponds to the English Whatever (it may be), and occurs only after a noun.

Ex. *Il n'y a chose quelconque qui puisse l'y obliger*, there is nothing whatever that could induce him.

Un homme quelconque aurait mieux fait, any man whatsoever would have done better.

In English, Any is often substituted for Whatever, and must then be translated by the same word.

Ex. *Vous pouvez me donner un livre quelconque*, you may give me any book.

In mathematics, *quelconque* is used in the plural.

Ex. *Deux points quelconques étant donnés*, any two points being given.

Certain becomes a pronoun only in the sense of Some, and may in that case be preceded by the indefinite article.

Ex. *Certaines personnes nous en ont averti*, some persons have warned us against it.

Un certain homme est venu nous le dire, a certain (some) man came and told us so.

EXERCISE.

Some ancient authors have maintained that doctrine, but in our day it has long since been abandoned. Every age has its pleasure, every condition its charms; good follows evil, and smiles follow tears. We went to see a certain person, who had assured us that he could cure

us of this disease, but we found him to be an impostor. There is always some mystery about his movements, and his enemies intimate that he prefers it, because it gives him apparently a little more importance. If we could find some house that would suit us in your neighborhood we would take it immediately, but so far we have not been able to find any. If I were you, I would take any house rather than to board with my wife and children; it is the saddest way of living I know, to have no home. He told me, with tears in his eyes, that after having paid all his creditors, there would not be left him any thing whatever, but somebody else assured me that he was not quite so destitute.

3.—*Indefinite Pronouns used with or without a Noun.*

Autre, from the Latin *alter*, corresponds to the English *Other*, and precedes the nouns it qualifies, but follows other indefinite pronouns.

Ex. *Il ne croyait pas qu'il y eût un autre monde*, he did not believe there was another world.

Il faudra lui donner quelqu'autre médecine, you will have to give him some other medicine.

Rien autre ne me conviendrait, nothing else would suit me.

It is, properly speaking, a genuine pronoun only when it is not accompanied by a noun, but acts as a substitute.

Ex. *Un autre ne vous parlerait pas si franchement*, anybody else would not speak so openly to you.

Another one, is simply translated by *Another*.

Ex. You can give me now another one, *vous pouvez m'en donner maintenant un autre*.

It has already been mentioned that the plural form *autres* is often added to the pronouns *nous* and *vous*, when a distinction is to be established by nationality, profession or the like.

Ex. *Vous autres Anglais vous n'en savez rien*, you Englishmen know nothing of that.

Nous y sommes accoutumés, nous autres médecins, we are used to that, we who are physicians.

Autre chose, like *quelque chose*, is treated as a masculine.

Ex. *Consolez-vous, autre chose vous sera accordé*, console yourself, something else will be granted you.

L'un l'autre represents the English One another or Each other, and may be used in both numbers and genders either jointly or separately.

Ex. *Il se haïssent les uns les autres*, they hate each other.

Il donne à l'un ce qu'il retire à l'autre, he grants to one what he takes from the other.

It must be borne in mind, that in English the preposition is placed before Each other or One another, whilst in French it must be placed between *l'un* and *l'autre*.

Ex. They always speak badly of each other, *ils médisent toujours l'un de l'autre*.

What a pity to see them unchained against each other !

Quelle pitié que de les voir déchainés les uns contre les autres !

Another, when it means One more, must be translated by *encore un*.

Ex. I will lend you another hundred, if you want it, *je vous prêterai encore une centaine, s'il le faut*.

L'un et l'autre, represents the English Both, when united, and requires the verb to be used in the plural.

Ex. *L'un et l'autre rapportent les mêmes circonstances*, they both report the same facts.

When they are subject to a preposition, the latter must be repeated before each part.

Ex. *J'ai satisfait à l'une et à l'autre objection*, I have met both objections.

On ne se sert guère également de l'une et de l'autre main, we rarely use both hands alike.

When they are joined to a noun, the latter remains singular, although it has a plural meaning.

Ex. *L'un et l'autre climat lui conviennent peu*, both climates do not suit him well.

Autrui, from the Latin *alteri*, is indeclinable, and applicable to men and women only, when they are taken in a general sense. The word is not used except as an indirect object, preceded by prepositions.

Ex. *Attendez d'autrui ce que vous faites à autrui*, expect from others what you do unto others.

Nous sommes prompts à reprendre les fautes d'autrui, we are quick in blaming the faults of others.

Nul, *aucun* and *pas un* represent the English No or None, and have, generally, the same meaning; still, there are certain differences to be noticed in the use which is made of these three pronouns.

Nul and its feminine *nulle* is most frequently placed before nouns, although *nul* is the only one of these pronouns which can be used as the subject of a verb, without accompanying a noun.

Ex. *Nul homme n'est exempt du péché originel*, no man is free from hereditary sin.

L'homme ne trouve nulle part son bonheur sur la terre, man finds his happiness nowhere on earth.

Nul n'est content de sa fortune, no one is satisfied with his lot.

Nul is used in the plural only in order to express null, of no value.

Ex. *Toutes ces procédures sont nulles*, all these proceedings amount to nothing.

Aucun, from the Latin *aliquis unus*, has a negative meaning only when accompanied by *ne*, and then takes the place of *quel que*.

Ex. *Aucun homme a-t-il jamais fait mieux?* Has any man ever done better?

Je doute qu'il y ait aucun auteur sans défaut, I doubt if there be any author without defect.

Je ne joue d'aucun instrument, I play on no instrument.

Aucun may also be used in the plural when it accompanies nouns which occur in the plural only.

Ex. *Il n'a fait aucuns préparatifs pour son voyage*, he has made no preparation for his journey.

Pas un and *pas une* is the strongest of these negative pronouns, meaning distinctly not one. It is used without a noun only in familiar style.

Ex. *Il n'y a pas une seule personne qui le sache*, there is not a single person who knows it.

Il est aussi savant que pas un (familiar), he is as learned as any one.

EXERCISE.

When he had finished the account of his adventures in the Pyrenees, the boys who had listened very attentively, said : Tell us something else now. There is not one of these books which I have not read, but no book could ever keep me awake, when night fell. Is there any one of all the painters who has better understood what artists call the *clair-obscur* ? Do not trouble yourself with the affairs of others, you have enough to do to save your own little fortune. Here are my father and my mother ; I have seen them both only once during the last year, and they themselves have not seen each other for the same time. People ought not to slander each other : that is one of the meanest wrongs which they can commit, because it benefits no one and always does much harm. These two nations have fought against each other for many generations, but now they are good friends, and have learnt, both, to value the power of such a union. He has spared no expense in making my sister comfortable, and when she was sick he did all for her that the most devoted husband could have done.

Même, from the Latin *metipsissimus* (Italian *medesimo*, Spanish *mismo*, French *même*), is an adjective, with the mean-

ing of Same, an adverb with the meaning of Even, and a pronoun only when it stands instead of a noun or is placed after it in the signification of Even.

Ex. *Pierre et Céphas c'est le même*, Peter and Cephas are the same.

Vos droits et les miens sont les mêmes, your rights and mine are the same.

Le roi même n'oserait pas le faire, even the king would not dare do it.

The conjunctions As and That, used after The same, are in French expressed alike by *que*.

Ex. Is this the same man that I saw yesterday? *Est-ce le même homme que j'ai vu hier?*

Rich men have the same end as poor men, *les riches ont la même fin que les pauvres*.

The same as, when it means Like, is translated by *comme* before nouns; and The same, when it stands alone, by *de même*.

Ex. He treats me the same as his brother, *il me traite comme son frère*.

He speaks and acts the same, *il parle et agit de même*.

Tel, from the Latin *talis*, represents the English Such, but is not used like the latter with the indefinite article after it, but takes it before it. In the plural it requires the partitive article *de*.

Ex. Is it possible that such a man can succeed? *Est-il possible qu'un tel homme puisse réussir?*

Such persons never know what they ought to do, *de telles personnes ne savent jamais ce qu'il faut faire*.

Such a, in interjections, cannot be expressed by *tel*, but by the adverb *si* before the adjective.

Ex. She is such a beautiful woman! *C'est une si belle femme!*

He has told us such consoling words! *Il nous a dit des paroles si consolantes!*

Such, before adjectives and followed by *As*, and consequently expressing a comparison, is translated not by *tel*, but like other comparisons.

Ex. If I were in such a good condition as he, *si moi, j'étais dans une si bonne position comme lui.*

Such, before nouns and followed by *As*, is translated by *tel*, placed after the noun.

Ex. Such animals as this are dangerous, *les animaux tels que celui-ci sont dangereux.*

Such as, is occasionally used in English with the meaning of Those who, and must in that case be translated like the latter phrase.

Ex. Avoid such as may tempt you, *évitez ceux qui peuvent vous tenter.*

Tel is employed in proverbial expressions, without noun or article, to represent the English Many a one, in similar expressions.

Ex. *Tel sème qui ne recueille pas*, many a one sows who does not reap.

Tel rit qui pleurera, many a one laughs who is going to weep.

Plusieurs, which has no singular and means Several or Many, can be used without a noun only as subject to a verb; in all other relations it must be accompanied by a noun.

Ex. *Plusieurs se sont trompés en voulant tromper les autres*, many have deceived themselves, when they wished to deceive others.

On le dit ainsi dans plusieurs journaux, it is said so in several papers.

Tout, from the Latin *totus*, which makes its plural in *tous*, has a variety of special significations, of which the following are the most important:

Tout, by itself, represents every thing or all things.

Ex. *Tout tombe, tout périt autour de nous*, all things fall and perish around us.

Tout était adoré dans un siècle païen, every thing was worshipped in a pagan age.

In this signification it may, like *rien*, be placed before the infinitive and the participle past of the verb of which it is the direct object.

Ex. *Quand il l'a vu il lui a tout avoué*, when he saw him he confessed to him every thing.

Maintenant, cependant, il ne veut pas tout dire, now, however, he will not tell all (every thing).

It must not be forgotten that when *tout* is followed by the relative pronoun, the antecedent in the form of *ce* must be supplied.

Ex. All I know of it is this, *tout ce que j'en sais est ceci*.

Is that all that embarrasses you? *Est-ce là tout ce qui vous embarrasse?*

Tous, by itself, represents everybody or all, and may be used instead of the personal pronouns as well as in addition to them.

Ex. *Tous s'en allaient quand la cérémonie fut finie*, they all went away when the ceremony was over.

Ils versaient tous des larmes, quand le bateau fit voile, they all shed tears when the vessel sailed.

Tous, also, when followed by the relative pronoun, requires the addition of an antecedent.

Ex. I have seen all who were there when it happened, *j'ai vu tous ceux qui étaient là quand cela arriva*.

When the English All refers not indefinitely to all, but to all of a special class, as all at home, all of a society, etc., it is translated by *tout le monde*.

Ex. How is everybody at home? *Comment se porte tout le monde chez vous?*

Have they all come? *Est-ce que tout le monde est arrivé?*

Tout, before nouns, has a collective meaning, with the signification of The whole or All the, when it takes the article between itself and the noun.

Ex. *Tout l'homme ne meurt pas*, the whole of man does not die.

On ne peut jamais voir tous les corps célestes, we can never see all the celestial bodies.

Il a mangé toute une fortune, he has spent a whole fortune.

Tout, before nouns, has a distributive meaning, with the signification of Each or Every, when it takes no article but precedes the noun immediately.

Ex. *Tout citoyen doit servir son pays*, every citizen must serve his country.

Tout homme qui aime la vérité en est blessé, every man who loves truth is offended by it.

When *tout* thus qualifies the name of a city, it remains masculine, though the latter may be feminine.

Ex. *Tout Venise y était*, all Venice was there.

When *tout* qualifies a personal pronoun, subject or object of a verb, it is placed after the latter.

Ex. They all speak at once, *ils parlent tous à la fois*.

It appears that they have broken them all, *il paraît qu'il les ont brisées toutes*.

All, is in English often followed by the preposition of, before nouns or pronouns. This is not used in French, and *tous* is placed after the pronoun.

Ex. Are all of these men to follow us? *Tous ces hommes nous suivront-ils?*

All of you must do your duty, *vous devrez faire tous votre devoir*.

Tous and *toutes* in definitions of time have the meaning of Each or Every, with even greater force than *chaque*.

Ex. *Je le vois tous les matins qui se promène*, I see him every morning taking a walk.

Il va nous l'envoyer toutes les quatre semaines, he is going to send it to us every four weeks.

Tous and *toutes*, followed by the adverb *tant*, has the special meaning of As many as.

Ex. *Il est maître absolu de tous tant que nous sommes*, he is absolute master of us all (as many as we are).

On les a chassés tous tant qu'ils furent, they have been driven off, every one of them.

EXERCISE.

Do you know such a person? I have never heard even such a name, and know nothing of it. Such people always imagine that they are right and everybody else is wrong; I dislike them even more than really disagreeable people. Several ladies had come to our house and were waiting for my sister when the accident befell her, which, on the same day, deprived me and you of a beloved relative. He is such a learned man that I would have thought him the best person to fill that chair, but they have chosen another one. If I had been in such a dangerous position, I would not have known how to help myself, and it is even likely that I would have perished miserably. Every good citizen must serve his country, the soldier with his blood, the priest with his zeal. All novelties in point of religion are dangerous, but they ought not to be condemned too hastily; on the contrary, we ought to try them all, and perhaps something good may result from the examination. Any other place but a throne seems unworthy of her, such is the loftiness of her mind and the majesty of her appearance. That liberty has its limits, as well as every other liberty. The whole evening was spent in singing and dancing, and they tell me they do this every evening for a week!

4.—*Indefinite Pronouns followed by Que.*

A number of these indefinite pronouns are only used in connection with a verb with which they are united by means of the conjunction *que*. They express, with one exception, the English word *Ever*, and as this is naturally suggestive, not of positive facts, but of contingencies, they are followed by the subjunctive mood. The following are the most important of this class.

Qui que ce soit, whoever, or anybody, any one.

Ex. *Faites entrer qui que ce soit qui me demande*, admit any one who may ask for me.

Qui que ce soit à qui l'on donne, on s'en plaindra, to whomever it may be given, people will complain.

Quoi que ce soit, whatever, or any thing.

Quoi que ce soit qu'on dise de moi, taisez-vous, whatever they may say of me, keep silence.

Quel que soit, with its feminine and plural forms, whoever or whatever.

Ex. *Quel que soit le résultat, nous y consentons*, whatever the result may be, we agree to it.

Je le dirai à ces dames quelles qu'elles soient, I will tell it these ladies, whoever they may be.

Quelque—que, with its plural *quelques—que*, is used with a noun between the two parts, and then means *Whatever*.

Ex. *Quelques talents qu'il ait, il n'a pas de génie*, whatever talents he may have, he has no genius.

Quelque—que, with an adjective between the two parts, has the meaning of *However*.

Ex. *Quelque grands que soient ces talents, il en abuse*, however great his talents may be, he makes a bad use of them.

Tout—que, with an adjective between the two parts, means also However, but it is the only one of these indefinite pronouns which is followed by the verb in the indicative mood, as it always expresses a fact, and not a contingency.

Ex. *Tout éloquent qu'il est, il ne convainc pas*, eloquent as he is, he does not convince.

Je l'ai vu trébucher, tout savant qu'il est, I have seen him stumble, however learned he is.

It must be noted that *qui que ce soit* and similar terms may, of course, be followed by the past tense also.

Ex. *Qui que ce fût qui le demandât, il refusa toujours*, whoever might ask for him, he always concealed himself.

Quoi que vous ayez fait, avouez-le franchement, whatever you may have done, confess it frankly.

Whatever, at the end of a sentence, must in French have its proper verb supplied.

Ex. I will grant you any favor whatever, *je vous accorderai quelque faveur que ce soit*.

The same expression in French answers for the English Some—or other.

Ex. You can give me some book or other, *vous pouvez me donner quelque livre qu'il soit*.

The same expression, finally, answers for the English Ever so, followed by an adjective.

Ex. I will accept any place, be it ever so humble, *j'accepterai une place, quelque humble qu'elle soit*.

EXERCISE.

A woman, whatever property she may bring to her husband's house, soon ruins it, if she introduces there extravagance for which no wealth can suffice. However powerful they may be, I do not fear them, for I have the right on my side, and, in the end, that must always conquer. Whatever it may be they ask of you, promise them to do it; but tell them, at the same time, that you cannot do any

thing whatever without the consent of your father. Whoever he may be, he ought not to have acted thus; for, no man can do wrong, who has a conscience, without repenting it. Frivolous as she is, I can hardly think she would have treated her lover so badly, for there is dishonesty in breaking her solemn word. Do not fear the empty power of men: however powerful they may be, they are what we are. Whatever mortals may be, we must live among them, and a fastidious man is unhappy through himself. This is a universal law, and applies to all men: I except from it nobody, whatever he be or can be. We ought never to speak evil of anybody whatever in his absence. Whatever merit we may have, we cannot, unless we possess luck and protection at court, succeed in any thing whatsoever. We shall do our duty, whatever you may say to the contrary; and if we receive no other reward, we shall be content with the consciousness of having done what we ought to have done.

CHAPTER V.

VERBS.

The Verb has its name in French as in English from its importance in a sentence: it is *verbum*, the Word, by eminence. For nouns simply name a person or an object, but do not convey a thought; it is only when we say something of this person or object, when we use a verb, that an idea is communicated from one person to another. A sentence, therefore, may consist of a noun and a verb only, and will already fulfil the purposes of language.

The principal purpose of the verb is to affirm something, and to qualify this affirmation by designating person, number, time and mood. These four qualities of the verb are the cause of its various forms, and constitute what is commonly called their conjugation.

There are three *Persons* in the verb: the first, or that of the speaker; the second, or that of the person spoken to; and the

third, or that of the person spoken of. They are designated by different endings of the verb, and by the personal pronouns placed before it.

There are two *Numbers* in the verb, as in the noun, the singular and the plural, designated also by different endings of the verb and by the personal pronouns.

There are two classes of *Tenses*, to express time : viz., simple tenses, which are made from the root of the verb, as it is found in the infinitive after cutting off the infinitive termination ; and compound tenses, which are formed by the aid of one of the two auxiliary verbs, *avoir* or *être*, with the participle past of the verb.

There are four *Moods* in the verb, to express the mood or manner of the action of the verb : the Indicative, for all that is positively asserted ; the Subjunctive, for what is mentioned only as contingent ; the Conditional, for actions subject to conditions ; and the Imperative, for that which is ordered.

The Infinitive, which is often called a mood, is in reality nothing but the name of the verb.

DIFFERENT CLASSES OF VERBS.

Verbs are divided into different classes, according to the nature of their signification.

Active Verbs express an action which has or may have a direct object. They are recognized as such by the power they have of placing *quelqu'un* or *quelque chose* after the first person of the present indicative. Thus *chanter* is an active verb, because we can say, *Je chante quelque chose*, I sing something ; so is *consoler*, because we can say, *Je console quelqu'un*, I comfort somebody ; but *marcher* is not an active verb, because we cannot say, *Je marche quelqu'un* or *quelque chose*, I march somebody or something.

Passive Verbs express that the subject of the verb undergoes

its action and is its own direct object. *Je suis consolé*, I am comforted, expresses that *I*, the subject, undergo comforting, and am, therefore, the object of the action of comforting.

Properly speaking, there are no passive verbs in French, because it has no power to make a verb passive by simply changing its form, as was the case in Latin, where *amare* became passive by being changed into *amari*, and *amo* by becoming *amor*. There are, therefore, various ways by which the French endeavors to supply the loss of the Latin passive, of which the following are the most important:

Verbs are made passive—

1. By the use of *être* with their participle past. Thus the verb *protéger*, to protect, is used actively in

La loi protège tous les citoyens, the law protects all citizens, and passively in

Tous les citoyens sont protégés par la loi, all citizens are protected by the law.

This mode of forming a passive is admissible only with active verbs, in cases where a real action has taken place; the only exception being the verb *obéir*, to obey, which, though a neuter verb, may be used passively: *Il est obéi*, he is obeyed.

2. By the use of the reflexive pronoun *se* with the third person, in all cases where other than active verbs are employed, or where no real action takes place.

Ex. *Le blé comment se vend-il maintenant?* How is wheat sold now-a-days?

De tels évènements ne se repètent pas, such events are not repeated.

3. By the use of the indefinite personal pronoun *on*, when the agent of the action of the verb is either unknown or purposely left undecided.

Ex. *On dit que le choléra n'y est pas*, it is said that the cholera is not there.

On craint la guerre quand elle vient de cesser, war is feared, when it has just ceased.

Neuter Verbs express either an action which has no direct object, though it may have an indirect object with which it is connected by a preposition, or a mere state or condition. Thus *venir*, to come, expresses an action, but one which cannot have a direct object, as we cannot say *venir quelqu'un* or *quelque chose*, to come somebody or something, though we may say *venir de la ville*, to come from town. Thus *dormir*, to sleep, is a neuter verb, because it expresses no action at all, but simply a state, in which man may be.

Pronominal Verbs are all those which are accompanied in the infinitive by the reflexive pronoun *se*, and in all other parts of their conjugation by two personal pronouns. They are :

Reflexive verbs, when the action of the verb reacts upon the subject. *Se*, in this case, is translated by one's self, and the second pronoun by myself, thyself, etc.

Ex. *Il faut se vaincre quand on s'estime*, we must conquer ourselves, if we esteem ourselves.

Reciprocal verbs, when the action of the verb reacts mutually upon subject and object. *Se*, in this case, is translated by Each other, and so is the second pronoun.

Ex. *Ils allaient se battre et ils se tuèrent*, they went to fight each other, and they killed each other.

Pronominal verbs proper, when they are pronominal only in French and not so in English. *Se*, in this case, and the second pronoun remain untranslated in English.

Ex. *Elle se repent de tout ce qu'elle a fait*, she repents all she has done.

Il faut se défier de ces gens-là, you ought to mistrust those people.

It must not be forgotten that active verbs may become pronominal, and take the pronoun *se* in the infinitive and a second pro-

noun in the whole conjugation, when the personal pronouns are substituted for possessive pronouns. They are then conjugated with *être*, like all pronominal verbs without exception.

Ex. *Elle est allée se laver les mains*, she has gone to wash her hands.

Je me suis cassé la jambe en sautant, I have broken my leg by jumping.

Impersonal Verbs express an action, the subject of which is not a person, but a vague, indefinite agency. They are used only in the third person singular, and the pronoun *il*, which serves as subject, corresponds to the English It or There.

Ex. *Il convient que vous suiviez ses conseils*, it is proper for you to follow his advice.

Il y a un charme inconcevable dans sa voix, there is an incomprehensible charm in her voice.

Every thing that concerns the form of the verb has already been mentioned in the First Part of this Grammar. It is only on the use of the verb, in connection with other words, that additional rules will be given here.

THE VERB AND ITS SUBJECT.

The subject of the verb is either a noun or a pronoun, and is ascertained by asking Who? with the aid of the verb. In the sentence, *la philosophie triomphe de tous les maux*, philosophy triumphs over all evils, the question, Who triumphs? will give the answer—philosophy; and this noun is therefore the subject. The rule which directs the form of the verb in this relation is simply this :

The verb agrees with its subject in number and person.

Ex. *La religion veille sur les crimes secrets, les lois veillent sur les crimes publics*, religion guards against secret crimes, the laws against public crimes.

When a verb has two or more subjects it is put in the

plural, provided the subjects are not either synonymous or finally summed up in one as the most important.

Ex. *Lui et elle viendront à la campagne avec nous*, he and she will come with us to the country.

But:

Son courage, son intrépidité, étonnait tous, his courage, his intrepidity, amazed all.

Une parole, un sourire, un seul regard suffit, a word, a smile, a single look is enough.

When a verb has several subjects of different persons, the so-called rule of grammatical precedence applies, *i. e.*, the first person prevails over the second, and the second over the third.

Ex. *Vous et moi nous sommes contents de notre sort*, you and I are satisfied with our fate.

Vous et lui vous savez la chose, you and he know the thing.

When a verb has several subjects connected by *ou*, or, the verb will be in the singular, when the nouns exclude one another, and in the plural, when they are represented as acting both, though alternately.

Ex. *C'est Cicéron ou Demosthène qui a dit cela*, it is Cicero or Demosthenes who has said so.

Le temps ou la mort sont nos remèdes, time or death are our remedies.

When the two subjects are different persons, the verb must always be in the plural.

Ex. *C'est lui ou moi qui devons le faire*, it is he or I who will have to do it.

Vous vous trompez, vous ou elle, you or she are mistaken.

The same rule applies to several subjects connected by *ni*, neither—nor; for here also the verb will be in the singular if the two nouns exclude each other, and in the plural when they are jointly subjects of the verb.

Ex. *Ni l'un ni l'autre n'est mon père*, neither of the two is my father.

Ni la douceur ni la force ne l'ébranlèrent, neither gentleness nor violence moved him.

When the two subjects are different persons, the verb must here also be in the plural.

Ex. *Ni lui ni moi ne sommes coupables*, neither he nor I are guilty.

The verb *être* placed between two nouns of different number, is always put in the plural, but if the first should be in the singular, it requires the addition of *ce*.

Ex. *Ses enfants sont la seule consolation qui lui reste*, her children are the only comfort that remains to her.

Son seul orgueil ce sont ces enfants, his only pride are his children.

When the subject of a verb is *un*, one, followed by a genitive plural, the verb is singular, when it refers distinctly to *un*, and plural, when it refers in like manner to the plural. The meaning of the sentence alone determines, therefore, the form of the verb.

Ex. *Est-ce un des soldats qui a fait cela?* Is it one of the soldiers who has done this?

Est-ce un des soldats qui se sont si bien battus? Is this one of the soldiers who have fought so well?

Plus d'un, more than one, is always followed by the singular, in spite of its plural meaning, unless it should be repeated.

Ex. *Plus d'un ami m'en avait averti*, more than one friend had warned me.

EXERCISE.

Your father and mother have promised to take tea with us to-night, will you and your sister do us the favor to come with them? Youth and inexperience expose us to many mistakes and consequently to

much suffering. The merchant, the workman, the priest, the soldier, are all alike members of the State. A single word, a sigh, a glance may betray you. When you speak of such a sacrifice, you must not forget that your interest, your honor, God, demands it of you, and you ought not to hesitate. Into whatever part of the known earth the tempest or the wrath of some hostile god may have thrown him, I shall know how to rescue him from it. It is thou or I who has done this—who shall decide between us? Either the king himself or his minister will be held responsible for this fearful outrage against law and justice; but the process will be so tedious, that neither you nor I will probably see the end of it. When I left the prison, my clothes, my papers, every thing was returned to me, and I found that all was in perfect order. This is one of the things I valued least, and yet it is also one of the things that have most contributed to my happiness.

When a collective noun is the subject of a verb, its agreement depends upon the precise nature of the collective, and the following rules must be observed:

When the collective noun consists of a single word, the verb agrees with it in form, without regard to its meaning.

Ex. *Le comité des finances a été instruit*, the finance committee has been instructed.

Le peuple l'a décidé par acclamation, the people have decided it by acclamation.

When the collective noun is followed by *de* with another noun, the verb will agree with that part of it to which it has more specially reference.

Ex. *La plupart du monde ne s'en soucie pas*, the majority of the world does not mind it.

Quantité de gens ont dit cela, a number of people have said so.

Grammarians generally make a difference between collectives general, which designate the totality of persons or things spoken of, as an army, a people, a forest, a fleet, and collectives partitive, which designate only a partial collection, an indefinite

(but ~~not~~ the total) number of such persons or things, as a majority, a number, a crowd. The former are invariably accompanied by the definite article or an adjective, which points them out as collectives general, while the latter are only preceded by the indefinite article, with the exception of *la plupart*, the majority. In this connection the following rule applies :

Verbs agree with the first word of collectives general, and with the second of collectives partitive.

Ex. *La pluralité des maîtres n'est pas bonne*, the majority of masters are not good.

La plupart des animaux ont plus d'agilité que l'homme, most animals have more agility than man.

It must not be overlooked, however, that some collectives may be used in both senses, as general and as partitive, but they will always indicate this by the article which precedes them.

Ex. *Une bande de voleurs ont pillé le village*, a band of robbers have plundered the village.

La bande de voleurs, qui l'a fait, a disparu, the band of robbers who did it has disappeared.

Adverbs of quantity, followed by a plural, determine the number of the verb by precisely the same rule.

Ex. *Beaucoup d'eux jouent au lieu d'étudier*, many of them play instead of studying.

Ce peu de mots suffit pour ranimer l'armée, these few words sufficed to encourage the army.

EXERCISE.

By the valor of Richard and those knights who emulated his bravery, the army of the Infidels was entirely destroyed, and the road to Jerusalem was open. They quote a number of words spoken by Spartan women, that show remarkable courage and strength. I cannot think

that the majority of members can be so corrupt as to agree to such a measure, which will only benefit themselves and cost the country large sums. The majority of men remember much better the services they have rendered than those they have received from others. Few princes, in history, have earned the same character of kindness as Henry IV., and yet he deserved it perhaps less than most of his ancestors. A troop of mountaineers held possession of the pass, and although a perfect hail of balls fell upon them, they stood their ground. A number of men live from day to day as if they were immortal, and apparently never think of the world to come. How many persons have bought tickets in the lottery with the hope of obtaining some large prize, and how few have ever seen their hopes realized! The Committee, it is said, cannot agree, and the matter will be reported back to the Senate.

PLACE OF THE SUBJECT.

The legitimate place of the subject of a verb is before it, except in questions, which are expressed by placing it after the verb. It has already been stated that, if the subject of a question is a noun, it is placed at the head of the sentence, and then repeated in the form of the proper pronoun after the verb.

Ex. *Cette femme est-elle vraiment la mère de ces enfants?* Is this woman really the mother of these children?

Also, that if the subject of a question is a pronoun, it must be joined by a hyphen to the verb, and avoid the hiatus by the insertion of *t*, and the immediate succession of two mute *e*'s by accenting the first.

Ex. *A-t-on jamais vu une telle chose?* Has such a thing ever been seen?

Dussé-je être chassé, je veux parler, even if I were to be driven away, I will speak.

The manner in which the French express an emphatic condition, like that of the last example, by placing the pronouns after the verbs *être*, *avoir*, and *devoir*, has been fully explained under the head of the personal pronouns.

The subject is, however, occasionally placed after the verb for special purposes, of which the following are the principal instances :

Incidental sentences, showing that the words of another are quoted, are formed by placing the subject after the verb.

Ex. *Tous les hommes sont fous, a dit Boileau*, all men are mad, Boileau has said.

Eh bien, répéta-t-il, pourquoi ne venez-vous pas? Well, he repeated, why don't you come?

After certain adverbs, taken in an idiomatic sense, like adverbs of place, of manner or conclusion, which, for that purpose, are placed at the head of the sentence, the subject is placed after the verb.

Ex. *Ici repose la Sainte Cécile*, here lies St. Cecilia.

Ainsi se termina cette fâcheuse affaire, thus ended this disagreeable business.

En vain le lui a-t-on offert deux fois, in vain they have offered it to him twice.

Sentences expressive of a strong wish employ for that purpose the subjunctive mood, followed by the subject.

Ex. *Puissent tous les peuples aimer la paix!* Oh that all nations would love peace!

In relative constructions, as has been stated under the head of relative pronouns, the subject follows the verb, because the verb is obliged to follow immediately the relative pronoun.

Ex. *Les conseils que nous donnent nos amis*, the advice our friends give us.

Je ferai ce que m'a dit votre frère, I shall do what your brother told me.

It must be borne in mind here, that when the verb is monosyllabic, or the construction is in any manner likely to become involved, as in negative questions, the simple interrogative form

is not used in French, but the question is asked by means of *est-ce que?*

Ex. *Est-ce que je dors ou est-ce que je rêve?* Am I asleep or dreaming?

Est-ce que l'agent ne l'aurait pas fait? Could not the agent have done it?

EXERCISE.

Even if Cæsar had not passed the Rubicon, he would probably have ended as he did, for his ambition would have led him to the same measures, although it might have been by a different way. Perhaps the doctor was not at home, when your servant was there, or perhaps he was fast asleep and did not hear the bell. In vain did we try to shake his resolution; he was firm, and finally asked us not to speak to him any more about it: thus ended our interview. We hear eagerly the advice which those give us who know how to flatter our passions, but we shut our ears to that which our true friends suggest to us. Does such an answer offend you, or have you sufficient courage to hear the truth? Will business be better next winter? Perhaps it will be, therefore I have laid in a large stock of merchandise, and propose to buy even more, if I can obtain more money. His last words were: May you succeed in your enterprise; you will always have my best wishes for your welfare. You will do, he said, what your father, whose memory you cannot honor too much, has told you, and you will never be at fault. It is said he discovered by an accident what the greatest philosophers, with all their learning and their research, had not found out.

THE PLACE OF THE OBJECT.

The legitimate place of the object of the verb is after it, when it is a noun or a verb; and immediately before it, when it is a pronoun. The rules given on the place of personal pronouns, when they are direct or indirect objects of the verb, must here be borne in mind.

Ex. *Respectez la vieillesse, car vous serez vieux aussi,* respect old age, for you also will be old.

La religion seule peut faire supporter de telles infortunes,
religion alone can make us bear such misfortunes.

Les yeux de l'amitié se trompent rarement, the eyes of
friendship are rarely deceived.

Active Verbs alone have a direct object, and only one; if they have a second object, that can only be an indirect one. Hence, when an active verb has for its direct object a verb, the noun or pronoun, which is also connected with it, must necessarily be an indirect object.

Ex. *Je lui ai entendu chanter cela souvent,* I have often heard
him sing that.

Chanter, here, is the direct object, consequently *Him* must be translated by *lui*.

Il a donné le meilleur avis à cet homme, he has given this
man the best advice.

Passive Verbs have an indirect object by means of the prepositions *de* or *par*; the former is used when the action of the verb is of a moral or mental nature, the latter, when it applies to physical agencies.

Ex. *Elle est aimée de tout le monde,* she is beloved by everybody.

Il a été vaincu par un nombre supérieur, he has been
beaten by superior numbers.

Neuter Verbs have no object at all, when they express a mere state or condition, although they may be followed by a word which has the appearance of an object, whilst it is in reality but a repetition of their own meaning.

Ex. *Malgré les soins des médecins elle languit toujours,* in
spite of the care of the physicians she is still languishing.

Dormir le sommeil des justes, to sleep the sleep of the
just.

Other neuter verbs have an indirect object, with which they are connected by different prepositions.

Ex. *Les excès de tous les genres nuisent à la santé*, excess of every kind is injurious to health.

Il ne faut jamais médire de son voisin, we must never speak ill of our neighbor.

Pronominal verbs have for their object the personal pronoun with which they are connected. This may be the direct or the indirect object, a difference which does not appear in the infinitive, where all such verbs have *se*, but in the conjugation.

Ex. *Est-ce qu'il s'est écarté du chemin droit ?* (accus.) Has he lost the right road ?

On se reproche souvent trop tard. (dat.) We reproach ourselves often too late.

Impersonal verbs have only an indirect object.

Ex. *Il convient à votre frère de vous aider*, it is proper for your brother to assist you.

The only case in which the object is placed before its verb is in questions, when the object is connected with an interrogative pronoun or adverb of quantity.

Ex. *Quel livre voulez-vous que je vous donne ?* What book do you want me to give you ?

Combien de ces enfants vont à votre école ? How many of these children go to your school ?

If, in any other case, emphasis or any other motive should induce us to place the object before the verb, it must be repeated in its proper place with the verb, as a personal pronoun.

Ex. That I knew before you told me of it, *cela, je le savais avant que vous m'en parliez.*

These pictures I know, those I have never seen before, *ces tableaux-ci, je les connais, quant à ceux-là, je ne les ai jamais vus avant.*

When two verbs have one and the same direct object, it is frequently—though not necessarily—placed after the first verb and repeated in the form of a pronoun with the second.

Ex. *Les voleurs pillèrent et brulèrent la maison*, the robbers plundered and burnt the house.

J'ai écrit la lettre et je l'ai envoyée, I have written and sent the letter.

EXERCISE.

He has recommended this young man to study at some German university, because they teach students there to speak Latin. How much money did you give him? I gave your friend all I had about me, which was not much, but I promised him more, if he should want it. Those men I once saw on a steamboat in the United States, but I have never seen them again since. He struck and broke the pitcher, whilst he was so much excited that he did not know what he was doing. The first operation of the kind was made on Louis XIV. by a celebrated surgeon, whose fame has come down to our day. An ignorant and proud young man is despised by all who know him, and is rarely beloved even by his nearest friends. Gunpowder was invented in Germany by a shoemaker, if we may believe the legend, and shells by a bishop of the same country. When I asked him if he was happy now, he replied very gruffly: That you know as well as I; I shall give you no answer.

THE TENSES AND MOODS OF THE VERB.

I.—THE INFINITIVE.

The Infinitive, giving simply the meaning of the verb, is to all intents and purposes a noun, which names the verb. Its general nature is the same as in English, except that it is not accompanied in French by a particle, corresponding to the English To. The latter is required in English to mark words, which are otherwise perfectly like nouns, as verbs,—like The love and To love, The sleep and To sleep. In French, verbs

having a peculiar form need no such mark of distinction, and hence the English *to* is translated only when it has the signification of In order to, or a similar one.

Ex. He would like to please you in every thing, *il voudrait vous plaire en tout.*

He did it to please you, *il l'a fait pour vous plaire.*

The infinitive is so truly a noun, as the name of the verb, that it may be used with the definite and indefinite article.

Ex. *Ce n'est pas la mort que je crains, c'est le mourir,* it is not death I fear, it is dying.

La paix devient nécessaire, comme le manger et le boire, peace becomes necessary, like eating and drinking.

There are, however, peculiar purposes for which the infinitive is used in French differently from the English usage, of which the following cases are the most important.

The infinitive, simply, is used after all verbs of motion, instead of the English conjunction And or the particle To.

Ex. I went to see him, but he was not at home, *j'allai le voir, mais il n'était pas chez lui.*

Go and look for the doctor, wherever he may be, *allez chercher le médecin, partout où il peut être.*

The infinitive, simply, is also used for the second of two verbs following each other immediately in the same tense.

Ex. I thought I saw you in that store, *je croyais vous voir dans ce magasin.*

They imagined they had lost every thing by his failure, *ils s'imaginèrent avoir tout perdu dans sa banqueroute.*

The infinitive is used after all prepositions but one, instead of the participle present in English.

Ex. Without saying a word he went away, *sans dire mot il s'en alla.*

He never returned after having said farewell, *il ne revint jamais après avoir dit adieu.*

The preposition *en* alone is used with the participle present in the sense of By or While.

Ex. He has succeeded only by working day and night, *il n'a réussi qu'en travaillant jour et nuit.*

She fell asleep while reading the new novel, *elle s'endormit en lisant le nouveau roman.*

The English preposition In is not translated by *en*, but by *à* with the infinitive.

Ex. *Je passe mon temps à lire et à écrire*, I spend my time in reading and writing.

The infinitive with *de* is used for a verb which is the immediate object of another verb, instead of the English participle present.

Ex. Have you done reading this paper? *Avez-vous fini de lire ce journal?*

She will try pleasing you better next time, *elle essayera de vous plaire mieux la prochaine fois*

The English *a*, sometimes placed before such participles, remains, of course, untranslated in French.

Ex. He has gone a-shooting to-day, *il est allé chasser aujourd'hui.*

When they saw him they burst out a-laughing, *quand ils le virent ils éclatèrent de rire.*

The infinitive, simply, is used for English participles that are used as nouns, unless a French noun should express the same idea.

Ex. That is to say : seeing is believing, *c'est comme qui dirait : voir c'est croire.*

I am surprised to hear you do not like dancing, *je suis surpris d'apprendre que vous n'aimez pas la danse.*

The infinitive, preceded by *être à*, has the power of the passive verb in English.

Ex. *Cette maison est à louer de suite*, this house is to be rented out at once.

Ces pauvres orphelins sont beaucoup à plaindre, these poor orphans are much to be pitied.

In placards and notices of every kind, the verb *être* is often omitted. Hence *à louer*, or *à vendre*, means simply, For rent, or For sale, and *à continuer*, at the end of a fragment of a story, To be continued.

The infinitive is occasionally, by ellipsis, placed directly after adverbs interrogative.

Ex. *Comment faire cela sans aide et sans argent?* How can this be done without help and without money?

The infinitive is used instead of the English participle present, which qualifies the direct object of a preceding verb.

Ex. I have seen your brother painting, *j'ai vu peindre votre frère*.

I have also heard him singing in a low voice, *je l'ai entendu aussi chanter bas*.

When the participle present belongs to a verb expressing an action, it is preferable to translate it by the relative pronoun *qui* with the proper tense.

Ex. I have met her walking in the street, *je l'ai rencontrée qui se promenait dans la rue*.

They have detected him hiding the stolen money, *ils l'ont attrapé qui cachait l'argent volé*.

The English participle present, used as a noun, may be accompanied by a possessive pronoun, as in the phrase, My saying so. This is utterly out of the question, and expressions of this kind must be entirely changed, so as to be in conformity with the rules above given.

Ex. The reason of my saying so was this, *la raison pourquoi je l'ai dit fut ceci*.

As for his refusing to work, that does not matter, *quant à ce qu'il refuse de travailler, il n'importe*.

The English participle present, used as a noun, may also enter into the composition of compound nouns. This is impossible in French, and the participle must be rendered by a noun or a verb in the infinitive.

Ex. Where can I find the dancing-master? *Où pourrais-je trouver le maître de danse?*

I have mislaid my writing-paper, *j'ai déplacé mon papier à écrire.*

It must not be forgotten that the participle present cannot, as in English, be used with the verb *être*, but that, instead, the simple verb is employed.

Ex. He was reading when I saw him, *il lisait quand je le vis.*

The table at which I was sitting was a round one, *la table où je fus assis, était ronde.*

EXERCISE.

I thought I knew every thing until I became his pupil, and then I found I had only commenced learning. He did it for the purpose of pleasing me, but he did not succeed, for I had expected hearing him sing, and he would not do that. Eating, drinking and sleeping is all she has been doing this week, for she is too weak still for walking, or even for riding out. He has gone and paid all his debts with the money you gave him for having saved your plate during the fire. This little girl took great pains in knitting for her grandmother, but she did not understand sewing it up, and it all resulted in nothing. If you find any difficulty in doing this for me, you must not give yourself any unnecessary trouble. I can easily find somebody else, who would like undertaking it for me. We could see the soldiers marching up and down the square, but we were too far to hear the music. You are always taking pleasure in teasing her; but she is very gentle, and yesterday, while going to church, she praised you for your good behavior. You write so badly, you ought to take a good writing-master and practise writing every day.

II.—THE PRESENT TENSE.

The present is used as in English to denote an action which is now going on, or one which is immediately to follow or for which preparations are being made.

Ex. *Dans ce moment je suis encore incertain*, at this moment I am yet undecided.

Vous savez que je vais en France avec mon père, you know I am going to France with my father.

But, when the future is not of this immediate nature, the future must be used in French for the English present.

Ex. I will tell him so, when I see him, *je le lui dirai quand je le verrai*.

The present is used instead of the English future after the conjunction *si*, if, and is the only tense, besides the imperfect, which can be used after *si*.

Ex. I will pay him well if he will do it, *je le payerai bien s'il le fait*.

The present is used in historical writing or in oratorical and very animated style, instead of the past tense, for the purpose of greater liveliness and emphasis.

Ex. *César s'avance, ses troupes se jettent sur l'ennemi*, Cæsar advances; his troops throw themselves upon the enemy.

Le malheureux! Il veut s'enfuir, il est trop tard! The unhappy man! He wants to flee; it is too late!

Conjunctions which express a future — like *when*, *while*, as soon as, etc., — and others, which express a past — like *after*, *before*, etc., — are frequently used in English with the present tense. The French is more precise in these cases and requires respectively the past or the future after them.

Ex. When he comes back, he will dine at once, *quand il rentrera, il va dîner de suite*.

I will tell him as soon as I see him, *je le lui dirai aussi-tôt que je le verrai.*

He always sleeps after he dines, *il dort toujours après avoir dîné.*

EXERCISE.

He loves peace, he blames all extremes, and enjoys the happy changes which take place under his benevolent rule. My friends are all ready; the boat is at the landing; let us bid farewell, and we will start as soon as you have done weeping. I shall certainly punish him if he does it again, for it is a bad habit, which must be overcome at once or it becomes his master. Will you be very glad when she becomes your brother's wife? I do not know yet, for I have never seen her; but I will tell you frankly how I like her after I have made her acquaintance. Do not leave this place till he tells you to do so; it is very important that somebody should be here to receive visitors in his absence. You can take a walk along the shore while I am remaining by the boat to see that nobody steals the oars and our clothes. If you will allow me to go away for a few minutes, I shall be very much obliged to you. It is not necessary for you to come back till I am ready to accompany you.

III.—THE PAST TENSES.

The French verb has three past tenses, which represent the meaning of the English two past tenses; hence, there arises some difficulty in knowing exactly which of the three to employ. Fortunately, the rules in French are very positive, and at the same time very clear, so that very little attention suffices to acquire the tact necessary for their use. Of these three tenses, two are simple—the imperfect and the preterit definite—and one is compound, the preterit indefinite.

The *Imperfect* has its name from the fact that it refers to a past action, the time of which is purposely left undecided in itself, imperfect, but measured only by another action, beginning or ending at the same time.

Ex. *J pensais à vous quand vous êtes entré*, I was thinking of you when you came in.

Elle dormait profondément, quand je cessai de lire, she slept profoundly when I stopped reading.

It is generally, though not necessarily, expressed in English by the verb To be, with the participle present.

Its principal purposes are to express an action, which is continued for a long time, and this is generally expressed in English by I was, with the participle present.

Ex. I was living ten years in that house, *je vivais dix ans dans cette maison.*

I loved her so much, when she was with us! *Je l'aimais tant quand elle était avec nous!*

Or an action frequently repeated, and this is generally expressed by I used to, etc.

Ex. Formerly I used to read very little, *autrefois je ne lisais que fort peu.*

They used to come to see us every Sunday, *ils venaient nous voir tous les Dimanches.*

The imperfect expresses, thirdly, any past action, which is not designated definitely by any expression of time.

Ex. *Vous étions vainqueurs,* we were victorious (so far).

César était un des plus grands hommes, Caesar was one of the greatest men.

Je ne savais pas cela, I did not know that (before).

The imperfect is, as has already been stated, the only tense which can be used after *si*, if, for any English tense except the present.

Ex. If he were to come to-morrow, it would be too late, *s'il venait demain, cela serait trop tard.*

I would do it, if he should insist upon it, *je le ferais, s'il insistait.*

The *Præterit Definite* has its name from the fact that it refers to a past action, the time of which is well determined by some definition of time, and hence fully elapsed.

Ex. *Nous y allâmes hier*, we went there yesterday.

C'est le même jour où naquit Molière, that is the same day on which Molière was born.

The principal purposes of this tense are to express actions which have ended completely, and hence it is the historical tense of the French.

Ex. *Cette bataille fut livrée en 1812*, this battle was fought in 1812.

Cet infortuné roi expia ses crimes sur l'échafaud, that most unfortunate king expiated his crimes on the scaffold.

It cannot, therefore, be used for actions accompanied by words, like This year, this week, etc., because these periods of time have not yet completely elapsed; nor can it state what has been done to-day.

The preterit definite is, secondly, used to express all past actions accompanied by a definition of time, as the date, etc.

Ex. *Je n'y arrivai que le quinze Juin*, I only arrived there the fifteenth of June.

Il me le dit un jour que nous fumes ensemble, he told me so one day when we were together.

The Preterit Indefinite has its name from the fact that it refers to a past action, the time of which is not yet completely elapsed, although the action itself has come to an end. Hence, this is the tense which expresses all actions accompanied by words like This year, this month, to-day, etc.

Ex. *L'avez-vous rencontrée ce matin ?* Did you meet her this morning ?

J'ai eu la fièvre deux fois cette année, I had the fever twice this year.

It is used, secondly, to express past actions, the effects of which have not yet entirely passed away, or are at least represented as still continuing.

Ex. *Avez-vous conclu votre marché avec cet homme?* Did you close your bargain with this man?

Les Grecs nous ont donné les Beaux Arts, the Greeks have given us the Fine Arts.

Hence, past tenses accompanied by adverbs, like *Always*, *often*, *never*, etc., will be expressed by the preterit indefinite, because these adverbs extend the action indefinitely.

Ex. *J'ai toujours craint qu'il n'en soit ainsi,* I always feared it might be so.

Il n'a jamais voulu nous avouer son crime, he never would acknowledge his crime.

EXERCISE.

Whilst we were at dinner, a band of musicians came into the room, they played for several hours, until the time for the evening concert, when they left the hotel. Louis XI. was a wise, but a wicked king; he did many great acts and not a good one; he suffered all his life from jealousy and fear of being murdered. We used to sit on that bench and look upon the lake every evening last summer; we always liked that place better than any other in this neighborhood. The battle was fought on the eighteenth of June; it lasted for ten hours; about noon the fate of the conflict changed, and finally our troops gained a brilliant victory. Did you see him this morning going to the spring and filling a tumbler with its fresh and pure water for his daughter? No, I did not see him to-day, but I saw him yesterday morning. When we visited the beautiful castle at Pau, they showed us a large room, and the servant said, with an air of great solemnity. In this room Henry IV. was born! We always hoped he would come and bring his family with him, but whilst we were expecting him here, he had gone to the West. He came to this country late last fall, and went on the first of December to the little farm of his son-in-law, where he has been living ever since. We were playing a game of billiards, when she came into the room and called her husband; he stopped playing at once, and since that time we have not played another game. His father gave him all he wanted as long as he saw that he was reasonable in his wishes; but when he found that there

was no limit to his extravagance, he ceased supplying him with money. If I were in his place, I would not think of it any more; the money is lost, and it is of no avail to regret such losses. If it should be found again, even that would not make much difference, for the money was not his. When we reached the gate of the city, which used to be open during the whole night, we found it shut, to our surprise; and as the watchman was sleeping, we did not rouse him for half an hour, during which we stood in the rain, wet and shivering.

COMPOUND PAST TENSES.

The Pluperfect, formed of the imperfect of auxiliary verbs with the participle past, is used in precisely the same manner as the imperfect itself, only with regard to a past action, which precedes another past action.

Ex. *J'avais déjeûné, quand vous vîntes me demander*, I had breakfasted when you came for me.

The action of breakfasting, here, is represented not only as past in itself, but as past previously to the other past action of your coming. This second action, however, need not be specially expressed; it may be represented by a definition of time.

Ex. *Il avait fini son ouvrage à minuit*, he had finished his work at midnight.

The pluperfect is employed, also, like the imperfect, for actions accompanied in English by the words *Used to*.

Ex. I used to read as soon as I had dined, *je lisais aussitôt que j'avais dîné*.

It is, likewise, employed after *si*, if, because that conjunction cannot be used with any other past tense but the imperfect, and the pluperfect contains the imperfect of the auxiliary verbs.

Ex. *S'il n'avait pas fait cela, il aurait été perdu*, if he had not done that he would have been lost.

Modern writers are disposed occasionally to substitute the subjunctive of the preterit anterior for the pluperfect, but it remains to be seen whether this elegant though bold form of expression will be adopted by standard authors.

Ex. *S'il eût été le chef, il y aurait peut-être remédié*, if he had been the commander, he might have mended it.

The Preterit Anterior, formed of the preterit definite of auxiliary verbs with the participle past, partakes again of the nature of the simple preterit and expresses a past action, which is immediately followed by another past action, so that it is fully classed and marked as such by the second action, to which it is anterior.

Ex. *Quand j'eus reconnu mon erreur, j'en fus honteux*, when I had seen my error, I was ashamed of it.

It will, likewise, be used whenever the time of the past action is determined by a definition of time, or words like *bientôt*, soon; *dé suite*, at once, etc.

Ex. *J'eus bientôt lu le billet de ma sœur*, I had soon read my sister's note.

Après l'avoir saisi, il l'eut renversé en un instant, having once seized him, he had overthrown him in an instant.

Hence, al-o, it must be used after such conjunctions as express immediate, definite action, as *quand*, when; *aussitôt que*, as soon as; *après que*, after; *dès que*, from the time that, etc.

Ex. *Aussitôt que je l'eus fini, je m'en allai*, as soon as I had finished it, I went away.

Dès que je l'eus vu, je le soupçonnais, as soon as I had seen him, I suspected him.

The so-called preterit anterior indefinite, mentioned by some grammarians, and formed from the preterit indefinite of the auxiliary verbs with the participle past, is of such rare occurrence that it has not been specially mentioned. Foreigners do better to avoid using it altogether, and a noun or the infinitive is preferable in all cases.

Ex. *Je l'ai vu après que j'ai eu déjeûné ce matin*, I saw him
after I had breakfasted this morning.

Or, *Je l'ai vu après mon déjeûner ce matin*.

EXERCISE.

As soon as I had heard of your misfortune, I took all the necessary measures to come to your aid ; and when I had told my wife of my intentions, I went to the depot and took the cars. He was not satisfied with the picture, but, after he had changed the sketch several times, he gave it up in despair. We only stopped when we had walked half-way, because we saw that we would not have arrived there before sunset, even if we had started before noon. When he had taken a hearty meal, at dinner or at supper, he used to sleep ; and that habit injured his health so much, that he died before he had reached the age of sixty. It was a great disappointment to the crowd of curious people, who had gone to see the review : when they reached the place they found that they had come too late, and that the troops had all returned to the barracks. When I was the first time in Rome, nothing had made a greater impression upon me than the Pope and the ceremonies of the Roman Church : when I was there last year, the charm had lost its power, for I had become another man. As soon as the matter had been reported to the police, they had gone to work to find out the thieves ; and hence, while you had as yet heard nothing of the robbery, the criminals were already in prison.

V.—FUTURE AND CONDITIONAL.

The *Future* simply expresses an action which is still to take place, as in English, and represents, therefore, the English expression : I am going to—occasionally.

Ex. *Nos corps resusciteront au jour dernier*, our bodies will arise on the last day.

Il ne vous reconnaîtra pas sous ce déguisement, he will not recognize you in that disguise.

It is employed also as a mild form of the imperative.

Ex. *Vous remercirez ce monsieur qui a tant fait pour vous,*
you will thank that gentleman, who has done so much
for you.

It is occasionally placed at the head of a sentence, before the subject, to convey a peculiar emphasis urged with doubt.

Ex. *Croira qui voudra ce conte, moi je ne le peux pas,* let those
who choose, believe this story, I cannot.

The *Future Anterior*, formed of the future of the auxiliary verb with the participle past, expresses a future action which will precede another future action.

Ex. *Quand je serai rétabli, j'irai vous voir,* when I am well
again, I will come and see you.

J'aurai tout fait, quand vous rentrerez, I shall have done
every thing, when you come back.

It has been mentioned already with the remarks on the present, that the future must in French be used instead of the English present, after conjunctions which have a future meaning.

Ex. *Je le lui dirai aussitôt que je le verrai,* I will tell him so,
as soon as I see him.

Il viendra sans doute après qu'il aura été chez nous, he
will certainly come after he has been at our house.

It must be borne in mind, here, that the English verbs *Will* and *Shall* are used, now as independent verbs and now as auxiliaries, to form the future. In the latter case, they are, of course, simply translated by the French future: in the former case they must be rendered by the verbs *vouloir* and *devoir*.

Ex. He will come if he possibly can do it, *il viendra s'il le peut faire possible.*

Ask him if he will come or not, *demandez-lui s'il veut venir ou non.*

It shall be done, Sir, to your satisfaction, *il sera fait, Monsieur, et vous en serez satisfait.*

Shall it be done to-day or to-morrow? *Doit-on le faire aujourd'hui ou demain?*

EXERCISE.

I beg you, do what you can to keep him from going away now, for, if he does so, he will surely lose the best opportunity he has ever had of distinguishing himself. Let those who choose believe the historians who give this account of the great Alexander ; they give us nothing but fictions. What will he do if he lose his place ? he has no fortune and he will have to work for his living. When the doctor left us he said to the nurse, You will give her her medicine every two hours ; and you will watch her sleep carefully, so that she is not disturbed by any noise. If she sleeps through the night, she will escape the danger, and her life is saved. I had no money about me, and told him : I will pay your bill when you bring it to my house ; I shall be at home after I have dined at the Club, and I shall not leave the house again until to-morrow. He will have accomplished a great deed if he succeeds in this enterprise ; it will be recorded in history as one of the most daring things that have ever been undertaken by man.

The *Conditional* expresses an action dependent on a condition.

Ex. *Nous serions bien contents si nous en avions autant*, we would be well pleased if we had as much.

This condition, however, is not always expressed by *si*, if, or at all, but may be understood.

Ex. *Dites-lui que je le verrais avec plaisir, mais que je suis malade*, tell him I would see him with pleasure, but that I am sick.

Je serais fâché de le trouver malade, I should be sorry to find him sick.

Pourriez-vous le croire coupable d'un tel forfait ? Could you think him guilty of such a crime ?

The *Conditional Anterior*, formed of the conditional of the auxiliary verb and the participle past, expresses an action thus dependent, and preceding a condition.

Ex. *J'aurais fini si l'on ne m'avait interrompu*, I would have finished, if I had not been interrupted.

Que serait-il arrivé s'il n'était pas venu? What would have happened if he had not come?

Instead of this form of the past conditional, French authors frequently employ the subjunctive of the past, with the participle past, but the use of this form belongs more to elevated than to conversational style.

Ex. *S'il m'eût cru, il eût abandonné l'entreprise*, if he had believed me, he would have abandoned the enterprise.

The French conditional can never be used, as in English, after *si*, if, but in its place the imperfect must be employed.

Ex. If he should say yes, I would be delighted, *s'il disait que oui, je serais charmé*.

EXERCISE.

I would prefer that you should read the letter yourself; it was addressed to you, and if I were to read it, your friend might be displeased. What would you do if he were to leave you alone in a dark room, after having told you such a ghost-story? I would not be much afraid, for I have no fear of ghosts, and my parents have accustomed me early to control my feelings. I would have told you so before, if you had consulted me, but you were so eager, that you would not have paid any attention to my words, if I had then spoken to you. Would you ever have suspected him of such vices, who had the appearance of a most virtuous and honorable man? I am sure that I would never have believed it, if anybody had told me so; but now, having seen it with my own eyes, it would be folly to doubt it any longer. If I could see her for a few minutes, I would be delighted, for I have not seen her for two years, and it would be a great disappointment to me to leave the country without saying good-bye to her.

VI.—THE IMPERATIVE MOOD.

The *Imperative* mood states the meaning of the verb in the manner of commanding, entreating or permitting.

Ex. *Allez de suite chercher le médecin*, go immediately for the doctor.

Veillez agréer mes hommages, accept my respects.

Faites ce que vous voudrez, il importe peu, do what you like, it matters little.

The French imperative expresses no pronoun as nominative, as is sometimes done in English.

Ex. Let us be prudent and we shall escape, *soyons sages et nous en échapperons*.

The first person singular is never used, because man does not command himself in an audible tone; he wills, and without conveying his will to himself, he acts. On the stage, however, and in poetry, where his thoughts are clad in words, the first person plural is used in monologues.

Ex. *Allons, vaincons nos passions!* Up, let me overcome my passions.

The third person of the imperative is borrowed from the subjunctive of the present, and hence is always preceded by the conjunction *que*, as the first part of the sentence, *je veux*, and the like, is understood.

Ex. *Qu'il s'en aille de suite ou je le chasserai*, let him go away instantly or I shall drive him off.

Qu'ils ne le fassent plus s'il veulent que je leur pardonne, let them not do it again, if they wish to be forgiven.

VII.—THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

The Subjunctive mood has its name from the fact that in form and in meaning it is always "subjoined," subordinate to another idea; for it never expresses any thing, that is, any positive action, like the indicative, but something that may be, a contingent action. Now, what is contingent, depends upon something else, and this is the principal part of the proposition, of which

the verb in the subjunctive forms the subordinate part. The two parts of the proposition must, like any two verbs, which express distinct ideas and yet are brought into connection with each other, be united by the conjunction *que*; and hence it comes that the subjunctive is never found in French unaccompanied by a conjunction. It would, however, be a grave error to imagine that this conjunction governs the subjunctive: it is the meaning given to the verb alone, which determines whether it is to be used in the indicative or subjunctive mood, and the same conjunction may, therefore, be followed by either.

Ex. *Je doute qu'il soit venu aujourd'hui*, I doubt whether he came to-day.

Je sais qu'il est venu aujourd'hui, I know he did come to-day.

The general rule for the use of the subjunctive mood is simply, that it must be employed whenever the meaning of the verb is not positive but contingent, and consequently dependent on another part of the proposition.

The tense of the subjunctive to be used is determined by the so-called rule of the Sequence of Tenses, which has reference to the manner in which the tenses follow each other in the two parts of the proposition. The principal part will contain the indicative, which has five tenses; the subordinate part, the subjunctive, which has only two tenses, the present and the past: hence the necessity of precisely attributing the latter two to the former five. The rule is this: The present and future of the indicative are followed by the subjunctive of the present; the past tenses and the conditional of the indicative are followed by the subjunctive of the past.

Ex. <i>Il faut</i>	} <i>que vous le fassiez.</i>	{ You have to do it.
<i>Il faudra</i>		
<i>Il fallait</i>	} <i>que vous le fissiez.</i>	{ You had to do it.
<i>Il faillait</i>		
<i>Il a fallu</i>	} <i>que vous le fassiez.</i>	{ You have had to do it.
<i>Il faudrait</i>		
		{ You would have to do it.

The general principle which determines the use of the subjunctive mood produces the following practical results :

1. Verbs expressive of a wish, from the gentlest desire to the positive command, and verbs expressive of fear or doubt, are followed by the subjunctive, because whatever is wished, ordered, feared or doubted is not represented as actually being the case, but only as a thing that may or may not be, according as the wish, fear or doubt is realized or not.

Ex. *Tu veux qu'en ta faveur on croie l'impossible*, thou wilt have us believe the impossible for thy sake.

J'attends tous les moments qu'il vienne, I expect him to come any moment.

Il avait peur que je ne m'en allasse de suite, he was afraid I would go away at once.

Doutez-vous qu'il y ait un Dieu? Do you doubt that there is a God?

Even some of these verbs, however, may be followed by the indicative, as *e. g.*, the verbs, *arrêter*, to enact, *commander*, to command, *exiger*, to require, etc., when they are used in laws of the country or orders of the Government, because then they admit of no contingency, but state what must positively be done.

Ex. *Arrêté que la cour s'assemblera demain*, it is enacted that the court will meet to-morrow.

2. Verbs expressive of what exists only in our mind, as *penser*, to think, *soutenir*, to maintain, *soupçonner*, to suspect, *espérer*, to hope, *parier*, to bet, *s'imaginer*, to imagine, and all with similar meaning, are followed by the subjunctive, because what we only think, imagine, suspect, etc., is likewise represented not as actual but only as possible.

Ex. *Pensez-vous qu'il soit déjà sorti?* Do you think he has already gone ou'?

Ils s'imaginent que tous soient méchants comme eux, they
fancy everybody is as wicked as they.

Je ne crois pas qu'il l'ait dit, I do not think he said so.

But, whenever these same verbs are employed to state our conviction or some positive fact, they must be followed by the indicative.

Ex. *Je pense que vous avez appris cela bien, I think you have*
(positively) learnt this well.

Songez qu'on veut vous perdre et ne négligez rien, think
that they want to ruin you, and neglect nothing.

Je crois qu'il y a un Dieu qui m'a créé, I believe that
there is a God who has created me.

3. Impersonal verbs which express duty, satisfaction, etc., and the verb *être* used impersonally before adjectives of similar meaning, are followed by the subjunctive.

Ex. *Il importe qu'on le lui fasse savoir en secret, it is impor-*
tant he should be informed of it secretly.

Il est possible qu'elle ne soit plus jeune, it is possible she
may be no longer young.

Il était triste qu'on l'eût abandonnée ainsi, it was sad she
should have been left thus.

But if these impersonal verbs or the adjective after *être* have or assume a positive meaning, the indicative will here also be substituted for the subjunctive.

Ex. *Il paraît qu'il est venu après tout, it appears he did come*
after all.

Il est évident qu'il n'est plus riche, it is evident he is no
longer rich.

Il arrive souvent qu'on est trompé, it often happens that
we are mistaken.

Several verbs have two significations, and are, in accordance

with these, followed either by the indicative or the subjunctive. The principal verbs of this class are :

<i>Attendre que</i> , to wait until,	} with the subjunctive.
<i>entenāre</i> , to require,	
<i>prétendre</i> , to expect,	
<i>supposer</i> , to suppose,	
<i>sembler</i> , to seem (and not to be),	

<i>attendre</i> , to expect,	} with the indicative.
<i>entendre</i> , to hear, understand,	
<i>prétendre</i> , to maintain,	
<i>supposer</i> , to admit,	
<i>sembler</i> , to seem (and to be so),	

Ex. *Il semble que ce mal soit sans remède*, it looks as if this disease is incurable.

Il semble qu'elle a vraiment épousé cet homme, it seems she has actually married that man.

Attendez qu'il vienne et je vous présenterai, wait till he comes and I will introduce you.

J'attends qu'il est mort hier, I expect he did die yesterday.

4. Relative superlatives, which state the highest degree of a quality, not as it is absolutely, but relatively to what may be, words of the same meaning, as *premier*, *principal*, *unique*, *seul*, etc., and indefinite pronouns followed by a relative pronoun, require the subjunctive after them, because of the vague and indefinite meaning which they necessarily give to that part of the proposition.

Ex. *C'est la plus belle femme que j'aie jamais vue*, she is the finest woman I have ever seen.

Le seul homme qui soit plus grand que sa réputation, the only man who is greater than his reputation.

Je voudrais voir quelqu'un qui pût mieux faire, I should like to see any one who could do better.

Il y a peu de gens qui en sachent autant, there are few people who know as much.

But here, also, the meaning may be a positive one, and then the indicative is required.

Ex. *Peu de gens qui l'ont essayé ont réussi*, few who have tried it have succeeded.

J'ai vu quelqu'un qui le connaît de vue, I have seen somebody who knows him by sight.

5. Verbs expressive of fear, from mere apprehension to trembling, etc., and of denial of any kind, are not only followed by the verb in the subjunctive mood, but the verb must also be preceded by the negative particle *ne*.

Ex. *Elle nie qu'elle ne l'ait vu hier*, she denies having seen him yesterday.

Je crains qu'on ne soit venu trop tard, I fear they have come too late.

Ne tremblez-vous pas que Dieu ne vous punisse ? Do you not tremble lest God should punish you ?

Verbs of fear, etc., used negatively, are not followed by *ne*.

Ex. *Je n'ai pas peur qu'il s'enfuit*, I do not fear that he will flee.

The verbs *empêcher*, to prevent, *éviter*, to avoid, and *prendre garde*, to take care, are likewise followed by the subjunctive with *ne*.

Ex. *Il empêchera qu'on n'aille trop vite*, he will prevent their going too fast.

Prenez garde que vous ne tombiez là ! Take care not to fall there.

6. There are, finally, certain conjunctions which are followed by the subjunctive, not from any power of their own to govern that mood, as it is often erroneously expressed, but from the fact that their meaning is such as to apply only to contingent actions or events. Such are *avant que*, before, *bien que*, although, *pourvu que*, provided that, *soit que*, be it that, *à moins que*, unless, etc.

Ex. *Avant que l'empire éprouvât sa puissance*, before the Empire felt his power.

Pourvu qu'il ne le sache pas, il ne fera rien, provided that he does not know it, he will do nothing.

A moins que vous ne préféreriez rester ici, unless you should prefer staying here.

It will have been seen, from all the examples given, that the construction of the subjunctive in French differs essentially from that in English. In the former, the connection of the two parts of the proposition by *que* is the rule; in the latter, the infinitive or the participle present can be substituted. Thus, for the phrase, *Je n'aime pas qu'il vienne ici*, the English may be: I do not like it that he comes here, or, I do not like him to come here, or, I do not like his coming here.

The general rule on the subject is, that, with the limited exceptions which will be mentioned hereafter, all such constructions must be rendered in French by means of *que* and the subjunctive.

Ex. I was afraid of his betraying his secret, *j'avais peur qu'il ne révélât son secret*.

Would you wish him to be presented to you? *Voudriez-vous qu'on vous le présentât?*

But the infinitive may be used in French also—

1. When the subject of the two verbs in the two parts of the proposition is one and the same.

Ex. *Il veut avoir raison contre tout le monde*, he wants to be right against everybody.

Il a consenti à abandonner le procès, he has consented to abandon the lawsuit.

Verbs which take *ne* after them before the subjunctive, do not add it before the infinitive.

Ex. *Il craignait toujours de tomber*, he was always afraid of falling.

2. Verbs expressing command, consent, or obligation, in personal verbs, and *être* with an adjective, may, in simple phrases, be followed by the infinitive with *de*.

Ex. *Lui permettez-vous d'y aller ?* Will you permit him to go there ?

On l'a forcé de se taire, they have compelled him to keep quiet.

Il est doux de rentrer chez soi, it is pleasant to return home.

When *que* with the subjunctive is followed by another *que*, as in comparisons, the last *que* must have *de* after it.

Ex. *Il voudrait mieux que vous partissiez que de rester avec elle*, it would be better for you to leave than to stay with her.

3. Some of those conjunctions which were mentioned before as apt to be followed by the subjunctive, like *avant que*, *afin que*, *à moins que*, *de peur que*, *en cas que*, and *loin que*, may also be followed by the infinitive with *de*, and *pour*, for, and *sans*, without, or by the infinitive without *de*, whenever the subject of the two parts of the proposition, which they connect, is the same.

Ex. *Jé vous le dirai avant de quitter ces lieux*, I will tell you before leaving here.

Il l'a fait surtout afin de plaire à ses parents, he did it mainly in order to please his parents.

Il le cachait pour le garder contre les soldats, he hid it to keep it from the soldiers.

Avant que is by many authors used with *ne* before the subjunctive, when it refers to a future action which is yet uncertain.

Ex. *On aurait dû le faire avant qu'il mourut* (certain), it ought to have been done before he died.

On devrait le faire avant qu'il n'arrivât, it ought to be done before he could come.

Jusqu'à ce que, followed by a verb, is translated by *jusqu'à ce que*, and requires the subjunctive for contingent, the indicative for positive and certain actions.

Ex. *J'ai causé avec elle jusqu'à ce qu'elle s'endormit*, I talked to her until she fell asleep.

Il promet d'attendre jusqu'à ce qu'il fût rentré, he promised to wait until he should come back.

When two verbs succeed each other, subject to the same conjunction, the latter must be repeated before the second verb, but only in the form of *que*, which also takes the place of *si*, if, to be thus repeated.

Ex. *Il sera assez pourvu qu'il vienne et qu'il vous voie*, it will be enough, so he comes and sees you.

Si l'on vient et qu'on me demande, if anybody comes and asks for me.

There are, finally, a few cases in French, in which the general rule that the subjunctive always forms the secondary dependent part of a proposition, seems to be disregarded. With one exception such constructions are elliptical, and therefore only in appearance different from the general form. They are the following.

1. The imperative and emphatic wish is expressed by *que* with the subjunctive, the word of command or wish being omitted but understood.

Ex. (Je veux) *Que chacun reste à sa place!* Let everybody remain in his seat!

Que Dieu vous pardonne, la Justice ne le peut pas, may God pardon you, Justice cannot pardon you.

2. In a few proverbial or technical expressions, not only the preceding verb, but even *que* is by ellipsis omitted.

Ex. *Vive l'Empereur! Vive le prince impérial!* Long live the Emperor! Long life to the Imperial Prince!

Fais ton devoir, arrive que voudra! Do your duty, happen what may!

The use of the subjunctive of certain verbs instead of the conditional construction with *si*, *f*, has already been explained.

3. The only true exception to the general rule is the first person of the subjunctive present of the verb *savoir*, to know, which is used without being preceded by or dependent on a previous verb.

Ex. *Sera-t-il ici ? Pas que je sache.* Will he be here ? Not that I know.

Je ne sache rien qui me plût mieux que cela, I know nothing that would please me better than that.

Je ne sache que ce général qui puisse la commander, I know but this one general who could command it.

EXERCISE.

The soldiers cried out, with one voice : Permit us to die before your eyes, fighting for your glory and your name ! Do you really wish me to flee and to avoid you hereafter ? We had intended to have a pleasant pic-nic this afternoon, but the rain prevented our going to the forest, where it was the intention that all should collect. I prefer that he should be unhappy rather than that he should commit so great a wrong. He is astonished that people should have been able to live in such times, and to suffer as much as these unfortunate beings have suffered during the war. Do you think that in creating a republic of bees, God would not instruct kings to rule with gentleness and subjects to obey with willingness ? Do you suspect it was one of your servants who has robbed you of your money, or did you not rather think it was a person from the neighborhood ? He doubted that it would rain this morning, but when we awoke, we thought we heard it patter against the window-panes. I do not mean you to make any expense on my account, or to send and buy any thing for me. It is better he should not do it at all than to do it by halves. Sir, it is impossible that you should have seen him to-day, for he was sick and in bed when I left him this morning and the doctor doubted whether he would ever be able to go out again. It is clear that you have been mistaken when you imagined he was in your house and talking to your friends in the parlor.

It seems he wished to publish a book on that subject, but no bookseller was willing to undertake the enterprise, as it would have

required a large sum of money. It looks as if he had foreseen all the difficulties, for he had made his will and desired it to be deposited in bank. He was the most learned man Russia had ever produced, and he received all the honors which were due only to the man who then shed such lustre upon a half barbarous nation. There are few people who know how to enjoy themselves in a simple, unpretending way ; most of the amusements which we enjoy, cost more than they are worth. Let all the men step on one side and all the women remain on the other side ; then let them advance, one by one, and receive their wages. This was done, so that there might be no confusion, for the crowd was very large, and it was feared some tumult might arise amid so great an assemblage ; but all went off better than had been expected. He denies ever having taken opium for such purposes, but he admits having been forced to eat large quantities, when he was sick and in the hands of a poor physician. I am not afraid that he will escape from jail, for he is far too anxious that he should be tried and his innocence be established.

This prevented our going abroad for this year, but we hope, if no misfortune overtakes us, that another year will see us all assembled at the paternal hearth of our native land. Take care not to forget the letters which must be written before the mail leaves : if I were you, I would not wait until there is but half an hour's time before its close. I hope we shall be safe before the tempest breaks out, for the boat is fast, and the little port, for which we are all bound, only a few miles distant. I will give him the money he wants, provided he will promise me to repay it before he goes away. Be it that there really was not enough or that they had not the good-will to be liberal, they gave us very little. Were you not afraid of her succumbing to the violence of the attack, especially as there was no doctor to whom you could apply at once for assistance ? I must confess, I was afraid she might die at any moment, but I also knew that her life was in God's hands, and thus my mind was less disturbed.

Would he wish me to come instantly ? asked the man ; and when he understood that he was wanted on the spot, he did not even say good-bye to his family, but went with the messenger, that he might see and relieve the sufferer. When the king saw the reluctance of his

ministers to sign the proclamation, he said in an angry tone - I will be obeyed ; and after that all resistance was in vain. Louis XI. always feared to be murdered by poison or by the dagger, and surrounded himself with guards on all sides ; but his one great enemy, Death, found him when he least expected him. It is odd to see the father and the son together ; they resemble each other so closely, and the former looks so young and the latter so old, that it seems as if they were brothers rather. You must tell me your secret before leaving my room, for I burn to know it, and I will not let you go until you have told me all. Unless he should spend all his money and be reduced to poverty, he will never consent to his father's conditions, for I do not know anybody who is more obstinate than he. When they asked him if anybody had been at the house, he answered in a very rude manner, Nobody, that I know of, and went away.

VIII.—THE PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

The Participle Present presents some difficulties on account of its double nature, as a part of the verb from which it derives its form, its meaning and its regimen, and as an adjective, the functions of which it performs by expressing a quality. To do this, the participle present, which invariably ends in *ant*, assumes a feminine form in mute *e* and a plural form in *s*.

The general rule on the use of this participle is this :

The participle present is declined, when it serves as an adjective, so as to agree in gender and number with the noun it qualifies : it is left unchanged when it serves as a verb.

In order to know when it is an adjective and when a verb, it need only be inquired if it express a quality, and then it is the former ; or if it express an action and have an object, and then it is a verb.

Ex. *J'ai vu souvent cette dame charmante*, I have often seen this charming lady (quality).

J'ai vu souvent cette dame charment tout un cercle (action),
I have often seen this lady charming a whole crowd.

Une ceinture brillante de pierres précieuses, a belt shining
with precious stones.

It must not be forgotten that participles as adjectives are subject to a special rule as to their place, and invariably follow the noun they qualify.

Several rules requiring the English participle present to be changed into the infinitive or a relative pronoun and verb, in French, have been mentioned with the rules on the use of the infinitive.

The participle present of *avoir* and *être* is invariable, because *ayant* and *étant* cannot, from their signification, be used as adjectives to express a quality.

Ex. *Ces hommes ayant les mêmes travaux s'entr'aident*, these men having the same work to do, help each other.

Mes sœurs étant absentes ne le virent pas, my sisters being absent, did not see it.

It must be borne in mind here that the participle present may be the object of another verb, whenever it expresses action and consequently has an object.

Ex. *J'ai vu mon frère plus d'une fois lisant Horace*, I have seen my brother more than once reading Horace.

On le voit de temps en temps se promenant là-bas, he is occasionally seen walking down there.

But by placing *en* before the participle, it becomes referable to the subject of the sentence.

Ex. *J'ai vu mon frère en lisant Horace*, while I was reading Horace, I saw my brother.

Il le voit de temps en temps en se promenant, he sees him occasionally, when he takes a walk.

EXERCISE.

This kind lady was obliging all the unfortunate refugees by her gifts and her kindness of every kind, and they all declared her the most charming lady they had ever known. When we arrived on the battle-field we heard all around us the shells exploding with a terrible crash, and a cannon-ball, falling on his aid, killed him on the spot.

These ladies uttered piercing cries when the men broke open the door, and two fell fainting on the ground. Was it not a pleasant sight to his eyes to see the widow of his enemy falling on her knees and weeping before him? We heard these distressing words with sincere grief, and they fell like burning sparks upon our hearts. He possesses the rare art of instructing his pupils while amusing them, and I have seen them writing their exercises without being bored. She looked at him with withering scorn, and then said to him in a threatening voice: Never show yourself in my presence again, if you wish to save your life.

IX.—THE PARTICIPLE PAST.

The Participle Past, which ends in *é, i* and *u, s* or *t*, serves likewise both purposes, as a verb and as an adjective, and varies accordingly in its form, making a feminine and a plural in the former capacity, and remaining unchanged in the latter. It is used in the following ways:

1. The participle past may occur without an auxiliary verb as an adjective to qualify a noun, and then it has to agree with it in gender and number.

Ex. *Que de remparts détruits! Que de villes forcées!* How many walls razed! How many towns taken by storm!
Je les ai vus tous morts ou blessés, I have seen them all dead or wounded.

It may, also, occur without an auxiliary as an adverb, in which case it remains, of course, unchanged and precedes the noun.

Ex. *Vous trouverez ci-joint un billet d'elle,* you will find enclosed a note from her.

Vu les circonstances ils ont bien fait, considering the circumstances they have done well.

Excepté vous et moi, ils sont tous partis, except you and I, they have all left.

2. The participle past may occur in connection with the verb *être*, in which case it will invariably agree with its subject. This may be the case

In passive verbs :

Ex. *Nous serons tous charmés de vous voir*, we shall all be delighted to see you.

La vertu timide est souvent opprimée, timid virtue is often oppressed.

In neuter verbs, the compound tenses of which are made with the auxiliary verb *être*.

Ex. *Nous sommes venus vous féliciter de votre succès*, we have come to congratulate you on your success.

Tous les arts sont nés à l'ombre de la paix, all the arts were born under the shadow of peace.

In pronominal verbs, the compound tenses of which are invariably made by the aid of the auxiliary verb *être*.

Ex. *Elle s'est tue un peu trop longtemps*, she has kept silence a little too long.

Ils se seraient tués si on ne les avaient pas empêchés, they would have killed each other, if they had not been prevented.

Elle s'est trompée en voulant tromper les autres, she deceived herself while trying to deceive others.

It must, however, be borne in mind that the object of some pronominal verbs is not a direct but an indirect object, in which case the participle past remains unchanged.

Ex. *Ils se sont parlé (l'un à l'autre) toute une heure*, they have spoken with one another a whole hour.

Ces deux rois se sont succédé de suite, these two kings followed each other directly.

The same rule applies to verbs which become pronominal only by the substitution of the personal for the possessive pronouns.

Ex. *Elle s'est brûlé la main et le bras*, she burnt her hand and her arm.

Est-ce que vous vous êtes lavé les mains ? Did you wash your hands ?

The same rule applies to the past tenses of verbs made passive by the addition of the pronoun *se*.

Ex. *Il s'est assemblé une foule de gens armés*, a crowd of armed men has been gathered together.

Il s'est trouvé dix hommes de tués, there have been found ten men who were killed.

3. The participle past may occur in connection with the verb *avoir*, in which case it will agree only with the direct object, that precedes it.

If the object is an indirect one, the participle remains unchanged.

Ex. *On leur a dit tout ce qu'on a pu dire*, they have been told all that could be told.

If there is no object at all, the participle remains unchanged.

Ex. *On avait causé beaucoup et dormi peu*, there had been much talk and little sleep.

If the direct object follows the participle, it remains unchanged.

Ex. *Elle a vu tous ces gens qui l'adorent*, she has seen all these people who admire her.

But, we repeat, if there is an object, and that object is a direct one and it precedes the verb, the participle will agree with it in gender and number.

Ex. *Donnez-moi les pommes que vous m'avez promises*, give me the apples you have promised me.

The direct object, which thus precedes the participle past, may be—

A noun, accompanied by an interrogative adverb.

Ex. *Combien de livres lui avez-vous donnés ?* How many books have you given him ?

Quelle dame a-t-il saluée en passant ? Which lady did he speak to in passing ?

A relative pronoun, relating to its antecedent.

Ex. *Les livres que vous m'avez vendus sont venus,* the books you sold me have come.

Voici l'étoffe que j'ai achetée pour vous, this is the material I have bought for you.

A personal pronoun, preceding the auxiliary verb.

Ex. *Où sont ces dames et qui les a accompagnées ?* Where are those ladies, and who accompanied them ?

J'ai vu cette tragédie et je l'ai admirée, I have seen that tragedy and I have admired it.

Vous avez bien fait, Messieurs, et on vous a loués, you have done well, Gentlemen, and you have been praised.

The participle past of *être* remains always unchanged.

Ex. *Les hommes qui ont été ici, n'y sont plus,* the men who were here, are no longer here.

EXERCISE.

The United States are the greatest republic in the world, and Russia is the largest empire. He cherishes ill-founded prejudices, and hence his life is a continuous series of disappointments and offended feelings. Considering his youth and his inexperience, he has overcome the difficulties of this unexpected adventure with great tact. I send you these lines to inform you of her arrival, and enclosed you will find the money required to come here. The best speeches have ever been those which the heart has dictated. My friends were very happy to hear the news which the messenger brought; they had believed their brother dead, and now they heard that the wounds which he had received were not fatal. How many young men have lost the best years of their life, because they had no friends who could have given them good advice! We have seen you often, when you did not think that we were near; and we have heard you, when you

imagined you were quite alone. These young ladies ventured too far, and they have been severely punished for their temerity, for the men in the house which they had passed rushed out and ran after them, until their friends, who had seen them at a distance, came to their rescue. It was said of this remarkable man, that he had created the language, which he alone had spoken. She has saved herself from this danger, but she has injured herself in the estimation of many people.

The participle past, with a direct object before it, is sometimes followed by an infinitive, and then the question may arise, whether the object is that of the first verb or of the infinitive? In this case the nature of the first verb must be ascertained: if it is an active verb, the object will be its own, and then the participle past will, according to rule, agree with it in number and gender; if it is a neuter verb, then the direct object must necessarily belong to the following infinitive, and therefore the participle past will remain unchanged.

Ex. *La dame que j'ai entendue chanter*, the lady I have heard sing.

Voilà les livres que vous avez paru désirer, these are the books which you seemed to wish for.

It may, however, happen that both verbs, that in the participle past and the following infinitive, are active verbs. In that case, we must carefully inquire to which of the two the direct object properly belongs, and accordingly modify or not modify the participle past.

Ex. *La dame que j'ai entendue chanter*, the lady I have heard sing (I heard the lady singing).

Les airs que j'ai entendu chanter, the melodies I heard sing (I heard sung).

Je les ai fait venir, I made them come.

The same sentence, therefore, may be used in two ways, simply determined by the agreement or non-agreement of the participle past.

Ex. *Je les ai vu peindre*, I have seen them paint (being painted).

Je les ai vus peindre, I have seen them paint (painting).

On les a laissés piller, they have let them rob.

On les a laissé piller, they have let them be robbed.

The verb *faire* is the only one which forms an apparent exception to this rule, as it never varies ; but this arises not from any anomaly, but from the fact that it is considered as part of the following infinitive, with which it forms but one word.

Ex. *On les a tous fait venir ici*, they have made them all come here.

Les tables que j'avais fait faire dans cette ville, the tables I had ordered in that city.

A participle past which has two or more direct objects preceding it, will agree with both, in the plural, if its meaning applies clearly to both, or it will remain unchanged if it refers but to one.

Ex. *C'est votre intérêt plutôt que votre ambition qu'il a consulté*, it is your interest rather than your ambition which he has consulted.

C'était sa femme et sa sœur qu'il a accompagnées, it was his wife and his sister whom he accompanied.

The same distinction must be made, whenever the direct object preceding a participle past is an adverb or other expression of quantity followed by *de* with a plural noun.

Ex. *Que de maux ce pauvre homme a soufferts !* How many ills this poor man has endured !

Ce fut le plus grand nombre des révoltés qu'on a fusilé, it was the greater number of the rebels they have shot.

The conjunction *que* is not unfrequently used instead of a relative pronoun preceded by a preposition : in such cases it is not a genuine direct object, however much it may have the appearance, and hence the participle past will remain unchanged.

Ex. *Les jours qu'il a vécu*, the days (during) which he has lived.

EXERCISE.

These books, which I have often seen you read with such interest, are the same which I heard read aloud last winter in my brother's family. I saw her paint that portrait myself, and now she denies that it is her work. These melodies were those which the Swiss soldiers had heard sung in their mountains: they made them so homesick, that an order was given prohibiting their being played by the band. What civil war has this great man kindled, and when was it terminated by his death? That is a part of ancient history which I have not read for a long time, and I have forgotten the events which you have mentioned. We travelled very far that day, but towards noon the horses refused to work well, and I did not know to what cause I could ascribe this until I found out that the driver had not let them eat enough in the morning. The services which he had rendered the minister were so great, that the latter did not know how to reward them: thus the poor man has received neither money nor office. How many duties have you neglected, and how many times have I told you so, but you would never listen to the warnings which you have received from so many friends!

 ENGLISH AUXILIARIES OF MOOD IN FRENCH.

There is a class of English verbs which are frequently called auxiliaries of mood, because, unlike the two auxiliary verbs, To have and To be, they do not help to form tenses, but to express the various moods in which the action of the verb may be represented. Such are the verbs, I may, I will, I shall, I must, I let, etc. These verbs are sometimes rendered in French by a mood, and at other times they are translated literally, as has already been explained in the case of the imperative mood, which is formed, in French, from the verb directly, while in English it requires the auxiliary To let. We propose to state here the principal rules which determine the use of these verbs.

Pouvoir.

The verb *pouvoir*, as an independent verb, corresponds to the English verb, To be able, but refers only to physical ability,

while *savoir* has to be employed whenever moral or mental ability is to be expressed.

Ex. *L'homme le plus fort ne peut lever ce fardeau*, the strongest man cannot take up this load.

L'homme le plus savant ne sait déchiffrer ces signes, the most learned man cannot decipher these signs.

Pourez-vous marcher ? Can you (are you strong enough to) walk.

Savez-vous danser ? Can you (do you know how to) dance ?

As an auxiliary verb, *pouvoir* corresponds to the English verbs I can and I may, and their past tenses, could and might.

Ex. *Je veux et je peux faire tout autant*, I will and I can do quite as much.

Puis-je aller le voir demain soir ? May I go and see him to-morrow night?

When used negatively, *pouvoir* means only I can; if it is to mean I may, the negation must be added to the following infinitive.

Ex. *Je ne peux pas marcher si vite*, I cannot walk so fast.

Je peux ne pas le faire, si je le préfère, I may not do it, if I prefer.

I could, is in English used for two purposes: it is either the past tense of I can, and then must be translated by the corresponding tense of *pouvoir*; or it is the conditional, and then it will be translated by the French conditional.

Ex. I could do it formerly, but I am too weak now, *je pouvais le faire autrefois, mais je suis trop faible maintenant*.

I never could tell him the whole truth, *je n'ai jamais pu lui dire toute la vérité*.

I could do it if I chose, *je pourrais le faire si je le préférais*.

I might, is never a past tense in English, but only used as the

conditional form, and hence it is always translated by the conditional of *pouvoir*.

Ex. I might go to-morrow if you were ready, *je pourrais partir demain, si vous étiez prêt.*

I can have been, is translated simply by the preterit indefinite of *pouvoir* ; and I could, and I might have been, by the conditional of the past.

Ex. How can you have been so careless ! *Comment avez-vous pu être si négligent !*

I could have been here before you, if I had made haste, *j'aurais pu être ici avant vous, si je m'étais dépêché.*

They might have been kinder to us, *ils auraient pu être plus affables envers nous.*

French authors say indifferently *je peux* or *je puis*, but in interrogative sentences *puis-je* alone is used.

Ex. *Puis-je ne pas lire ?* May I not read (be excused from reading) ?

EXERCISE.

They may say what they choose, I cannot believe it, for they have told me an untruth once, and after that I can give them credit no longer. May we put on our shawls and hats, and take a walk in the garden ? You can do it, if you do not think it is too damp, and that you might take a cold by exposing yourself. May you know one day what tender love she bore you ; the knowledge of it will be a great consolation to you, if ever trouble should come to sadden you. I could have embraced him, so great was my joy when I saw him again. Can you tell me who the twelve Cæsars were ? I used to be able to recite them all, but it is so long since I have read their history that I cannot now promise you to tell them in order. I believe he could have done that and more also, if the time had been given to him ; but it may be asked, if anybody could have succeeded in so little time. They could easily tell you all about this man, and his interests, if they were disposed to do so ; but they are very discreet persons, and they may think that they have no right to betray his secrets.

Vouloir.

The verb *vouloir*, as an independent verb, corresponds to the English verb To be willing.

Ex. *Elle n'a pas voulu même m'écouter*, she was not even willing to listen to me.

In its imperative form, second person plural, it has the meaning of the English word Please, or similar expressions.

Ex. *Veuillez me passer le sel*, please pass the salt.

Veuillez bien me dire où demeure le curé, be so kind as to tell me where the priest lives.

It has occasionally the same meaning when used interrogatively and accompanied by *bien*.

Ex. *Voulez-vous bien lui prêter vos secours?* Please lend him your assistance.

It must not be forgotten that *vouloir* is, as has already been stated, an active verb in French, and consequently does not require the additional verb To have, as in English, where it is intransitive.

Ex. Will you have some coffee or some tea? *Voulez-vous du café ou du thé?*

As an auxiliary verb, the English I will is used to form the future; hence attention must be had to distinguish between I will, as an independent verb expressing volition or readiness, and I will, as an auxiliary verb forming the future.

Ex. He will meddle with things which do not concern him, *il veut se mêler à des choses qui ne le regardent pas*.

He will give you all you ask of him, *il vous donnera tout ce que vous lui demanderez*.

The past tense, I would, is used in the same manner both as the past of I will, and as the conditional mood, and must be translated accordingly.

Ex. I would come and see you, but I could not, *je voulais aller vous voir, mais je ne le pouvais pas*.

I would go and see you, if I could, *j'irais vous voir, si je le pouvais.*

She never would speak to me about her lovers, *elle n'a jamais voulu me parler de ses amants.*

I wish, is frequently substituted for I would, in English, and is in such cases translated by the past conditional of *vouloir*.

Ex. I wish he had never come to this place, *j'aurais voulu qu'il ne fût jamais venu en ces lieux.*

I will have and I would have, followed by personal pronouns in English, are translated by *vouloir* simply.

Ex. I will have you know, Sir, that I am master here, *je veux que vous sachiez, Monsieur, que moi je suis maître ici.*

I would not have you do that for all the world, *je ne voudrais pas que vous fissiez cela pour tout au monde.*

Vouloir, in the conditional mood and after *si*, if, has often the meaning of the English verb *Like*.

Ex. *Je voudrais vous voir quand vous dansez*, I should like to see you, when you dance.

Nous irons ensemble, si vous voulez, we will go together, if you like.

Vouloir in the conditional represents, finally, the English I wish, followed by *would* or *could*.

Ex. I wish you would not speak so loud, *je voudrais que vous ne parlassiez pas si haut.*

He wishes he were at home, *il voudrait être chez lui.*

EXERCISE.

Will you go with us, or do you prefer going there alone? we will wait for you until one o'clock, and if you do not come then, we will conclude that you would rather not have our company. They would do it with pleasure, I am sure of it, if you were to tell them that it was for a sick lady. Make haste and bring the carriage up

for I should like to reach there before it is quite dark, and the days are short at this season of the year. He said, with an air of injured innocence: I would have you know, Gentlemen, that I am an honest man, and that I will not do a thing which such a man is ashamed of doing. He wishes me to accompany him to Europe next year, and I am willing to go, but I fear I shall not have money enough to pay the expenses. What will she have for her supper to-day? Let us know soon; and tell us also, how many dishes you will have for dinner to-morrow. I should like very much to buy this picture, but it is very costly and it will require an expensive frame.

Devoir.

Devoir represents a number of English expressions conveying the idea of duty or obligation; but it is limited to moral obligations, physical necessity, and such duty as admits of no choice being expressed by *falloir*. It answers, therefore, for the English.

To be, followed by To and a verb.

Ex. He was to be here, but he has not come, *il devait être ici, mais il n'est pas venu.*

She is to sing to-night her favorite song, *elle doit chanter ce soir sa chanson favorite.*

Ought to, followed by a verb, when it is commonly employed in the conditional mood.

Ex. You ought to see him when he is a little excited, *vous devriez le voir quand il est un peu excité.*

They ought to have been here long before us, *ils auraient dû être ici beaucoup avant nous.*

Should, followed by a verb, when it expresses a duty; in this case, also, it is used in the conditional mood.

Ex. These men should be made to do their duty, *on devrait forcer ces gens à faire leur devoir.*

He should not have been allowed to leave so soon, *on n'aurait pas dû lui permettre de partir sitôt.*

I shall, etc., is never expressed by *devoir* except in interrogative sentences; otherwise the future alone is used.

Ex. I shall have lost half my fortune before this is over,
*j'aurai perdu la moitié de ma fortune, avant que cela
 sera fini.*

Shall I tell you what I think of it? *Dois-je vous dire ce
 que j'en pense?*

What shall I do, if that should happen? *Que dois-je
 faire si cela arrivait?*

The past tenses of the verb *devoir* have a double meaning. They represent either simply the verb, I was to, etc., or they express the conviction that the action of the verb following has really taken place.

Ex. *Elle devait le lui dire, mais elle l'a oublié,* she was to tell him so, but she has forgotten it.

Elle devait être à demi endormi quand je le lui dis, she must have been half asleep, when I told her so.

Devoir, like *pouvoir*, may, in the third person singular, be preceded by the demonstrative pronoun *ce*.

Ex. *Ce doit avoir eu lieu hier ou avant hier,* that must have happened yesterday or the day before.

Devoir, as has been stated already, in the subjunctive of the past tense, is elegantly used interrogatively to mark a conditional sentence.

Ex. *Dût-il en être offensé, je le lui dirai,* even if he should be hurt by it, I will tell him so.

Dussiez-vous tout perdre, il faut le faire, you must do it, should you lose every thing.

EXERCISE.

You ought to have been ashamed of your violence, for a man of your age ought to have more control over his passions. She should be more careful of her health, for it is already delicate, and if she neglects ordinary precautions, she will have to suffer much for her

carelessness. They must be men of note, for everybody salutes them and the greatest honors are shown them wherever they appear. I ought to know them, for I am sure I have seen their faces, but I cannot recollect who they may be. Even if they were to be our masters, we could never be made to love them, although we might learn to obey them. These books must have suffered very much on their voyage across the ocean, for they are all more or less mouldy, and some are entirely spoiled; they ought to have been cleaned and dried as soon as the vessel came into port. Shall I tell him to bring you the wine, or will you tell him yourself?

Laisser.

The verb *laisser* answers the purpose of translating the English verb To let, when it has the meaning of, To give permission, to allow.

Ex. Will you let us go out this evening? *Nous laisserez-vous sortir ce soir?*

Let me out, or I shall be stifled in this room, *laissez-moi sortir, ou j'étouffe dans cette salle.*

But it must be remembered that the English verb To let, is made use of, also, to form the imperative mood. In that case it is not translated at all into French, the imperative itself answering the purpose there.

Ex. Let us go at once, or we shall be too late, *allons de suite, ou nous serons en retard.*

Let him do it if he chooses; I do not care, *qu'il le fasse s'il le veut; moi, je ne m'en soucie pas.*

Let them go (wish), *qu'il s'en aillent*; let them go (leave), *laissez-les partir*. *Laisser*, being an active verb in French, does not require the addition of the auxiliary verb To have, which is necessary in English, where To let is intransitive.

Ex. I will let you have what you want for the same price, *je vous laisserai ce qu'il vous faut, pour le même prix.*

Laisser is not the proper verb to translate To let, when it is

followed by a double object, a verb and a pronoun. In such cases it is better to change the construction.

Ex. I cannot let him ill-treat you so, *je ne peux lui permettre de vous maltraiter ainsi.*

Do not let him read so much at night, *ne lui permettez pas de lire tant le soir.*

EXERCISE.

Let me tell you what I have seen first, and then you can tell me your adventures, if you have anything to tell. Let us go now, before the moon is too low; the night is calm and cool, and a walk around the lake will be delightful. Let her go out, if she cannot stay in any longer; I do not like to force her to do what is so unpleasant to her, but she ought to let me tell her, that her conduct is not that of a nice girl, and that I am much distressed on that account. Leave me, and do not say any thing more about this sad affair; it has given me pain enough, and has not let me sleep for several nights. Let him come out, if he dares, and say all; I can only gain by the truth being made known. Friends, let us honor his memory, and let us never forget what we owe to his honest and strenuous efforts to advance the good cause and to overcome all the difficulties which were in our way.

Falloir.

The verb *falloir* expresses, in French, all the English words which convey the idea of absolute necessity, physical force, and unavoidable obligation, as far as these expressions are not translated by *devoir*. In this signification it has a double construction: it may either be followed by *que* with the subjunctive mood—

Ex. *Il faut que vous lisiez plus haut*, you must read louder,
Il fallait que vous vinssiez ce matin, you ought to have come this morning,

Il faudra qu'il s'en aille avec elle, he will have to go away with her,

Il faudrait que cette mesure fût prise de suite, it would be proper to take that measure at once—

or it may be used with a personal pronoun as its indirect object, and be followed by the infinitive of the verb.

Ex. *Il nous faut travailler jour et nuit*, we have to work day and night.

Il lui faudra s'en passer pour quelque temps, he will have to do without it for some time.

Il leur faudrait en être bien contents, they ought to be well pleased with it.

Falloir has also the meaning of the English verb *To want*, when it is thus used with the personal pronoun ; and in that case, the object of the want, a noun, may be used after it instead of a verb.

Ex. I want a new hat and a pair of gloves, *il me faut un chapeau neuf et une paire de gants*.

He wanted more money than he had, to succeed, *il lui fallut plus d'argent qu'il n'avait pour réussir*.

Falloir may be used with the infinitive after it and no pronoun, if the necessity applies to the person spoken to or is general.

Ex. *Il faut mourir tôt ou tard*, we must all die sooner or later.

Mon ami, il faut le faire, coûte que coûte, my friend, you must do it, cost what it may.

Falloir is, finally, used quite alone ; but then, being an active verb, it requires the addition of *le*, as every active verb in French must have its object expressed.

Ex. *J'en suis bien fâché, mais il le faut*, I am sorry for it, but it must be.

Est-ce qu'il le faut absolument ? Is it absolutely necessary ?

EXERCISE.

We must learn to obey others before we can hope to be able to command. You ought not to have done that, for you knew that it must distress your parents; and the commandment tells us that we must honor father and mother. Caesar had to conquer a number of powerful tribes before he could reach the Rhine, and then he had to encounter even larger armies than those of the Swiss. What must they do if they should find that they have not money enough to make all the purchases which you have ordered? They will have to come back and postpone their plans until some future day, when money is more abundant. The poor child wants a thick warm cloak for these wintry days; she also wants a pair of thick shoes. We must work, if we want to eat, and he who does not sow must not expect to reap. Let us do it, since it is necessary, and let us do it cheerfully. You must have been very careless in walking through the streets, or you would not have soiled your dresses so much; you must learn to be more careful hereafter.

IDIOMATIC USE OF VERBS.

Every nation has its own peculiar expressions, as every individual is well known to have certain turns of phrases and certain expressions, which he uses by preference, and which distinguish his conversation from that of others. Such expressions, which are peculiar to one language, and therefore cannot be translated literally into another language, are called Idioms. Thus, when an Englishman is *at home*, the Frenchman is *chez lui*, and the German *zu Hause* (in the house). Such idiomatic phrases occur, of course, with all parts of speech, but principally with verbs, and hence the expediency of here giving the most important idioms connected with this class of words.

Avoir.

The verb *avoir*, to have, is in French used with a large number of nouns, so as to form a compound verb, expressing but

one idea. The majority of these expressions are in English expressed by the verb To be, with an adjective—*e. g.* :

<i>Avoir appétit,</i>	}	To be hungry.
“ <i>faim,</i>		
“ <i>des affaires,</i>		“ busy.
“ <i>chaud,</i>		“ warm.
“ <i>froid,</i>		“ cold.
“ <i>honte,</i>		“ ashamed.
“ <i>peur,</i>		“ afraid.
“ <i>raison,</i>		“ right.
“ <i>tort,</i>		“ wrong.
“ <i>soif,</i>		“ thirsty.
“ <i>sommeil,</i>		“ sleepy.

But with this additional peculiarity, that these verbs can be used only with reference to living beings, while *être* is used, in French as in English, when they are applied to inanimate objects.

Ex. *Il a toujours trop chaud ou trop froid,* he is always either too warm or too cold.

Cette cave est toujours froide, même en été, this cave is always cold, even in summer.

If the place where heat or cold are felt is mentioned, the noun is preceded by the preposition *à*.

Ex. *J'ai froid aux pieds et je ne puis pas les rechauffer,* my feet are cold, and I cannot get them warm again.

When the English adjective is qualified by the adverb Very, its place is supplied in French by *bien* or by *grand*.

Ex. *Il avait bien faim quand il arriva ici,* he was very hungry when he reached here.

Elle avait grand'peur que j'é ne l'oubliaiisse, she was very much afraid I would forget her.

Avoir is also used with nouns to express Age and Measure, where in English the verb To be, with an adjective, is employed.

Ex. *Quand est-ce qu'elle aura dix ans?* When will she be ten years old?

Cet homme a au moins six pieds de hauteur, that man is at least six feet high.

Avoir mal, followed by the preposition *à* before its noun, expresses all the English words for Pain, ache, sore, etc.

Ex. *J'ai eu mal à la tête depuis le matin,* my head has ached since this morning.

Je ne peux pas marcher, j'ai mal au pied, I cannot walk, my foot is sore.

Avoir mal au cœur has the peculiar signification of being sick at the stomach. To suffer pain in the heart is *avoir des douleurs au cœur*.

English compound nouns, containing the word ache, are in French made with the same word *mal*, followed by the preposition *de*.

Ex. *Mon mal de dent est aussi fort que jamais,* my toothache is as bad as ever.

When this word *mal* is qualified by an adjective, it requires the indefinite article before it.

Ex. *Ce vin m'a donné un mal de tête atroce,* this wine has given me a severe headache.

Avoir l'air has the various meanings of—To look, when it is followed by an adjective or adverb, and To look like, or Look as if, when followed by the preposition *de*. In the first case, the adjective remains masculine, when it refers to moral qualities, but agrees with the person it refers to, when it expresses physical qualities.

Ex. *Cet homme a l'air benin,* this man looks benign.

Cette femme a l'air petite quand elle est assise, this woman looks small when she is seated.

Cette maison a plutôt l'air d'un palais, this house looks rather like a palace.

Le temps a l'air de vouloir s'éclaircir, the weather looks as if it would clear up.

Avoir without any object but parts of dress, means To have on.

Ex. *Est-ce qu'elle avait sa robe neuve quand vous la vîtes?*

Did she have her new dress on when you saw her?

Avoir, followed by parts of the body which are qualified by an adjective, requires the definite article before them instead of the possessive pronoun, which is used in English.

Ex. *Elle a toujours les mains froides*, her hands are always cold.

Il se trouva qu'il n'eut que les doigts brûlés, it turned out that only his fingers were burnt.

When the adjective, by special rule, precedes the noun, the indefinite article is used in French as in English.

Ex. *Elle avait une fort petite main et de belles dents*, she had a very small hand and fine teeth.

Avoir beau, followed by an infinitive, expresses the English phrase, To do a thing in vain. It can, however, never be used negatively.

Ex. *Il eut beau me prier, je n'ai pas cédé*, he tried in vain to beg, I did not yield.

Vous avez beau crier, il n'y a personne qui vous entende, you cry in vain, there is nobody here who can hear you.

Avoir, preceded by the pronoun *y*, is used for a great variety of expressions, which are translated in the most varied way in English. The most ordinary use made of *il y a*, etc., is to translate the English There is and There are, as has already been explained.

Il y a is sometimes, though rarely, followed by a noun without an article, with which it forms a compound verb.

Ex. *Il y eut apparence comme s'il allait neiger*, it looked as if it were going to snow.

Est-ce qu'il n'y a pas moyen de le sauver? Is there no way of saving him?

The two principal purposes, however, for which *il y a*, etc., are used is to express Time and Distance.

When applied to expressions of time, *il y a* answers for all the various English phrases used for the purpose; as, It is, since, ago, etc.

Ex. It is now five years that I have not seen him, *il y a maintenant cinq ans que je ne l'ai pas vu.*

I heard this news two days ago, *j'ai appris cette nouvelle il y a deux jours.*

That must have happened six weeks since, *cela doit être arrivé il y a six semaines.*

The proper tense to be used after *il y a* depends entirely upon the general rules which determine the choice between tenses. It will be the present, when the action still continues; the imperfect, when the action is represented as going on, continuing at the past time; the preterit definite, when it took place but once; and the preterit indefinite, when the action or its effects extend to the present time.

Ex. *Combien y a-t-il que vous demeurez ici ?* How long have you been living here ?

Il y a deux ans que j'étais votre élève, it is two years ago I was your pupil.

Il n'y a que six mois que j'arrivai ici, it is only six months since I came here.

Il y a un an que j'ai quitté ma patrie, it is a year since I left my country.

Il y a requires the negative *ne* before the following verb, whenever the action of that verb has ceased to take place, after habitual occurrence.

Ex. *Il y aura quinze jours demain que je ne l'ai vu,* it will be a fortnight to-morrow since I saw him.

Since, after *il y a*, is not translated otherwise than by the conjunction *que*.

Ex. *Il y aura huit jours que vous n'avez été ici*, it will be a week since you were here.

When applied to the measurement of distances, *il y a* is followed simply by the measure itself.

Ex. *Il y a cent lieues d'ici à la capitale*, it is a hundred miles from here to the capital.

Combien y a-t-il du village à l'église ? How far is it from the village to the church ?

EXERCISE.

It was, I believe, two years ago when I first had the pleasure of meeting with you at the Springs. How old are you now ? I am only sixteen, but I look older than I am, because I have been very sick several weeks ago, and I have not quite recovered my strength. How long is it since you spoke for the first time in public ? It must have been thirty years ago, for it was then I commenced my public career, and I remember well, I was very much afraid I would not succeed. It is the lot of the poor to be always hungry and thirsty ; but they have no cause to be ashamed of it, if their poverty is not the effect of their vices. I had a new coat on, and therefore I did not wish to expose myself to the rain, and I told you before we started that it looked as if it were going to rain. He was only four feet high, when he was twelve years old, but he has grown very rapidly since he was placed under your care six years ago. There is no reason why he should always be right and you always wrong, but there are many people in the world who imagine that they cannot be wrong. She has a high forehead and a prominent nose, but her eyes are not handsome, and her mouth is too large. Can you tell me, my friend, how far it is from here to the next inn ? I can tell you the exact distance ; it is six miles and a half.

Être.

The verb *être* also, like *avoir*, is used with a large number of nouns in such intimate connection as to form with them compound verbs, which express but one idea.

Ex. *Je suis en peine de vous voir souffrir*, I am distressed to see you suffer.

Est-ce que vous serez à même de faire cela tout seul? Will you be able to do that quite alone?

Elle était debout quand je lui parlai, she was standing when I spoke to her.

Y être has the idiomatic meaning of *being there*, in a figurative sense—viz., to understand a matter of which we speak; though *y être* may also literally mean to be there—viz., at home.

Ex. *Maintenant que vous parlez net, j'y suis*, now that you speak clearly, I understand it.

Madame votre mère y est-elle? *Non, Monsieur, elle n'y est pas*, is your mother at home? No, Sir, she is not.

En être means to be of the company, to be one of a set; and in a narrative, to have left off.

Ex. *Nous allons à la chasse, en êtes-vous?* We are going to hunt, will you go with us?

Ces livres ont la même reliure, mais ils n'en sont pas, these books have the same binding, but they do not belong to the set.

Eh bien, mes enfants; où en étions-nous hier soir? Well, children, where did we break off last night?

It will be remembered that *être à* means to belong to, and stands instead of *To be*, with the possessive pronoun in English.

Ex. This is my book, and that is my brother's, *c'est mon livre, et celui-là est à mon frère*.

The preterit indefinite of *être* is frequently used instead of the same tense of the verb *aller*, whenever it means to have gone and to have returned again.

Ex. He has gone to church and will not be back till dinner, *il est allé à l'église et il ne sera de retour que pour le dîner*.

He has gone to church and returned an hour ago, *il a été à l'église et il est rentré il y a une heure.*

The English auxiliary verbs To have and To be, as well as the so-called auxiliaries of mood, I will, I can, I may, etc., all of which are active verbs in French and there require the addition of a direct object, are very frequently used alone, to express assent, dissent, surprise or mere emphasis, in order to keep up the conversation. Thus in English it is said: You are a little afraid, are you not? Give me that book, will you?

These expressions are inadmissible in French, and some other means must be sought for to produce the same effect. The following are the most frequently employed:

When the auxiliaries are used merely to express assent or dissent, the adverbs *oui* and *non*, *certainement* or *point du tout* supply their place.

Ex. Are you the man I sent for? I am. *Est-ce que vous êtes l'homme que j'ai envoyé chercher? Oui, Monsieur*

Will you do it? No, I will not, *voulez-vous le faire? Non, Monsieur.*

When the auxiliaries are used interrogatively, merely to repeat the question, as it were, *n'est-ce pas?* is used in French.

Ex. *Vous êtes le maître d'hôtel, n'est-ce pas?* You are the head steward, are you not?

Ils sont tous partis ce matin, n'est-ce pas? They all left this morning, did they not?

When the auxiliaries are thus used after another verb to ascertain the action of other persons, the simple personal pronoun, with *et* before it, is used in French.

Ex. *Nous avons dîné, et vous?* We have dined, have you?

Elle a promis de venir, et lui? She has promised to come, will he?

When the auxiliary verb To do is employed in repetition of other verbs, the latter must in French be repeated themselves.

Ex. I see it pretty clearly, do you? *Moi, je le vois assez clairement, le voyez-vous?*

I believe it, do not you? *Moi je le crois, ne le croyez-vous pas?*

Does she go to church now? I believe she does, *est-ce qu'elle va à l'église maintenant? Je crois qu'elle y va.*

When the auxiliary verb To be is used elliptically, without the adverb which ought to be used with it, the latter must be supplied in French.

Ex. Is your sister here? Yes she is, *est-ce que votre sœur est ici? Oui, elle est ici.*

Have you been there recently? No, I have not, *est-ce que vous y avez été récemment? Non, je n'y ai pas été.*

Faire.

The verb *faire*, To do or To make, also forms a very large number of compound verbs, by being joined immediately to a noun, most of which are represented in English by simple verbs. Such are, for instance,

<i>Faire mal à,</i>	To hurt.
“ <i>grâce,</i>	“ pardon.
“ <i>part,</i>	“ inform.
“ <i>la barbe,</i>	“ shave.
“ <i>la cour,</i>	“ court.
“ <i>honneur,</i>	“ be creditable.
“ <i>deshonneur,</i>	“ disgrace.
“ <i>tort,</i>	“ wrong.
“ <i>face,</i>	“ face.
“ <i>voir,</i>	“ show.
“ <i>tenir,</i>	“ hand.
“ <i>cas (de),</i>	“ esteem.

Ex. *Il s'est fait mal à la poitrine par sa chute,* he has hurt his chest by his fall.

Prenez-donc garde, vous me faites mal au bras, but take care, you hurt my arm.

Est-ce qu'on ne va pas lui faire grâce? Is he not to be pardoned?

Je vous ferai voir ce que peut faire un honnête homme, I will show you what an honest man can do.

Faire may also be followed by another verb in the infinitive and form with it a compound verb; in which case it is likewise generally represented by a simple verb in English. Such are, for instance,

<i>Faire faire,</i>	To order (to be made).
“ <i>sortir,</i>	“ turn out.
“ <i>venir,</i>	“ send for.
“ <i>payer,</i>	“ charge.
“ <i>entrer,</i>	“ admit.
“ <i>bouillir,</i>	“ boil.
“ <i>frire,</i>	“ fry.
“ <i>périr,</i>	“ kill.

Ex. *Où avez-vous fait faire cette belle robe?* Where did you have that beautiful dress made?

Il aurait fallu faire venir le médecin à l'instant même, the doctor ought to have been sent for at once.

Aussitôt que le courrier arrive, faites entrer, as soon as the courier comes, send him in.

Ne faire que—literally, to do nothing but—serves in French to translate the English adverb Only, when it qualifies a verb.

Ex. *Je n'ai fait que l'entrevoir dans la rue,* I only caught a glimpse of her in the street.

Il ne fit qu'y toucher et l'obus éclata, he only touched it and the shell exploded.

Faire, placed before an infinitive, which does not serve to form a compound verb gives to the second verb a passive signification.

Ex. *Il a fait copier ce beau tableau*, he has had this beautiful picture copied.

On fera blanchir les murailles et peindre les boiseries, they will have the walls whitewashed and the wood-work painted.

Faire, followed by an adjective, expresses an effort to represent the quality conveyed by the latter.

Ex. *Faites donc l'avare, on n'y croit pas*, don't pretend to be miserly, we don't believe it.

Il fait le savant, mais il est on ne peut plus ignorant, he pretends to be learned, but he is ever so ignorant.

Faire, used impersonally, is the universal verb for all expressions referring to the state of the weather and its effects.

Ex. *A midi il fit chaud, maintenant il fait froid*, at noon it was warm, now it is cold.

Vous ne pourrez pas sortir, il fait trop crotté, you will not be able to go out, it is too muddy.

Il fait beau temps, clair et sec, it is fine weather, clear and dry.

EXERCISE.

Do you pretend to be offended or are you really so? I should be sorry to have hurt your feelings when I was only jesting. You will order a round table to be made, around which twelve persons can be seated; you will have it polished and sent home before I return. It was bad walking this morning, but it has been cold and windy since, so that I think the roads must be dry now. He courted several ladies at the same time, and the consequence was that he did not win the good-will of any one: as soon as they discovered his faithlessness they would not pardon him any more; they felt too deeply how much he had wronged them. It is the custom in France, when an important event occurs in a family, to inform all the friends of it by notes or by an advertisement in the newspapers. Send for the carpenter, and show him what you want to be done; if he is an intelligent man he will be able to tell you how much it will cost you, and if he is an

honest man, he will not charge you more than a fair price. I have only met him, I cannot say, therefore, that I am acquainted with him, but I should like very much to be presented to him. The cook asked me if she should boil or fry the meat for dinner, and I could not tell her what she ought to do.

Aller and Venir.

The French use the two verbs *aller*, to go, and *venir*, to come, to express an immediate future and an immediate past, the former corresponding in a general way to the English phrase, I am going to; the latter to the English phrase, I had just. Thus, the future itself becomes limited to any indefinite, future time; whilst the use of *aller* implies that the future action is to take place immediately. In like manner, the past tense represents the past but vaguely, but the use of *venir* implies that it has elapsed but this very moment.

Ex. *Je vais lui écrire un petit mot tout à l'heure*, I shall write him a few words instantly.

Il nous a dit qu'il va sortir, he has told us that he is going out.

Nous venons de rentrer et nous y serons de suite, we have but just come in, and we shall be there directly.

Ils venaient de s'endormir quand on les appela, they had just fallen asleep, when they were called.

Aller is also used in French to express the English To be, in reference to health or to business. Hence the familiar phrases:

Comment ça va-t-il? Merci, ça va bien. How are you?
Thank you, I am pretty well.

Et comment vont les affaires? Comme ci, comme ça.
And how is business? So, so.

Il va mieux ce matin depuis qu'on l'a saigné, he is better this morning since he has been bled.

Aller, when used in connection with parts of dress, means To become.

Ex. *Trouvez-vous que cette robe me va bien?* Do you think this dress is becoming to me?

EXERCISE.

We had just dined when the ladies arrived, and fortunately there was enough left to provide for them: but we sent at once for the cook, and told him he must fry some chicken and boil some potatoes, because all the ladies liked that dish. When will you let me see that note? I will show it to you this instant, if you will promise me, solemnly, never to tell anybody that you have read it. Are you going to write to your sister to-day, or must I do it for you? I shall do it directly, in order not to give you so much trouble, for you have already been very kind in rendering me many services, and you have but just now placed me under new obligations by lending me so large a sum of money. Does her new hat become her as well as the one I liked so much, when I saw her for the first time? I cannot tell, for I think that no hat is really becoming to her; she is by far handsomest when she has nothing on her head. What dress had she on when you saw her first? I do not remember that, but it must have been a very simple one, for she had been very sick, and she was not very well then. How is your patient this morning? I am sorry to say he is not quite as well as he was yesterday: still, I hope very certainly that he will escape with his life.

CHAPTER VI.

ADVERBS.

Adverbs, which originally had their names from the fact that they principally served to qualify verbs, as adjectives qualify nouns, may nevertheless qualify adjectives or another adverb as well. They express a manner or a circumstance, and vary, therefore, in kind as much as the latter vary.

Ex. *Ce roi était vraiment digne d'être assis sur un trône*, this king was truly worthy of being seated on a throne.

Il était continuellement occupé des soins du gouvernement, he was unceasingly engaged in the cares of government.

Son nom vivra éternellement, his name will live forever.

This power to qualify various words is, however, not the same with all adverbs. Thus, *très*, *si*, *aussi*, and *tout* can modify only adjectives, participles and adverbs, and not verbs, while *du moins*, *au moins*, *au plus*, and *davantage* modify only verbs, and *tout à fait* only participles.

Ex. *Je l'ai connu plus longtemps que vous*, I have known him longer than you.

Il n'aurait pu désirer davantage, he could not have wished for more.

Est-ce que vraiment il est tout à fait gâté? Is it really altogether spoiled?

Adverbs have generally a meaning complete in themselves; still, there are a few which, to complete their signification, require the addition of a regimen preceded by a preposition.

Ex. *Il sait toujours parler convenablement au sujet*, he knows always how to speak appropriately.

Il faut aimer Dieu préféablement à tout, we ought to love God before all things.

Il ne peut pas vivre conformément à son état, he cannot live in accordance with his rank.

Adverbs of quantity, being considered like nouns, require the preposition *de*; except *bien*, which is followed by the partitive article.

Ex. *Elle avait infiniment d'esprit*, she was extremely witty.

Est-ce qu'il y aura bien du monde à cette fête? Will there be a great many people at that party?

Adverbs ending in *ment* — the rules on their formation have

been given in the First Part of this Grammar—have this peculiarity: that they always express the mood or manner, and consequently may form comparatives and superlatives, precisely as the adjectives from which they are derived.

Ex. *Il a parlé plus vivement que jamais auparavant*, he spoke in a more lively manner than ever before.

La robe fut faite le plus élégamment du monde, the dress was made in the most elegant manner.

Bien, well, *mal*, badly, and *peu*, little, are the only adverbs which form the comparative degrees anomalously, making

mieux, better, and *le mieux*, best.

pis, worse, and *le pis*, worst.

moins, less, and *le moins*, least.

Ex. *Elle est le mieux mise quand elle est le moins parée*, she is best dressed when she is least adorned.

Ce qui me plaît le mieux en eux, c'est leur modestie, what I like best in them is their modesty.

Tôt makes a double comparative, *plus tôt* for sooner, and *plutôt* for rather.

Ex. *Vous auriez dû venir plus tôt que le reste*, you ought to have come sooner than the others.

Je mourrais plutôt que d'abandonner mes plans, I would rather die than give up my plans.

Tôt alone, is hardly ever used now, though *tôt ou tard* answers for the English sooner or later.

Bien is frequently used as a mere expletive, to give strength and emphasis to the verb, as in the use made of *veuillez bien*, as has been explained.

Ex. *Je vois bien que vous ne le voulez pas*, I see (indeed) that you do not wish it.

PLACE OF ADVERBS.

The adverb is placed immediately after the verb it qualifies, if the latter is used in a simple tense; but, in compound tenses, it may be placed between the auxiliary and the participle past.

Ex. *Il dit franchement tout ce qu'il pense*, he tells all he thinks openly.

Savez-vous s'il a parfaitement réussi? Do you know if he has succeeded entirely?

Hier, yesterday, may be placed before the verb or after it, but can never stand between the auxiliary and the participle.

Ex. *Hier nous y allâmes*—or, *Nous y allâmes hier*, we went there yesterday.

Compound adverbs, however, consisting of adverbs with a regimen or nouns preceded by prepositions, cannot be placed before the auxiliary and participle.

Ex. *Celui qui juge à la hâte juge au hasard*, those who judge rashly judge at haphazard.

The adverbs *bien*, *mal*, *mieux*, *pis*, and a few others of like character, are always placed between the auxiliary and the participle, and may also stand before as well as after the infinitive which they qualify.

Ex. *Vous avez mal fait en le lui disant*, you have done wrong by telling him.

Partout j'ai été mieux reçu que je n'avais espéré, everywhere I have been better received than I expected.

Le plus grand bonheur est de bien faire son devoir, the greatest happiness is to do one's duty well.

Adverbs generally are not repeated before every word they qualify, with the exception of *si*, *aussi*, *plus* and *autant*, which require to be thus repeated.

Ex. *Il a été si bon, si sage, qu'il n'a pas son pareil*, he was so wise and good, that the like of him did not exist.

L'âne est aussi humble, aussi patient, que le cheval est fier et impétueux, the ass is as humble and patient as the horse is proud and impetuous.

A few adverbs can, in negative constructions, be placed before *pas* or *point* and *donc*, therefore, must be so placed.

Ex. *Vous ne m'avez donc pas obéi?* Then you have not obeyed me?

Si, aussi, tant and autant.

Si and *aussi* mean both so or as, and *tant* and *autant* mean both so or as much and as many; but the forms *aussi* and *autant* can only be used in comparisons, while *si* and *tant* serve mainly in exclamations and negative sentences.

Ex. *Ces plaisirs sont aussi purs que tranquilles*, these pleasures are as pure as they are quiet.

J'aime Horace autant que je l'admire, I love Horace as much as I admire him.

Les gens riches sont-ils si heureux? Are the rich so very happy?

Quand elle fut partie il s'écria : Je l'ai tant aimée! When she was gone, he exclaimed: I loved her so dearly!

Autant may be substituted for *aussi*, by being placed after the adjective it qualifies.

Ex. *Cette qualité est estimable autant que rare*, this quality is as valuable as it is rare.

So, before participles past, cannot be translated by *si*, but its place is supplied by *tellement*.

Ex. *Il est toujours tellement occupé, qu'il ne voit personne*, he is always so busy that he sees nobody.

Si excludes all expressions of the superlative after it, with the exception of *bien*, which may be used between *si* and a participle past.

Ex. She is so very kind that everybody loves her, *elle est si aimable que tout le monde l'aime*.

This work is so well done that it praises its master, *cet ouvrage est si bien fait qu'il loue le maître.*

In negative comparisons *aussi* cannot very well be used, when it has the meaning of Not any more, and its place is then supplied by *non plus*.

Ex. *Il n'a pas montré non plus un grand courage*, he also has not shown much courage.

Vous n'avez pas réussi, ni moi non plus, you have not succeeded, nor I either.

EXERCISE.

He had lent me about a thousand dollars, and I have not returned more than half of it; but it has not been in my power, or I would have repaid more. She is as lovely as she is beautiful; and that is a very rare combination, for the body is not always as much gifted as the mind. He is so simple a man that he never suspects anybody, and he gives to the bad as much credit for what they say as to the good. He was so very busy yesterday that I would have done wrong to interrupt him then, but I hope I shall be able to see him to-day. When he had well dined he felt in such good-humor, that he would grant favors to as many as came to ask. You spoil your children, for I have observed that the worse they are the more you indulge them, merely for the purpose of avoiding the trouble it would give you to correct them. Even when she is most happy she has a sad look in her eyes, and she appears troubled when she is least thoughtful. Friendship is so precious a thing that it ought not to be lavished; it ought to be cherished as much as the most precious good we possess. He was so very benevolent, that he gave away the little money he owned, and even distributed his clothes among the poor.

Beaucoup and *bien*.

Beaucoup, from the Latin *bella copia*, and *bien*, from the Latin *bene*, differ but little in meaning, *bien* being only a strengthened *beaucoup*. They both represent the English plural as well as

singular, meaning Much and many, a great deal and a great many. They differ, however, essentially in their regimen, *beaucoup* being always followed by *de*, *bien* by the partitive article.

Ex. *Beaucoup de gens l'ont vu et entendu*, many people have seen and heard it.

Je l'ai entendu dire à bien des gens, I have heard a great many people say so.

The English phrase Many a, is translated without the indefinite article.

Ex. *Beaucoup de femmes s'y sont trompées*, many a woman has been deceived by that.

Beaucoup, when used with a comparative, may be placed either before it, or, connected by the preposition *de*, after it, when it corresponds to the English By far.

Ex. *Vous êtes beaucoup plus savant que lui*—or, *Vous êtes plus savant que lui de beaucoup*, you are far more learned than he is.

It may also be placed between the auxiliary and the past participle, when it is used emphatically.

Ex. *Je l'aurais beaucoup aimé*, I would have liked it very much.

Very well, is translated simply by *beaucoup*.

Ex. I like him very well, *je l'aime beaucoup*.

Il s'en faut beaucoup, or *de beaucoup*, expresses the English Far from it.

Ex. *Vous croyez m'avoir payé ; il s'en faut de beaucoup*, you think you have paid me ; far from it.

Il s'en faut beaucoup qu'il soit heureux, he is very far from being happy.

Its comparative *plus* is used, like *moins* and *mieux*, by repetition to express a comparison, corresponding to the English

The more—the more, etc.; in which case it must be followed by the verb directly, and not, as in English, by the adjective.

Ex. *Plus on en voit plus on l'admire*, the more one sees of it the more one admires it.

Plus il grandit plus il devient laid, the more he grows the uglier he becomes.

INTERROGATIVE ADVERBS.

The English adverb How is translated into French by a great variety of forms, according to the meaning it may happen to have or the words with which it is connected.

How, inquiring the manner, etc., is translated by *comment*.

Ex. *Comment vous êtes-vous porté depuis?* How have you been since?

Voulez-vous savoir comment on doit faire? Do you wish to know how to do it?

Comme, on the contrary, does not refer to the manner so much, but simply serves to connect two verbs.

Ex. *Voyez comme il travaille!* See how (much) he works!

How, in exclamations, is translated by *que*, which, followed by *de*, means also How much! and How many!

Ex. *Que cette parole me doit être douce!* How sweet that word ought to be to me!

Qu'elle est jolie en dépit de son âge! How pretty she is, in spite of her age!

Que de batailles gagnées et que de villes prises! How many battles won, and how many cities taken!

It will be seen, from these examples, that in French the interrogative adverb *comment* or *que* cannot, as in English, be followed immediately by an adjective or adverb, but requires that the verb should come immediately after it.

Ex. I cannot tell you how old she is, *je ne saurais vous dire quel est son âge.*

How few men are really happy ! *Qu'il y a peu d'hommes qui sont vraiment heureux !*

How so ? is translated by *comment cela ?*

Quand, which can be used relatively as a conjunction, as well as interrogatively as an adverb, means not only When ? but, with the conditional, also Even if ; in which case it is often accompanied by *même*.

Ex. *Quand viendrez-vous me voir à la campagne ?* When will you come and see me in the country ?

Quand vous me haïriez, je ne me plaindrais pas, even if you should hate me, I would not complain.

Je le ferai quand même il me coûterait la vie, I will do it even though it should cost me my life.

Pourquoi represents the English Why, wherefore, and what, with for at the end of the sentence.

Ex. *Pourquoi ne me l'avez-vous pas dit hier ?* Why did you not tell me so yesterday ?

Pourriez-vous me dire pourquoi il l'a fait ? Could you tell me what he did it for ?

In negative questions, Why is frequently rendered by *que ne*.

Ex. *Que ne me le dites-vous pas ?* Why did you not tell me ?

EXERCISE.

I have seen many soldiers who had much more genius, but I have never seen one who had more true courage than your friend. That is why I esteemed him so much ; and I may add that I like him also much, although I have seen him but little. She is very far from having given up all hope of seeing him again ; she intends going to Europe next year, although it will cost her a great deal of money, and she thinks she may see him there before he dies. When was this battle fought, in which your younger brother fell ? It was my

elder brother who died there ; and I do not see why you ask me such a question at all. How long will be your stay in this city, or have you not yet decided how many days you will spend here ? How full of wisdom these verses are ! They surprise me every time I read them ; and even if they were not the work of so famous an author, they would not fail to be admired wherever they are read. Why did you not tell her so ? She would have understood it perfectly, and you would not feel the remorse that now troubles your conscience. The more I see of them the less I like them : they are not like those people who gain your esteem the better you learn to know them.

NEGATIVE ADVERBS.

The simple negation in French is *non*, which corresponds to the English No, and can never be used with a verb. It may, however, be placed before *seulement*, only, when followed by *que*, and it may follow certain verbs, like *oui*, when connected with them by *que*.

Ex. *Non, Madame, je n'y consentirai jamais*, no, Madam, I will never consent to it.

Elle est non seulement vieille, mais laide, she is not only old, but ugly.

Est-ce que vraiment il a dit que non ? Did he really say no ?

All other negative adverbs require the addition of *ne* in its proper place before the verb, because they are all taken from Latin nouns, which in themselves have no negative signification. Thus, *pas* comes from the Latin *passus*, and *point* from *punctum* ; *rien* from *rem*, and *jamais* from *jam magis*.

It has already been mentioned that the particle *ne* is required whether the negative adverb precede or follow the verb.

Ex *Jamais la fortune n'a fait autant pour un homme*, never has fortune done as much for a man.

Rien ne me plairait mieux que de vous y voir, nothing would please me better than to see you there.

Aucune de ces dames ne vous a reconnu, not one of these ladies has recognized you.

Pas and *point* both represent the English Not, but the latter is the stronger, approaching the meaning of the English Not at all, or when there is a distinction made between the quantity and the whole material, in which case *point* applies to the former and *pas* to the latter.

Ex. *Vous vous trompez, il n'a point réussi*, you are mistaken, he has not at all succeeded.

Je ne prendrai point de thé, je n'en prends pas, I will take no tea, I do not drink tea.

Pas may be used without *ne* for the English Not, before adjectives or adverbs; and *point* is used without *ne*, but followed by *de*, like an adverb of quality, for the English No, before nouns.

Ex. How is the coffee? Not very good. *Comment est le café?*

Pas trop bon.

No taxes and no veto! *Point de taxes et point de veto!*

On the other hand, *pas* and *point* are omitted and *ne* alone is used to express the negative, when the extent given to the negative is already sufficiently clearly expressed by another word.

Ex. *Il ne sortira de huit jours*, he will not go out for a week.

Pendant tout ce temps il n'a dit mot, during all this time he has not said a word.

Je vous assure, je n'y vois goutte, I assure you, I cannot see any thing in it (I do not understand it at all).

They are also omitted after the verbs *oser*, to dare, *cesser*, to cease, *pouvoir* and *savoir*, when there is no emphasis on the negation.

Ex. *Il n'osera de sa vie vous le reprocher*, he will never in his life dare to reproach you with it.

Elle n'a cessé de me tourmenter, she has plagued me incessantly.

Je ne saurais vous dire combien je vous plains, I cannot tell you how much I pity you.

They are, finally, omitted after *qui* in exclamations.

Ex. *Qui ne serait touché par un tel spectacle!* Who would not be moved by such a sight!

Point, with the infinitive, may be placed before or after it.

Ex. *Pour ne point souffrir*—or, *Pour ne souffrir point*, in order not to suffer at all.

Que, with the negative *ne*, has the meaning of the English Only, when it qualifies a verb, and *que* must precede the word to be limited.

Ex. *Vous n'avez qu'à dire et vous l'aurez*, you have only to say so, and you shall have it.

Je ne veux sortir que pour une demi-heure, I only want to go out for half an hour.

Il n'aime que moi, he loves me only.

When Only expresses a sufficiency, it is rendered by *seulement*.

Ex. *Si j'étais seulement major, je serais content*, if I were only a major, I would be content.

Guère, with the negative *ne*, represents the English Scarcely or Hardly, in connection with a verb.

Ex. *Je ne l'aurais guère reconnu, s'il ne m'avait parlé*, I would have scarcely recognized him, if he had not spoken to me.

Il n'y a guère d'autres gens dans ce pays, there are hardly any other people in this country.

The numerous cases in which *ne* alone is used, without giving a negative meaning to the verb, have already been mentioned in connection with the different classes of words which require it, as comparatives, verbs of doubt and fear, etc.

Plus, with the negative *ne*, has the meaning of No more and No longer, when the latter does not literally mean Not a longer time, in which case it would have to be translated *plus longtemps*.

Ex. *Dites-moi adieu, vous ne me reverrez plus*, tell me good bye, you will never see me again.

Je ne peux plus, mes forces sont épuisées, I can do it no longer, my strength is exhausted.

Vous n'auriez pas dû marcher plus longtemps, you ought not to have walked any longer.

Not again, can never be represented in French by *pas encore*, as foreigners are apt to do; the simple *plus* expressing the words *Pas encore* means Not yet.

Ex. *Je ne l'ai pas encore vue et elle ne reparaitra plus*, I have not seen it, and it will not appear again.

Encore, alone, may be used as an adverb of quantity, and means Some more.

Ex. *Vous voulez encore de l'argent?* You want some more money?

EXERCISE.

I can never believe those who have once told me a falsehood, and nothing will persuade me that a man who has done so once, may not do it again, when it suits him. My patient is not so well to-day; he was worse this morning than he has yet been, and I doubt that he can recover. I could hardly believe that he would commit so base an action; nobody has ever suspected him of being a mean man, and it would surprise me very much if it should be discovered, after all, that he has deceived everybody so long. I believe you will find at the trial, which has only commenced yet, that the facts are not only proved, but supported by the strongest evidence. Several witnesses have been examined already, and they have proved every thing, while his own attorney has said nothing to establish his innocence. I know that at first you would not even listen to the suspicions, nor I either, and I have seen only the reports in the newspapers. Since he has returned from Europe he is more conceited than he ever was, and it will require much time to make him come back to his good sense.

No Pope! was the cry of the early reformers; but afterwards that was not enough, and numerous other demands of a similar kind were made, until it began to be feared that nothing of the Holy Church would survive. Do not send for any wine; I do not drink any; and your water is so pure and fresh, that I shall be perfectly content.

CHAPTER VII.

PREPOSITIONS.

Prepositions have their name from the fact that they are invariably placed before the noun, pronoun, or verb to which they belong. Their general purpose is to represent the relations existing between two words in the same sentence. Hence they can neither be used by themselves nor placed at the end of the sentence, as is done in English.

Ex. I cannot tell you, I was not near, *je ne saurais vous le dire, je n'étais pas près de là.*

What was it he spoke of? *Qu'est-ce que c'était de quoi il parla?*

A number of so-called prepositions, however, are, in French as in English, adverbs also, and in that capacity they may be used without a regimen.

Ex. *D'abord on a pris le thé, et après, on a dansé,* first they they took tea, and then they danced.

It must be borne in mind that simple prepositions are placed immediately before the noun, while compound prepositions require another preposition—

De, when they consist already of a preposition and a noun; *à*, when they express a tendency or an aim.

Ex *On ne le voit jamais sans manteau,* he is never seen without a cloak.

On l'a fait Président au lieu de son père, he has been made President instead of his father.

Il s'est hasardé jusqu'aux injures, he has ventured even upon insults.

Other prepositions can have a second preposition for their regimen; thus *de* may be used before *après*, *entre*, *avec*, *chez* *près* and *auprès*.

Ex. *Ces personnes sont tracées d'après nature*, these characters are drawn from nature.

Il y en a peu d'entre eux qui l'aiment, there are few among them who love him.

Les hommes près de mourir se montrent tels qu'ils sont, men about to die show themselves as they are.

Hors, outside, may be used familiarly without the additional preposition *de*, which it generally requires.

Ex. *Ils demeuraient longtemps hors de la ville*, they lived a long time outside of the town.

Cet homme est logé hors la barrière, this man has lodgings outside the city-walls.

The prepositions *de*, *à* and *en* must be repeated before every noun, pronoun or verb which is their regimen.

Ex. *Ce général fut comblé d'honneur et de gloire*, this general was overwhelmed with honor and glory.

Il doit la vie à Dieu et aux médecins, he owes his life to God and the doctors.

Il trafique en gros et en détail, he deals wholesale and retail.

All other prepositions are repeated only when the two regimens which they govern have an opposite or widely different meaning.

Ex. *Sous les yeux et sous les mains de la Providence*, under the eye and in the hands of Providence.

Nos devoirs envers Dieu et envers la patrie, our duty to God and our country.

Il passe sa vie dans la mollesse et l'oisiveté, he spends his life in effeminacy and idleness.

SPECIAL REMARKS ON SOME PREPOSITIONS.

Avant and *devant* mean both Before, but the former relates only to time and rank, the latter only to place.

Ex. *Nous irons avant vous, si vous le voulez*, we will go first, if you wish it.

Prenez place devant moi, s'il vous plaît, take a seat before me, if you please.

Before a verb in the infinitive, *avant* ought to be followed by *que de*, although modern authors frequently employ *avant que* only.

Ex. *Avant que d'écrire il faut apprendre à penser*, before writing we must learn to think.

Chez, from the Latin *casa*, retains from its origin the idiomatic meaning of the English, At the house of, or At, followed by a person's name in the possessive case.

Ex. *Je ne vous ai jamais vu chez moi*, I have never seen you at my house.

Mais je vous ai rencontré bien des fois chez le docteur, but I have met you very often at the doctor's.

Hence *chez*, with personal pronouns especially, expresses the English word Home, for which there is no other equivalent in French.

Ex. *Est-ce que vous serez chez vous ce soir?* Will you be at home to-night?

Madame la Comtesse est-elle chez elle? Is the Countess at home?

Après avoir écrit les lettres vous pouvez aller chez vous, after having written the letters you can go home.

Dans and *en* have both the same signification, *in* ; but *en* expresses it in a vague and general sense, and hence is not accompanied by the article, except in a few technical terms, whilst *dans* has always the meaning of *Into* or *Within*, and is invariably accompanied by the article.

Ex. *En tous temps, en tous lieux, la vertu est sublime*, at all times, in all places, virtue is sublime.

Il a vécu dix ans en Italie sans apprendre l'Italien, he has lived ten years in Italy without learning Italian.

Ma sœur était dans sa chambre, my sister was in her room.

L'ennemi a marché ses troupes dans Paris, the enemy has marched his troops into Paris.

Cela est arrivé ou en Juin ou en Juillet, that happened either in June or in July.

Demain, nous entrerons dans le mois de Juin, to-morrow we shall enter into the month of June.

From this peculiarity of *en* arises the fact that it serves, in connection with a number of nouns, to form adverbial expressions, signifying a manner of doing or being.

Ex. *Je ne crois pas qu'elle soit en bonne santé*, I do not think she is in good health.

Qui est-ce qui a mis cette chanson en musique ? Who has set this song to music ?

Préférez vous le vin en bouteilles ? Do you prefer bottled wine ?

The few cases in which *en* is followed by the article are the following :

En l'an or *en l'année*, in the year ;

En l'absence or *en la présence de*, in the absence and in the presence of ;

En l'air, in the air ;

En ces termes, in these terms ;

En ces mots, in these words ;

and in the titles *Maître ès* (instead of *en les*) *Arts*, Master of Arts, and *Docteur ès Sciences*, Doctor of Sciences.

When *dans* and *en* are employed in definitions of time, they have an entirely different signification: *dans* expresses the time between now and the beginning of an action, *en* means the time between the beginning and the end of the action.

Ex. *Il arrivera ici dans trois jours*, he will reach here three days hence.

Il arrivera là en trois jours, it will take him three days to get there.

En has also the peculiar meaning of *like*, in the manner of, in the character of.

Ex. *Il me traite en frère plutôt qu'en maître*, he treats me rather like a brother than like a master.

Dans toute cette affaire il a agi en honnête homme, in this whole affair he has acted like an honest man.

Elle était déguisée en dame du Moyen-Age, she was dressed in the character of a lady of the Middle Ages.

The English *in*, before the word *Manner*, and whenever *with* can be substituted for it, is not translated by *en*, but by *de*.

Ex. In this manner we shall never come to an end of it, *de cette manière nous n'en viendrons jamais à bout*.

She said to him in a tender voice, *elle lui dit d'une voix tendre*.

Never in my life, and Nothing in the world, are in like manner translated by *jamais de ma vie*, and *rien au monde*.

Dessus, *dessous* (pronounced as if the first *e* was mute), above and below, *dedans* and *dehors*, within and without, belong to that class of prepositions which may also be used as adverbs. The difference can be easily ascertained, as they will have a regimen when they are used as prepositions, and stand alone as adverbs.

Ex. *Je l'ai cherché dessus et dessous la table*, I have looked for it on the table and under it.

Il est moitié dedans, moitié dehors, he is half inside and half outside.

Elle est allée dehors voir s'il y a quelqu'un, she has gone out to see if there is anybody there.

They may be preceded by one of the following prepositions—*de*, *à* and *par* ; in which case they are followed by *de*.

Ex. *Il veut toujours s'élever au-dessus de ses égaux*, he always wants to rise above his equals.

Il est riche, il est jeune, et par dessus de cela il est beau, he is young, he is rich, and besides that he is handsome.

EXERCISE.

Who was that woman who was seated before you at the theatre last night? She had come there half an hour before you, and seemed to be impatient to see you come. I will let you know before writing to her, so that you can tell me what you wish me to communicate to her, in case you should not write to her yourself before that time. She is still, I think, at her uncle's, but after a month or two she told me she would go back to her aunt's, where she is perfectly at home. They are not at home at this hour, the servant says, but they will return a few minutes before dinner. Had she gone into the house when you saw her this morning, or was she still walking in the garden, and gathering flowers for a bouquet? They were born either in Germany or in Holland, but they spent nearly their whole life in the United States. In vain did he try to gain his ear; he would not listen to him for a moment, and after a little while he went back, and locked himself in his study. If you cannot get these dresses into the basket, put some of them upon it, and the others will find room inside.

Jusque, till, is almost invariably used with another preposition after it, which, with a few exceptions, is *à*. We may say,

Ex. *Il la poursuivra jusqu'à dans l'enfer*, he will pursue her as far as hell.

L'eau lui monta jusque par dessus la tête, the water rose as high as above her head.

J'aime ses talents, ses vertus et jusqu'à ses défauts, I love his talents, his virtues and even his faults.

Poets take the liberty of adding an *s* to *jusque* whenever it suits their metre to make two syllables of the word.

Ex. *Vous la louez, Madame, jusques au ciel*, you praise her, Madam, to the skies.

It has already been stated that *jusque*, used as a conjunction before verbs, requires the additional *ce que*.

Ex. *Attendez jusqu'à ce que j'aurai fini ma lettre*, wait until I have finished my letter.

Sans, without, has two peculiarities—it is used without an article, unless there is special emphasis on the article, and it may be followed either by *ni* or by *et*, in spite of its negative signification; but with *et*, it must be repeated before each noun.

Ex. *Sans crainte ni pudeur, sans force ni vertu*, without fear or shame, without power or virtue.

Elle y est allée sans père et sans mari, she went there without father and husband.

Sans la crainte de l'offenser, je l'aurais fait, without the fear of offending him, I would have done it.

When followed by a verb, *sans* requires an additional *que*, unless it be in the infinitive, which being a noun requires no conjunction.

Ex. *Sans que la France méritât de reproches*, without France's deserving any reproach.

Il boit du vin sans y mettre de l'eau, he drinks wine without putting any water into it.

Avec, also, omits the article, but only when it stands before nouns expressive of moral qualities, with which it forms an adverb.

Ex. *Il ne pourra s'en tirer avec honneur*, he will not be able to get out of it honorably.

On peut tout faire avec de l'argent, one can do every thing with money.

Par, also, can be used without an article in adverbial expressions, and when it is followed by a noun taken in a partitive sense.

Ex. *On fait plus par la douceur que par la force, one can do more by gentleness than by violence.*

Il voulut me le prendre par force, he wanted to take it forcibly from me.

Ces pauvres gens mouraient de faim par milliers, these poor people starved to death by the thousand.

De, *à* and *pour* are the three principal prepositions in use with the infinitive of verbs, and present some difficulty in their use, as they do not always correspond to like expressions in English. It has already been explained, that the English word *to* is by no means always a preposition, but most frequently nothing more than a mere sign of the verbal character of the verb-word, when it remains, of course, untranslated. Nevertheless, it has also the meanings of *In order to*, *For the purpose of*, etc., and in such cases it has to be translated by the proper preposition in French.

Pour represents *to* in the sense of *In order to*, and is also used after all expressions, nouns, adjectives or adverbs, which convey the idea of sufficiency.

Ex. *Elle ne l'a fait que pour vous faire plaisir, she has done it only to give you pleasure.*

Est-ce que cela suffit pour le payer? Is that enough to pay him?

Il est assez simple pour avoir fait cette bécue, he is simple enough to have made that blunder.

A expresses always more or less distinctly the end or purpose, and frequently, as has been stated elsewhere, gives a passive signification to the verb it precedes.

Ex. *Est-ce que c'est bon à manger ou à quoi sert-il? Is this good to eat, or what is it good for?*

C'est une chose qui est beaucoup à craindre, that is a thing much to be feared.

It is also used after words with a superlative meaning.

Ex. *Je crois que j'étais le premier à vous le dire*, I believe I was the first to tell you.

De is used in all other cases not thus provided for, except after verbs which are used without any preposition, like verbs of motion, etc.

Ex. *Elle est impatiente de revoir sa patrie*, she is impatient to see her country again.

Il est notre devoir de venir à son secours, it is our duty to come to his aid.

When an infinitive is the object of another verb, *de* is placed before it as direct object, and *à*, when it is the indirect object.

Ex. *Il ne m'a pas été permis de la revoir*, I have not been permitted to see her again.

Je l'ai invité à venir nous voir, I have invited him to come and see us.

As a matter of reference, lists of those verbs are given here, which require either no preposition at all before an infinitive or such as differ from those used in English.

VERBS USED WITHOUT PREPOSITION.

<i>Affirmer</i>	to affirm	<i>daigner</i>	to deign
<i>aimer mieux</i>	to prefer	<i>déclarer</i>	to declare
<i>aller</i>	to go	<i>déposer</i>	to bear witness
<i>apercevoir</i>	to perceive	<i>désirer</i>	to wish
<i>assurer</i>	to assure	<i>devoir</i>	to owe
<i>avouer</i>	to confess	<i>écouter</i>	to listen to
<i>compter</i>	to intend	<i>entendre</i>	to hear
<i>confesser</i>	to confess	<i>envoyer</i>	to send
<i>considérer</i>	to behold	<i>épier</i>	to spy
<i>courir</i>	to run	<i>espérer</i>	to hope
<i>croire</i>	to believe	<i>faire</i>	to make

<i> falloir</i>	to be necessary	<i> rapporter</i>	to report
<i> s'imaginer</i>	to imagine	<i> reconnaître</i>	to acknowledge
<i> laisser</i>	to allow, to suffer	<i> regarder</i>	to look at
<i> mener</i>	to lead	<i> retourner</i>	to return
<i> nier</i>	to deny	<i> revenir</i>	to come back
<i> observer</i>	to observe	<i> savoir</i>	to know
<i> oser</i>	to dare	<i> sembler</i>	to seem
<i> ouir</i>	to hear	<i> sentir</i>	to feel
<i> paraître</i>	to appear	<i> souhaiter</i>	to wish
<i> penser</i>	to imagine	<i> soutenir</i>	to maintain
<i> pouvoir</i>	to be able	<i> témoigner</i>	to testify
<i> prétendre</i>	to pretend	<i> se trouver</i>	to happen to be
<i> préférer</i>	to prefer	<i> valoir mieux</i>	to be better
<i> protester</i>	to protest	<i> venir</i>	to come
<i> publier</i>	to publish	<i> voir</i>	to see
<i> se rappeler</i>	to remember	<i> vouloir</i>	to be willing

VERBS WHICH REQUIRE *de* BEFORE AN INFINITIVE.

<i> Accuser de</i>	to accuse of	<i> se déshabiller</i>	} to leave off
<i> s'affliger de</i>	to grieve at	<i> de</i>	
<i> s'attrister de</i>	to be grieved at	<i> se désespérer de</i>	to despair
<i> avertir de</i>	to warn	<i> se désoler de</i>	to rave at
<i> s'aviser de</i>	{ to take into one's head	<i> détourner de</i>	to dissuade
		<i> discontinuer de</i>	to discontinue
<i> avoir honte de</i>	to be ashamed at	<i> disconvenir de</i>	to deny
<i> blâmer de</i>	to blame	<i> se dispenser de</i>	to forbear
<i> censurer de</i>	to censure for	<i> dissuader de</i>	to dissuade
<i> cesser de</i>	to cease	<i> douter de</i>	to doubt
<i> se chagriner de</i>	to fret for	<i> s'efforcer de</i>	to endeavor
<i> charger de</i>	to charge with	<i> s'empresse de</i>	to hasten
<i> conjurer de</i>	to entreat	<i> enrager de</i>	to be vexed at
<i> convaincre de</i>	to convince	<i> s'effrayer de</i>	} to be frightened
<i> consentir de</i>	to agree	<i> s'opposer de</i>	
			at
<i> décourager de</i>	to discourage	<i> s'étonner de</i>	{ to be astonished
<i> se défendre de</i>	to decline		
			at
<i> défier de</i>	to challenge	<i> s'excuser de</i>	to excuse
<i> se dépêcher de</i>	to make haste	<i> féliciter de</i>	to congratulate
<i> se désaccoutu-</i>	{ to leave off	<i> se flatter de</i>	{ to flatter one's self
<i> mer de</i>			

<i>frémir de</i>	to shudder at	<i>punir de</i>	to punish
<i>gémir de</i>	to lament	<i>se rebuter de</i>	{ to be discouraged at
<i>gêner de</i>	to constrain	<i>se réjouir de</i>	to rejoice at
<i>gronder de</i>	to scold for	<i>remercier de</i>	{ to thank for
<i>haïr de</i>	to hate for	<i>rendre grâce de</i>	
<i>se hasarder de</i>	to venture	<i>se repentir de</i>	to repent
<i>se hâter de</i>	to hasten	<i>reprandre de</i>	{ to chide for
<i>s'indigner de</i>	{ to be exasperat- ed at	<i>réprimander de</i>	
<i>jouir de</i>	to enjoy	<i>se ressouvenir de</i>	to remember
<i>louer de</i>	to praise for	<i>rire de</i>	to laugh at
<i>manquer de</i>	to fail	<i>rougir de</i>	to blush at
<i>menacer de</i>	to threaten	<i>se scandaliser de</i>	to be offended at
<i>se passer de</i>	to do without	<i>sommer de</i>	to summon
<i>se piquer de</i>	to pride in	<i>se soucier de</i>	to care for
<i>plaindre de</i>	to pity for	<i>souffrir de</i>	to suffer
<i>prendre garde de</i>	to take care not	<i>soupçonner de</i>	to suspect
<i>prescrire de</i>	to prescribe	<i>se souvenir de</i>	to remember
<i>presser de</i>	to urge	<i>suffire de (im- personal)</i>	{ to suffice
<i>se presser de</i>	to hasten	<i>supplier de</i>	to entreat
<i>présumer de</i>	to conjecture	<i>trembler de</i>	to tremble
<i>prier de</i>	to desire		
<i>protester de</i>	to protest		

And all other verbs corresponding to English verbs which are followed by the prepositions of, from, with or about.

VERBS WHICH REQUIRE *à* BEFORE AN INFINITIVE.

<i>Aboutir à</i>	to end in	<i>consister à</i>	to consist of
<i>aider à</i>	to help in	<i>conspirer à</i>	to agree together
<i>aimer à</i>	to like	<i>contribuer à</i>	to contribute to
<i>apprendre à</i>	to learn	<i>coûter à</i>	to cost
<i>avoir à</i>	to have	<i>demander à</i>	to ask
<i>avoir peine à</i>	to be hardly able	<i>demeurer à</i>	{ to put too much time in
<i>balancer à</i>	to hesitate	<i>disposer à</i>	to prepare
<i>chercher à</i>	to try	<i>donner à</i>	to give
<i>concourir à</i>	to co-operate in	<i>engager à</i>	to prevail upon
<i>condescendre à</i>	to condescend to		

<i>enhardir à</i>	to encourage	<i>porter à</i>	to lead
<i>enseigner à</i>	{ to teach (a pres- ent participle)	<i>réussir à</i>	to succeed in
<i>être à</i>		<i>servir à</i>	to serve
	{ to be (as explain- ed page 114.)	<i>songer à</i>	to think of
<i>exceller à</i>		<i>tarder à</i>	to long for
<i>exciter à</i>	to excite	<i>tendre à</i>	to tend
<i>exhorter à</i>	to exhort	<i>pousser à</i>	to urge
<i>hésiter à</i>	to hesitate	<i>prendre garde à</i>	to take care
<i>se mettre à</i>	to begin to	<i>prier à</i>	to invite
<i>montrer à</i>	to show	<i>renoncer à</i>	to renounce
<i>parvenir à</i>	to succeed in	<i>répugner à</i>	to be repugnant
<i>penser à</i>	to think of	<i>tenir à</i>	to insist
<i>persévérer à</i>	to persevere in	<i>travailler à</i>	to work at
<i>persister à</i>	to persist in	<i>viser à</i>	to aim at
<i>se plaire à</i>	{ to take pleasure in		
<i>prendre plaisir à</i>			

VERBS WHICH REQUIRE PREPOSITIONS DIFFERENT FROM THOSE
USED IN ENGLISH :

<i>abuser de</i>	to abuse	<i>louer de</i>	to praise for
<i>s'affliger de</i>	to grieve for	<i>médire de</i>	to slander
<i>approcher de</i>	to come near to	<i>se méfier de</i>	to mistrust
<i>s'attrister de</i>	to grieve at	<i>se passer de</i>	to go without
<i>avoir honte de</i>	to be ashamed at	<i>persuader de</i>	to persuade
<i>se chagriner de</i>	to fret at	<i>se piper de</i>	to pride in
<i>convenir de</i>	to agree on	<i>profiter de</i>	to profit by
<i>se défier de</i>	to mistrust	<i>se rebuter de</i>	{ to be discouraged at
<i>se démettre de</i>	to lay down	<i>remercier de</i>	
<i>se désister de</i>	to give up	<i>se retracter de</i>	to recant
<i>douter de</i>	to doubt	<i>se souvenir de</i>	to remember
<i>écarter de</i>	to be vexed at	<i>rire de</i>	to laugh at
<i>féliciter de</i>	to congratulate on	<i>rougir de</i>	to blush at
<i>frémir de</i>	to shudder at	<i>se saisir de</i>	to seize upon
<i>gémir de</i>	to lament	<i>se scandaliser de</i>	to be offended at
<i>s'indigner de</i>	to be exasperated at	<i>servir de</i>	to serve as
<i>s'informer de</i>	to inquire after	<i>se servir de</i>	to use
<i>jouir de</i>	to enjoy		

<i>se soucier de</i>	to care for	<i>traiter de</i>	{ to call, to give the title of
<i>souffrir de</i>	to suffer by		
<i>se souvenir de</i>	to remember	<i>user de</i>	to use
<i>subsister de</i>	to live upon		
<hr/>			
<i>Aboutir à</i>	to end in	<i>pourvoir à</i>	to provide for
<i>compatir à</i>	to sympathize with	<i>préluder à</i>	to prelude
<i>contrevenir à</i>	to infringe	<i>prendre garde à</i>	to take care of
<i>convenir à</i>	to suit	<i>procéder à</i>	to set about
<i>déplaire à</i>	to displease	<i>remédier à</i>	to remedy
<i>déroger à</i>	to derogate from	<i>résister à</i>	to resist
<i>désobéir à</i>	to disobey	<i>ressembler à</i>	to look like
<i>échapper à</i>	to escape from	<i>songer à</i>	to think of
<i>exceller à</i>	to excel in	<i>subvenir à</i>	to relieve
<i>manquer à</i>	to fail in	<i>succéder à</i>	to succeed
<i>nuire à</i>	to prejudice	<i>suffire à</i>	to be sufficient for
<i>obéir à</i>	to obey	<i>survivre à</i>	to survive
<i>obvier à</i>	to obviate	<i>tenir à</i>	not to give up
<i>pardonner à</i>	to pardon	<i>tirer à</i>	to shoot, to fire at
<i>parvenir à</i>	to attain	<i>travailler à</i>	to work about
<i>penser à</i>	to think of	<i>viser à</i>	to aim at
<i>plaire à</i>	to please		

The following verbs may be used with or without the preposition *à* before nouns and pronouns.

<i>applaudir</i>	to applaud	<i>persuader</i>	to persuade
<i>insulter</i>	to insult	<i>satisfaire</i>	to satisfy

A few others are used with *de* or with *à*, according to the meaning which is given to them.

EXERCISE.

We would have prevented them from doing that, but we came too late, and when we tried to persuade them to desist, they replied, that it was no longer in their power to undo their work. Why do you not teach your children to speak French? it is useful to know at least one other language besides our own, and it helps much in learning to

understand the latter. She has been trying to imitate the voice of that celebrated singer, ever since she heard her sing in London ; but in vain, for her voice is not strong enough to do what the other did without making an effort. Would it not be better for you and your children to lay up some money, so that, when you begin to grow old, you may feel secure against want? I would advise you earnestly to follow his counsel, and to do what you want to do at once, for delay is seldom useful in bringing better knowledge. His wife was a charming woman ; she was beloved and esteemed by all who knew her, whilst he was detested, and finally killed, by one whom he had insulted grievously, in a duel. You say you are in want of money enough to go on with your enterprise ; I will think of it whilst going to town, and when I return I will let you know what I have determined to do for you. If you can do without your new dresses, it would be better for you, as you will want all the money you have to pay the doctor's bill, and to provide for the winter. She has survived all her relations and even her grandchildren : it is sad to see one so entirely alone, but she bears it very well, and does not complain of her lot. If it suits you, I wish you would come and dine with us to-morrow ; we have some guests whose company you will enjoy, I am sure, and you will thank us for having invited you to meet them.

CHAPTER VIII.

CONJUNCTIONS.

Conjunctions have their name from the fact that they serve to join together sentences and parts of sentences. Although they do not designate the objects of our thoughts, nor the thoughts themselves, they are not less important on that account. Their principal purpose is to show the manner in which our thoughts are connected with each other, and thus, in language, to build up the whole of a sentence from its different parts.

Conjunctions, according to their form, are *simple*, when they consist but of a single word, which serves no other purpose, as

et, ou, ni, mais, si, car, etc. Some of these are more precisely used in French than in English. Thus in English *for* serves as a preposition as well as a conjunction, while in French each has a separate form.

Ex. He has done it for your satisfaction and mine, *il l'a fait pour votre satisfaction et la mienne*.

He has done it, for you wished it, *il l'a fait car vous le désiriez*.

The English *then* sometimes refers to time, meaning at that time, and sometimes to a conclusion, meaning therefore; the French has again one form for the adverb and another for the conjunction.

Ex. It was then that he lost his right arm, *c'était alors qu'il perdit le bras droit*.

It was then your sister whom you took for me? *C'était donc votre sœur que vous prîtes pour moi?*

Compound conjunctions consist of several words taken from other parts of speech, and have only this in common—that, with very few exceptions, like *par conséquent*, etc., they are invariably connected with *que*. Such are *puisque, parceque, à moins que, pourvu que*, etc.

Conjunctions, according to their signification, differ as much as the manner of thinking may differ in the human mind, limited only by the permanent and fixed laws of Logic.

It will be borne in mind, here, that in French a conjunction—at least *que*—is absolutely necessary, whenever two verbs are placed in connection with each other. This is not the case in English, where the two verbs, and consequently two distinct ideas, may be simply placed side by side, without a conjunction, and it is left to the mind to supply the nature of the connection.

Ex. I know you tell me the truth and nothing more, *je sais que vous me dites la vérité et rien de plus*.

He said he would come to take leave, *il dit qu'il viendrait prendre congé.*

When she heard he had gone she burst into tears, *quand elle apprit qu'il fut parti elle éclata en larmes.*

It has also been stated that certain conjunctions require the following verb to be in the subjunctive mood, from the peculiar meaning which attaches to them.

Ex. *A moins que vous ne soyez bien riche*, unless you should be extremely rich.

J'y consens pourvu qu'il le fasse lui-même, I agree to it provided he does it himself.

The conjunctions *et*, *ou*, *ni* and *soit*, are frequently repeated before two parts of a sentence which are represented as closely united or as alternate to each other.

Ex. *Et le père et le fils ont été récompensés*, both father and son have been rewarded.

Soit mépris, soit haine, il l'a ignoré, be it from contempt or from hatred, he ignored him.

Other conjunctions, also, must be repeated, but only in the form of *que*, which thus represents even *si*.

Ex. *Lorsque je vous ai vu et que je vous ai parlé*, when I saw you and spoke to you.

Comme il le soutenait et que je ne le croyais pas, as he maintained it and I did not believe it.

S'il vient et qu'il me demande—je n'y suis pas, if he comes and asks for me—I am not in.

C'est à vous que je parle et point à elle, it is to you I speak, and not to her.

A number of prepositions may also be used as conjunctions by means of *que*, which is added. Such are *pour*, *sans*, *avant*, *après*, *jusqu'à*, etc.

Ex. *Je l'avertirai pour qu'il ne tombe dans ce piège*, I will warn him, so that he may not fall into that snare.

Il est parti sans que personne l'ait vu, he is gone without being seen by any one.

Il était embarrassé avant qu'il n'eût commencé, he was embarrassed before he had commenced.

They may also be used with the infinitive, except *jusque*.

Ex. *On l'a puni pour avoir parlé trop franchement*, he has been punished for having spoken too freely.

Pensez avant de parler et vous parlerez mieux, think before you speak, and you will speak better.

The different tenses which are required after certain conjunctions, as the present and imperfect after *si*, *if*, have been mentioned in their appropriate places and need not be repeated here.

Que frequently stands for *parceque*, because, after *c'est* and the other tenses of *être* with *ce*.

Ex. *C'est que vous m'avez trop taquiné*, it is because you have teased me too much.

Pourquoi s'en va-t-il? C'est qu'il va se coucher, why does he go away? Because he is going to bed.

Puisque is in rare cases, and *lorsque* more frequently, separated so that *que* follows *même* or another adverb, which may be placed between.

Ex. *Lors même que cela en serait ainsi*, even if that should be so.

Que, as a conjunction, produces numerous idiomatic expressions, of which the following are the most important.

Que is placed before a noun, which is compared to another word at the beginning of the sentence, preceded by *c'est*, for the sake of greater emphasis.

Ex. *C'est un fléau terrible que la guerre*, war is a terrible scourge.

Ce sont des drôles de personnes que vos amis, your friends are very queer people.

The same construction is constantly used in questions.

Ex. *Qu'est-ce que ce billet?* What note is this?

Qu'est-ce que c'est que les idées innées? What are innate ideas?

Qu'est-ce que cela veut dire? What does that mean?

In this case, *c'est* is frequently repeated.

Ex. *Qu'est-ce que c'est que cette étoile?* What is that star?

Qu'est-ce que c'est que cela? What is that?

Que is used for the relative after definitions of time.

Ex. *Le jour qu'il naquit, sa mère mourut,* on the day on which he was born, his mother died.

Il y a deux ans que je ne l'ai vue, it is two years since I saw her (during which I have not seen her).

Que, after the imperative, stands instead of *pour que* or *jusque*.

Ex. *Approchez, mon ami, que je vous parle,* come nearer, friend, so that I can speak to you.

Attendez qu'il vienne. Wait until he comes.

Que, after interrogations, stands instead of *puisque*.

Ex. *Qu'avez-vous donc que vous ne mangez point?* What is the matter with you that you do not eat?

Que, in exclamations, is used as a substitute for the verb *être*, followed by *que*.

Ex. *Quelle beauté suprême que cette femme!* What a splendid beauty that lady is!

Quelle bête que cet homme! What a fool that man is!

Que is used instead of *à moins que*, *avant que*, and *sans que*, in phrases like the following:

Cela ne finira pas qu'il ne vienne, this will not end unless he comes.

Elle sera partie que lui il ne soit venu, she will be gone before he has come.

Il ne peut sortir qu'il ne s'enrhume, he cannot go out without catching cold.

CHAPTER IX.

INTERJECTIONS.

Interjections have their name from the fact that they are thrown in, as it were, between other words for the purpose of giving expression, not to our thoughts, like other words, but to our feelings. They are naturally mere particles of words or appeals to higher beings,—indeclinable because they have no relation whatever to other words, and most liable, of all parts of speech, to be mutilated and corrupted by the effect of strong feelings, under which alone they are used.

Grief is expressed by *ah! aie! ouf! ah! hé! hélas!*

Ex. *Ah! que cela me fait mal!* Oh, how that hurts!

Ouf, je n'y puis plus! J'étouffe! Oh! I cannot stand it any longer. I am stifled!

Hélas! Il est mort, et nous sommes orphelins! Alas! he is dead, and we are orphans.

Joy is expressed by *ah! bon!*

Ex. *Ah! que je suis heureux de vous revoir!* Ah! how happy I am to see you again!

Fear is expressed by *ah! hi!*

Ex. *Hi! Qu'ai-je fait? Je l'ai cassé!* Alas! what have I done! I have broken it!

Disgust is expressed by *fi! fi donc!*

Ex. *Fi donc! Vous ne devriez pas faire cela!* Fie! You ought not to do that.

Encouragement is expressed by *ho! ça ça! allons!*

Ex. *Ho! A l'attaque! Vous allez vaincre!* Up! Attack them! You will be victorious!

Warning is expressed by *holà ! hein ! oh !*

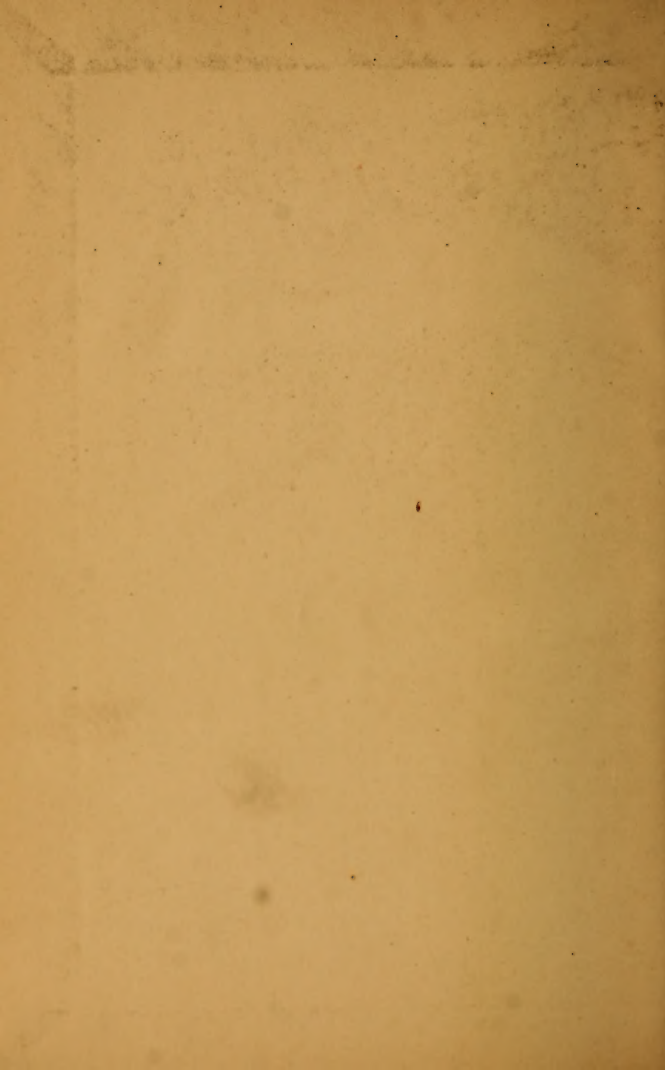
Ex. *Holà ! Prenez garde ! Vous allez tomber !* Look out !
Take care ! You will fall !

Silencing is expressed by *chut ! st !*

Ex. *Chut ! Ne parlez pas si haut !* Hush ! Don't speak so loud !

Among the compound interjections are those appeals to God, etc., which have been mentioned, like *Grand Dieu ! Dieu de dieu ! Sainte Vierge !* and those words which, in certain combinations, are used as interjections, as *tout beau !* gently—*allons ferme !* be firm—*doucement*, not so fast, etc.

THE END.



LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 003 117 593 8

